

# **Aruba 2920**

## **Management and Configuration Guide**

### **for ArubaOS-Switch 16.09**



a Hewlett Packard  
Enterprise company

Part Number: 5200-5901  
Published: June 2019  
Edition: 1

## Notices

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for Hewlett Packard Enterprise products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. Hewlett Packard Enterprise shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from Hewlett Packard Enterprise required for possession, use, or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

Links to third-party websites take you outside the Hewlett Packard Enterprise website. Hewlett Packard Enterprise has no control over and is not responsible for information outside the Hewlett Packard Enterprise website.

## Acknowledgments

Intel®, Itanium®, Pentium®, Xeon®, Intel Inside®, and the Intel Inside logo are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft® and Windows® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe® and Acrobat® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Java® and Oracle® are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

<b>Chapter 1 About this guide</b>	<b>21</b>
Applicable products	21
Switch prompts used in this guide	21
<b>Chapter 2 Time Protocols</b>	<b>22</b>
General steps for running a time protocol on the switch	22
TimeP time synchronization	22
SNTP time synchronization	22
NTP time synchronization	23
timesync Command	23
Selecting a time synchronization protocol	23
Disabling time synchronization	24
SNTP: Selecting and configuring	24
Viewing and configuring SNTP (Menu)	25
Viewing and configuring SNTP (CLI)	26
Configuring (enabling or disabling) the SNTP mode	28
TimeP: Selecting and configuring	33
Viewing, enabling, and modifying the TimeP protocol (Menu)	33
Viewing the current TimeP configuration (CLI)	35
Configuring (enabling or disabling) the TimeP mode	36
SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers	39
Displaying all SNTP server addresses configured on the switch (CLI)	39
Adding and deleting SNTP server addresses	40
Adding addresses	40
Deleting addresses	40
Operating with multiple SNTP server addresses configured (Menu)	40
SNTP messages in the Event Log	41
Network Time Protocol (NTP)	41
Commands	41
timesync ntp	41
ntp	41
ntp	42
ntp enable	42
ntp authentication	43
ntp authentication key-id	44
ntp max-association	44
ntp server	45
ntp server key-id	47
ntp ipv6-multicast	47
debug ntp	48
ntp trap	48
show ntp statistics	49
show ntp status	50
show ntp associations	50
show ntp authentication	51
<b>Chapter 3 Port Status and Configuration</b>	<b>52</b>
Viewing port status and configuring port parameters	52

Connecting transceivers to fixed-configuration devices.....	52
Viewing port configuration (Menu).....	54
Configuring ports (Menu).....	55
Viewing port status and configuration (CLI).....	56
Dynamically updating the show interfaces command (CLI/Menu).....	57
Customizing the show interfaces command (CLI).....	57
Error messages associated with the show interfaces command.....	59
Viewing port utilization statistics (CLI).....	59
Operating notes for viewing port utilization statistics.....	60
Viewing transceiver status (CLI).....	60
Operating Notes.....	60
Enabling or disabling ports and configuring port mode (CLI).....	61
Enabling or disabling flow control (CLI).....	62
Port shutdown with broadcast storm.....	64
Viewing broadcast storm.....	64
SNMP MIB.....	65
Configuring auto-MDIX.....	67
Manual override.....	68
Configuring auto-MDIX (CLI).....	68
Using friendly (optional) port names.....	70
Configuring and operating rules for friendly port names.....	70
Configuring friendly port names (CLI).....	70
Configuring a single port name (CLI).....	71
Configuring the same name for multiple ports (CLI).....	71
Displaying friendly port names with other port data (CLI).....	71
Listing all ports or selected ports with their friendly port names (CLI).....	72
Including friendly port names in per-port statistics listings (CLI).....	73
Searching the configuration for ports with friendly port names (CLI).....	73
Uni-directional link detection (UDLD).....	74
Configuring UDLD.....	75
Configuring uni-directional link detection (UDLD) (CLI).....	75
Enabling UDLD (CLI).....	76
Changing the keepalive interval (CLI).....	76
Changing the keepalive retries (CLI).....	76
Configuring UDLD for tagged ports.....	77
Viewing UDLD information (CLI).....	77
Viewing summary information on all UDLD-enabled ports (CLI).....	77
Viewing detailed UDLD information for specific ports (CLI).....	78
Clearing UDLD statistics (CLI).....	78
<b>Chapter 4 Power Over Ethernet (PoE/PoE+) Operation.....</b>	<b>80</b>
Introduction to PoE.....	80
PoE terminology.....	80
Planning and implementing a PoE configuration.....	80
Power requirements.....	80
Assigning PoE ports to VLANs.....	80
Applying security features to PoE configurations.....	81
Assigning priority policies to PoE traffic.....	81
PoE operation.....	81
Configuration options.....	82
PD support.....	82
Power priority operation.....	82
When is power allocation prioritized?.....	83
How is power allocation prioritized?.....	83
Configuring PoE operation.....	83



Disabling or re-enabling PoE port operation.....	83
Enabling support for pre-standard devices.....	83
Configuring the PoE port priority.....	84
Controlling PoE allocation.....	84
Manually configuring PoE power levels.....	85
Configuring PoE redundancy.....	86
Changing the threshold for generating a power notice.....	87
PoE/PoE+ allocation using LLDP information.....	88
LLDP with PoE.....	88
Enabling or disabling ports for allocating power using LLDP.....	89
Enabling PoE detection via LLDP TLV advertisement.....	89
LLDP with PoE+.....	89
Overview.....	89
PoE allocation.....	89
Viewing PoE when using LLDP information.....	90
Operating note.....	92
Viewing the global PoE power status of the switch.....	92
Viewing PoE status on all ports.....	93
Viewing the PoE status on specific ports.....	95
PoE Event Log messages.....	97

## Chapter 5 Port Trunking..... 98

Overview of port trunking.....	98
Port connections and configuration.....	98
Port trunk features and operation.....	99
Fault tolerance.....	99
Trunk configuration methods.....	99
Dynamic LACP trunk.....	99
Static trunk.....	99
Viewing and configuring a static trunk group (Menu).....	103
Viewing and configuring port trunk groups (CLI).....	105
Viewing static trunk type and group for all ports or for selected ports.....	105
Viewing static LACP and dynamic LACP trunk data.....	106
Dynamic LACP Standby Links.....	106
Configuring a static trunk or static LACP trunk group.....	107
Removing ports from a static trunk group.....	107
Enabling a dynamic LACP trunk group.....	107
Removing ports from a dynamic LACP trunk group.....	108
Specifying Minimum Active Links for LACP.....	109
lacp min-active-links.....	109
lacp enable-timer.....	110
show lacp min-active-links.....	111
Limitations.....	112
Viewing existing port trunk groups (WebAgent).....	112
Trunk group operation using LACP.....	112
Default port operation.....	114
LACP notes and restrictions.....	116
802.1X (Port-based access control) configured on a port.....	116
Port security configured on a port.....	116
Changing trunking methods.....	117
Static LACP trunks.....	117
Dynamic LACP trunks.....	117
VLANs and dynamic LACP.....	117
Blocked ports with older devices.....	117
Spanning Tree and IGMP.....	118

Half-duplex, different port speeds, or both not allowed in LACP trunks.....	118
Dynamic/static LACP interoperation.....	118
Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option.....	118
How the switch lists trunk data.....	119
Outbound traffic distribution across trunked links.....	119

## Chapter 6 Port Traffic Controls..... 121

Rate-limiting.....	121
All traffic rate-limiting.....	121
Configuring in/out rate-limiting.....	121
Displaying the current rate-limit configuration.....	122
Operating notes for rate-limiting.....	124
ICMP rate-limiting.....	125
Guidelines for configuring ICMP rate-limiting.....	126
Configuring ICMP rate-limiting.....	126
Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface.....	127
Viewing the current ICMP rate-limit configuration.....	128
Operating notes for ICMP rate-limiting.....	128
ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages.....	129
Determining the switch port number used in ICMP port reset commands.....	130
Configuring inbound rate-limiting for broadcast and multicast traffic.....	131
Operating Notes.....	132
Guaranteed minimum bandwidth (GMB).....	133
GMB operation.....	133
Impacts of QoS queue configuration on GMB operation.....	134
Configuring GMB for outbound traffic.....	135
Viewing the current GMB configuration.....	137
GMB operating notes.....	138
Impact of QoS queue configuration on GMB commands.....	138
Rate-limiting Unknown Unicast Traffic.....	138
rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent.....	138
rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps.....	139
show rate-limit unknown-unicast.....	140
Jumbo frames.....	141
Operating rules.....	141
Jumbo traffic-handling.....	142
Configuring jumbo frame operation.....	143
Overview.....	143
Viewing the current jumbo configuration.....	143
Enabling or disabling jumbo traffic on a VLAN.....	145
Configuring a maximum frame size.....	145
Configuring IP MTU.....	146
SNMP implementation.....	146
Displaying the maximum frame size.....	146
Operating notes for maximum frame size.....	146
Troubleshooting.....	147
A VLAN is configured to allow jumbo frames, but one or more ports drops all inbound jumbo frames.....	147
A non-jumbo port is generating "Excessive undersize/giant frames" messages in the Event Log.....	147
Fault Finder.....	147
Fault Finder thresholds.....	148
Enabling Fault Finder.....	148

<b>Chapter 7 Fault-Finder port-level link-flap</b>	<b>152</b>
Fault Finder	152
Fault-finder link-flap	152
Show fault-finder link-flap	154
Restrictions	155
 <b>Chapter 8 Configuring for Network Management Applications</b>	 <b>156</b>
Using SNMP tools to manage the switch	156
SNMP management features	156
SNMPv1 and v2c access to the switch	157
SNMPv3 access to the switch	157
Enabling and disabling switch for access from SNMPv3 agents	158
Enabling or disabling restrictions to access from only SNMPv3 agents	158
Enabling or disabling restrictions from all non-SNMPv3 agents to read-only access	158
Viewing the operating status of SNMPv3	158
Viewing status of message reception of non-SNMPv3 messages	158
Viewing status of write messages of non-SNMPv3 messages	158
Enabling SNMPv3	158
SNMPv3 users	159
Group access levels	162
SNMPv3 communities	163
Viewing and configuring non-version-3 SNMP communities (Menu)	164
Listing community names and values (CLI)	165
SNMP notifications	166
Supported Notifications	167
General steps for configuring SNMP notifications	167
SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Traps	167
SNMP trap receivers	168
Overview	169
SNMPv2c informs	170
Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)	171
Network security notifications	174
Enabling Link-Change Traps (CLI)	176
Source IP address for SNMP notifications	177
Viewing SNMP notification configuration (CLI)	179
Advanced management: RMON	179
CLI-configured sFlow with multiple instances	180
Configuring sFlow (CLI)	180
Viewing sFlow Configuration and Status (CLI)	181
Configuring UDLD Verify before forwarding	182
UDLD time delay	182
Restrictions	183
UDLD configuration commands	183
Show commands	184
RMON generated when user changes UDLD mode	184
LLDP	184
General LLDP operation	185
LLDP-MED	185
Packet boundaries in a network topology	185
LLDP operation configuration options	185
Enable or disable LLDP on the switch	186
Enable or disable LLDP-MED	186
Change the frequency of LLDP packet transmission to neighbor devices	186

Change the Time-To-Live for LLDP packets sent to neighbors.....	186
Transmit and receive mode.....	186
SNMP notification.....	186
Per-port (outbound) data options.....	186
Remote management address.....	188
Debug logging.....	188
Options for reading LLDP information collected by the switch.....	188
LLDP and LLDP-MED standards compatibility.....	188
LLDP operating rules.....	189
Port trunking.....	189
IP address advertisements.....	189
Spanning-tree blocking.....	189
802.1X blocking.....	189
Configuring LLDP operation.....	189
Displaying the global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status (CLI).....	189
Configuring Global LLDP Packet Controls.....	191
Configuring SNMP notification support.....	194
Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes (CLI).....	194
Basic LLDP per-port advertisement content.....	195
Support for port speed and duplex advertisements.....	197
Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP.....	197
Configuring the VLAN ID TLV.....	197
Viewing the TLVs advertised.....	198
SNMP support.....	199
LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery).....	200
LLDP-MED endpoint support.....	200
LLDP-MED endpoint device classes.....	201
LLDP-MED operational support.....	201
LLDP-MED fast start control.....	202
Advertising device capability, network policy, PoE status and location data.....	202
Location data for LLDP-MED devices.....	205
Viewing switch information available for outbound advertisements.....	209
Displaying the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port.....	211
Viewing advertisements currently in the neighbors MIB.....	211
Displaying LLDP statistics.....	212
LLDP Operating Notes.....	214
Neighbor maximum.....	214
LLDP packet forwarding.....	214
One IP address advertisement per port.....	215
802.1Q VLAN Information.....	215
Effect of 802.1X Operation.....	215
Neighbor data can remain in the neighbor database after the neighbor is disconnected.....	215
Mandatory TLVs.....	215
LLDP and CDP data management.....	215
LLDP and CDP neighbor data.....	215
CDP operation and commands.....	216
Viewing the current CDP configuration of the switch.....	217
Viewing the current CDP neighbors table of the switch.....	217
Enabling and Disabling CDP Operation.....	218
Enabling or disabling CDP operation on individual ports.....	218
Filtering CDP information.....	219
Configuring the switch to filter untagged traffic.....	219
Displaying the configuration.....	219
Filtering PVID mismatch log messages.....	220
Overview.....	220
Commands.....	221

no lldp config basicTlvEnable management_addr.....	221
lldp config.....	221
Show commands.....	221

## Chapter 9 DHCPv4 server.....223

Overview.....	223
IP pools.....	223
DHCP options.....	223
BootP support.....	223
Authoritative server and support for DHCP inform packets.....	223
Authoritative pools.....	224
Authoritative dummy pools.....	224
Change in server behavior.....	224
DHCPv4 configuration commands.....	225
DHCPv4 server.....	225
dhcp-server.....	225
DHCP address pool name.....	225
dhcp-server pool.....	225
Authoritative.....	226
DHCP client boot file.....	227
bootfile-name.....	227
DHCP client default router.....	227
default-router.....	227
DNS IP servers.....	227
dns-server.....	227
Configure a domain name.....	227
domain-name.....	227
Configure lease time.....	228
lease.....	228
NetBIOS WINS servers.....	228
NetBIOS node type.....	228
net bios-ode-type.....	228
Subnet and mask.....	229
network.....	229
DHCP server options.....	229
Configure DHCP server options.....	229
IP address range.....	230
range.....	230
Static bindings.....	231
static-bind.....	231
TFTP server domain name.....	231
tftp-server.....	231
Configure the TFTP server address.....	232
tftp-server.....	232
Number of ping packets.....	232
dhcp-server ping.....	232
Save DHCP server automatic bindings.....	232
dhcp-server database.....	232
DHCP server and SNMP notifications.....	233
snmp-server enable traps.....	233
Conflict logging on a DHCP server.....	233
dhcp-server conflict-logging.....	233
Enable the DHCP server on a VLAN.....	234
dhcp-server.....	234
Clear commands.....	234

clear dhcp-server conflicts	234
Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters	234
clear dhcp-server statistics	234
Delete an automatic address binding	234
clear dhcp-server statistics	235
Show commands	235
show dhcp-server	235

## Chapter 10 DHCPv6 snooping and relay.....236

dhcpv6-snooping	236
dhcpv6 snooping trust	236
dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server	236
ddhcpv6-snooping database file	237
dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings	237
dhcpv6-relay option 79	238
snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping	238
clear dhcpv6-snooping stats	238
debug security dhcpv6-snooping	238
ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet	239
ipv6 source-binding	239
snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown	239
debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown	240
Show commands for DHCPv6-snooping	240
show dhcpv6-snooping	240
show dhcpv6 snooping bindings	240
show dhcpv6 snooping statistics	240
show ipv6 source-lockdown	240
show ipv6 source-lockdown status	241
show snmp-server traps	241
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters	242
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters	243
show dhcpv6 relay	244

## Chapter 11 Zero Touch Provisioning with AirWave and Central.....245

Zero Touch Provisioning	245
ZTP with AirWave	245
DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave	246
Configuring DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave	246
DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP	247
Limitations	261
Best Practices	261
Configure AirWave details manually	261
amp-server	262
debug ztp	263
Stacking support	264
Disabling ZTP	264
Image Upgrade	264
Using SNMPv3 in AirWave Template	264
Troubleshooting	265
AMP server messages	265
Activate based ZTP with AirWave	265
Configuring Activate-based ZTP with AirWave	266
IPsec for AirWave Connectivity	266
Overview	266

IPsec for Management Traffic.....	267
IPsec Tunnel Establishment.....	268
IPsec Tunnel Failures.....	268
IPsec tunnel to secondary controller.....	268
AirWave IP after discovery.....	271
Configuring the Aruba controller.....	271
AirWave Controller IP configuration commands.....	271
aruba-vpn type.....	271
Show commands.....	272
show aruba-vpn.....	272
show ip route.....	273
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn.....	273
show crypto-ipsec sa.....	274
show running-configuration.....	275
ZTP with Aruba Central.....	276
LED Blink feature.....	277
Aruba Central Configuration manually.....	277
aruba-central.....	277
aruba-central support-mode.....	278
Activating ArubaOS-Switch Firmware Integration.....	279
activate software-update enable.....	279
activate software-update check.....	279
activate software-update update.....	280
show activate software-update.....	280
Show activate provision.....	281
Troubleshooting.....	283
Show aruba-central.....	283
debug ztp.....	284
Stacking support.....	284
HTTP Proxy support with ZTP overview.....	284
e Proxy Configuration.....	285
proxy server.....	290
proxy exception ip   host.....	290
show proxy config.....	291

## Chapter 12 LACP-MAD..... 292

LACP-MAD Passthrough commands.....	292
Configuration command.....	292
show commands.....	292
clear command.....	292
LACP-MAD overview.....	292

## Chapter 13 Simplifying Wireless and IoT Deployments..... 294

Overview.....	294
Auto configuring Aruba APs.....	294
Associating a device with a profile.....	294
device-profile name.....	294
device-profile type.....	296
device-profile type device-name.....	297
show device-profile.....	297
show command device-profile status.....	298
show device-profile config.....	299
show device-profile status.....	300
Default AP Profile.....	301

allow-jumbo-frames	301
Auto configuring IoT Devices	301
Creating a device identity and associating a device type	301
show device-identity	302
device-profile type-device associate	302
show device-profile config	303
show device-profile status	304
Support for Aruba device types	304
Isolating Rogue APs	304
Using the Rogue AP Isolation feature	305
rogue-ap-isolation	306
rogue-ap-isolation action	306
rogue-ap-isolation whitelist	307
clear rogue-ap-isolation	307
Feature Interactions	307
L3 MAC	308
Limitations	308
Troubleshooting	309
Switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs	309
Show commands	309
Requirements	309
Limitations	309
Feature Interactions	310
Profile Manager and 802.1X	310
Profile Manager and LMA/WMA/MAC-AUTH	310
Profile manager and Private VLANs	310
MAC lockout and lockdown	310
LMA/WMA/802.1X/Port-Security	310
Troubleshooting	311
Dynamic configuration not displayed when using “show running-config”	311
The show run command displays non-numerical value for untagged-vlan	311
Show commands	312

## Chapter 14 File Transfers 313

Overview	313
Downloading switch software	313
General software download rules	313
Using TFTP to download software from a server	313
Troubleshooting TFTP download failures	314
Downloading from a server to flash using TFTP (CLI)	315
Using SCP and SFTP	316
Enabling SCP and SFTP	317
Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP for enhanced security	317
Enabling SSH V2 (required for SFTP)	318
Authentication	319
SCP/SFTP operating notes	319
Troubleshooting SSH, SFTP, and SCP operations	320
Using Xmodem to download switch software from a PC or UNIX workstation	321
Downloading to primary or secondary flash using Xmodem and a terminal emulator (CLI)	321
Switch-to-switch download	322
Switch-to-switch download to primary flash (Menu)	322
Downloading the OS from another switch (CLI)	323
Using AirWave to update switch software	324
Copying software images	324



TFTP: Copying a software image to a remote host (CLI)	324
Transferring switch configurations	325
TFTP: Copying a configuration file to a remote host (CLI)	325
TFTP: Copying a configuration file from a remote host (CLI)	325
TFTP: Copying a customized command file to a switch (CLI)	326
Xmodem: Copying a configuration file to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation (CLI)	326
Xmodem: Copying a configuration file from a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation (CLI)	327

## Chapter 15 Monitoring and Analyzing Switch Operation..... 329

Overview	329
Accessing port and trunk group statistics	329
Trunk bandwidth utilization	329
show interfaces	329
show interfaces trunk-utilization	332
Statistic interactions of interface counters	332
Reset port counters	333
clear statistics	334
MAC address tables	334
MAC address views and searches	334
show mac-add detail	334
show mac-address	335
show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail	336
Using the menu to view and search MAC addresses	336
Finding the port connection for a specific device on a VLAN	337
Viewing and searching port-level MAC addresses	337
Determining whether a specific device is connected to the selected port	338
MSTP data	338
show spanning-tree	338
IP IGMP status	339
show ip igmp	339
VLAN information	341
show vlan	341
Configuring a source switch in a local mirroring session	342
Using the Menu to configure local mirroring	343
Menu and WebAgent limits	344
High-level overview of the mirror configuration process	344
Determine the mirroring session and destination	344
For a local mirroring session	344
Troubleshooting traffic mirroring	344
Interface monitoring features	344
Configuring port and static trunk monitoring (Menu)	345
Configuring port and static trunk monitoring (CLI)	345
Displaying the monitoring configuration	345
Configuring the monitor port	346
Selecting or removing monitoring source interfaces	346

## Chapter 16 Fans..... 348

show system	348
show system fans	349
show system power-supply	351
Fan failures and SNMP traps	355

<b>Chapter 17 Troubleshooting</b>	<b>356</b>
Overview	356
Troubleshooting approaches	356
Browser or Telnet access problems	357
Cannot access the WebAgent	357
Cannot Telnet into the switch console from a station on the network	357
Unusual network activity	358
General problems	358
The network runs slow; processes fail; users cannot access servers or other devices	358
Duplicate IP addresses	358
Duplicate IP addresses in a DHCP network	358
The switch has been configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, but has not received a DHCP or Bootp reply	359
802.1Q Prioritization problems	359
Ports configured for non-default prioritization (level 1 to 7) are not performing the specified action	359
Addressing ACL problems	359
ACLs are properly configured and assigned to VLANs, but the switch is not using the ACLs to filter IP layer 3 packets	359
The switch does not allow management access from a device on the same VLAN	359
Error (Invalid input) when entering an IP address	359
Apparent failure to log all "deny" matches	360
The switch does not allow any routed access from a specific host, group of hosts, or subnet	360
The switch is not performing routing functions on a VLAN	360
Routing through a gateway on the switch fails	360
IGMP-related problems	361
IP multicast (IGMP) traffic that is directed by IGMP does not reach IGMP hosts or a multicast router connected to a port	362
IP multicast traffic floods out all ports; IGMP does not appear to filter traffic	362
LACP-related problems	362
Unable to enable LACP on a port with the <code>interface &lt;port-number&gt; lacp</code> command	362
Port-based access control (802.1X)-related problems	362
The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests	362
The switch does not authenticate a client even though the RADIUS server is properly configured and providing a response to the authentication request	363
During RADIUS-authenticated client sessions, access to a VLAN on the port used for the client sessions is lost	363
The switch appears to be properly configured as a supplicant, but cannot gain access to the intended authenticator port on the switch to which it is connected	363
The supplicant statistics listing shows multiple ports with the same authenticator MAC address	363
The <code>show port-access authenticator &lt;port-list&gt;</code> command shows one or more ports remain open after they have been configured with <code>control unauthorized</code>	363
RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch	364
The authorized MAC address on a port that is configured for both 802.1X and port security either changes or is re-acquired after execution of <code>aaa port-access authenticator &lt;port-list&gt; initialize</code>	364
A trunked port configured for 802.1X is blocked	364
QoS-related problems	364
Loss of communication when using VLAN-tagged traffic	365

Radius-related problems.....	365
The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests.....	365
RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch.....	365
MSTP and fast-uplink problems.....	366
Broadcast storms appearing in the network.....	366
STP blocks a link in a VLAN even though there are no redundant links in that VLAN.....	366
Fast-uplink troubleshooting.....	366
SSH-related problems.....	366
Switch access refused to a client.....	366
Executing IP SSH does not enable SSH on the switch.....	367
Switch does not detect a client's public key that does appear in the switch's public key file (show ip client-public-key).....	367
An attempt to copy a client public-key file into the switch has failed and the switch lists one of the following messages.....	367
Client ceases to respond ("hangs") during connection phase.....	367
TACACS-related problems.....	367
All users are locked out of access to the switch.....	367
No communication between the switch and the TACACS+ server application.....	368
Access is denied even though the username/password pair is correct.....	368
Unknown users allowed to login to the switch.....	368
System allows fewer login attempts than specified in the switch configuration.....	368
TimeP, SNTP, or Gateway problems.....	368
The switch cannot find the time server or the configured gateway.....	369
VLAN-related problems.....	369
Monitor port.....	369
None of the devices assigned to one or more VLANs on an 802.1Q-compliant switch are being recognized.....	369
Link configured for multiple VLANs does not support traffic for one or more VLANs.....	369
Duplicate MAC addresses across VLANs.....	370
Disabled overlapping subnet configuration.....	370
Fan failure.....	371
Mitigating flapping transceivers.....	371
Fault-finder link-flap.....	372
Show fault-finder link-flap.....	374
Restrictions.....	375
Viewing transceiver information.....	375
Viewing information about transceivers (CLI).....	377
MIB support.....	377
Viewing transceiver information.....	377
Information displayed with the detail parameter.....	378
Viewing transceiver information for copper transceivers with VCT support.....	382
Testing the Cable.....	382
Viewing transceiver information.....	384
Using the Event Log for troubleshooting switch problems.....	386
Event Log entries.....	386
Using the CLI.....	397
Clearing Event Log entries.....	398
Turning event numbering on.....	399
Using log throttling to reduce duplicate Event Log and SNMP messages.....	399
Log throttle periods.....	399
Example: of event counter operation.....	400
Reporting information about changes to the running configuration.....	401
Debug/syslog operation.....	402
Debug/syslog messaging.....	402
Hostname in syslog messages.....	402

Logging origin-id.....	403
Viewing the identification of the syslog message sender.....	405
SNMP MIB.....	406
Debug/syslog destination devices.....	406
Debug/syslog configuration commands.....	407
Configuring debug/syslog operation.....	410
Viewing a debug/syslog configuration.....	412
Debug command.....	414
Debug messages.....	414
Debug destinations.....	416
Logging command.....	417
Configuring a syslog server.....	418
Adding a description for a Syslog server.....	421
Adding a priority description.....	421
Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server.....	422
Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server.....	422
Enabling local command logging.....	423
Operating notes for debug and Syslog.....	423
Diagnostic tools.....	424
Port auto-negotiation.....	424
Ping and link tests.....	424
Ping test.....	425
Link test.....	425
Executing ping or link tests (WebAgent).....	425
Testing the path between the switch and another device on an IP network.....	426
Issuing single or multiple link tests.....	427
Tracing the route from the switch to a host address.....	428
Halting an ongoing traceroute search.....	430
A low maxttl causes traceroute to halt before reaching the destination address.....	430
If a network condition prevents traceroute from reaching the destination.....	431
Viewing switch configuration and operation.....	431
Viewing the startup or running configuration file.....	431
Viewing the configuration file (WebAgent).....	432
Viewing a summary of switch operational data.....	432
Saving show tech command output to a text file.....	433
Customizing show tech command output.....	434
Viewing more information on switch operation.....	436
Searching for text using pattern matching with show command.....	437
Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems.....	439
Restoring the factory-default configuration.....	440
Resetting to the factory-default configuration.....	440
Using the CLI.....	440
Using Clear/Reset.....	440
Restoring a flash image.....	441
Recovering from an empty or corrupted flash state.....	441
DNS resolver.....	443
Basic operation.....	443
Configuring and using DNS resolution with DNS-compatible commands.....	444
Configuring a DNS entry.....	444
Using DNS names with ping and traceroute: Example:.....	445
Viewing the current DNS configuration.....	447
Operating notes.....	447
Locating a switch (Locator LED).....	448

<b>Chapter 18 Job Scheduler</b>	<b>449</b>
Overview	449
Commands	449
Job at   delay   enable   disable	449
Show job	450
Show job <Name>	450
<b>Chapter 19 Configuration backup and restore without reboot</b>	<b>452</b>
Overview	452
Benefits of configuration restore without reboot	452
Recommended scenarios	452
Use cases	452
Switching to a new configuration	453
Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler	454
Commands used in switch configuration restore without reboot	455
Configuration backup	455
cfg-backup	456
show config files	456
Configuration restore without reboot	458
cfg-restore	458
Force configuration restore	460
cfg-restore non-blocking	461
cfg-restore recovery-mode	462
cfg-restore verbose	464
cfg-restore config_bkp	465
Configuration restore with force option	466
System reboot commands	467
Configuration restore without force option	467
show cfg-restore status	468
Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration	470
Show commands to show the SHA of a configuration	472
show hash	472
Scenarios that block the configuration restoration process	473
Limitations	473
Blocking of configuration from other sessions	473
Troubleshooting and support	474
debug cfg-restore	474
<b>Chapter 20 Virtual Technician</b>	<b>475</b>
Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)	475
Show cdp traffic	475
Clear cdp counters	475
Enable/Disable debug tracing for MOCANA code	476
Debug security	476
User diagnostic crash via Front Panel Security (FPS) button	476
Front panel security password-clear	476
Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset	477
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset	477
Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button	478
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button	478
Show front-panel-security	479
Diagnostic table	479

FPS Error Log.....	481
User initiated diagnostic crash via the serial console.....	482
Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console.....	482
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console.....	482
Serial console error messages.....	483
<b>Chapter 21 IP Service Level Agreement.....</b>	<b>484</b>
Overview.....	484
How IP SLA works.....	486
Configuration commands.....	486
no ip-sla <ID>.....	486
ip-sla <ID> clear.....	487
no ip-sla <ID> history-size.....	488
no ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo.....	488
no ip-sla <ID> udp-echo.....	488
no ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect.....	488
ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config.....	489
no ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss.....	489
no ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion.....	490
no ip-sla <ID> schedule.....	490
no ip-sla <ID> tos.....	490
no ip-sla responder.....	490
no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter.....	490
no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip.....	491
Show commands.....	491
show ip-sla <ID>.....	491
show ip-sla <ID> history.....	492
show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics.....	492
show ip-sla <ID> results.....	493
show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results.....	494
show ip-sla responder.....	495
show ip-sla responder statistics.....	495
show tech ip-sla.....	496
clear ip-sla responder statistics.....	498
Interoperability.....	498
IP SLA UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP.....	499
Overview.....	499
Significance of jitter.....	499
Solution components.....	499
SLA Measurements.....	500
<b>Chapter 22 Tunneled node.....</b>	<b>503</b>
Overview.....	503
Operating notes.....	503
Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI).....	504
Configuration command.....	504
tunneled-node-server.....	504
interface tunneled-node-server.....	505
controller-ip.....	505
keepalive.....	505
backup-controller-ip.....	505
fallback-local-switching.....	506
VLAN show commands.....	506
show tunneled-node-server.....	506

show tunneled-node-server state.....	506
show tunneled-node-server.....	507
clear statistics tunneled-node-server.....	508
Interaction table.....	508
Restrictions.....	509
PAPI security.....	510
Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI).....	510
PAPI configurable secret key.....	511
papi-security.....	511
Preventing double tunneling of Aruba Access Points.....	512
Preventing double tunneling using device profile.....	513
device-profile name.....	513
<b>Chapter 23 Cable Diagnostics.....</b>	<b>517</b>
Virtual cable testing.....	517
Cable diagnostics tests.....	517
show cable-diagnostics.....	521
clear cable-diagnostics.....	521
Limitations.....	521
<b>Chapter 24 Link Layer Discovery Protocol bypass authentication.....</b>	<b>523</b>
Overview.....	523
Configuration commands.....	523
aaa port-access lldp-bypass.....	523
Show commands.....	523
show port-access lldp-bypass clients.....	523
show port-access lldp-bypass config.....	525
Error Log.....	526
Debug log.....	527
<b>Chapter 25 Websites.....</b>	<b>528</b>
<b>Chapter 26 Support and other resources.....</b>	<b>529</b>
Accessing Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support.....	529
Accessing updates.....	529
Customer self repair.....	530
Remote support.....	530
Warranty information.....	530
Regulatory information.....	531
Documentation feedback.....	531
<b>Remote Device Deployment (TR-069).....</b>	<b>532</b>
Introduction.....	532
Advantages of TR-069.....	533
Zero-touch configuration process.....	533
Zero-touch configuration setup and execution.....	536
CLI commands.....	536
Configuration setup.....	537
ACS password configuration.....	537
When encrypt-credentials is off.....	538
When encrypt-credentials is on.....	538

ACS URL configuration .....	538
ACS username configuration .....	538
CPE configuration .....	539
CPE password configuration .....	539
When encrypt-credentials is on .....	539
When encrypt-credentials is off .....	539
CPE username configuration .....	539
Enable/disable CWMP .....	540
Show commands .....	540
CWMP configuration and status query .....	540
Event logging .....	541
System logging .....	541
Status/control commands .....	542
<b>Network Out-of-Band Management (OOBM) .....</b>	<b>544</b>
Concepts .....	544
Example: .....	545
OOBM and switch applications .....	546
OOBM configuration .....	546
Entering the OOBM configuration context from the general configuration context .....	547
Enabling and disabling OOBM .....	547
Enabling and disabling the OOBM port .....	547
Setting the OOBM port speed .....	548
Configuring an OOBM IPv4 address .....	548
Configuring an OOBM IPv4 default gateway .....	549
Configuring an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM devices .....	549
oobm ipv6 default-gateway .....	549
oobm member ipv6 default-gateway .....	550
IPv6 default router preferences .....	550
ipv6 nd ra router-preference .....	551
OOBM show commands .....	551
Showing the global OOBM and OOBM port configuration .....	552
Showing OOBM IP configuration .....	552
Showing OOBM ARP information .....	552
show oobm ipv6 .....	552
show oobm ipv6 (for stacked switches) .....	553
show oobm ip detail (for stacked switches) .....	553
Application server commands .....	554
Application client commands .....	555
<b>Configuration backup and restore without reboot .....</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>560</b>



This guide provides information on how to configure, manage, and monitor basic switch operation.

## Applicable products

This guide applies to these products:

Aruba 2920 Switch Series (J9726A, J9727A, J9728A, J9729A, J9836A)

## Switch prompts used in this guide

Examples in this guide are representative and may not match your particular switch/environment. Examples use simplified prompts as follows:

Prompt	Explanation
switch#	# indicates manager context (authority).
switch>	> indicates operator context (authority).
switch(config)#	(config) indicates the config context.
switch(vlan-x)#	(vlan-x) indicates the vlan context of config, where x represents the VLAN ID. For example: switch(vlan-128)#.
switch(eth-x)#	(eth-x) indicates the interface context of config, where x represents the interface. For example: switch(eth-48)#.
switch-Stack#	Stack indicates that stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(config)#	Stack(config) indicates the config context while stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(stacking)#	Stack(stacking) indicates the stacking context of config while stacking is enabled.
switch-Stack(vlan-x)#	Stack(vlan-x) indicates the vlan context of config while stacking is enabled, where x represents the VLAN ID. For example: switch-Stack(vlan-128)#.
switch-Stack(eth-x/y)#	Stack(eth-x/y) indicates the interface context of config, in the form (eth-<member-in-stack>/<interface>). For example: switch(eth-1/48)#

**NOTE:**

For successful time protocol setup and specific configuration details, you may need to contact your system administrator regarding your local configuration.

## General steps for running a time protocol on the switch

Using time synchronization ensures a uniform time among interoperating devices. This helps you to manage and troubleshoot switch operation by attaching meaningful time data to event and error messages.

The switch offers TimeP, SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol), NTP, and a `timesync` command for changing the time protocol selection (or turning off time protocol operation).



**NOTE:** Although you can create and save configurations for all time protocols without conflicts, the switch allows only one active time protocol at any time.

In the factory-default configuration, time synchronization is disabled by default.



**NOTE:** Because the Aruba 2920 Switch Series does not contain an RTC (real time clock) chip, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends configuring one of the time synchronization protocols supported. Failure to do so could result in the switch time being reset to the factory default of 01/01/1990 00:00:00 in the case of a switch reload, software upgrade, or power cycle.

### TimeP time synchronization

You can either manually assign the switch to use a TimeP server or use DHCP to assign the TimeP server. In either case, the switch can get its time synchronization updates from only one designated TimeP server. This option enhances security by specifying which time server to use.

### SNTP time synchronization

SNTP provides three operating modes:

- **Broadcast mode**

The switch acquires time updates by accepting the time value from the first SNTP time broadcast detected. (In this case, the SNTP server must be configured to broadcast time updates to the network broadcast address; see the documentation provided with your SNTP server application.) Once the switch detects a particular server, it ignores time broadcasts from other SNTP servers unless the configurable Poll Interval expires three consecutive times without an update received from the first-detected server.



**NOTE:** To use Broadcast mode, the switch and the SNTP server must be in the same subnet.

- **DHCP mode**

DHCP mode is enabled by default. In DHCP mode, the SNTP server address and the timezone are provided in the DHCP address reply.

- **Unicast mode**

The switch requests a time update from the configured SNTP server. (You can configure one server using the menu interface, or up to three servers using the CLI `sntp server` command.) This option provides increased

security over the Broadcast mode by specifying which time server to use instead of using the first one detected through a broadcast.

## NTP time synchronization

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients in order to correlate events when receiving system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices. NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol.

### timesync Command

This command is used to configure the protocol used for network time synchronization.

#### Syntax

```
no timesync { timep | sntp | timep-or-sntp | ntp }
```

#### Parameters

no

Deletes all timesync configurations on the device.

timep

Updates the system clock using TIMEP.

sntp

Updates the system clock using SNTP.

timep-or-sntp

Updates the system clock using TIMEP or SNTP (default).

ntp

Updates the system clock using NTP

#### Example

```
switch(config)# timesync
sntp                Update the system clock using SNTP.
timep               Update the system clock using TIMEP.
timep-or-sntp       Update the system clock using TIMEP or SNTP.
ntp                 Update the system clock using NTP.
```

## Selecting a time synchronization protocol

### Procedure

1. Select the time synchronization protocol: TimeP, SNTP, or NTP.
2. Enable the protocol; the choices are:
  - a. TimeP: DHCP or Manual
  - b. SNTP: Broadcast or Unicast
  - c. NTP: Broadcast or Unicast
3. Configure the remaining parameters for the time protocol you selected.

The switch retains the parameter settings for both time protocols even if you change from one protocol to the other. Thus, if you select a time protocol, the switch uses the parameters you last configured for the selected protocol.

Simply selecting a time synchronization protocol does not enable that protocol on the switch unless you also enable the protocol itself (step 2, above). For example, in the factory-default configuration, TimeP is the selected time synchronization method. However, because TimeP is disabled in the factory-default configuration, no time synchronization protocol is running.

## Disabling time synchronization

You can execute `no timesync` (global config level of the CLI) to disable time synchronization without changing the TimeP, SNTP, or NTP configuration.

## SNTP: Selecting and configuring

The following table shows the SNTP parameters and their operations.

**Table 1: SNTP parameters**

SNTP parameter	Operation
<b>Time Sync Method</b>	Used to select either SNTP, TIMEP, NTP, or None as the time synchronization method.
<b>SNTP Mode</b>	
Disabled	The Default. SNTP does not operate, even if specified by the Menu interface <b>Time Sync Method</b> parameter or the CLI <code>timesync</code> command.
Unicast	Directs the switch to poll a specific server for SNTP time synchronization. Requires at least one server address.
Broadcast	Directs the switch to acquire its time synchronization from data broadcast by any SNTP server to the network broadcast address. The switch uses the first server detected and ignores any others. However, if the Poll Interval expires three times without the switch detecting a time update from the original server, the switch accepts a broadcast time update from the next server it detects.
<b>Poll Interval (seconds)</b>	<b>In Unicast Mode:</b> Specifies how often the switch polls the designated SNTP server for a time update. <b>In Broadcast Mode:</b> Specifies how often the switch polls the network broadcast address for a time update.Value is between 30 to 720 seconds.
<b>Server Address</b>	Used only when the <b>SNTP Mode</b> is set to <code>Unicast</code> . Specifies the IP address of the SNTP server that the switch accesses for time synchronization updates. You can configure up to three servers; one using the menu or CLI, and two more using the CLI.
<b>Server Version</b>	Specifies the SNTP software version to use and is assigned on a per-server basis. The version setting is backwards-compatible. For example, using version 3 means that the switch accepts versions 1 through 3. Default: 3; range: 1 to 7.
<b>Priority</b>	Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time. Value is between 1 and 3.

## Viewing and configuring SNTP (Menu)

### Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select:

a. **2. Switch Configuration...**

b. **1. System Information**

**Figure 1: System Information screen (default values)**

```
===== CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE =====
Switch Configuration - System Information

System Name : Switch
System Contact :
System Location :

Inactivity Timeout (min) [0] : 0      MAC Age Time (sec) [300] : 300
Inbound Telnet Enabled [Yes] : Yes    Web Agent Enabled [Yes] : Yes
Time Sync Method [None] : TIMEP
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : Disabled
Tftp-enable [Yes] : Yes
Time Zone [0] : 0
Daylight Time Rule [None] : None

Server Address :
Jumbo Max Frame Size [9216] : 9216
Jumbo IP MTU [9198] : 9198

Time Protocol Selection Parameter
- TIMEP
- SNTP
- None

Actions->  Cancel      Edit      Save      Help
```

2. Press **[E]** (for **Edit** ).

Move the cursor to the **System Name** field.

3. Use the **Space** bar to move the cursor to the **Time Sync Method** field.

4. Use the **Space** bar to select **SNTP**, then move to the **SNTP Mode** field.

5. Complete one of the following options.

#### Option 1

a. Use the **Space** bar to select the **Broadcast** mode.

b. Move the cursor to the **Poll Interval** field.

c. Go to 6. (For Broadcast mode details, see [SNTP time synchronization](#))

**Figure 2: Time configuration fields for SNTP with broadcast mode**

```
Time Sync Method [None] : SNTP
SNTP Mode [Disabled] : Broadcast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
Tftp-enable [Yes] : Yes
Time Zone [0] : 0
Daylight Time Rule [None] : None
```

#### Option 2

d. Use the **Space** bar to select the **Unicast** mode.

e. Move the cursor to the **Server Address** field.

f. Enter the IP address of the SNTP server you want the switch to use for time synchronization.



**NOTE:** This step replaces any previously configured server IP address. If you will be using backup SNTP servers (requires use of the CLI), see [SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers](#).

- g. Move the cursor to the **Server Version** field. Enter the value that matches the SNTP server version running on the device you specified in the preceding step.

If you are unsure which version to use, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends leaving this value at the default setting of 3 and testing SNTP operation to determine whether any change is necessary.



**NOTE:** Using the menu to enter the IP address for an SNTP server when the switch already has one or more SNTP servers configured, the switch deletes the primary SNTP server from the server list. The switch then selects a new primary SNTP server from the IP addresses in the updated list. For more on this topic, see [SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers](#).

- h. Move the cursor to the **Poll Interval** field, then go to step 6.

**Figure 3:** SNTP configuration fields for SNTP configured with unicast mode

```

Time Sync Method [None] : SNTP
SNTP Mode [Disabled] : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
Tftp-enable [Yes] : Yes
Time Zone [0] : 0
Daylight Time Rule [None] : None
Server Address : 10.28.227.15
Server Version [3] : 3

```

**Note:** The Menu interface lists only the highest priority SNTP server, even if others are configured. To view all SNTP servers configured on the switch, use the CLI `show management` command. Refer to “SNTP Unicast Time Polling with Multiple SNTP Servers” on page 1-33.

6. In the **Poll Interval** field, enter the time in seconds that you want for a Poll Interval.  
(For Poll Interval operation, see [SNTP parameters](#))
7. Press **Enter** to return to the Actions line, then **S** (for **Save**) to enter the new time protocol configuration in both the startup-config and running-config files.

## Viewing and configuring SNTP (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
show sntp
```

Lists both the time synchronization method (TimeP, SNTP, or None) and the SNTP configuration, even if SNTP is not the selected time protocol.

If you configure the switch with SNTP as the time synchronization method, then enable SNTP in broadcast mode with the default poll interval, `show sntp` lists the following:

### SNTP configuration when SNTP is the selected time synchronization method

```
switch(config)# show sntp
```

```
SNTP Configuration
```

```
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 719
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

In the factory-default configuration (where TimeP is the selected time synchronization method), `show sntp` still lists the SNTP configuration, even though it is not currently in use. In **SNTP configuration when SNTP is not the selected time synchronization method** on page 27, even though TimeP is the current time synchronous method, the switch maintains the SNTP configuration.

### SNTP configuration when SNTP is not the selected time synchronization method

```
switch(config)# show sntp
```

SNTP Configuration

```
Time Sync Mode: Timep
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 719
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

#### Syntax:

```
show management
```

This command can help you to easily examine and compare the IP addressing on the switch. It lists the IP addresses for all time servers configured on the switch, plus the IP addresses and default gateway for all VLANs configured on the switch.

### Display showing IP addressing for all configured time servers and VLANs

```
switch(config)# show management
```

Status and Counters - Management Address Information

```
Time Server Address : fe80::215:60ff:fe7a:adc0%vlan10
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

```
Default Gateway :10.0.9.80
```

VLAN Name	MAC Address	IP address
----- + -----		

DEFAULT_VLAN	001279-88a100		Disabled
VLAN10	001279-88a100		10.0.10.17

## Configuring (enabling or disabling) the SNTP mode

Enabling the SNTP mode means to configure it for either broadcast or unicast mode. Remember that to run SNTP as the switch's time synchronization protocol, you must also select SNTP as the time synchronization method by using the CLI `timesync` command.

### Syntax:

```
timesync sntp
```

Selects SNTP as the time protocol.

```
sntp {<broadcast | unicast>}
```

Enables the SNTP mode.

### Syntax:

```
sntp server <ip-addr>
```

Required only for unicast mode.

### Syntax:

```
sntp server priority <1-3>
```

Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time. Value is between 1 and 3.

### Syntax:

```
sntp <30-720>
```

Configures the amount of time between updates of the system clock via SNTP.

Default: 720 seconds

## Enabling SNTP in Broadcast Mode

Because the switch provides an SNTP polling interval (default: 720 seconds), you need only these two commands for minimal SNTP broadcast configuration:

### Syntax:

```
timesync sntp
```

Selects SNTP as the time synchronization method.

### Syntax:

```
sntp broadcast
```

Configures broadcast as the SNTP mode.

### Example:

Suppose that time synchronization is in the factory-default configuration (TimeP is the currently selected time synchronization method.) Complete the following:



## Procedure

1. View the current time synchronization.
2. Select **SNTP** as the time synchronization mode.
3. Enable **SNTP** for Broadcast mode.
4. View the SNTP configuration again to verify the configuration.

The commands and output would appear as follows:

**Figure 4:** *Enabling SNTP operation in Broadcast Mode*

```
switch(config)# show sntp 1
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Timep
  SNTP Mode : disabled
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

```
switch(config)# timesync sntp
```

```
switch(config)# sntp broadcast
```

```
switch(config)# show sntp 2
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Sntp
  SNTP Mode : Broadcast
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] :720
```

- <sup>1</sup>show sntp displays the SNTP configuration and also shows that TimeP is the currently active time synchronization mode.
- <sup>2</sup>show sntp again displays the SNTP configuration and shows that SNTP is now the currently active time synchronization mode and is configured for broadcast operation.

## Enabling SNTP in unicast mode (CLI)

Like broadcast mode, configuring SNTP for unicast mode enables SNTP. However, for unicast operation, you must also specify the IP address of at least one SNTP server. The switch allows up to three unicast servers. You can use the Menu interface or the CLI to configure one server or to replace an existing unicast server with another. To add a second or third server, you must use the CLI. For more on SNTP operation with multiple servers, see [\*\*SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers\*\*](#) on page 39

### Syntax:

```
timesync sntp
```

Selects SNTP as the time synchronization method.

### Syntax:

```
sntp unicast
```

Configures the SNTP mode for unicast operation.

### Syntax:

```
no sntp server priority < 1-3 > < ip-address > [version]
```

Use the `no` version of the command to disable SNTP.

#### **priority**

Specifies the order in which the configured SNTP servers are polled for the time.

#### **ip-address**

An IPv4 or IPv6 address of an SNTP server.

#### **version**

The protocol version of the SNTP server. Allowable values are 1 through 7; default is 3.

#### **Syntax:**

```
no sntp server priority <1-3> <ip-addr>
```

Deletes the specified SNTP server.



#### **NOTE:**

`priority <1-3>`

value must match what server is configured with. Deleting an SNTP server when only one is configured disables SNTP unicast operation.

#### **Example:**

To select SNTP and configure it with unicast mode and an SNTP server at 10.28.227.141 with the default server version (3) and default poll interval (720 seconds):

```
switch(config)# timesync sntp
```

Selects SNTP.

```
switch(config)# sntp unicast
```

Activates SNTP in unicast mode.

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority 1 10.28.227.141
```

Specifies the SNTP server and accepts the current SNTP server version (default: 3).

#### **Configuring SNTP for unicast operation**

```
switch(config)# show sntp
```

SNTP Configuration

```
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Unicast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

In this Example:, the **Poll Interval** and the **Protocol Version** appear at their default settings.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are displayed.

Note: Protocol Version appears only when there is an IP address configured for an SNTP server.

If the SNTP server you specify uses SNTP v4 or later, use the `sntp server` command to specify the correct version number. For example, suppose you learned that SNTP v4 was in use on the server you specified above (IP address 10.28.227.141). You would use the following commands to delete the server IP address, re-enter it with the correct version number for that server.

### Specifying the SNTP protocol version number

```
switch(config)# no sntp server 10.28.227.141 1
switch(config)# sntp server 10.28.227.141 4 2
switch(config)# show sntp
```

#### SNTP Configuration

```
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
SNTP Mode : Broadcast
Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 600
```

IP Address	Protocol Version
10.28.227.141	4 <sup>3</sup>

- <sup>1</sup>Deletes unicast SNTP server entry.
- <sup>2</sup>Re-enters the unicast server with a non-default protocol version.
- <sup>3</sup>`show sntp` displays the result.

### Changing the SNTP poll interval (CLI)

#### Syntax:

```
sntp <30..720>
```

Specifies the amount of time between updates of the system clock via SNTP. The default is 720 seconds and the range is 30 to 720 seconds. (This parameter is separate from the poll interval parameter used for Timep operation.)

#### Example:

To change the poll interval to 300 seconds:

```
switch(config)# sntp 300
```

### Changing the SNTP server priority (CLI)

You can choose the order in which configured servers are polled for getting the time by setting the server priority.

#### Syntax:

```
sntp server priority <1-3> <ip-address>
```

Specifies the order in which the configured servers are polled for getting the time Value is between 1 and 3.



**NOTE:** You can enter both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. For more information about IPv6 addresses, see the IPv6 configuration guide for your switch.

#### Example:

To set one server to priority 1 and another to priority 2:

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority 1 10.28.22.141

switch(config)# sntp server priority 2
                2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980
```

## Disabling time synchronization without changing the SNTP configuration (CLI)

The recommended method for disabling time synchronization is to use the `timesync` command.

### Syntax:

```
no timesync
```

Halts time synchronization without changing your SNTP configuration.

### Example:

Suppose SNTP is running as the switch's time synchronization protocol, with `broadcast` as the SNTP mode and the factory-default polling interval. You would halt time synchronization with this command:

```
switch(config)# no timesync
```

If you then viewed the SNTP configuration, you would see the following:

#### SNTP with time synchronization disabled

```
switch(config)# show sntp
SNTP Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Disabled
  SNTP Mode : Broadcast
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 720
```

## Disabling the SNTP Mode

If you want to prevent SNTP from being used even if it is selected by `timesync`, configure the SNTP mode as disabled.

### Syntax:

```
no sntp
```

Disables SNTP by changing the SNTP mode configuration to `Disabled`.

### Example:

If the switch is running SNTP in unicast mode with an SNTP server at 10.28.227.141 and a server version of 3 (the default), `no sntp` changes the SNTP configuration as shown below and disables time synchronization on the switch.

#### Disabling time synchronization by disabling the SNTP mode

```
switch(config)# no sntp
switch(config)# show sntp

SNTP Configuration

  Time Sync Mode: Sntp
  SNTP Mode : disabled
  Poll Interval (sec) [720] : 600

IP Address      Protocol Version
```

Note that even though the **Time Sync Mode** is set to **Sntp**, time synchronization is disabled because `no sntp` has disabled the **SNTP Mode** parameter.

## TimeP: Selecting and configuring

The following table shows TimeP parameters and their operations.

**Table 2:** *TimeP parameters*

TimeP parameter	Operation
<b>Time Sync Method</b>	Used to select either TIMEP, SNTP, NTP, or None as the time synchronization method.
<b>TimeP Mode</b>	
<b>Disabled</b>	TimeP does not operate, even if specified by the Menu interface <b>Time Sync Method</b> parameter or the CLI <code>timesync</code> command.
<b>DHCP</b>	When TimeP is selected as the time synchronization method, the switch attempts to acquire a TimeP server IP address via DHCP. If the switch receives a server address, it polls the server for updates according to the TimeP poll interval. If the switch does not receive a TimeP server IP address, it cannot perform time synchronization updates.
<b>Manual</b>	When TimeP is selected as the time synchronization method, the switch attempts to poll the specified server for updates according to the TimeP poll interval. If the switch fails to receive updates from the server, time synchronization updates do not occur.
<b>Server Address</b>	Used only when the <b>TimeP Mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b> . Specifies the IP address of the TimeP server that the switch accesses for time synchronization updates. You can configure one server.

## Viewing, enabling, and modifying the TimeP protocol (Menu)

### Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select:
  2. **Switch Configuration**

## 1. System Information

Figure 5: System Information screen (default values)

```
=====-- CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE -----=====
Switch Configuration - System Information

System Name : Switch
System Contact :
System Location :

Inactivity Timeout (min) [0] : 0      MAC Age Time (sec) [300] : 300
Inbound Telnet Enabled [Yes] : Yes    Web Agent Enabled [Yes] : Yes
Time Sync Method [None] : TIMEP
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : Disabled
Tftp-enable [Yes] : Yes
Time Zone [0] : 0
Daylight Time Rule [None] : None

Server Address :
Jumbo Max Frame Size [9216] : 9216
Jumbo IP MTU [9198] : 9198

Time Protocol Selection Parameter
- TIMEP (the default)
- SNTP
- None

Actions->  Cancel      Edit      Save      Help
```

### 2. Press **[E]** (for **Edit**).

The cursor moves to the **System Name** field.

### 3. Move the cursor to the **Time Sync Method** field.

### 4. If **TIMEP** is not already selected, use the **Space** bar to select **TIMEP**, then move to the **TIMEP Mode** field.

### 5. Do one of the following:

- Use the **Space** bar to select the **DHCP** mode.
  - Move the cursor to the **Poll Interval** field.
  - Go to step 6.

## Enabling TIMEP or DHCP

```
Time Sync Method [None] :    TIMEP
TimeP Mode [Disabled] :    DHCP
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
Time Zone [0] :            0
Daylight Time Rule [None] : None
```

- Use the **Spacebar** to select the **Manual** mode.
  - Move the cursor to the **Server Address** field.
  - Enter the IP address of the TimeP server you want the switch to use for time synchronization.



**NOTE:** This step replaces any previously configured TimeP server IP address.

- Move the cursor to the **Poll Interval** field, then go to step 6.
- ### 6. In the **Poll Interval** field, enter the time in minutes that you want for a TimeP Poll Interval.
- ### 7. Select **[Enter]** to return to the **Actions** line, then select **[S]** (for **Save**) to enter the new time protocol configuration in both the startup-config and running-config files.

## Viewing the current TimeP configuration (CLI)

Using different `show` commands, you can display either the full TimeP configuration or a combined listing of all TimeP, SNTP, and VLAN IP addresses configured on the switch.

### Syntax:

```
show timep
```

Lists both the time synchronization method (TimeP, SNTP, or None) and the TimeP configuration, even if SNTP is not the selected time protocol. (If the TimeP Mode is set to `Disabled` or `DHCP`, the Server field does not appear.)

If you configure the switch with TimeP as the time synchronization method, then enable TimeP in DHCP mode with the default poll interval, `show timep` lists the following:

### TimeP configuration when TimeP is the selected Time synchronization method

```
switch(config)# show timep
```

```
Timep Configuration
```

```
Time Sync Mode: Timep
```

```
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : DHCP      Server Address : 10.10.28.103
```

```
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

If SNTP is the selected time synchronization method, `show timep` still lists the TimeP configuration even though it is not currently in use. Even though, in this Example:, SNTP is the current time synchronization method, the switch maintains the TimeP configuration:

### TimeP configuration when TimeP is not the selected time synchronization method

```
switch(config)# show timep
```

```
Timep Configuration
```

```
Time Sync Mode: Sntp
```

```
TimeP Mode [Disabled] : Manual    Server Address : 10.10.28.100
```

```
Poll Interval (min) [720] : 720
```

### Syntax:

```
show management
```

Helps you to easily examine and compare the IP addressing on the switch. It lists the IP addresses for all time servers configured on the switch plus the IP addresses and default gateway for all VLANs configured on the switch.

### Display showing IP addressing for all configured time servers and VLANs

```
switch(config)# show management
```

```
Status and Counters - Management Address Information
```

```
Time Server Address : 10.10.28.100
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	10.10..28.101	3
2	10.255.5.24	3

```

3          fe80::123%vlan10          3

Default Gateway : 10.0.9.80

VLAN Name      MAC Address      | IP Address
-----+-----
DEFAULT_VLAN  001279-88a100    | 10.30.248.184
VLAN10        001279-88a100    | 10.0.10.17

```

## Configuring (enabling or disabling) the TimeP mode

Enabling the TimeP mode means to configure it for either broadcast or unicast mode. Remember to run TimeP as the switch's time synchronization protocol, you must also select TimeP as the time synchronization method by using the CLI `timesync` command.

### Syntax:

```
timesync timep
```

Selects TimeP as the time synchronization method.

### Syntax:

```
ip timep {<dhcp | manual>}
```

Enables the selected TimeP mode.

### Syntax:

```
no ip timep
```

Disables the TimeP mode.

### Syntax:

```
no timesync
```

Disables the time protocol.

## Enabling TimeP in manual mode (CLI)

Like DHCP mode, configuring TimeP for `manual` mode enables TimeP. However, for manual operation, you must also specify the IP address of the TimeP server. (The switch allows only one TimeP server.)

### Syntax:

```
timesync timep
```

Selects TimeP.

### Syntax:

```
ip timep manual <ip-addr>
```

Activates TimeP in manual mode with a specified TimeP server.

### Syntax:

```
no ip timep
```

Disables TimeP.



## Enabling TimeP in DHCP Mode

Because the switch provides a TimeP polling interval (default:720 minutes), you need only these two commands for a minimal TimeP DHCP configuration:

### Syntax:

```
timesync timep
```

Selects TimeP as the time synchronization method.

### Syntax:

```
ip timep dhcp
```

Configures DHCP as the TimeP mode.

For example, suppose:

- Time Synchronization is configured for SNTP.
- You want to:
  - View the current time synchronization.
  - Select TimeP as the synchronization mode.
  - Enable TimeP for DHCP mode.
  - View the TimeP configuration.

## Enabling TimeP in Manual Mode

Like DHCP mode, configuring TimeP for Manual Mode enables TimeP. However, for manual operation, you must also specify the IP address of the TimeP server. (The switch allows only one TimeP server.) To enable the TimeP protocol:

### Syntax:

```
timesync timep
```

Selects TimeP.

### Syntax:

```
ip timep manual <ip-addr>
```

Activates TimeP in manual mode with a specified TimeP server.

### Syntax:

```
no ip timep
```

Disables TimeP.



### NOTE:

To change from one TimeP server to another, you must use the `no ip timep` command to disable TimeP mode, the reconfigure TimeP in manual mode with the new server IP address.

### Example:

To select TimeP and configure it for manual operation using a TimeP server address of 10.28.227.141 and the default poll interval (720 minutes, assuming the TimeP poll interval is already set to the default):

```
switch(config)# timesync time
```

Selects TimeP.

```
switch(config)# ip timep manual 10.28.227.141
```

Activates TimeP in Manual mode.

### Configuring TimeP for manual operation

```
switch(config)# timesync timep
switch(config)# ip timep manual 10.28.227.141
switch(config)# show timep
Timep Configuration
  Time Sync Mode: Timep
  TimeP Mode : Manual          Server Address : 10.28.227.141
  Poll Interval (min) : 720
```

Changing from one TimeP server to another (CLI)

#### Procedure

1. Use the `no ip timep` command to disable TimeP mode.
2. Reconfigure TimeP in Manual mode with the new server IP address.

### Changing the TimeP poll interval (CLI)

#### Syntax:

```
ip timep {< dhcp | manual >} interval <1-9999>
```

Specifies how long the switch waits between time polling intervals. The default is 720 minutes and the range is 1 to 9999 minutes. (This parameter is separate from the `poll interval` parameter used for SNTP operation.)

#### Example:

To change the poll interval to 60 minutes:

```
switch(config)# ip timep interval 60
```

### Disabling time synchronization without changing the TimeP configuration (CLI)

#### Syntax:

```
no timesync
```

Disables time synchronization by changing the `Time Sync Mode` configuration to `Disabled`. This halts time synchronization without changing your TimeP configuration. The recommended method for disabling time synchronization is to use the `timesync` command.

#### Example:

Suppose TimeP is running as the switch's time synchronization protocol, with `DHCP` as the TimeP mode, and the factory-default polling interval. You would halt time synchronization with this command:

```
switch(config)# no timesync
```

If you then viewed the TimeP configuration, you would see the following:

## TimeP with time synchronization disabled

```
switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Disabled
TimeP Mode : DHCP Poll Interval (min): 720
```

## Disabling the TimeP mode

### Syntax:

```
no ip timep
```

Disables TimeP by changing the TimeP mode configuration to `Disabled` and prevents the switch from using it as the time synchronization protocol, even if it is the selected `Time Sync Method` option.

### Example:

If the switch is running TimeP in DHCP mode, `no ip timep` changes the TimeP configuration as shown below and disables time synchronization. Even though the `TimeSync` mode is set to TimeP, time synchronization is disabled because `no ip timep` has disabled the TimeP mode parameter.

## Disabling time synchronization by disabling the TimeP mode parameter

```
switch(config)# no ip timep

switch(config)# show timep

Timep Configuration
Time Sync Mode: Timep
TimeP Mode : Disabled
```

## SNTP unicast time polling with multiple SNTP servers

When running SNTP unicast time polling as the time synchronization method, the switch requests a time update from the server you configured with either the `Server Address` parameter in the menu interface, or the primary server in a list of up to three SNTP servers configured using the CLI. If the switch does not receive a response from the primary server after three consecutive polling intervals, the switch tries the next server (if any) in the list. If the switch tries all servers in the list without success, it sends an error message to the Event Log and reschedules to try the address list again after the configured `Poll Interval` time has expired.

If there are already three SNTP server addresses configured on the switch, and you want to use the CLI to replace one of the existing addresses with a new one, you must delete the unwanted address before you configure the new one.

## Displaying all SNTP server addresses configured on the switch (CLI)

The System Information screen in the menu interface displays only one SNTP server address, even if the switch is configured for two or three servers. The CLI `show management` command displays all configured SNTP servers on the switch.

### How to list all SNTP servers configured on the switch

```
switch(config)# show management

Status and Counters - Management Address Information
```

```
Time Server Address : fe80::215:60ff:fe7a:adc0%vlan10
```

Priority	SNTP Server Address	Protocol Version
1	2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980	7
2	10.255.5.24	3
3	fe80::123%vlan10	3

```
Default Gateway : 10.0.9.80
```

VLAN Name	MAC Address	IP Address
DEFAULT_VLAN	001279-88a100	Disabled
VLAN10	001279-88a100	10.0.10.17

## Adding and deleting SNTP server addresses

### Adding addresses

As mentioned earlier, you can configure one SNTP server address using either the Menu interface or the CLI. To configure a second and third address, you must use the CLI. To configure the remaining two addresses, you would do the following:

#### Creating additional SNTP server addresses with the CLI

```
switch(config)# sntp server priority <1-3> 2001:db8::215:60ff:fe79:8980
switch(config)# sntp server 10.255.5.24
```



**NOTE:** If there are already three SNTP server addresses configured on the switch, and you want to use the CLI to replace one of the existing addresses with a new one, you must delete the unwanted address before you configure the new one.

### Deleting addresses

#### Syntax:

```
no sntp server <ip-addr>
```

Deletes a server address. If there are multiple addresses and you delete one of them, the switch re-orders the address priority.

#### Example:

To delete the primary address in the above Example: and automatically convert the secondary address to primary:

```
switch(config)# no sntp server 10.28.227.141
```

## Operating with multiple SNTP server addresses configured (Menu)

When you use the Menu interface to configure an SNTP server IP address, the new address writes over the current primary address, if one is configured.

## SNTP messages in the Event Log

If an SNTP time change of more than three seconds occurs, the switch's Event Log records the change. SNTP time changes of less than three seconds do not appear in the Event Log.

## Network Time Protocol (NTP)

All NTP communications use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). An NTP server usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server, and then distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses a stratum to describe the distance between a network device and an authoritative time source:

- A stratum 1 time server is directly attached to an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock or a GPS time source).
- A stratum 2 NTP server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server.

Before synchronizing, NTP compares the time reported by several network devices and does not synchronize with one that is significantly different, even if it is a stratum 1.

The security features of NTP can be used to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. One such mechanism is available: an encrypted authentication mechanism.

Though similar, the NTP algorithm is more complex and accurate than the Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP).



**IMPORTANT:** Enabling this feature results in synchronizing the system clock; therefore, it may affect all sub-systems that rely on system time.

## Commands

The following commands allow the user to configure NTP or show NTP configurations.

### timesync ntp

This command is used to update the system clock using NTP.

#### Syntax

```
timesync ntp
```

#### Description

Update the system clock using NTP.

### ntp

This command selects the operating mode of the NTP client.

#### Syntax

```
ntp [broadcast|unicast]
```

#### Parameters

```
broadcast
```

Sets ntp client to operate in broadcast mode.

```
unicast
```

Sets ntp client to operate in unicast mode.

## Usage

The default mode is broadcast.

## ntp

### Syntax

```
ntp [authentication <key-id>
    | broadcast | enable | max-association
    <integer> | server
    <IP-ADDR> | trap
    <trap-name> | unicast]
```

```
no ntp [authentication <key-id>
    | broadcast | enable | max-association
    <integer> | server
    <IP-ADDR> | trap
    <trap-name> | unicast]
```

### Description

This command selects the operating mode of the NTP client. Defaults to broadcast. The `no` form of the command disables NTP and removes the entire NTP configuration.

### Parameters

#### authentication

Configure NTP authentication.

#### broadcast

Operate in broadcast mode.

#### enable

Enable/disable NTP.

#### max-association

Maximum number of Network Time Protocol (NTP) associations.

#### server

Configure a NTP server to poll for time synchronization.

#### trap

Enable/disable NTP traps.

#### unicast

Operate in unicast mode.

### Example

```
switch(config)# no ntp
This will delete all NTP configurations on this device. Continue [y/n]?
```

## ntp enable

This command is used to enable or disable NTP on the switch.

## Syntax

```
ntp enable
```

## Example

```
switch(config)# ntp
enable          Enable/disable NTP.
```

## Description

Enable or disable NTP. Use no to disable NTP.

## Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If timeSync is in SNTP or Timep when NTP is enabled.	Timesync is not configured to NTP.
When timesync is NTP and ntp is enabled and we try to change timesync to SNTP.	Disable NTP before changing timesync to SNTP or TIMEP

## ntp authentication

This command is used for authentication of NTP server by the NTP client.

## Syntax

```
ntp authentication key-id <KEY-ID> [authentication-mode <MODE> key-value <KEY-STRING>] [trusted]
```

## Parameters/Options

```
key-id <id>
```

Sets the key-id for the authentication key.

## Subcommands

```
authentication-mode
```

Sets the NTP authentication mode

```
key-value <KEY-STRING>
```

Sets the key-value for the authentication key.

```
[trusted]
```

Sets the authentication key as trusted.

## Example

```
switch(config)# ntp
Authentication      Configure NTP authentication.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication
key-id              Set the key-id for this authentication key.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id
<1-4294967295>      Set the authentication key-id.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode Set the NTP authentication mode.
trusted Set this authentication key as trusted.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode|trusted md5
Authenticate using MD5.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode|trusted md5key-value Set the NTP authentication key.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp authentication key-id 1
authentication-mode|trusted md5 key-value
KEY Enter a string to be set as the NTP authentication key.
```

## ntp authentication key-id

### Syntax

```
ntp authentication key-id
<key-id> [authentication-mode [md5 | sha1]
key-value <key-value>] [trusted]
```

### Description

The NTP client authenticates the NTP server.

### Parameters

#### authentication-mode

Set the NTP authentication mode.

- md5: Authenticate using MD5.
- sha1: Authenticate using SHA1.

#### trusted

Set this authentication key as trusted.

## ntp max-association

This command is used to configure the maximum number of servers associated with this NTP client.

### Syntax

```
ntp max-association
<number>
```

### Parameters

```
max-association <number>
```

Sets the maximum number of NTP associations.

### Description



Configure maximum number of servers associated with the client. Up to eight servers can be configured as the maximum.

### Restrictions

The range for a maximum number of NTP associations is 1–8.

### Example

```
switch(config)# ntp
max-associations      Maximum number of NTP associations.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp max-associations
<1-8>                  Enter the number.
```

### Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
When the number of configured NTP servers is more than the max-associations value.	The maximum number of NTP servers allowed is <number>.
When the max-associations value is less than the (n) number of configured NTP servers.	Max-associations value cannot be less than the number of NTP servers configured.

## ntp server

This command is used to configure the NTP servers.

### Syntax

```
no ntp server
```

```
ntp server <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> [key <key-id>] [oobm] [max-poll <max-poll-val>][min-poll <min-poll-val>][burst | iburst]
```

### Parameters/Options

no

Removes the unicast NTP configurations on the device.

### Subcommands

IP-ADDR

Sets the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

IPv6-ADDR

Sets the IPv6 address of the NTP server.

oobm

Specifies that the NTP Unicast server is accessible over an OOBM interface.

key <key-id>

Specifies the authentication key.

max-poll <max-poll-val>

Configures the maximum time intervals in power of 2 seconds. Range is 4–17 (e.g., 5 would translate to 2 raised to 5 or 32).

min-poll <min-poll-val>

Configures the minimum time intervals in seconds. Range is 4–17.

burst

Enables burst mode.

iburst

Enables initial burst mode.

## Usage

A maximum of 8 NTP servers can be configured.

## Example

```
switch(config)# ntp
server          Allow the software clock to be synchronized by an NTP
time server.
broadcast       Operate in broadcast mode.
unicast         Operate in unicast mode.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server
IP-ADDR         IPv4 address of the NTP server.
IPV6-ADDR       IPv6 address of the NTP server.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR>
Key             Specify the authentication key.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Max-poll        Configure the maximum time intervals in seconds.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id max-poll
<4-17>          Enter an integer number.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id
Min-poll        Configure the minimum time intervals in seconds.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id min-poll
<4-17>          Enter an integer number.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server <IP-ADDR> key key-id prefer max-poll
<max-poll-val> min-poll <min-poll-val>
iburst          Enable initial burst (iburst) mode.
burst           Enable burst mode.
```

```
switch(config)# ntp server IP-ADDR key key-id prefer maxpoll <number>
minpoll <number> iburst
```

## Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If authentication key-id not configured	Authentication key-id has not been configured.
If Key-id is not marked as trusted	Key-id is not trusted.
When min poll value is more than max poll value	NTP max poll value should be more than min poll value.

## ntp server key-id

### Syntax

```
ntp server <IP-ADDR | IPV6-ADDR>
key-id <key-id> [max-poll
<max-poll-val>] [min-poll
<min-poll-val>] [burst | iburst]
```

### Description

Configure the NTP server. <IP-ADDR> indicates the IPv4 address of the NTP server. <IPV6-ADDR> indicates the IPv6 address of the NTP server.

### Parameters

#### burst

Enables burst mode.

#### iburst

Enables initial burst (iburst) mode.

#### key-id

Set the authentication key to use for this server.

#### max-poll <max-poll-val>

Configure the maximum time intervals in seconds.

#### min-poll <min-poll-val>

Configure the minimum time intervals in seconds.

## ntp ipv6-multicast

This command is used to configure NTP multicast on a VLAN interface.

### Syntax

```
ntp ipv6-multicast
```

### Description

Configure the interface to listen to the NTP multicast packets.

### Example

```
Switch(vlan-2)# ntp
ipv6-multicast      Configure the interface to listen to the NTP multicast packets.
```

### Restrictions

Validation	Error/Warning/Prompt
If ipv6 is not enabled on vlan interface	IPv6 address not configured on the VLAN.

## debug ntp

This command is used to display debug messages for NTP.

### Syntax

```
debug ntp <event |
packet>
```

### Parameters

event

Displays event log messages related to NTP.

packets

Displays NTP packet messages.

### Description

Enable debug logging. Use no to disable debug logging.

### Example

```
switch(config)# debug ntp
event                Display event log messages related to NTP.
packet               Display NTP packet messages.
```

## ntp trap

This command is used to configure NTP traps.

### Syntax

```
ntp trap <trap-name>
```

### Description

Enable NTP traps. Use no to disable NTP traps.

### Parameters

#### ntp-mode-change

Trap name resulting in send notification when the NTP entity changes mode, including starting and stopping (if possible).

#### ntp-stratum-change

Trap name resulting in send notification when stratum level of NTP changes.

#### ntp-peer-change

Trap name resulting in send notification when a (new) syspeer has been selected.

#### ntp-new-association

Trap name resulting in send notification when a new association is mobilized.

### **ntp-remove-association**

Trap name resulting in send notification when an association is demobilized.

### **ntp-config-change**

Trap name resulting in send notification when the NTP configuration has changed.

### **ntp-leapsec-announced**

Trap name resulting in send notification when a leap second has been announced.

### **ntp-alive-heartbeat**

Trap name resulting in send notification periodically (as defined by `ntpEntHeartbeatInterval`) to indicate that the NTP entity is still alive.

### **all**

Enable all traps.

### **Usage**

The traps defined below are generated as the result of finding an unusual condition while parsing an NTP packet or a processing a timer event. Note that if more than one type of unusual condition is encountered while parsing the packet or processing an event, only the first one will generate a trap. Possible trap names are:

- 'ntpEntNotifModeChange' The notification to be sent when the NTP entity changes mode, including starting and stopping (if possible).
- 'ntpEntNotifStratumChange' The notification to be sent when stratum level of NTP changes.
- 'ntpEntNotifSyspeerChanged' The notification to be sent when a (new) syspeer has been selected.
- 'ntpEntNotifAddAssociation' The notification to be sent when a new association is mobilized.
- 'ntpEntNotifRemoveAssociation' The notification to be sent when an association is demobilized.
- 'ntpEntNotifConfigChanged' The notification to be sent when the NTP configuration has changed.
- 'ntpEntNotifLeapSecondAnnounced' The notification to be sent when a leap second has been announced.
- 'ntpEntNotifHeartbeat' The notification to be sent periodically (as defined by `ntpEntHeartbeatInterval`) to indicate that the NTP entity is still alive.
- 'ntpEntNotifAll' The notification to be sent when all traps have been enabled

### **show ntp statistics**

This command is used to show NTP statistics.

#### **Syntax**

```
show ntp statistics
```

#### **Description**

Show information about NTP packets.

#### **Examples**

```
switch(config)# show ntp statistics
```

## NTP Global statistics information

```
NTP In Packets           : 100
NTP Out Packets          : 110
NTP Bad Version Packets  : 4
NTP Protocol Error Packets : 0
```

### switch(config)# show ntp statistics

## NTP Global statistics information

```
NTP In Packets           : 100
NTP Out Packets          : 110
NTP Bad Version Packets  : 4
NTP Protocol Error Packets : 0
```

## show ntp status

### Syntax

### Description

Show the status of NTP.

```
show ntp status
```

### Example

```
switch(config)# show ntp status
```

## NTP Status information

NTP Status	: Disabled	NTP Mode	: Broadcast
Synchronization Status	: Synchronized	Peer Dispersion	: 8.01 sec
Stratum Number	: 2	Leap Direction	: 1
Reference Assoc Id	: 1	Clock Offset	: 0.0000 sec
Reference	: 192.0.2.1	Root Delay	: 0.00 sec
Precision	: 2**7	Root Dispersion	: 15.91 sec
NTP Uptime	: 01d 09h 15m	Time Resolution	: 1
Drift	: 0.000000000 sec/sec		

```
System Time           : Tue Aug 25 04:59:11 2015
Reference Time        : Mon Jan  1 00:00:00 1990
```

## show ntp associations

### Syntax

```
show ntp associations [detail
<IP-ADDR>]
```

### Description

Show the status of configured NTP associations.

### Parameters

#### detail

Show the detailed status of NTP associations configured for the system.

## switch(config)# show ntp associations

NTP Associations Entries								
Address	St	T	When	Poll	Reach	Delay	Offset	Dispersion
121.0.23.1	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
231.45.21.4	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
55.21.56.2	16	u	-	1024	0	0.000	0.000	0.000
23.56.13.1	3	u	209	1024	377	54.936	-6.159	12.688
91.34.255.216	4	u	132	1024	377	1.391	0.978	3.860

## switch(config)# show ntp associations detail <IP ADDR>

### NTP association information

```
IP address       : 172.31.32.2      Peer Mode       : Server
Status          : Configured, Insane, Invalid Peer Poll Intvl : 64
Stratum         : 5                Root Delay      : 137.77 sec
Ref Assoc ID    : 0                Root Dispersion : 142.75
Association Name : NTP Association 0 Reach           : 376
Reference ID    : 16.93.49.4       Delay           : 4.23 sec
Our Mode        : Client           Offset          : -8.587 sec
Our Poll Intvl  : 1024             Precision       : 2**19

Dispersion      : 1.62 sec
Association In Packets : 60
Association Out Packets : 60
Association Error Packets : 0
Origin Time     : Fri Jul 3 11:39:40 2015
Receive Time    : Fri Jul 3 11:39:44 2015
Transmit Time   : Fri Jul 3 11:39:44 2015
```

```
-----
Filter Delay = 4.23 4.14 2.41 5.95 2.37 2.33 4.26 4.33
Filter Offset = -8.59 -8.82 -9.91 -8.42 -10.51 -10.77 -10.13 -10.11
```

## show ntp authentication

### Syntax

```
show ntp authentication
```

### Description

Show the authentication status and other information about the authentication key.

### switch(config)# show ntp authentication

#### NTP Authentication Information

Key-ID	Auth Mode	Trusted
-----	-----	-----
67	md5	yes
7	md5	no
1	sha1	yes
2	sha1	no

## Viewing port status and configuring port parameters

### Connecting transceivers to fixed-configuration devices

If the switch either fails to show a link between an installed transceiver and another device or demonstrates errors or other unexpected behavior on the link, check the port configuration on both devices for a speed and/or duplex (mode) mismatch.

- To check the mode setting for a port on the switch, use either the Port Status screen in the menu interface or `show interfaces brief` in the CLI (see [Viewing port status and configuration \(CLI\)](#)).
- To display information about the transceivers installed on a switch, enter the `show tech receivers` command in the CLI ([The show tech transceivers command](#) on page 60).

**Table 3:** Status and parameters for each port type



Status or parameter	Description
Enabled	<p><b>Yes</b> (default): The port is ready for a network connection.</p> <p><b>No</b>: The port will not operate, even if properly connected in a network. Use this setting, For example, if the port needs to be shut down for diagnostic purposes or while you are making topology changes.</p>
Status (read-only)	<p><b>Up</b>: The port senses a link beat.</p> <p><b>Down</b>: The port is not enabled, has no cables connected, or is experiencing a network error. For troubleshooting information, see the installation and getting started guide you received with the switch. See also to Appendix C, "Troubleshooting" (in this manual).</p>

*Table Continued*



Status or parameter	Description
Mode	<p>The port's speed and duplex (data transfer operation) setting. 10/100/1000Base-T Ports:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto-MDIX (default):</b> Senses speed and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for port operation (MDI-X or MDI). To see what the switch negotiates for the auto setting, use the CLI <code>show interfaces brief</code> command.</li> <li>• <b>MDI:</b> Sets the port to connect with a PC using a crossover cable (manual mode—applies only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables)</li> <li>• <b>MDIX:</b> Sets the port to connect with a PC using a straight-through cable (manual mode—applies only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables)</li> <li>• <b>Auto-10:</b> Allows the port to negotiate between half-duplex (HDx) and full-duplex (FDx) while keeping speed at 10 Mbps. Also negotiates flow control (enabled or disabled). Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends auto-10 for links between 10/100 auto-sensing ports connected with Cat 3 cabling. (Cat 5 cabling is required for 100 Mbps links.)</li> <li>• <b>10HDx:</b> 10 Mbps, half-duplex</li> <li>• <b>10FDx:</b> 10 Mbps, full-duplex</li> <li>• <b>Auto-100:</b> Uses 100 Mbps and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for other port operation features.</li> <li>• <b>Auto-10-100:</b> Allows the port to establish a link with the port at the other end at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, using the highest mutual speed and duplex mode available. Only these speeds are allowed with this setting.</li> <li>• <b>Auto-1000:</b> Uses 1000 Mbps and negotiates with the port at the other end of the link for other port operation features.</li> <li>• <b>100Hdx:</b> Uses 100 Mbps, half-duplex.</li> <li>• <b>100Fdx:</b> Uses 100 Mbps, full-duplex</li> </ul> <p><b>Gigabit Fiber-Optic Ports (Gigabit-SX, Gigabit-LX, and Gigabit-LH):</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1000FDx:</b> 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps), full-duplex only</li> <li>• <b>Auto (default):</b> The port operates at 1000FDx and auto-negotiates flow control with the device connected to the port.</li> </ul> <p><b>Gigabit Copper Ports:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1000FDx:</b> 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps), full-duplex only</li> <li>• <b>Auto (default):</b> The port operates at 1000FDx and auto-negotiates flow control with the device connected to the port.</li> </ul>

*Table Continued*

Status or parameter	Description
	<p><b>10-Gigabit CX4 Copper Ports:</b></p> <p>Auto: The port operates at 10 gigabits FDx and negotiates flow control. Lower speed settings or half-duplex are not allowed.</p> <p><b>10-Gigabit SC Fiber-Optic Ports (10-GbE SR, 10-GbE LR, 10-GbE ER):</b></p> <p>Auto: The port operates at 10 gigabits FDx and negotiates flow control. Lower speed settings or half-duplex are not allowed.</p> <hr/> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> Conditioning patch cord cables are not supported on 10-GbE.</p> </div> <hr/>
Auto-MDIX	<p>The switch supports Auto-MDIX on 10Mb, 100Mb, and 1 Gb T/TX (copper) ports. (Fiber ports and 10-gigabit ports do not use this feature.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Automdix:</b> Configures the port for automatic detection of the cable type (straight-through or crossover).</li> <li>• <b>MDI:</b> Configures the port to connect to a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a straight-through cable.</li> <li>• <b>MDIX:</b> Configures the port to connect to a PC or other MDI device with a straight-through cable.</li> </ul>
Flow control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled (default):</b> The port does not generate flow control packets, and drops any flow control packets it receives.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The port uses 802.3x link layer flow control, generates flow-control packets, and processes received flow-control packets.</li> </ul> <p>With the port mode set to <b>Auto</b> (the default) and flow control enabled, the switch negotiates flow control on the indicated port. If the port mode is not set to <b>Auto</b>, or if flow control is disabled on the port, flow control is not used. Note that flow control must be enabled on both ends of a link.</p>
Broadcast limit	<p>Specifies the percentage of the theoretical maximum network bandwidth that can be used for broadcast traffic. Any broadcast traffic exceeding that limit will be dropped. Zero (0) means the feature is disabled.</p> <p>The broadcast-limit command operates at the port context level to set the broadcast limit for a port on the <b>switch</b>.</p> <hr/> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> This feature is not appropriate for networks that require high levels of IPX or RIP broadcast traffic.</p> </div> <hr/>

## Viewing port configuration (Menu)

The menu interface displays the configuration for ports and (if configured) any trunk groups.

From the Main Menu, select:

**A switch port status screen**

```

=====--  CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE  -----
              Status and Counters - Port Status

Port      Type      Intrusion
Alert      Enabled  Status      Mode      MDI      Flow  Bcast
Mode      Ctrl      Limit
-----
1         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      100FDx  Auto  off  0
2         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
3         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
4         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
5         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
6         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
7         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
8         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
9         100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
10        100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0
11        100/1000T  No          Yes       Down      1000FDx Auto  off  0

Actions->   Back   Intrusion log   Help

```

Return to previous screen.

Use up/down arrow keys to scroll to other entries, left/right arrow keys to change action selection, and <Enter> to execute action.

**Configuring ports (Menu)**

The menu interface uses the same screen for configuring both individual ports and port trunk groups. For information on port trunk groups, see the chapter on "Port Trunking".

**Procedure**

1. From the Main Menu, select:

**2. Switch Configuration...**

**2. Port/Trunk Settings**

Port/trunk settings with a trunk group configured

```

=====--  TELNET - MANAGER MODE  -----
              Switch Configuration - Port/Trunk Settings

Port      Type      Enabled      Mode      Flow Ctrl  Group  Type
-----
A1         1000T      | Yes       Auto-10-100  Disable
A2         1000T      | Yes       Auto-10-100  Disable
A3         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable
A3         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable
A4         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable
A5         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable
A6         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable
A7         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable  Trk1   Trunk
A8         1000T      | Yes       Auto         Disable  Trk2   Trunk

Actions->   Cancel   Edit   Save   Help

```

Cancel changes and return to previous screen.

Use arrow keys to change action selection and <Enter> to execute action.

2. Press [E] (for **E**dit).

The cursor moves to the `Enabled` field for the first port.

For further information on configuration options for these features, see the online help provided with this screen.

3. When you have finished making changes to the above parameters, press [Enter], then press [S] (for **S**ave).

## Viewing port status and configuration (CLI)

Use the following commands to display port status and configuration data.

### Syntax:

```
show interfaces [brief | config | < port-list >]
```

#### **brief**

Lists the current operating status for all ports on the switch.

#### **config**

Lists a subset of configuration data for all ports on the switch; that is, for each port, the display shows whether the port is enabled, the operating mode, and whether it is configured for flow control.

#### **<port-list>**

Shows a summary of network traffic handled by the specified ports.

### The `show interfaces brief` command listing

```
switch(config)# show interfaces brief
Status and Counters - Port Status
```

Port	Type	Intrusion		Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert							
B1	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	Auto-10-100	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No		Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0

### The `show interfaces config` command listing

```
switch(config)# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled		Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
B1	100/1000T	Yes		Auto-10-100	Disable	Auto
B2	100/1000T	Yes		Auto	Disable	Auto
B3	100/1000T	Yes		Auto	Disable	Auto
B4	100/1000T	Yes		Auto	Disable	Auto


B5	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B6	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

### Dynamically updating the show interfaces command (CLI/Menu)

**Syntax:**

```
show interfaces display
```

Uses the `display` option to initiate the dynamic update of the `show interfaces` command, with the output being the same as the `show interfaces` command.



**NOTE:** Select **Back** to exit the display.

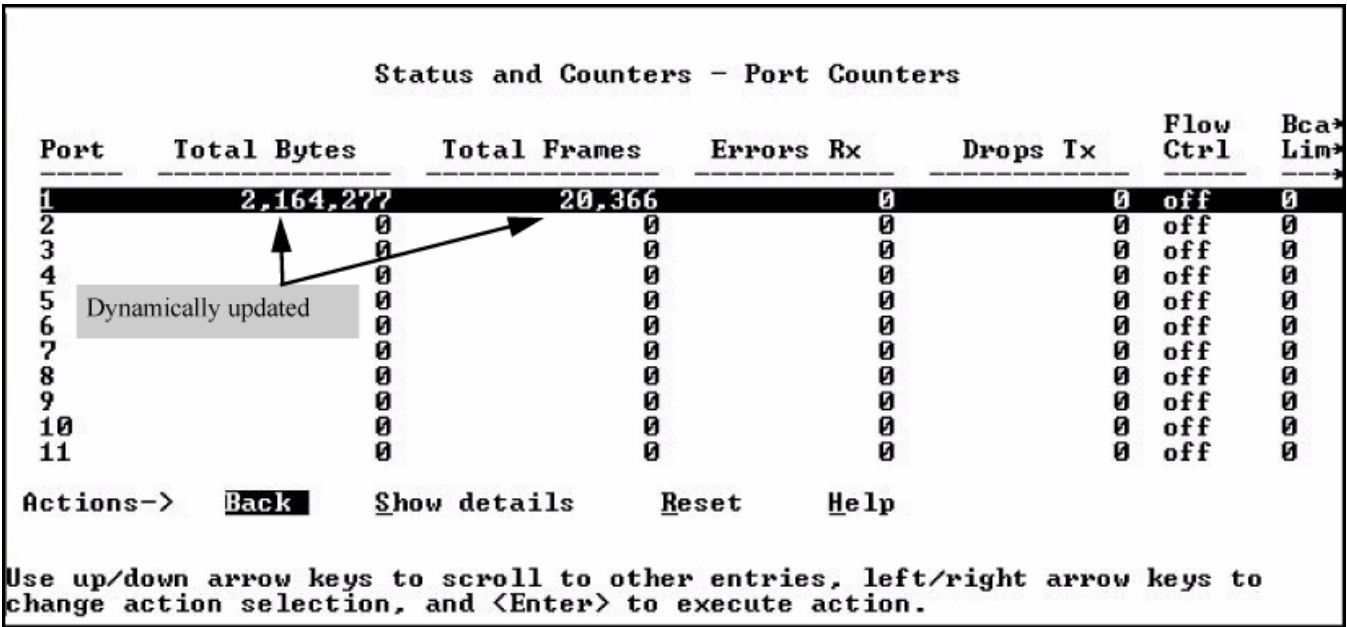
**Example:**

```
switch# show interfaces display
```

When using the **display** option in the CLI, the information stays on the screen and is updated every 3 seconds, as occurs with the display using the menu feature. The update is terminated with **Cntrl-C**.

You can use the arrow keys to scroll through the screen when the output does not fit in one screen.

**Figure 6:** *show interfaces display* command with dynamically updating output



### Customizing the show interfaces command (CLI)

You can create `show` commands displaying the information that you want to see in any order you want by using the `custom` option.

**Syntax:**

```
show interfaces custom [port-list] column-list
```

Select the information that you want to display. Supported columns are shown in the table below.

**Table 4: Supported columns, what they display, and examples:**

Parameter column	Displays	Examples
port	Port identifier	A2
type	Port type	100/1000T
status	Port status	up or down
speed	Connection speed and duplex	1000FDX
mode	Configured mode	auto, auto-100, 100FDX
mdi	MDI mode	auto, MDIX
flow	Flow control	on or off
name	Friendly port name	
vlanid	The vlan id this port belongs to, or "tagged" if it belongs to more than one vlan	4tagged
enabled	port is or is not enabled	yes or nointrusion
intrusion	Intrusion alert status	no
bcast	Broadcast limit	0

**The custom show interfaces command**

```
switch(config)# show int custom 1-4 port name:4 type vlan intrusion speed enabled mdi
```

Status and Counters - Custom Port Status

Port	Name	Type	VLAN	Intrusion Alert	Speed	Enabled	MDI-mode
1	Acco	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
2	Huma	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
3	Deve	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto
4	Lab1	100/1000T	1	No	1000FDx	Yes	Auto

You can specify the column width by entering a colon after the column name, then indicating the number of characters to display. In the above example, the Name column displays only the first four characters of the name. All remaining characters are truncated.



**NOTE:** Each field has a fixed minimum width to be displayed. If you specify a field width smaller than the minimum width, the information is displayed at the minimum width. For example, if the minimum width for the Name field is 4 characters and you specify Name:2, the Name field displays 4 characters.

You can enter parameters in any order. There is a limit of 80 characters per line; if you exceed this limit an error displays.

## Error messages associated with the show interfaces command

The following table provides information on error messages associated with the `show interfaces custom` command.

Error	Error message
Requesting too many fields (total characters exceeds 80)	Total length of selected data exceeds one line
Field name is misspelled	Invalid input: <i>&lt;input&gt;</i>
Mistake in specifying the port list	Module not present for port or invalid port: <i>&lt;input&gt;</i>
The port list is not specified	Incomplete input: custom

## Note on using pattern matching with the show interfaces custom command

If you have included a pattern matching command to search for a field in the output of the `show int custom` command, and the `show int custom` command produces an error, the error message may not be visible and the output is empty. For example, if you enter a command that produces an error (such as `vlan` is misspelled) with the pattern matching `include` option, the output may be empty:

```
switch(config)# show int custom 1-3 name vlun | include vlan1
```

It is advisable to try the `show int custom` command first to ensure there is output, and then enter the command again with the pattern matching option.

Note that in the above command, you can substitute `int` for `interface`; that is: `show int custom`.

## Viewing port utilization statistics (CLI)

Use the `show interface port-utilization` command to view a real-time rate display for all ports on the switch. The example below shows a sample output from this command.

### A show interface port-utilization command listing

```
switch(config)# show interfaces port-utilization
Status and Counters - Port Utilization
```

Port	Mode	Rx			Tx		
		Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util
B1	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B2	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B3	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B4	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B5	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B6	1000FDx	0	0	0	0	0	0
B7	100FDx	624	86	00.62	496	0	00.49

## Operating notes for viewing port utilization statistics

- For each port on the switch, the command provides a real-time display of the rate at which data is received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx) in terms of kilobits per second (KBits/s), number of packets per second (Pkts/s), and utilization (Util) expressed as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
- The `show interfaces <port-list>` command can be used to display the current link status and the port rate average over a 5 minute period. Port rates are shown in bits per second (bps) for ports up to 1 Gigabit; for 10 Gigabit ports, port rates are shown in kilobits per second (Kbps).

## Viewing transceiver status (CLI)

The `show interfaces transceivers` command allows you to:

- Remotely identify transceiver type and revision number without having to physically remove an installed transceiver from its slot.
- Display real-time status information about all installed transceivers, including non-operational transceivers.

The example shows sample output from the `show tech transceivers` command.



**NOTE:** Part # column below enables you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.

### The show tech transceivers command

```
switch# show tech transceivers
```

Transceiver Technical Information:

Port #	Type	Prod #	Serial #	Part #
21	1000SX	J4858B	CN605MP23K	
22	1000LX	J4859C	H11E7X	2157-2345
23	??	??	non operational	
25	10GbE-CX4	J8440A	US509RU079	
26	10GbE-CX4	J8440A	US540RU002	
27	10GbE-LR	J8437B	PPA02-2904:0017	2157-2345
28	10GbE-SR	J8436B	01591602	2158-1000
29	10GbE-ER	J8438A	PPA03-2905:0001	

The following transceivers may not function correctly:

Port #	Message
Port 23	Self test failure.

## Operating Notes

The following information is displayed for each installed transceiver:

- Port number on which transceiver is installed.
- Type of transceiver.
- Product number — Includes revision letter, such as A, B, or C. If no revision letter follows a product number, this means that no revision is available for the transceiver.
- Part number — Allows you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.



- For a non-Aruba switches installed transceiver, no transceiver type, product number, or part information is displayed. In the Serial Number field, `non-operational` is displayed instead of a serial number.
- The following error messages may be displayed for a non-operational transceiver:
  - `Unsupported Transceiver. (SelfTest Err#060)`
  - `This switch only supports revision B and above transceivers.`
  - `Self test failure.`
  - `Transceiver type not supported in this port.`
  - `Transceiver type not supported in this software version.`
  - `Not an Switch Transceiver.`

## Enabling or disabling ports and configuring port mode (CLI)

You can configure one or more of the following port parameters.

See **Status and parameters for each port type**.

### Syntax:

```
no interface <port-list> [<disable|enable>]
```

Disables or enables the port for network traffic. Does not use the `no` form of the command. (Default: `enable`.)

```
speed-duplex [<auto-10|10-full|10-half|100-full|100-half|auto|auto-100|1000-full>]
```

Note that in the above Syntax:, you can substitute `int` for `interface` (for example, `int <port-list>` ).

Specifies the port's data transfer speed and mode. Does not use the `no` form of the command. (Default: `auto`.)

The 10/100 auto-negotiation feature allows a port to establish a link with a port at the other end at either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, using the highest mutual speed and duplex mode available. Only these speeds are allowed with this setting.

### Examples:

To configure port C5 for auto-10-100, enter this command:

```
switch(config)# int c5 speed-duplex auto-10-100
```

To configure ports C1 through C3 and port C6 for 100Mbps full-duplex, enter these commands:

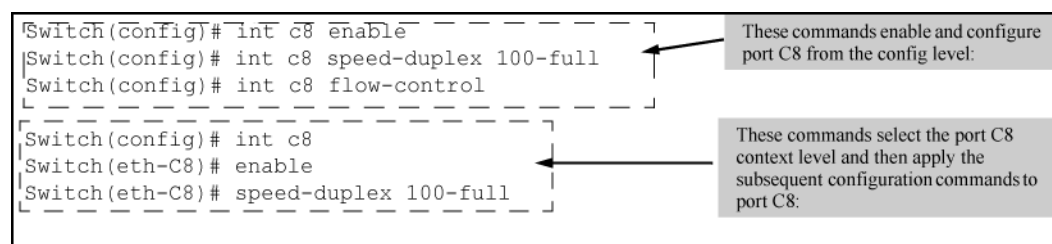
```
switch(config)# int c1-c3,c6 speed-duplex 100-full
```

Similarly, to configure a single port with the above command settings, you could either enter the same command with only the one port identified or go to the context level for that port and then enter the command. For example, to enter the context level for port C6 and then configure that port for 100FDx:

```
switch(config)# int e c6
switch(eth-C6)# speed-duplex 100-full
```

If port C8 was disabled, and you wanted to enable it and configure it for 100FDx with flow-control active, you could do so with either of the following command sets:

**Figure 7:** Two methods for changing a port configuration



For more on flow control, see [Enabling or disabling flow control \(CLI\)](#) on page 62.

## Enabling or disabling flow control (CLI)



**NOTE:** You must enable flow control on both ports in a given link. Otherwise, flow control does not operate on the link and appears as *Off* in the `show interfaces brief` port listing, even if flow control is configured as enabled on the port in the switch. (See [The show interfaces brief command listing](#) example.) Also, the port (speed-duplex) mode must be set to *Auto* (the default).

To disable flow control on some ports, while leaving it enabled on other ports, just disable it on the individual ports you want to exclude.

(You can find more information on flow control in the [Status and parameters for each port type](#) table.)

### Syntax:

```
no interface <port-list> flow-control
```

Enables or disables flow control packets on the port. The `no` form of the command disables flow control on the individual ports. (Default: Disabled.)

### Examples:

Suppose that:

1. You want to enable flow control on ports A1-A6.
2. Later, you decide to disable flow control on ports A5 and A6.
3. As a final step, you want to disable flow control on all ports.

Assuming that flow control is currently disabled on the switch, you would use these commands:

**Figure 8: Configuring flow control for a series of ports**

```
switch(config)# int a1-a6 flow-control
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	Enabled					
A1	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	on	0
A2	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A3	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A4	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A5	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A6	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A7	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	10GigFD	NA	off	0

```
switch(config)# no int a5-a6 flow-control
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	Enabled					
A1	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	NA	on	0
A2	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A3	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A4	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	on	0
A5	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A6	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A7	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0

```
switch(config)# no int a1-a4 flow-control
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	Enabled					
A1	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	NA	off	0
A2	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A3	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A4	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A5	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A6	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A7	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0
A8	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	NA	off	0

## Port shutdown with broadcast storm

A LAN broadcast storm arises when an excessively high rate of broadcast packets flood the LAN. Occurrence of LAN broadcast storm disrupts traffic and degrades network performance. To prevent LAN traffic from being disrupted, an enhancement of fault-finder commands adds new options, and the corresponding MIBs, that trigger a port disablement when a broadcast storm is detected on that port.

Under this enhancement, the CLI commands given only supports broadcast traffic and not multicast and unicast types of traffic.

The waiting period range for re-enabling ports is 0 to 604800 seconds. The default waiting period to re-enable a port is zero which prevents the port from automatic re-enabling.



**NOTE:** Avoid port flapping when choosing the waiting period by considering the time to re-enable carefully.

Use the following commands to configure the broadcast-storm on a port.

### Syntax:

```
no fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <port-list> action [warn|warn-and-disable <seconds>] [percent <percent>|pps <rate>]
```

To remove the current configuration of broadcast-storm on a port, use:

### Syntax:

```
no fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <port-list>
```

#### **broadcast-storm**

Configure broadcast storm control.

#### **pps**

Rising threshold level in number of broadcast packets per second.

#### **percent**

Rising threshold level as a percentage of bandwidth of the port. The percentage is calculated on 64 byte packet size.

#### **warn**

Log the event only.

#### **warn-and-disable**

Log the event and disable the port.

#### **seconds**

Re-enable the port after waiting for the specified number of seconds. Default is not to re-enable.

### Configuration examples:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <A1> action [warn-and-disable <65535>] percent 10>
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <A2> action [warn-and-disable <pps 100>
switch(config)# fault-finder broadcast-storm [ethernet] <A22> action [warn] <pps 100>
```

## Viewing broadcast storm

Use the following command to display the broadcast-storm-control configuration.

## Syntax:

```
show fault-finder broadcast-storm [[ethernet] port-list]
```

## Examples:

```
switch# show fault-finder broadcast-storm [A1]
```

Port	Bcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Timer Left
A1	Yes	Down	10%	warn-and-disable	65535	—

```
switch (config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm
```

Port	Bcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Timer Left
A1	Yes	Down	200 pps	warn-and-disable	10	9

```
switch (config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm A1
```

Port	Bcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Timer Left
A1	No	Up	—	none	—	—

```
switch (config)# show fault-finder broadcast-storm
```

Port	Bcast Storm	Port Status	Rising Threshold	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Timer Left
A1	Yes	Up	75%	warn	—	—

## SNMP MIB

SNMP support will be provided through the following MIB objects:

**hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfig OBJECT IDENTIFIER**

**:: = { hpicfFaultFinder 5 }**

**hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigTable OBJECT-TYPE**

- syntax sequence: **HpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry**
- max-access: not-accessible
- status: current
- description: This table provides information about broadcast storm control configuration of all ports. ::= {hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfig 1}

**hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry OBJECT-TYPE**

- syntax **HpPicFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry**
- max-access: not-accessible
- status: current
- description: This object provides information about broadcast storm control configuration of each port.
- index: {**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportindex**}::= {**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportconfigtable 1**}

#### **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportconfigentry ::=**

Syntax sequence: **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportindex** InterfaceIndex,

**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolmode** Integer,

**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolrisingpercent** Integer32,

**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolrisingpps** Integer32,

**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolaction** Integer,

**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportdisabletimer** Unsigned32

#### **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportindex OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax: Interfaceindex
- max-access: not-accessible
- status: current
- description: The Index Value Which Uniquely Identifies A Row In The Interfaces Table.  
::= {**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportconfigentry 1**}

#### **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolmode OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax Integer: disabled(1), **bcastrisinglevelpercent**(2), **bcastrisinglevelpps**(3)
- max-access: read-write
- status: current
- description: The broadcast storm control mode of a port. A value of disable (1) indicates that no rising threshold value is set for broadcast storm traffic on this port. A value of **bcastrisinglevelpercent** (2) indicates that the rising threshold rate for broadcast storm traffic is configured in percentage of port bandwidth. A value of **bcastrisinglevelpps** (3) indicates that the rising threshold rate for broadcast storm traffic is configured in packets per second.
- DEFVAL: disabled  
::= {**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportconfigentry 2**}

#### **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolrisingpercent OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax Integer32 (1..100)
- max-access: read-write
- status: current
- description: This Is The Rising Threshold Level in percent of bandwidth of the port.  
**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolaction** occurs when broadcast traffic reaches this level.  
::= {**hpicfffbcaststormcontrolportconfigentry 3**}

### **hpicfFfBcastStormControlRisingpps OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax Integer32 (1..10000000)
- max-access: read-write
- status: current
- description: This object indicates the rising threshold for broadcast storm control. This value is in packets-per-second of received broadcast traffic. **hpicfffbcaststormcontrolaction** object takes action when broadcast traffic reaches this level.

::= {hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry 4}

### **hpicfFfBcastStormControlAction OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax integer: none(1), warn(2), warnanddisable(3)
- max-access: read-write
- status: current
- Description: This object defines the action taken by the switch when a broadcast storm occurs on a port. A value of none (1) indicates that no action is performed. A value of warn (2) indicates that an event is logged when broadcast traffic crosses the threshold value set on that port. A value of warn-and-disable (3) indicates that the port is disabled and an event is logged as soon as the broadcast traffic reaches the threshold value set on that port.
- DEFVAL: none

::= {hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry 5}

### **hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortDisableTimer OBJECT-TYPE**

- Syntax Unsigned32 (0..604800)
- Units: seconds
- max-access: read-write
- status: current
- Description: This object specifies the time period for which the port remains in disabled state. A port is disabled when broadcast traffic reaches the threshold value set on that port. This time period is specified in seconds. The default value is zero which means that the port remains disabled and is not enabled again.
- DEFVAL {0}

::= {hpicfFfBcastStormControlPortConfigEntry 6}

## **Configuring auto-MDIX**

Copper ports on the switch can automatically detect the type of cable configuration (MDI or MDI-X) on a connected device and adjust to operate appropriately.

This means you can use a "straight-through" twisted-pair cable or a "crossover" twisted-pair cable for any of the connections—the port makes the necessary adjustments to accommodate either one for correct operation. The following port types on your switch support the IEEE 802.3ab standard, which includes the "Auto MDI/MDI-X" feature:

- 10/100-TX xl module ports
- 100/1000-T xl module ports
- 10/100/1000-T xl module ports

Using the above ports:

- If you connect a copper port using a straight-through cable on a switch to a port on another switch or hub that uses MDI-X ports, the switch port automatically operates as an MDI port.
- If you connect a copper port using a straight-through cable on a switch to a port on an end node—such as a server or PC—that uses MDI ports, the switch port automatically operates as an MDI-X port.

Auto-MDIX was developed for auto-negotiating devices, and was shared with the IEEE for the development of the IEEE 802.3ab standard. Auto-MDIX and the IEEE 802.3ab Auto MDI/MID-X feature are completely compatible. Additionally, Auto-MDIX supports operation in forced speed and duplex modes.

For more information on this subject, see the IEEE 802.3ab standard reference. For more information on MDI-X, the installation and getting started guide for your switch.

## Manual override

If you require control over the MDI/MDI-X feature, you can set the switch to either of these non-default modes:

- Manual MDI
- Manual MDI-X

The table below shows the cabling requirements for the MDI/MDI-X settings.

**Table 5:** *Cable types for auto and manual MDI/MDI-X settings*

Setting	MDI/MDI-X device type	
	PC or other MDI device type	Switch, hub, or other MDI-X device
Manual MDI	Crossover cable	Straight-through cable
Manual MDI-X	Straight-through cable	Crossover cable
Auto-MDI-X (the default)	Either crossover or straight-through cable	

The AutoMDIX features apply only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables.

## Configuring auto-MDIX (CLI)

The auto-MDIX features apply only to copper port switches using twisted-pair copper Ethernet cables. For information about auto-MDIX, see [Configuring auto-MDIX](#) on page 67.

### Syntax:

```
interface <port-list> mdix-mode < {auto-mdix | mdi | mdix}>
```



auto-mdix	The automatic, default setting. This configures the port for automatic detection of the cable (either straight-through or crossover).
mdi	The manual mode setting that configures the port for connecting to either a PC or other MDI device with a crossover cable, or to a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a straight-through cable.
mdix	The manual mode setting that configures the port for connecting to either a switch, hub, or other MDI-X device with a crossover cable, or to a PC or other MDI device with a straight-through cable.

### Syntax:

```
show interfaces config
```

Lists the current per-port Auto/MDI/MDI-X configuration.

### Syntax:

```
show interfaces brief
```

- Where a port is linked to another device, this command lists the MDI mode the port is currently using.
- In the case of ports configured for Auto ( auto-mdix), the MDI mode appears as either MDI or MDIX, depending upon which option the port has negotiated with the device on the other end of the link.
- In the case of ports configured for MDI or MDIX, the mode listed in this display matches the configured setting.
- If the link to another device was up, but has gone down, this command shows the last operating MDI mode the port was using.
- If a port on a given switch has not detected a link to another device since the last reboot, this command lists the MDI mode to which the port is currently configured.

The `show interfaces config` displays the following data when port A1 is configured for `auto-mdix`, port A2 is configured for `mdi`, and port A3 is configured for `mdix`:

### Displaying the current MDI configuration

```
switch(config)# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type		Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
-----	-----	+	-----	-----	-----	----
A1	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A2	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	MDI
A3	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	MDIX
A4	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A5	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A6	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A7	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
A8	10GbE-T		Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

## Displaying the current MDI operating mode

```
switch(config)# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion Alert	Enabled	Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
A1	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Up	1000FDx	MDIX	off	0
A2	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	MDI	off	0
A3	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	MDIX	off	0
A4	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A5	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A6	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A7	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0
A8	10GbE-T	No	Yes	Down	10GigFD	Auto	off	0

## Using friendly (optional) port names

This feature enables you to assign alphanumeric port names of your choosing to augment automatically assigned numeric port names. This means you can configure meaningful port names to make it easier to identify the source of information listed by some `show` commands. (Note that this feature **augments** port numbering, but **does not replace** it.)

## Configuring and operating rules for friendly port names

- At either the global or context configuration level, you can assign a unique name to a port. You can also assign the same name to multiple ports.
- The friendly port names you configure appear in the output of the `show name [port-list]`, `show config`, and `show interface <port-number>` commands. They do not appear in the output of other `show` commands or in Menu interface screens. (See [Displaying friendly port names with other port data \(CLI\)](#) on page 71.)
- Friendly port names are not a substitute for port numbers in CLI commands or Menu displays.
- Trunking ports together does not affect friendly naming for the individual ports. (If you want the same name for all ports in a trunk, you must individually assign the name to each port.)
- A friendly port name can have up to 64 contiguous alphanumeric characters.
- Blank spaces within friendly port names are not allowed, and if used, cause an **invalid input** error. (The switch interprets a blank space as a name terminator.)
- In a port listing, **not assigned** indicates that the port does not have a name assignment other than its fixed port number.
- To retain friendly port names across reboots, you must save the current running-configuration to the startup-config file after entering the friendly port names. (In the CLI, use the `write memory` command.)

## Configuring friendly port names (CLI)

For detailed information about friendly port names, see [Using friendly \(optional\) port names](#) on page 70.

### Syntax:

```
interface <port-list> name <port-name-string>
```

Assigns a port name to port-list.

**Syntax:**

```
no interface <port-list> name
```

Deletes the port name from <port-list>.

## Configuring a single port name (CLI)

Suppose that you have connected port A3 on the switch to Bill Smith's workstation, and want to assign Bill's name and workstation IP address (10.25.101.73) as a port name for port A3:

### Configuring a friendly port name

```
switch(config)# int A3 name  
Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73  
switch(config)# write mem  
switch(config)# show name A3
```

```
Port Names  
Port : A3  
Type : 10/100TX
```

## Configuring the same name for multiple ports (CLI)

Suppose that you want to use ports A5 through A8 as a trunked link to a server used by a drafting group. In this case you might configure ports A5 through A8 with the name "Draft-Server:Trunk."

### Configuring one friendly port name on multiple ports

```
switch(config)# int a5-a8 name Draft-Server:Trunk  
switch(config)# write mem  
switch(config)# show name a5-a8
```

```
Port Names  
  
Port : A5  
Type : 10GbE-T  
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk  
  
Port : A6  
Type : 10GbE-T  
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk  
  
Port : A7  
Type : 10GbE-T  
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk  
  
Port : A8  
Type : 10GbE-T  
Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
```

## Displaying friendly port names with other port data (CLI)

You can display friendly port name data in the following combinations:

**Syntax:**

```
show name
```

Displays a listing of port numbers with their corresponding friendly port names and also quickly shows you which ports do not have friendly name assignments. (`show name` data comes from the running-config file.)

**Syntax:**

```
show interface <port-number>
```

Displays the friendly port name, if any, along with the traffic statistics for that port. (The friendly port name data comes from the running-config file.)

**Syntax:**

```
show config
```

Includes friendly port names in the per-port data of the resulting configuration listing. (`show config` data comes from the startup-config file.)

## Listing all ports or selected ports with their friendly port names (CLI)

**Syntax:**

```
show name [port-list]
```

Lists the friendly port name with its corresponding port number and port type. The `show name` command without a port list shows this data for all ports on the switch.

### Friendly port name data for all ports on the switch

```
switch(config)# show name
Port Names
  Port   Type      Name
  -----
  A1     10GbE-T
  A2     10GbE-T
  A3     10GbE-T    Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
  A4     10GbE-T
  A5     10GbE-T    Draft-Server:Trunk
  A6     10GbE-T    Draft-Server:Trunk
  A7     10GbE-T    Draft-Server:Trunk
  A8     10GbE-T    Draft-Server:Trunk
```

### Friendly port name data for specific ports on the switch

```
switch(config)# show name A3-A5
Port Names
  Port : A3
  Type : 10GbE-T
  Name : Bill_Smith@10.25.101.73
  Port : A4
  Type : 10GbE-T
  Name :
  Port : A5
  Type : 10GbE-T
  Name : Draft-Server:Trunk
```

## Including friendly port names in per-port statistics listings (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
show interface <port-number>
```

Includes the friendly port name with the port's traffic statistics listing. A friendly port name configured to a port is automatically included when you display the port's statistics output.

If you configure port A1 with the name "O'Connor\_10.25.101.43," the `show interface` output for this port appears similar to the following:

### A friendly port name in a per-port statistics listing

```
switch(config)# show interface a1
Status and Counters - Port Counters for port A1

Name      : O'Connor@10.25.101.43
MAC Address      : 001871-b995ff
Link Status      : Up
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx       : 2,763,197          Bytes Tx       : 22,972
  Unicast Rx      : 2044              Unicast Tx      : 128
  Bcast/Mcast Rx  : 23,456           Bcast/Mcast Tx  : 26
Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
  FCS Rx         : 0                 Drops Tx        : 0
  Alignment Rx    : 0                 Collisions Tx   : 0
  Runts Rx        : 0                 Late Colln Tx   : 0
  Giants Rx       : 0                 Excessive Colln : 0
  Total Rx Errors : 0                 Deferred Tx     : 0
Others (Since boot or last clear) :
  Discard Rx      : 0                 Out Queue Len   : 0
  Unknown Protos  : 0
Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
  Total Rx (bps)  : 3,028,168         Total Tx (bps)  : 1,918,384
  Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 5           Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
  B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 71          B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
  Utilization Rx   : 00.30 %          Utilization Tx   : 00.19 %
```

For a given port, if a friendly port name does not exist in the running-config file, the Name line in the above command output appears as:

```
Name      :
```

## Searching the configuration for ports with friendly port names (CLI)

This option tells you which friendly port names have been saved to the startup-config file. (`show config` does not include ports that have only default settings in the startup-config file.)

### Syntax:

```
show config
```

Includes friendly port names in a listing of all interfaces (ports) configured with non-default settings. Excludes ports that have neither a friendly port name nor any other non-default configuration settings.

See **Listing of the startup-config file with a friendly port name configured (and saved)** on page 74 to configure port A1 with a friendly port name. Notice that the command sequence saves the friendly port name for port A1 in the startup-config file. The name entered for port A2 is not saved because it was executed after `write memory`.

### Listing of the startup-config file with a friendly port name configured (and saved)

```
switch(config)# int A1 name Print_Server@10.25.101.43
switch(config)# write mem
switch(config)# int A2 name Herbert's_PC

switch(config)# show config

Startup configuration:
; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release xx.15.05.xxxx
hostname "Switch"
interface AQ
  name "Print_Server@10.25.101.43"
exit

snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
.
.
.
```

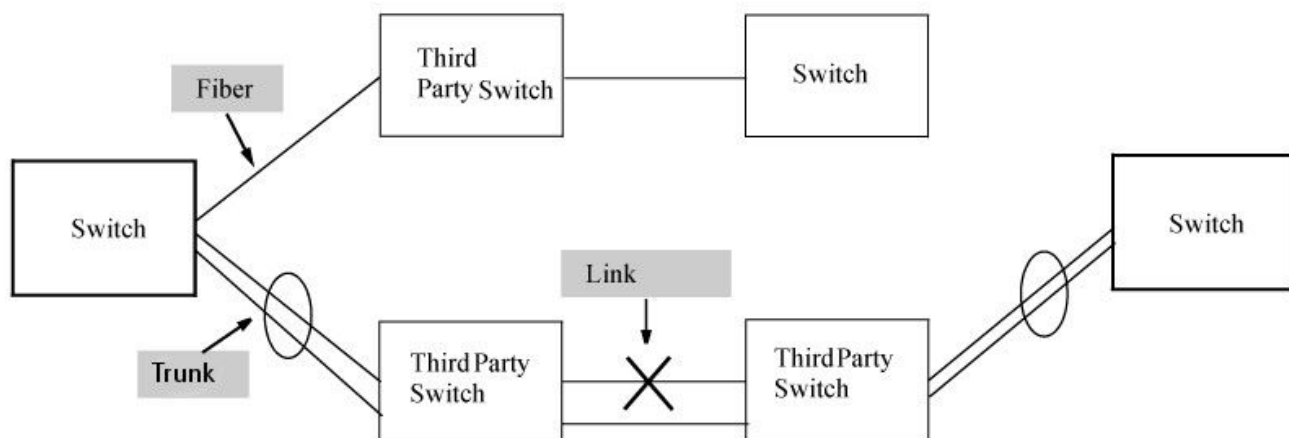
## Uni-directional link detection (UDLD)

Uni-directional link detection (UDLD) monitors a link between two switches and blocks the ports on both ends of the link if the link fails at any point between the two devices. This feature is particularly useful for detecting failures in fiber links and trunks. **Figure 9: UDLD Example:** on page 74 shows an Example:.

**Figure 9: UDLD Example:**

**Scenario 1 (No UDLD):** Without UDLD, the switch ports remain enabled despite the link failure. Traffic continues to be load-balanced to the ports connected to the failed link.

**Scenario 2 (UDLD-enabled):** When UDLD is enabled, the feature blocks the ports connected to the failed link.



In this example, each switch load balances traffic across two ports in a trunk group. Without the UDLD feature, a link failure on a link that is not directly attached to one of the switch remains undetected. As a result, each switch continue to send traffic on the ports connected to the failed link. When UDLD is enabled on the trunk ports on each switch, the switches detect the failed link, block the ports connected to the failed link, and use the remaining ports in the trunk group to forward the traffic.

Similarly, UDLD is effective for monitoring fiber optic links that use two uni-direction fibers to transmit and receive packets. Without UDLD, if a fiber breaks in one direction, a fiber port may assume the link is still good (because the other direction is operating normally) and continue to send traffic on the connected ports. UDLD-enabled ports; however, will prevent traffic from being sent across a bad link by blocking the ports in the event that either the individual transmitter or receiver for that connection fails.

Ports enabled for UDLD exchange health-check packets once every five seconds (the link-keepalive interval). If a port does not receive a health-check packet from the port at the other end of the link within the keepalive interval, the port waits for four more intervals. If the port still does not receive a health-check packet after waiting for five intervals, the port concludes that the link has failed and blocks the UDLD-enabled port.

When a port is blocked by UDLD, the event is recorded in the switch log or via an SNMP trap (if configured); and other port blocking protocols, like spanning tree or meshing, will not use the bad link to load balance packets. The port will remain blocked until the link is unplugged, disabled, or fixed. The port can also be unblocked by disabling UDLD on the port.

## Configuring UDLD

When configuring UDLD, keep the following considerations in mind:

- UDLD is configured on a per-port basis and must be enabled at both ends of the link. See the note below for a list of switches that support UDLD.
- To configure UDLD on a trunk group, you must configure the feature on each port of the group individually. Configuring UDLD on a trunk group's primary port enables the feature on that port only.
- Dynamic trunking is not supported. If you want to configure a trunk group that contains ports on which UDLD is enabled, you must remove the UDLD configuration from the ports. After you create the trunk group, you can re-add the UDLD configuration.

## Configuring uni-directional link detection (UDLD) (CLI)

For detailed information about UDLD, see [Uni-directional link detection \(UDLD\)](#) on page 74.

### Syntax:

```
no interface <port-list> link-keepalive
```

Enables UDLD on a port or range of ports.

To disable this feature, enter the `no` form of the command.

Default: UDLD disabled

### Syntax:

```
link-keepalive interval <interval>
```

Determines the time interval to send UDLD control packets. The *interval* parameter specifies how often the ports send a UDLD packet. You can specify from 10 to 100, in 100-ms increments, where 10 is 1 second, 11 is 1.1 seconds, and so on.

Default: 50 (5 seconds)

### Syntax:

```
link-keepalive retries <num>
```

Determines the maximum number of retries to send UDLD control packets. The *num* parameter specifies the maximum number of times the port will try the health check. You can specify a value from 3 to 10.

Default: 5

**Syntax:**

```
no interface <port-list> link-keepalive vlan <vid>
```

Assigns a VLAN ID to a UDLD-enabled port for sending tagged UDLD control packets. Under default settings, untagged UDLD packets can still be transmitted and received on tagged only ports; however, a warning message is logged.

The `no` form of the command disables UDLD on the specified ports.

Default: UDLD packets are untagged; tagged-only ports transmit and receive untagged UDLD control packets

## Enabling UDLD (CLI)

UDLD is enabled on a per-port basis.

**Example:**

To enable UDLD on port a1, enter:

```
switch(config)#interface a1 link-keepalive
```

To enable the feature on a trunk group, enter the appropriate port range. For example:

```
switch(config)#interface a1-a4 link-keepalive
```

**NOTE:**

When at least one port is UDLD-enabled, the switch will forward out UDLD packets that arrive on non-UDLD-configured ports out of all other non-UDLD-configured ports in the same vlan. That is, UDLD control packets will “pass through” a port that is not configured for UDLD. However, UDLD packets will be dropped on any blocked ports that are not configured for UDLD.

## Changing the keepalive interval (CLI)

By default, ports enabled for UDLD send a link health-check packet once every 5 seconds. You can change the interval to a value from 10 to 100 deciseconds, where 10 is 1 second, 11 is 1.1 seconds, and so on.

**Example:**

To change the packet interval to seven seconds, enter the following command at the global configuration level:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive interval 70
```

## Changing the keepalive retries (CLI)

By default, a port waits 5 seconds to receive a health-check reply packet from the port at the other end of the link. If the port does not receive a reply, the port tries four more times by sending up to four more health-check packets. If the port still does not receive a reply after the maximum number of retries, the port goes down.

You can change the maximum number of keepalive attempts to a value from 3 to 10.

**Example:**

To change the maximum number of attempts to four, enter the following command at the global configuration level:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive retries 4
```



## Configuring UDLD for tagged ports

The default implementation of UDLD sends the UDLD control packets untagged, even across tagged ports. If an untagged UDLD packet is received by a non-HPE switch, that switch may reject the packet. To avoid such an occurrence, you can configure ports to send out UDLD control packets that are tagged with a specified VLAN.

To enable ports to receive and send UDLD control packets tagged with a specific VLAN ID, enter a command such as the following at the interface configuration level:

```
switch(config)#interface link-keepalive vlan 22
```



### NOTE:

- You must configure the same VLANs that will be used for UDLD on all devices across the network; otherwise, the UDLD link cannot be maintained.
- If a VLAN ID is not specified, UDLD control packets are sent out of the port as untagged packets.
- To re-assign a VLAN ID, re-enter the command with the new VLAN ID number. The new command overwrites the previous command setting.
- When configuring UDLD for tagged ports, you may receive a warning message if there are any inconsistencies with the VLAN configuration of the port.

## Viewing UDLD information (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
show link-keepalive
```

Displays all the ports that are enabled for `link-keepalive`.

### Syntax:

```
show link-keepalive statistics
```

Displays detailed statistics for the UDLD-enabled ports on the switch.

### Syntax:

```
clear link-keepalive statistics
```

Clears UDLD statistics. This command clears the packets sent, packets received, and transitions counters in the `show link-keepalive statistics display`.

## Viewing summary information on all UDLD-enabled ports (CLI)

Enter the `show link-keepalive` command.

### Example:

**Figure 10:** Example: of `show link-keepalive` command

```
Switch(config)# show link-keepalive
```

Total link-keepalive enabled ports: 4  
Keepalive Retries: 3              Keepalive Interval: 1 sec

Port	Enabled	Physical Status	Keepalive Status	Adjacent Switch	UDLD VLAN
1	Yes	up	up	00d9d-f9b700	200
2	Yes	up	up	01560-7b1600	
3	Yes	down	off-line		
4	Yes	up	failure		
5	No	down	off-line		

Port 1 is UDLD-enabled, and tagged for a specific VLAN.

Port 3 is UDLD-enabled, but has no physical connection.

Port 4 is connected, but is blocked due to a link-keepalive failure

Port 5 has been disabled by the System Administrator.

## Viewing detailed UDLD information for specific ports (CLI)

Enter the `show link-keepalive statistics` command.

### Example:

**Figure 11:** Example: of `show link-keepalive statistics` command

```
Switch(config)# show link-keepalive statistics
```

Port:	1	Ports 1 and 2 are UDLD-enabled and show the number of health check packets sent and received on each port.	
Current State:	up	Neighbor MAC Addr:	0000a1-b1c1d1
Udld Packets Sent:	1000	Neighbor Port:	5
Udld Packets Received:	1000	State Transitions:	2
Port Blocking:	no	Link-vlan:	1
Port:	2		
Current State:	up	Neighbor MAC Addr:	000102-030405
Udld Packets Sent:	500	Neighbor Port:	6
Udld Packets Received:	450	State Transitions:	3
Port Blocking:	no	Link-vlan:	200
Port:	3		
Current State:	off line	Neighbor MAC Addr:	n/a
Udld Packets Sent:	0	Neighbor Port:	n/a
Udld Packets Received:	0	State Transitions:	0
Port Blocking:	no	Link-vlan:	1
Port:	4	Port 4 is shown as blocked due to a link-keepalive failure	
Current State:	failure	Neighbor MAC Addr:	n/a
Udld Packets Sent:	128	Neighbor Port:	n/a
Udld Packets Received:	50	State Transitions:	8
Port Blocking:	yes	Link-vlan:	1

## Clearing UDLD statistics (CLI)

Enter the following command:

```
switch# clear link-keepalive statistics
```

This command clears the packets sent, packets received, and transitions counters in the `show link-keepalive statistics` display (see **Figure 11: Example: of show link-keepalive statistics command** on page 78 for an Example:).

## Introduction to PoE

PoE technology allows IP telephones, wireless LAN access points, and other appliances to receive power and transfer data over existing ethernet LAN cabling. For more information about PoE technology, see the *PoE/PoE+ planning and implementation guide*, which is available on the Networking website at <http://www.hpe.com/networking>. Enter your Switch number.

Additionally, PoE+ provides more power-management capability, allowing the switch to have more power available for more PDs. Power can be allocated exactly and automatically according to what the PD actually requires at a given time.

### PoE terminology

PoE and PoE+ operate similarly in most cases. Any differences between PoE and PoE+ operation are noted; otherwise, the term "PoE" is used to designate both PoE and PoE+ functionality.

## Planning and implementing a PoE configuration

This section provides an overview of some considerations for planning a PoE application. For additional information on this topic, refer to the PoE/PoE+ planning and implementation guide which is available on the Networking web site at <http://www.hpe.com/networking>.

Some of the elements you may want to consider for a PoE installation include:

- Port assignments to VLANs
- Use of security features
- Power requirements

This section can help you to plan your PoE installation. If you use multiple VLANs in your network, or if you have concerns about network security, you should read the first two topics. If your PoE installation comes close to (or is likely to exceed) the system's ability to supply power to all devices that may request it, then you should also read the third topic. (If it is unlikely that your installation will even approach a full utilization of the PoE power available, then you may find it unnecessary to spend much time on calculating PoE power scenarios.)

### Power requirements

To get the best PoE performance, you should provide enough PoE power to exceed the maximum amount of power that is needed by all the PDs that are being used.

By connecting an external power supply you can optionally provision more PoE wattage per port and or supply the switch with redundant 12V power to operate should an internal power supply fail.

See the PoE/PoE+ planning and implementation guide for detailed information about the PoE/PoE+ power requirements for your switch.

### Assigning PoE ports to VLANs

If your network includes VLANs, you may want to assign various PoE-configured ports to specific VLANs. For example, if you are using PoE telephones in your network, you may want to assign ports used for telephone access to a VLAN reserved for telephone traffic.

## Applying security features to PoE configurations

You can use the port security features built into the switch to control device or user access to the network through PoE ports in the same way as non-PoE ports. Using Port Security, you can configure each switch port with a unique list of MAC addresses for devices that are authorized to access the network through that port. For more information, refer to the titled “Configuring and Monitoring Port Security” in the access security guide for your switch.

## Assigning priority policies to PoE traffic

You can use the configurable QoS (Quality of Service) features in the switch to create prioritization policies for traffic moving through PoE ports. The table below lists the available classifiers and their order of precedence.

**Table 6:** *Classifiers for prioritizing outbound packets*

Priority	QoS classifier
1	UDP/TCP application type (port)
2	Device priority (destination or source IP address)
3	IP type of service (ToS) field (IP packets only)
4	VLAN priority
5	Incoming source-port on the switch
6	Incoming 802.1 priority (present in tagged VLAN environments)

For more on this topic, refer to the titled “Quality of Service: Managing Bandwidth More Effectively” in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

## PoE operation

Using the commands described in this chapter, you can:

- Enable or disable PoE operation on individual ports.
- Monitor PoE status and performance.
- Configure a non-default power threshold for SNMP and Event Log reporting of PoE consumption on either all PoE ports on the switch or on all PoE ports.
- Specify the port priority you want to use for provisioning PoE power in the event that the PoE resources become oversubscribed.

A PSE detects the power needed by a connected PD before supplying that power via a phase referred to as “searching”. If the PSE cannot supply the required amount of power, it does not supply any power. For PoE using a Type 1 device, a PSE will not supply any power to a PD unless the PSE has at least 17 watts available. For example, if a PSE has a maximum available power of 382 watts and is already supplying 378 watts, and is then connected to a PD requiring 10 watts, the PSE will not supply power to the PD.

For PoE+ using Type 2 devices, the PSE must have at least 33 watts available.

## Configuration options

In the default configuration, all ports in a switch covered in this guide are configured to support PoE operation. You can:

- Disable or re-enable per-port PoE operation on individual ports to help control power usage and avoid oversubscribing PoE resources.
- Configure per-port priority for allocating power in case a PoE device becomes oversubscribed and must drop power for some lower-priority ports to support the demand on other, higher-priority ports.
- Manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by usage, value, or class.
- Allocate PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.



### NOTE:

The ports support standard networking links and PoE links. You can connect either a non-PoE device or a PD to a port enabled for PoE without reconfiguring the port.

## PD support

To best utilize the allocated PoE power, spread your connected PoE devices as evenly as possible. Depending on the amount of power the power supply device delivers to a PoE switch, there may or may not always be enough power available to connect and support PoE operation on all the ports. When a new PD connects to a PoE switch and the switch does not have enough power left for that port:

- If the new PD connects to a port “X” having a **higher** PoE priority than another port “Y” that is already supporting another PD, then the power is removed from port “Y” and delivered to port “X”. In this case the PD on port “Y” loses power and the PD on port “X” receives power.
- If the new PD connects to a port “X” having a **lower** priority than all other PoE ports currently providing power to PDs, then power is not supplied to port “X” until one or more PDs using higher priority ports are removed.

In the default configuration (`usage`), when a PD connects to a PoE port and begins operating, the port retains only enough PoE power to support the PD's operation. Unused power becomes available for supporting other PD connections. However, if you configure the `poe-allocate-by` option to either `value` or `class`, all of the power configured is allocated to the port.

For PoE (not PoE+), while 17 watts must be available for a PoE module on the switch to begin supplying power to a port with a PD connected, 17 watts per port is not continually required if the connected PD requires less power. For example, with 20 watts of PoE power remaining available on a module, you can connect one new PD without losing power to any connected PDs on that module. If that PD draws only 3 watts, 17 watts remain available, and you can connect at least one more PD to that module without interrupting power to any other PoE devices connected to the same module. If the next PD you connect draws 5 watts, only 12 watts remain unused. With only 12 unused watts available, if you then connect yet another PD to a higher-priority PoE port, the lowest-priority port on the module loses PoE power and remains unpowered until the module once again has 17 or more watts available. (For information on power priority, see [Power priority operation](#) on page 82.)

For PoE+, there must be 33 watts available for the module to begin supplying power to a port with a PD connected.

Disconnecting a PD from a PoE port makes that power available to any other PoE ports with PDs waiting for power. If the PD demand for power becomes greater than the PoE power available, power is transferred from the lower-priority ports to the higher-priority ports. (Ports not currently providing power to PDs are not affected.)

## Power priority operation

## When is power allocation prioritized?

If a PSE can provide power for all connected PD demand, it does not use its power priority settings to allocate power. However, if the PD power demand oversubscribes the available power, then the power allocation is prioritized to the ports that present a PD power demand. This causes the loss of power from one or more lower-priority ports to meet the power demand on other, higher-priority ports. This operation occurs regardless of the order in which PDs connect to the switch's PoE-enabled ports.

## How is power allocation prioritized?

There are two ways that PoE power is prioritized:

- Using a **priority class** method, a power priority of **Low** (the default), **High**, or **Critical** is assigned to each enabled PoE port.
- Using a **port-number priority** method, a lower-numbered port has priority over a higher-numbered port within the same configured priority class. For example, port A1 has priority over port A5 if both are configured with **High** priority.

## Configuring PoE operation

In the default configuration, PoE support is enabled on the ports in a PoE switch. The default priority for all ports is **Low** and the default power notification threshold is **80** (%).

Using the CLI, you can:

- Disable or re-enable PoE operation on individual PoE ports
- Enable support for pre-standard devices
- Change the PoE priority level on individual PoE ports
- Change the threshold for generating a power level notice
- Manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by usage, value, or class
- Allocate PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP

## Disabling or re-enabling PoE port operation

### Syntax:

```
no interface <port-list> power-over-ethernet
```

Re-enables PoE operation on <port-list> and restores the priority setting in effect when PoE was disabled on <port-list>.

The **no** form of the command disables PoE operation on <port-list>.

Default: All PoE ports are initially enabled for PoE operation at **Low** priority. If you configure a higher priority, this priority is retained until you change it.

## Enabling support for pre-standard devices

The switches covered in this guide also support some pre-802.3af devices. For a list of the supported devices, see the FAQ for your switch model.

### Syntax:

```
no power-over-ethernet pre-std-detect
```

Detects and powers pre-802.3af standard devices.



**NOTE:** The default setting for the `pre-std-detect` PoE parameter changed. In earlier software the default setting is “on”. The default setting is “off”.

## Configuring the PoE port priority

### Syntax:

```
interface <port-list> power-over-ethernet [critical | high | low]
```

Reconfigures the PoE priority level on *<port-list>*. For a given level, ports are prioritized by port number in ascending order. For example, if ports A1-A24 have a priority level of critical, port A1 has priority over ports A2-A24.

If there is not enough power available to provision all active PoE ports at a given priority level, the lowest-numbered port at that level is provisioned first. PoE priorities are invoked only when all active PoE ports cannot be provisioned (supplied with PoE power)

Critical	Specifies the highest-priority PoE support for <i>&lt;port-list&gt;</i> . The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned before the PoE ports at any other level are provisioned.
High	Specifies the second priority PoE support for <i>&lt;port-list&gt;</i> . The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned before the Low priority PoE ports are provisioned.
Low	(Default) Specifies the third priority PoE support for <i>&lt;port-list&gt;</i> . The active PoE ports at this level are provisioned only if there is power available after provisioning any active PoE ports at the higher priority levels.

## Controlling PoE allocation

The default option for PoE allocation is `usage`, which is what a PD attached to the port is allocated. You can override this value by specifying the amount of power allocated to a port by using the `class` or `value` options.

### Syntax:

```
no int <port-list> poe-allocate-by [usage | class | value]
```

Allows you to manually allocate the amount of PoE power for a port by either its class or a defined value.

usage	The automatic allocation by a PD
class	Uses the power ramp-up signature of the PD to identify which power class the device will be in. Classes and their ranges are shown in the table below.
value	<b>A user-defined level of PoE power allocated for that port.</b>



**NOTE:** The allowable PD requirements are lower than those specified for PSEs to allow for power losses along the Cat-5 cable.



**Table 7: Power classes and their values**

Power class	Value
0	Depends on cable type and PoE architecture. Maximum power level output of 15.4 watts at the PSE. This is the default class; if there is not enough information about the load for a specific classification, the PSE classifies the load as class 0 (zero).
1	Requires at least 4 watts at the PSE.
2	Requires at least 7 watts at the PSE.
3	15.4 watts
4	For PoE+Maximum power level output of 30 watts at the PSE.

**Example:**

To allocate by class for ports 6 to 8:

```
switch(config)# int 6-8 PoE-allocate-by class
```

## Manually configuring PoE power levels

You can specify a power level (in watts) allocated for a port by using the `value` option. This is the maximum amount of power that will be delivered.

To configure a port by value:

**Procedure**

1. Set the PoE allocation by entering the `poe-allocate-by value` command:

```
switch(config) # int A6 poe-allocate-by value
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-A6) # poe-allocate-by value
```

2. Select a value:

```
switch(config) # int A6 poe-value 15
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-A6) # poe-value 15
```

To view the settings, enter the `show power-over-ethernet` command, shown in **Figure 12: PoE allocation by value and the maximum power delivered** on page 86.

**Figure 12: PoE allocation by value and the maximum power delivered**

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet A6

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A6

Power Enable      : Yes
Priority           : low
AllocateBy        : value
Detection Status  : Delivering
LLDP Detect       : enabled
Configured Type   :
Value             : 15 W 1
Power Class       : 2

Over Current Cnt  : 0
Power Denied Cnt  : 0
MPS Absent Cnt   : 0
Short Cnt         : 0

Voltage           : 55.1 V
Current           : 154 mA
Power             : 8.4 W
```

<sup>1</sup>Maximum power delivered.

If you set the PoE maximum value to less than what the PD requires, a fault occurs, as shown in **Figure 13: PoE power value set too low for the PD** on page 86.

**Figure 13: PoE power value set too low for the PD**

```
switch(config)# int A7 poe-value 4

switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet A7

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A7

Power Enable      : Yes
Priority           : low
AllocateBy        : value
Detection Status  : fault 1
LLDP Detect       : enabled
Configured Type   :
Value             : 4 W
Power Class       : 2

Over Current Cnt  : 1
Power Denied Cnt  : 2
MPS Absent Cnt   : 0
Short Cnt         : 0

Voltage           : 55.1 V
Current           : 154 mA
Power             : 8.4 W
```

<sup>1</sup>'Fault' appears when the PoE power value is set too low.

## Configuring PoE redundancy

When PoE redundancy is enabled, PoE redundancy occurs automatically. The switch keeps track of power use and will not supply PoE power to additional PoE devices trying to connect if that results in the switch not having enough power in reserve for redundancy if one of the power supplies should fail.

### Syntax:

```
no power-over-ethernet redundancy [n+1 | full]
```

Allows you to set the amount of power held in reserve for redundancy.

no	Means that all available power can be allocated to PDs.Default: No PoE redundancy enforced.
n+1	One of the power supplies is held in reserve for redundancy. If a single power supply fails, no powered devices are shut down.If power supplies with different ratings are used, the highest-rated power supply is held in reserve to ensure full redundancy.
full	Half of the available power supply is held in reserve for redundancy. If power supplies with different ratings are used, the highest-rated power supply is held in reserve to ensure full redundancy.

For more information about PoE redundancy and power supplies, see the PoE/PoE+ planning and implementation guide, available on the website at <http://www.hpe.com/networking>. Auto search the model number for your switch, For example, “Aruba switch 2930”, then select the device from the list, and click on **Product manuals**. Click on the “Setup and install — general” link under **Manuals**.

## Changing the threshold for generating a power notice

You can configure one of the following thresholds:

- A global power threshold that applies to all ports on the switch. This setting acts as a trigger for sending a notice when the PoE power consumption on any PoE port installed in the switch crosses the configured global threshold level. (Crossing the threshold level in either direction—PoE power usage either increasing or decreasing— triggers the notice.) The default setting is 80%.
- A per-slot power threshold that applies to an individual PoE module installed in the designated slot. This setting acts as a trigger for sending a notice when the module in the specified slot exceeds or goes below a specific level of PoE power consumption.



**NOTE:** Some switches covered by this manual provide a single fixed slot.

### Syntax:

```
power-over-ethernet [slot < slot-id-range >] threshold <1-99>
```

This command specifies the PoE usage level (as a percentage of the PoE power available on a module) at which the switch generates a power usage notice. This notice appears as an SNMP trap and a corresponding Event Log message and occurs when a PoE module's power consumption crosses the configured threshold value. That is, the switch generates a notice whenever the power consumption on a module either exceeds or drops below the specified percentage of the total PoE power available on the module.

This command configures the notification threshold for PoE power usage on either a global or per-module (slot) basis.

Without the `[slot PoE <slot-id-range>]` option, the switch applies one power threshold setting on all PoE modules installed in the switch.

### Example:

Suppose slots A, B, and C each have a PoE module installed. In this case, executing the following command sets the global notification threshold to 70% of available PoE power:

```
switch(config)# power-over-ethernet threshold 70
```

With this setting, if module B is allocated 100 watts of PoE power and is using 68 watts, and then another PD is connected to the module in slot B that uses 8 watts, the 70% threshold of 70 watts is exceeded. The switch sends an SNMP trap and generates this Event Log message:

```
Slot B POE usage has exceeded threshold of 70%.
```

If the switch is configured for debug logging, it also sends the Event Log message to the configured debug destination(s).

On any PoE module, if an increasing PoE power load (1) exceeds the configured power threshold (which triggers the log message and SNMP trap), and then (2) later decreases and drops below the threshold again, the switch generates another SNMP trap, plus a message to the Event Log and any configured Debug destinations.

To continue the preceding Example:, if the PoE power usage on the PoE module in slot B drops below 70%, another SNMP trap is generated and you will see this message in the Event Log:

```
Slot B POE usage is below threshold of 70%.
```

For a message listing, please see the event log message reference guide for your switch. Go to <http://www.hpe.com/networking>; auto search the model number for your switch, for Example: “Aruba Switch 2920”, then select the device from the list and click on **Product manuals**. Click on the “User guide” link under **Manuals**.

(Default Global PoE Power Threshold: **80**). By using the `[slot <slot-id-range>]` option, you can specify different notification thresholds for different PoE modules installed in the switch. For example, you could set the power threshold for a PoE module in slot “A” to 75% and the threshold for the module in slot “B” to 68% by executing the following two commands:

```
switch(config)# power-over-ethernet slot a threshold 75
```

```
switch(config)# power-over-ethernet slot b threshold 68
```



**NOTE:** The last `threshold` command affecting a given slot supersedes the previous threshold command affecting the same slot. Thus, executing the following two commands in the order shown sets the threshold for the PoE module in slot “D” to 75%, but leaves the thresholds for any PoE modules in the other slots at 90%.

```
switch(config)# power-over-ethernet threshold 90
```

```
switch(config)# power-over-ethernet slot d threshold 75
```

If you reverse the order of the above two commands, all PoE modules in the switch will have a threshold of 90%.

## PoE/PoE+ allocation using LLDP information

### LLDP with PoE

When using PoE, enabling `poe-lldp-detect` allows automatic power configuration if the link partner supports PoE. When LLDP is enabled, the information about the power usage of the PD is available, and the switch can then comply with or ignore this information. You can configure PoE on each port according to the PD (IP phone, wireless device, and so on) specified in the LLDP field. The default configuration is for PoE information to be ignored if detected through LLDP.



**NOTE:**

Detecting PoE information via LLDP affects only power delivery; it does not affect normal Ethernet connectivity.

## Enabling or disabling ports for allocating power using LLDP

### Syntax:

```
int <port-list> poe-lldp-detect [enabled | disabled]
```

Enables or disables ports for allocating PoE power based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.

Default: Disabled

### Example:

You can enter this command to enable LLDP detection:

```
switch(config) # int A7 poe-lldp-detect enabled
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-A7) # poe-lldp-detect enabled
```

## Enabling PoE detection via LLDP TLV advertisement

Use this command and insert the desired port or ports:

```
switch(config) # lldp config <port-number> medTlvenable poe
```

## LLDP with PoE+

### Overview

The data link layer classification DLC for PoE provides more exact control over the power requirement between a PSE and PD. The DLC works in conjunction with the physical layer classification PLC and is mandatory for any Type-2 PD that requires more than 12.95 watts of input power.



#### NOTE:

DLC is defined as part of the IEEE 802.3at standard.

The power negotiation between a PSE and a PD can be implemented at the physical layer or at the data link layer. After the link is powered at the physical layer, the PSE can use LLDP to repeatedly query the PD to discover the power needs of the PD. Communication over the data link layer allows finer control of power allotment, which makes it possible for the PSE to supply dynamically the power levels needed by the PD. Using LLDP is optional for the PSE but mandatory for a Type 2 PD that requires more than 12.95 watts of power.

If the power needed by the PD is not available, that port is shut off.

### PoE allocation

LLDP can negotiate power with a PD by using LLDP MED TLVs (disabled by default). This can be enabled using the `int <port-list> PoE-lldp-detect [enabled|disabled]` command, as shown below. LLDP MED TLVs sent by the PD are used to negotiate power only if the LLDP PoE+ TLV is disabled or inactive; if the LLDP PoE+ TLV is sent as well (not likely), the LLDP MED TLV is ignored.

Enabling `PoE-lldp-detect` allows the data link layer to be used for power negotiation. When a PD requests power on a PoE port, LLDP interacts with PoE to see if there is enough power to fulfill the request. Power is set at the level requested. If the PD goes into power-saving mode, the power supplied is reduced; if the need for power increases, the amount supplied is increased. PoE and LLDP interact to meet the current power demands.

### Syntax:

```
int <port-list> poe-lldp-detect [enabled | disabled]
```

Allows the data link layer to be used for power negotiation between a PD on a PoE port and LLDP.

Default: Disabled

#### Example:

You can enter this command to enable LLDP detection:

```
switch(config) # int 7 PoE-lldp-detect enabled
```

or in interface context:

```
switch(eth-7) # PoE-lldp-detect enabled
```



#### NOTE:

Detecting PoE information via LLDP affects only power delivery; it does not affect normal Ethernet connectivity.

You can view the settings by entering the `show power-over-ethernet brief` command, as shown in **Port with LLDP configuration information obtained from the device** on page 90.

#### Port with LLDP configuration information obtained from the device

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status

System Power Status : No redundancy  
PoE Power Status : No redundancy

Available: 300 W Used: 0 W Remaining: 300 W

Module A Power

Available: 300 W Used: 5 W Remaining: 295 W

POE Port	Power Enable	Power Priority	Alloc By	Alloc Power	Actual Power	Configured Type	Detection Status	Power Class
A1	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W	Phone1	Delivering	1
A2	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A3	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A4	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A5	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A6	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0

## Viewing PoE when using LLDP information

### Viewing LLDP port configuration

To view information about LLDP port configuration, use the `show lldp config` command.

#### Syntax:

```
show lldp config <port-list>
```

Displays the LLDP port configuration information, including the TLVs advertised.

#### LLDP port configuration information with PoE

```
switch(config)# show lldp config 4
```

#### LLCP Port Configuration Detail

```
Port : 4
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationsEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
```

#### TLVS Advertised:

```
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap

* capabilities
* network_policy
* location_id
* poe

* macphy_config
* poeplus_config
```

#### IpAddress Advertised:

**Local power information** on page 91 shows an Example: of the local device power information using the `show lldp info local-device <port-list>` command.

### Local power information

```
switch(config)# show lldp info local-device A1
```

#### LLCP Local Port Information Detail

```
Port      : A1
PortType  : local
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : A1
Pvid      : 1
```

#### Poe Plus Information Detail

```
Poe Device Type      : Type2 PSE
Power Source         : Primary
Power Priority        : low
PD Requested Power Value : 20 Watts
PSE Actual Power Value : 20 Watts
```

**Remote power information** on page 91 shows the remote device power information using the `show lldp info remote-device <port-list>` command.

### Remote power information

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device A3
```

#### LLCP Remote Device Information Detail

```
Local Port      : A3
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : 00 16 35 ff 2d 40
PortType        : local
PortId          : 23
SysName         : Switch
```

```

System Descr : Switch, revision W.14.xx
PortDescr    : 23
Pvid         : 55

System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge

Remote Management Address
  Type      : ipv4
  Address   : 10.0.102.198

Poe Plus Information Detail

  Poe Device Type      : Type2 PD
  Power Source         : Only PSE
  Power Priority        : low
  PD Requested Power Value : 20 Watts
  PSE Actual Power Value  : 20 Watts

```

## Operating note

The advertisement of power with TLVs for LLDP PoE+ is enabled by default. If LLDP is disabled at runtime and a PD is using PoE+ power that has been negotiated through LLDP, there will be a temporary power drop. The port will begin using PoE+ power through the PLC. This event is recorded in the event log. An Example: message would look like the following:

```

W 08/04/13 13:35:50 02768 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped.
Exceeded physical classification for a PoE Type1 device
(LLDP process disabled)

```

When LLDP is enabled again, it causes a temporary power drop. This event is also recorded in the event log. An Example: message looks like the following:

```

W 08/04/13 13:36:31 02771 ports: Port A1 PoE power dropped.
Exceeded physical classification due to change in
classification type (LLDP process enabled)

```

## Viewing the global PoE power status of the switch

### Syntax:

```
show power-over-ethernet [brief | [[ethernet] <port-list>] | [slot <slot-id-range> | all>]]
```

Displays the switch's global PoE power status, including:

- **Total Available Power**

Lists the maximum PoE wattage available to provision active PoE ports on the switch. This is the amount of usable power for PDs.

- **Total Failover Power**

Lists the amount of PoE power available in the event of a single power supply failure. This is the amount of power the switch can maintain without dropping any PDs.

- **Total Redundancy Power**

Indicates the amount of PoE power held in reserve for redundancy in case of a power supply failure.

- **Total Remaining Power**

The amount of PoE power still available.



<code>brief</code>	Displays PoE information for each port. See <a href="#">Viewing PoE status on all ports</a> on page 93.
<code>&lt;port-list&gt;</code>	Displays PoE information for the ports in port-list. See <a href="#">Viewing the PoE status on specific ports</a> on page 95.
<code>&lt;slot-id-range&gt;</code>	Displays PoE information for the selected slots. See <a href="#">Showing the PoE information by slot</a> ). Enter the <code>all</code> option to display the PoE information for all slots.

The `show power-over-ethernet` displays data similar to that shown in [show power-over-ethernet command output](#) on page 93.

#### show power-over-ethernet command output

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet

Status and Counters - System Power Status

Pre-standard Detect    : On
System Power Status    : No redundancy
PoE Power Status       : No redundancy

Chassis power-over-ethernet

Total Available Power  : 600 W
Total Failover Power   : 300 W
Total Redundancy Power : 0 W
Total Used Power       : 9 W +/- 6W
Total Remaining Power  : 591 W

Internal Power
 1 300W/POE /Connected.
 2 300W/POE /Connected.
 3 Not Connected.
 4 Not Connected.

External Power
EPS1 /Not Connected.
EPS2 /Not Connected.
```

## Viewing PoE status on all ports

### Syntax:

```
show power-over-ethernet brief
```

Displays the port power status:

<b>PoE Port</b>	Lists all PoE-capable ports on the switch.
<b>Power Enable</b>	Shows <b>Yes</b> for ports enabled to support PoE (the default) and <b>No</b> for ports on which PoE is disabled.
<b>Power Priority</b>	Lists the power priority ( <b>Low</b> , <b>High</b> , and <b>Critical</b> ) configured on ports enabled for PoE. (For more information on this topic, see <a href="#">Configuring PoE operation</a> on page 83.)

*Table Continued*

<b>Alloc by</b>	Displays how PoE is allocated ( <b>usage, class, value</b> ).
<b>Alloc Power</b>	The maximum amount of PoE power allocated for that port (expressed in watts).Default: 17 watts for PoE; 33 watts for PoE+.
<b>Actual Power</b>	The power actually being used on that port.
<b>Configured Type</b>	If configured, shows the user-specified identifier for the port. If not configured, this field is empty.
<b>Detection Status</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Searching:</b> The port is trying to detect a PD connection.</li> <li>• <b>Delivering:</b> The port is delivering power to a PD.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> On the indicated port, either PoE support is disabled or PoE power is enabled but the PoE module does not have enough power available to supply the port's power needs.</li> <li>• <b>Fault:</b> The switch detects a problem with the connected PD.</li> <li>• <b>Other Fault:</b> The switch has detected an internal fault that prevents it from supplying power on that port.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Class</b>	Shows the 802.3af power class of the PD detected on the indicated port. Classes include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>0:</b> 0.44 to 12.95 watts can be drawn by the PD. Default class.</li> <li>• <b>1:</b> 0.44 to 3.84 watts</li> <li>• <b>2:</b> 3.84 to 6.49 watts</li> <li>• <b>3:</b> 6.49 to 12.95 watts</li> <li>• <b>4:</b> For PoE+; up to 25.5 watts can be drawn by the PD</li> </ul>

The `show power-over-ethernet brief` displays this output:

#### **show power-over-ethernet brief command output**

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet brief
```

Status and Counters - System Power Status

System Power Status : No redundancy

PoE Power Status : No redundancy

Available: 600 W Used: 9 W Remaining: 591 W

Module A Power

Available: 408 W Used: 9 W Remaining: 399 W

POE Port	Power Enable	Power Priority	Alloc By	Alloc Power	Actual Power	Configured Type	Detection Status	Power Class
-----	+	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
A1	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A2	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A3	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A4	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A5	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0
A6	Yes	low	usage	17 W	8.4 W		Delivering	2
A7	Yes	low	usage	17 W	0.0 W		Searching	0

A8	Yes	low	usage 17 W	0.0 W	Searching	0
A9	Yes	low	usage 17 W	0.0 W	Searching	0

You can also show the PoE information by slot:

### Showing the PoE information by slot

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet slot A
```

Status and Counters - System Power Status for slot A

```
Maximum Power      : 408 W          Operational Status : On
Power In Use       : 9 W +/- 6 W    Usage Threshold (%) : 80
```

## Viewing the PoE status on specific ports

### Syntax:

```
show power-over-ethernet <port-list>
```

Displays the following PoE status and statistics (since the last reboot) for each port in <port-list> :

<b>Power Enable</b>	Shows <b>Yes</b> for ports enabled to support PoE (the default) and <b>No</b> for ports on which PoE is disabled. For ports on which power is disabled, this is the only field displayed by <code>show power-over-ethernet &lt;port-list&gt;</code> .
<b>Priority</b>	Lists the power priority ( <b>Low</b> , <b>High</b> , and <b>Critical</b> ) configured on ports enabled for PoE. (For more on this topic, see <a href="#">Configuring PoE operation</a> on page 83.)
<b>Allocate by</b>	How PoE is allocated ( <b>usage</b> , <b>class</b> , <b>value</b> ).
<b>Detection Status</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Searching:</b> The port is trying to detect a PD connection.</li> <li>• <b>Delivering:</b> The port is delivering power to a PD.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> On the indicated port, either PoE support is disabled or PoE power is enabled but the PoE module does not have enough power available to supply the port's power needs.</li> <li>• <b>Fault:</b> The switch detects a problem with the connected PD.</li> <li>• <b>Other Fault:</b> The switch has detected an internal fault that prevents it from supplying power on that port.</li> </ul>
<b>Over Current Cnt</b>	Shows the number of times a connected PD has attempted to draw more than 15.4 watts for PoE or 24.5 watts for PoE+. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message.
<b>Power Denied Cnt</b>	Shows the number of times PDs requesting power on the port have been denied because of insufficient power available. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message.
<b>Voltage</b>	The total voltage, in volts, being delivered to PDs.
<b>Power</b>	The total power, in watts, being delivered to PDs.
<b>LLDP Detect</b>	Port is enabled or disabled for allocating PoE power, based on the link-partner's capabilities via LLDP.

*Table Continued*

<b>Configured Type</b>	If configured, shows the user-specified identifier for the port. If not configured, the field is empty.
<b>Value</b>	The maximum amount of PoE power allocated for that port (expressed in watts). Default: <b>17 watts</b> for PoE; <b>33 watts</b> for PoE+
<b>Power Class</b>	Shows the power class of the PD detected on the indicated port. Classes include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>0:</b> 0.44 to 12.95 watts</li> <li>• <b>1:</b> 0.44 to 3.84 watts</li> <li>• <b>2:</b> 3.84 to 6.49 watts</li> <li>• <b>3:</b> 6.49 to 12.95 watts</li> <li>• <b>4:</b> For PoE+; up to 25.5 watts can be drawn by the PD</li> </ul>
<b>MPS Absent Cnt</b>	Shows the number of times a detected PD has no longer requested power from the port. Each occurrence generates an Event Log message. ("MPS" refers to the "maintenance power signature.")
<b>Short Cnt</b>	Shows the number of times the switch provided insufficient current to a connected PD.
<b>Current</b>	The total current, in mA, being delivered to PDs.

If you want to view the PoE status of ports A6 and A7, you would use `show power-over-ethernet A6-A7` to display the data:

#### **show power-over-ethernet <port-list> output**

```
switch(config)# show power-over-ethernet slot A6-A7
```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A6

```

Power Enable      : Yes
Priority          : low
AllocateBy       : value
Detection Status  : Delivering
LLDP Detect       : enabled
Configured Type   :
Value            : 17 W
Power Class       : 2

Over Current Cnt  : 0
Power Denied Cnt  : 0
MPS Absent Cnt   : 0
Short Cnt         : 0

Voltage          : 55.1 V
Power            : 8.4 W
Current          : 154 mA

```

Status and Counters - Port Power Status for port A7

```

Power Enable      : Yes
Priority          : low
AllocateBy       : value
Detection Status  : Searching
LLDP Detect       : disabled
Configured Type   :
Value            : 17 W
Power Class       : 0

Over Current Cnt  : 0
Power Denied Cnt  : 0
MPS Absent Cnt   : 0
Short Cnt         : 0

Voltage          : 0 V
Power            : 0 W
Current          : 0 mA

```

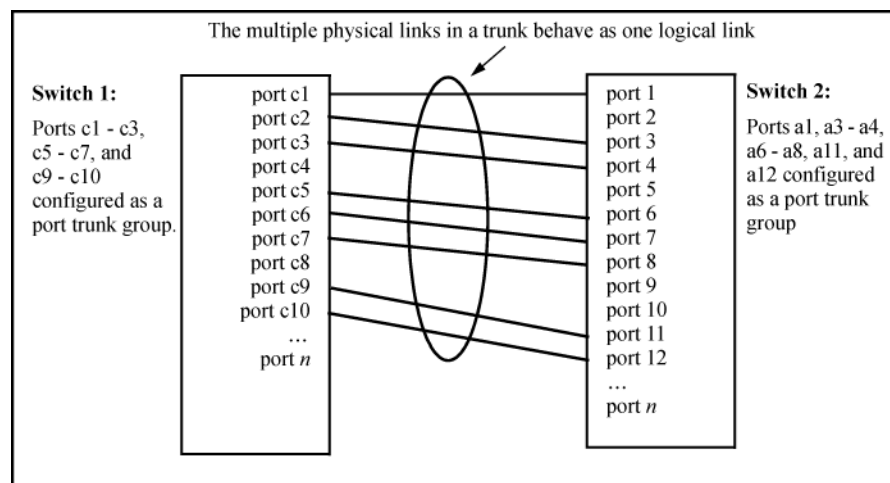
## PoE Event Log messages

Please see the event log message reference guide for information about Event Log messages. To see these manuals, go to <http://www.hpe.com/networking>. Auto search the model number for your switch, for Example: "Switch 2920", then select the device from the list and click on **Product manuals**. Click on the "User guide" link under **Manuals**.

## Overview of port trunking

Port trunking allows you to assign up to eight physical links to one logical link (trunk) that functions as a single, higher-speed link providing dramatically increased bandwidth. This capability applies to connections between backbone devices as well as to connections in other network areas where traffic bottlenecks exist. A **trunk group** is a set of up to eight ports configured as members of the same port trunk. The ports in a trunk group do not have to be consecutive. For Example:

**Figure 14:** Conceptual Example: of port trunking



## Port connections and configuration

All port trunk links must be point-to-point connections between a switch and another switch, router, server, or workstation configured for port trunking. No intervening, non-trunking devices are allowed. It is important to note that ports on both ends of a port trunk group must have the same mode (speed and duplex) and flow control settings.



### NOTE:

#### Link connections

The switch does not support port trunking through an intermediate, non-trunking device such as a hub, or using more than one media type in a port trunk group. Similarly, for proper trunk operation, all links in the same trunk group must have the same speed, duplex, and flow control.

#### Port security restriction

Port security does not operate on a trunk group. If you configure port security on one or more ports that are later added to a trunk group, the switch resets the port security parameters for those ports to the factory-default configuration.



### CAUTION:

To avoid broadcast storms or loops in your network while configuring a trunk, first disable or disconnect all ports you want to add to or remove from the trunk. After you finish configuring the trunk, enable or re-connect the ports.

# Port trunk features and operation

The switches covered in this guide offer these options for port trunking:

- LACP: IEEE 802.3ad—**Trunk group operation using LACP** on page 112
- Trunk: Non-Protocol—**Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option** on page 118

Up to 60 trunk groups are supported on the switches. The actual maximum depends on the number of ports available on the switch and the number of links in each trunk. (Using the link aggregation control protocol—LACP—option, you can include standby trunked ports in addition to the maximum of eight actively trunking ports.) The trunks do not have to be the same size; For example, 100 two-port trunks and 11 eight-port trunks are supported.



**NOTE:** LACP requires full-duplex (FDx) links of the same media type (10/100Base-T, 100FX, and so on) and the same speed, and enforces speed and duplex conformance across a trunk group. For most installations, Hewlett Packard Enterprise Switch recommends that you leave the port Mode settings at `Auto` (the default). LACP also operates with `Auto-10`, `Auto-100`, and `Auto-1000` (if negotiation selects FDx), and `10FDx`, `100FDx`, and `1000FDx` settings. (The 10-gigabit ports available for some switch models allow only the `Auto` setting.)

## Fault tolerance

If a link in a port trunk fails, the switch redistributes traffic originally destined for that link to the remaining links in the trunk. The trunk remains operable as long as there is at least one link in operation. If a link is restored, that link is automatically included in the traffic distribution again. The LACP option also offers a standby link capability, which enables you to keep links in reserve for service if one or more of the original active links fails. (See **Trunk group operation using LACP** on page 112.)

## Trunk configuration methods

### Dynamic LACP trunk

The switch automatically negotiates trunked links between LACP-configured ports on separate devices, and offers one dynamic trunk option: LACP. To configure the switch to initiate a dynamic LACP trunk with another device, use the `interface` command in the CLI to set the default LACP option to `active` on the ports you want to use for the trunk. For example, the following command sets ports C1 to C4 to `LACP active`:

```
switch(config) int c1-c4 lacp active
```

The preceding Example: works if the ports are not already operating in a trunk. To change the LACP option on ports already operating as a trunk, you must first remove them from the trunk. For example, if ports C1 to C4 are LACP-active and operating in a trunk with another device, you would do the following to change them to LACP-passive:

```
switch(config)# no int c1-c4 lacp
```

Removes the ports from the trunk.

```
switch(config)# int c1-c4 lacp passive
```

Configures LACP passive.

### Static trunk

The switch uses the links you configure with the Port/Trunk Settings screen in the menu interface or the `trunk` command in the CLI to create a static port trunk. The switch offers two types of static trunks: LACP and Trunk.

**Table 8:** *Trunk types used in static and dynamic trunk groups*

Trunking method	LACP	Trunk
Dynamic	Yes	No
Static	Yes	Yes

The following table describes the trunking options for LACP and Trunk protocols.

**Table 9:** *Trunk configuration protocols*

Protocol	Trunking Options
LACP (802.3ad)	<p>Provides dynamic and static LACP trunking options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Dynamic LACP</b> — Use the switch-negotiated dynamic LACP trunk when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for Active or Passive LACP.</li> <li>◦ You want fault-tolerance for high-availability applications. If you use an eight-link trunk, you can also configure one or more additional links to operate as standby links that will activate only if another active link goes down.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Static LACP</b> — Use the manually configured static LACP trunk when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for a static LACP trunk.</li> <li>◦ You want to configure non-default spanning tree or IGMP parameters on an LACP trunk group.</li> <li>◦ You want an LACP trunk group to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN and GVRP is disabled. (See <a href="#">VLANs and dynamic LACP</a> on page 117.)</li> <li>◦ You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor an LACP trunk.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Trunk group operation using LACP</a> on page 112.</p>
Trunk (non-protocol)	<p>Provides manually configured, static-only trunking to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most Switches and routing switches are not running the 802.3ad LACP protocol.</li> <li>• Windows NT and HPE-UX workstations and servers</li> </ul> <p>Use the Trunk option when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The device to which you want to create a trunk link is using a non-802.3ad trunking protocol.</li> <li>• You are unsure which type of trunk to use, or the device to which you want to create a trunk link is using an unknown trunking protocol.</li> <li>• You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor traffic on a trunk.</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option</a> on page 118.</p>



**Table 10: General operating rules for port trunks**

<b>Media:</b>	For proper trunk operation, all ports on both ends of a trunk group must have the same media type and mode (speed and duplex). (For the switches, it is recommended to leave the port mode setting at <code>Auto</code> or, in networks using Cat 3 cabling, <code>Auto-10</code> .)
<b>Port Configuration:</b>	<p>The default port configuration is <code>Auto</code>, which enables a port to sense speed and negotiate duplex with an auto-enabled port on another device. It is recommended that you use the <code>Auto</code> setting for all ports you plan to use for trunking. Otherwise, you must manually ensure that the mode setting for each port in a trunk is compatible with the other ports in the trunk. <b>See: <u>Recommended port mode setting for LACP example</u></b></p> <p>All of the following operate on a per-port basis, regardless of trunk membership:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enable/Disable</li><li>• Flow control (Flow Ctrl)</li></ul> <p>LACP is a full-duplex protocol. See <b><u>Trunk group operation using LACP</u></b> on page 112.</p>
<b>Trunk configuration:</b>	<p>All ports in the same trunk group must be the same trunk type (LACP or trunk). All LACP ports in the same trunk group must be either all static LACP or all dynamic LACP. A trunk appears as a single port labeled <code>Dyn1</code> (for an LACP dynamic trunk) or <code>Trk1</code> (for a static trunk of type LACP, Trunk) on various menu and CLI screens. For a listing of which screens show which trunk types, see <b><u>How the switch lists trunk data</u></b> on page 119. For spanning-tree or VLAN operation, configuration for all ports in a trunk is done at the trunk level. (You cannot separately configure individual ports within a trunk for spanning-tree or VLAN operation.)</p>
<b>Traffic distribution:</b>	<p>All of the switch trunk protocols use the SA/DA (source address/destination address) method of distributing traffic across the trunked links. See <b><u>Outbound traffic distribution across trunked links</u></b> on page 119.</p>

*Table Continued*

<b>Spanning Tree:</b>	<p>802.1D (STP) and 802.1w (RSTP) Spanning Tree operate as a global setting on the switch (with one instance of Spanning Tree per switch). 802.1s (MSTP) Spanning Tree operates on a per-instance basis (with multiple instances allowed per switch). For each Spanning Tree instance, you can adjust Spanning Tree parameters on a per-port basis. A static trunk of any type appears in the Spanning Tree configuration display, and you can configure Spanning Tree parameters for a static trunk in the same way that you would configure Spanning Tree parameters on a non-trunked port. (Note that the switch lists the trunk by name—such as Trk1—and does not list the individual ports in the trunk.) For example, if ports C1 and C2 are configured as a static trunk named Trk1, they are listed in the Spanning Tree display as Trk1 and do not appear as individual ports in the Spanning Tree displays. See <a href="#">A port trunk in a Spanning Tree listing</a> on page 103. When Spanning Tree forwards on a trunk, all ports in the trunk will be forwarding. Conversely, when Spanning Tree blocks a trunk, all ports in the trunk are blocked.</p> <p>A dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default Spanning Tree settings. Also, this type of trunk appears in the CLI <code>show spanning-tree</code> display, but not in the Spanning Tree Operation display of the Menu interface.</p> <p>If you remove a port from a static trunk, the port retains the same Spanning Tree settings that were configured for the trunk. In the below Example:, ports C1 and C2 are members of TRK1 and do not appear as individual ports in the port configuration part of the listing. See: <a href="#">A port trunk in a Spanning Tree listing example</a></p>
<b>IP multicast protocol (IGMP):</b>	<p>A static trunk of any type appears in the IGMP configuration display, and you can configure IGMP for a static trunk in the same way that you would configure IGMP on a non-trunked port. (Note that the switch lists the trunk by name—such as Trk1—and does not list the individual ports in the trunk.) Also, creating a new trunk automatically places the trunk in IGMP Auto status if IGMP is enabled for the default VLAN. A dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default IGMP settings and does not appear in the IGMP configuration display or <code>show ip igmp</code> listing.</p>
<b>VLANs:</b>	<p>Creating a new trunk automatically places the trunk in the DEFAULT_VLAN, regardless of whether the ports in the trunk were in another VLAN. Similarly, removing a port from a trunk group automatically places the port in the default VLAN. You can configure a static trunk in the same way that you configure a port for membership in any VLAN.</p> <p>For a dynamic LACP trunk to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN (DEFAULT_VLAN), GVRP must be enabled. See <a href="#">Trunk group operation using LACP</a> on page 112.</p>

*Table Continued*

<b>Port security:</b>	Trunk groups (and their individual ports) cannot be configured for port security, and the switch excludes trunked ports from the <code>show port-security</code> listing. If you configure non-default port security settings for a port, then subsequently try to place the port in a trunk, you see the following message and the command is not executed:< <code>port-list</code> > Command cannot operate over a logical port.
<b>Monitor port:</b>	A trunk cannot be a monitor port. A monitor port can monitor a static trunk but cannot monitor a dynamic LACP trunk.

### Recommended port mode setting for LACP

```
switch(config)# show interfaces config
```

#### Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
1	10/100TX	Yes	Auto	Enable	Auto
2	10/100TX	Yes	Auto	Enable	MDI

### A port trunk in a Spanning Tree listing

Port	Type	Cost	Priority	State	Designated Bridge
C3	100/1000T	5	12B	Forwarding	0020c1-b27ac0
C4	100/1000T	5	12B	Forwarding	0060b0-889e00
C5	100/1000T	5	12B	Disabled	
C6	100/1000T	5	12B	Disabled	
Trk1		1	64	Forwarding	0001e7-a0ec00

## Viewing and configuring a static trunk group (Menu)



**IMPORTANT:** Configure port trunking **before** you connect the trunked links to another switch, routing switch, or server. Otherwise, a broadcast storm could occur. (If you need to connect the ports before configuring them for trunking, you can temporarily disable the ports until the trunk is configured. See "Enabling or Disabling Ports and Configuring Port Mode".)

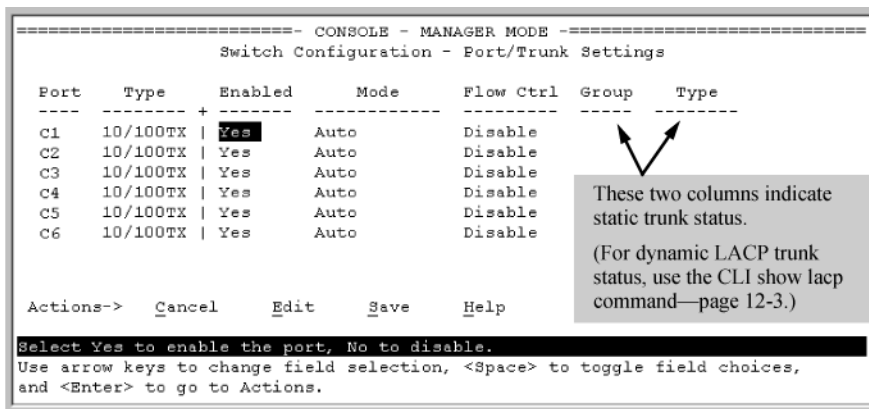
This procedure uses the Port/Trunk Settings screen to configure a static port trunk group on the switch.

### Procedure

- Follow the procedures in the preceding IMPORTANT note.
- From the Main Menu, select:
  - Switch Configuration...**
  - Port/Trunk Settings**

3. Press **[E]** (for Edit) and then use the arrow keys to access the port trunk parameters.

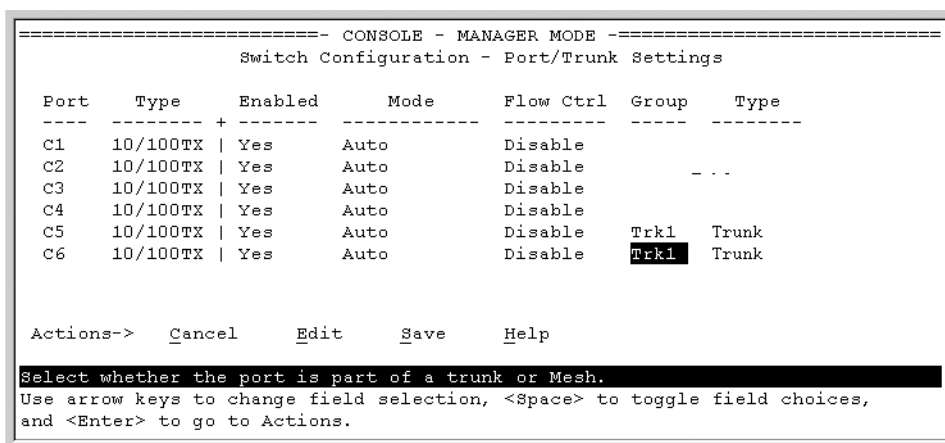
**Figure 15:** Example: of the menu screen for configuring a port trunk group



4. In the Group column, move the cursor to the port you want to configure.
5. Use the Space bar to choose a trunk group assignment (Trk1, Trk2, and so on) for the selected port.
  - a. For proper trunk operation, all ports in a trunk must have the same media type and mode (such as 10/100TX set to 100FDx, or 100FX set to 100FDx). The flow control settings must also be the same for all ports in a given trunk. To verify these settings, see "Viewing Port Status and Configuring Port Parameters".
  - b. You can configure the trunk group with up to eight ports per trunk. If multiple VLANs are configured, all ports within a trunk will be assigned to the same VLAN or set of VLANs. (With the 802.1Q VLAN capability built into the switch, more than one VLAN can be assigned to a trunk. See the "Static Virtual LANs (VLANs)" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.)

(To return a port to a non-trunk status, keep pressing the Space bar until a blank appears in the highlighted Group value for that port.)

**Figure 16:** Example: of the Configuration for a Two-Port Trunk Group



6. Move the cursor to the Type column for the selected port and use the Space bar to select the trunk type:
  - a. LACP
  - b. Trunk (the default type if you do not specify a type)

All ports in the same trunk group on the same switch must have the same Type (LACP or Trunk).

7. When you are finished assigning ports to the trunk group, press **[Enter]** , then **[S]** (for *Save*) and return to the Main Menu. (It is not necessary to reboot the switch.)

During the Save process, traffic on the ports configured for trunking is delayed for several seconds. If the Spanning Tree Protocol is enabled, the delay may be up to 30 seconds.

8. Connect the trunked ports on the switch to the corresponding ports on the opposite device. If you previously disabled any of the trunked ports on the switch, enable them now. (See "Viewing Port Status and Configuring Port Parameters")

Check the Event Log ("Using the Event Log for Troubleshooting Switch Problems") to verify that the trunked ports are operating properly.

## Viewing and configuring port trunk groups (CLI)

You can list the trunk type and group for all ports on the switch or for selected ports. You can also list LACP-only status information for LACP-configured ports.

### Viewing static trunk type and group for all ports or for selected ports

#### Syntax:

```
show trunks [< port-list >]
```

Omitting the *<port-list>* parameter results in a static trunk data listing for all LAN ports in the switch.

#### Example:

In a switch where ports A4 and A5 belong to Trunk 1 and ports A7 and A8 belong to Trunk 2, you have the options shown in **Listing specific ports belonging to static trunks** on page 105 and **A show trunk listing without specifying ports** on page 105 for displaying port data for ports belonging to static trunks.

Using a port list specifies, for switch ports in a static trunk group, only the ports you want to view. In this case, the command specifies ports A5 through A7. However, because port A6 is not in a static trunk group, it does not appear in the resulting listing:

#### Listing specific ports belonging to static trunks

```
switch# show trunks e 5-7
```

Load Balancing

Port	Name	Type	Group	Type
5	Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX	Trk1	Trunk
7		10/100TX	Trk2	Trunk

The `show trunks <port-list>` command in the above Example: includes a port list, and thus shows trunk group information only for specific ports that have membership in a static trunk. In **A show trunk listing without specifying ports** on page 105, the command does not include a port list, so the switch lists all ports having static trunk membership.

#### A show trunk listing without specifying ports

```
switch# show trunks
```

Load Balancing

Port	Name	Type	Group	Type
------	------	------	-------	------

4		Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX		Trk1	Trunk
5		Print-Server-Trunk	10/100TX		Trk1	Trunk
7			10/100TX		Trk2	Trunk
8			10/100TX		Trk2	Trunk

## Viewing static LACP and dynamic LACP trunk data

### Syntax:

```
show lacp
```

Lists data for only the LACP-configured ports.

### Example:

Ports A1 and A2 have been previously configured for a static LACP trunk. (For more on the `Active` parameter, see table "[LACP port status data](#)".)

### A show LACP listing

```
switch# show lacp
```

Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	LACP		LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
			Port Status	Partner			
A1	Active	Trk1	Up	Yes	Success	0	250
A2	Active	Trk1	Up	Yes	Success	0	250
A3	Active	A3	Down	No	Success	0	300
A4	Passive	A4	Down	No	Success	0	0
A5	Passive	A5	Down	No	Success	0	0
A6	Passive	A6	Down	No	Success	0	0

For a description of each of the above-listed data types, see table "[LACP port status data](#)".

## Dynamic LACP Standby Links

Dynamic LACP trunking enables you to configure standby links for a trunk by including more than eight ports in a dynamic LACP trunk configuration. When eight ports (trunk links) are up, the remaining link(s) will be held in standby status. If a trunked link that is "Up" fails, it will be replaced by a standby link, which maintains your intended bandwidth for the trunk. (Refer to also the "Standby" entry under "Port Status" in "Table 4-5. LACP Port Status Data".) In the next Example:, ports A1 through A9 have been configured for the same LACP trunk. Notice that one of the links shows Standby status, while the remaining eight links are "Up".

### A Dynamic LACP trunk with one standby link

```
switch# show lacp
```

Port	LACP Enabled	Trunk Group	LACP		LACP Status	Admin Key	Oper Key
			Port Status	Partner			
A1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A5	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A6	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A7	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100

A8	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success	100	100
A9	Active	Dyn1	Standby	Yes	Success	100	100

## Configuring a static trunk or static LACP trunk group



**IMPORTANT:** Configure port trunking **before** you connect the trunked links between switches. Otherwise, a broadcast storm could occur. (If you need to connect the ports before configuring them for trunking, you can temporarily disable the ports until the trunk is configured. See "Enabling or Disabling Ports and Configuring Port Mode".)

The "**Port trunk features and operation**" section describes the maximum number of trunk groups you can configure on the switch. An individual trunk can have up to eight links, with additional standby links if you're using LACP. You can configure trunk group types as follows:

Trunk Type	Trunk Group Membership	
	TrkX (Static)	DynX (Dynamic)
LACP	Yes	Yes
Trunk	Yes	No

The following examples show how to create different types of trunk groups.

### Syntax:

```
trunk <port-list> <trk1 ... trk60> {<trunk | lacp>}
```

Configures the specified static trunk type.

### Example:

This Example: uses ports C4 to C6 to create a non-protocol static trunk group with the group name Trk2.

```
switch(config)# trunk c4-c6 trk2 trunk
```

## Removing ports from a static trunk group



**CAUTION:** Removing a port from a trunk can create a loop and cause a broadcast storm. When you remove a port from a trunk where spanning tree is not in use, The switch recommends that you first disable the port or disconnect the link on that port.

### Syntax:

```
no trunk <port-list>
```

Removes the specified ports from an existing trunk group.

### Example:

To remove ports C4 and C5 from an existing trunk group:

```
switch(config)# no trunk c4-c5
```

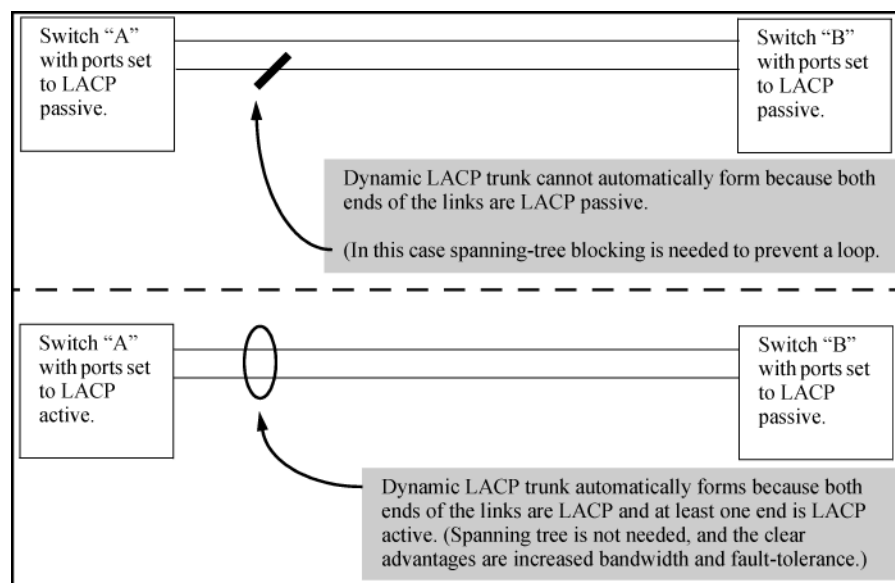
## Enabling a dynamic LACP trunk group

In the default port configuration, all ports on the switch are set to disabled. To enable the switch to automatically form a trunk group that is dynamic on both ends of the link, the ports on one end of a set of links must be LACP Active. The ports on the other end can be either LACP Active or LACP Passive. The `active` command enables

the switch to automatically establish a (dynamic) LACP trunk group when the device on the other end of the link is configured for LACP Passive.

**Example:**

**Figure 17:** Criteria for automatically forming a dynamic LACP trunk



**Syntax:**

```
interface <port-list> lacp active
```

Configures <port-list> as LACP active. If the ports at the other end of the links on <port-list> are configured as LACP passive, this command enables a dynamic LACP trunk group on <port-list> .

**Example:**

This Example: uses ports C4 and C5 to enable a dynamic LACP trunk group.

```
switch(config)# interface c4-c5 lacp active
```

## Removing ports from a dynamic LACP trunk group

To remove a port from dynamic LACP trunk operation, you must turn off LACP on the port. (On a port in an operating, dynamic LACP trunk, you cannot change between LACP Active and LACP passive without first removing LACP operation from the port.)



**CAUTION:**

Unless spanning tree is running on your network, removing a port from a trunk can result in a loop. To help prevent a broadcast storm when you remove a port from a trunk where spanning tree is not in use, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you first disable the port or disconnect the link on that port.

**Syntax:**

```
no interface <port-list> lacp
```

Removes <port-list> from any dynamic LACP trunk and returns the ports in <port-list> to passive LACP.

**Example:**



Port C6 belongs to an operating, dynamic LACP trunk. To remove port C6 from the dynamic trunk and return it to passive LACP, do the following:

```
switch(config)# no interface c6 lacp
switch(config)# interface c6 lacp passive
```

In the above Example:, if the port on the other end of the link is configured for active LACP or static LACP, the trunked link will be re-established almost immediately.

## Specifying Minimum Active Links for LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) allows the operator to configure a minimum number of active member links in a trunk group to remain operational. When the number of active member links in the trunk is less than the configured threshold value, the LACP trunk will be shut down. An additional option is provided to configure an `enable-timer`, on expiry of which the LACP trunk brought down by the `min-active-links` functionality, will be re-enabled. Once the trunk member ports are re-enabled, the validation for the active links against the configured threshold is performed after a minute and the trunk state will be decided accordingly. The trunk will be up and the traffic will be forwarded though the LACP trunk during this period.



### NOTE:

- If the minimum active links are configured without `enable-timer` configuration, the LACP trunk disabled by the feature will remain down until the operator explicitly disables and re-enables the port or triggers a port up indication by any alternative means.
- If the number of active links in a LACP trunk is less than the threshold value, the trunk will not be functional and traffic will not pass through the respective trunk.
- If the number of active links in the trunk drops below the threshold, the entire trunk will be brought down and complete traffic flowing through the same will be dropped. Hence, this configuration must be used carefully in a topology where there is a redundant traffic path.
- It is recommended to configure the `min-active-links` on one side of the trunk.

## lacp min-active-links

### Syntax

```
lacp min-active-links <value>
```

```
no lacp min-active-links <value>
```

### Description

Configures the minimum threshold value for the active member links in a LACP trunk group.

The `no` form of this command deletes the configured threshold and sets the threshold value to default.

### Command context

```
interface
```

**Example:** `eth-Trk`

## Parameters

### value

Sets the threshold value for LACP trunk. The value is an integer that ranges from zero to eight which represents the number of minimum active links. The default value is zero which disables the minimum active links.

## Example

```
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp
enable-timer          Configure the time in seconds to wait before re-enabling
                      the trunk disabled by LACP feature for minimum active links.
key                   Set the LACP key.
mad-passthrough       Enable or disable MAD passthrough on the LACP trunks.
min-active-links       Configure the threshold for the minimum number of active
                      member links in a LACP trunk group, for it to be operational.
active                Enable active LACP.
passive                Enable passive LACP.
static                Set the mode of a static LACP port to active or passive.
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp min-active-links
<0-8>                  Enter a number.
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp min-active-links 5
WARNING: This configuration can result in disabling the trunk, if the
number of active links in the trunk drops below the configured threshold.
Continue (y/n)? y
```

## lacp enable-timer

### Syntax

```
lacp enable-timer <value>
```

```
no lacp enable-timer <value>
```

### Description

Configures the timer on expiry of which the member links disabled by LACP `min-active-links` functionality, will be re-enabled.

The `no` form of this command deletes the configured time and sets the time to default.

### Command context

```
interface
```

**Example:** eth-Trk

## Parameters

### value

Sets the time duration to wait before enabling the disabled trunk. The time duration ranges from 0 to 604800 seconds. The default value is zero which disables the timer.

## Example

```
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp
enable-timer          Configure the time in seconds to wait before re-enabling
                      the trunk disabled by LACP feature for minimum active links.
key                   Set the LACP key.
mad-passthrough       Enable or disable MAD passthrough on the LACP trunks.
min-active-links       Configure the threshold for the minimum number of active
```

```

member links in a LACP trunk group, for it to be operational.
active          Enable active LACP.
passive         Enable passive LACP.
static          Set the mode of a static LACP port to active or passive.
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp enable-timer
<0-604800>      Enter a number.
switch(eth-Trk11)# lacp enable-timer 120

```

## show lacp min-active-links

### Syntax

```
show lacp min-active-links
```

### Description

Shows the LACP minimum active links information for each trunk group.

### Example

```
switch# show lacp min-active-links
```

Trunk Group	Minimum active Links	Enable-Time (seconds)
Trk1	0	0
Trk3	0	0
Trk9	2	120
Trk17	6	356

### show running-configuration

```
switch(config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```

; JL356A Configuration Editor; Created on release #YC.16.0x.0000x
; Ver #14:27.44.38.04.99.03.b3.b8.ef.74.61.fc.68.f3.8c.fc.e3.ff.37.2f:33

hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl356a
mirror-port 25
trunk 12,24 trk9 lacp
trunk 17-23 trk17 lacp
ip default-gateway 40.1.1.4
interface 1
    disable
    exit
interface 26
    monitor
    exit
interface Trk9
    lacp min-active-links 2
    lacp enable-timer 120
    exit
interface Trk17
    lacp min-active-links 6
    lacp enable-timer 356
    exit

```

## Limitations

- Dynamic LACP, static trunks, and distributed trunks will not support this feature.
- The command is not available for REST/next Gen UI.
- If the LACP trunk is down due to lack of active links with the timer enabled, a dynamic update to the `enable-timer` by configuration will not take effect immediately as the current timer runs with the previously configured value.
- When the LACP trunk is blocked by `min-active-links` and the `enable-timer` is running, the member links will be prevented from becoming operational even if there is an external intervention caused by configuration or topology changes.
- If the `enable-timer` is not configured, the operator must restore the member links of the LACP trunk which are blocked by the minimum active links.
- If there is a flap in any member links, the LACP trunk disabled by `min-active-links` may end up flapping when `enable-timer` is not configured.
- The `min-active-links` feature is not supported on the previous releases (that is prior to 16.08 version). On downgrading the switch to the previous version, the configuration will be removed without any warning.

## Viewing existing port trunk groups (WebAgent)

While the WebAgent does not enable you to configure a port trunk group, it does provide a view of an existing trunk group.

To view any port trunk groups:

1. In the navigation pane, click **Interface**.
2. Click **Port Info/Config**. The trunk information for the port displays in the **Port Properties** box.

## Trunk group operation using LACP

The switch can automatically configure a dynamic LACP trunk group, or you can manually configure a static LACP trunk group.



**NOTE:** LACP requires full-duplex (FDx) links of the same media type (10/100Base-T, 100FX, and so on) and the same speed and enforces speed and duplex conformance across a trunk group. For most installations, it is recommended that you leave the port mode settings at `Auto` (the default). LACP also operates with `Auto-10`, `Auto-100`, and `Auto-1000` (if negotiation selects FDx), and `10FDx`, `100FDx`, and `1000FDx` settings.

LACP trunk status commands include:

Trunk display method	Static LACP trunk	Dynamic LACP trunk
CLI <code>show lacp</code> command	Included in listing.	Included in listing.
CLI <code>show trunk</code> command	Included in listing.	Not included.

Thus, to display a listing of dynamic LACP trunk ports, you must use the `show lacp` command.

In most cases, trunks configured for LACP on the switches operate as described in the following table.

**Table 11: LACP trunk types**

LACP port trunk configuration	Operation
Dynamic LACP	<p>This option automatically establishes an 802.3ad-compliant trunk group, with <b>LACP</b> for the port Type parameter and <b>DynX</b> for the port Group name, where <b>X</b> is an automatically assigned value from 1 to 60, depending on how many dynamic and static trunks are currently on the switch. (The switch allows a maximum of 60 trunk groups in any combination of static and dynamic trunks.)</p> <p>Dynamic LACP trunks operate only in the default VLAN (unless GVRP is enabled and <b>Forbid</b> is used to prevent the trunked ports from joining the default VLAN). Thus, if an LACP dynamic port forms using ports that are not in the default VLAN, the trunk automatically moves to the default VLAN unless GVRP operation is configured to prevent this from occurring. In some cases, this can create a traffic loop in your network. For more information on this topic, see <a href="#">VLANs and dynamic LACP</a> on page 117 .</p> <p>Under the following conditions, the switch automatically establishes a dynamic LACP port trunk group and assigns a port Group name:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The ports on both ends of each link have compatible mode settings (speed and duplex).</li> <li>• The port on one end of each link must be configured for LACP Active and the port on the other end of the same link must be configured for either LACP Passive or LACP Active. For Example:</li> </ul> <div> <pre> graph LR     subgraph Switch1 [Switch 1]         direction TB         P1[Port X: LACP Enable: Active]         P2[Port Y: LACP Enable: Active]     end     subgraph Switch2 [Switch 2]         direction TB         P3[Port A: LACP Enable: Active]         P4[Port B: LACP Enable: Passive]     end     P1 --- Active-to-Active  P3     P2 --- Active-to-Passive  P4   </pre> </div> <p>Either of the above link configurations allows a dynamic LACP trunk link.</p> <p><b>Backup Links:</b> A maximum of eight operating links are allowed in the trunk, but, with dynamic LACP, you can configure one or more additional (backup) links that the switch automatically activates if a primary link fails. To configure a link as a standby for an existing eight-port dynamic LACP trunk, ensure that the ports in the standby link are configured as either active-to-active or active-to-passive between switches.</p> <p><b>Displaying dynamic LACP trunk data:</b> To list the configuration and status for a dynamic LACP trunk, use the CLI <code>show lacp</code> command.</p> <p>The dynamic trunk is automatically created by the switch and is not listed in the static trunk listings available in the menu interface or in the CLI <code>show trunk</code> listing.</p>
Static LACP	Provides a manually configured, static LACP trunk to accommodate these conditions:

LACP port trunk configuration	Operation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The port on the other end of the trunk link is configured for a static LACP trunk.</li> <li>• You want to configure non-default Spanning Tree or IGMP parameters on an LACP trunk group.</li> <li>• You want an LACP trunk group to operate in a VLAN other than the default VLAN and GVRP is disabled. (See <a href="#">VLANs and dynamic LACP</a> on page 117.)</li> <li>• You want to use a monitor port on the switch to monitor an LACP trunk.</li> </ul> <p>The trunk operates if the trunk group on the opposite device is running one of the following trunking protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active LACP</li> <li>• Passive LACP</li> <li>• Trunk</li> </ul> <p>This option uses <b>LACP</b> for the port Type parameter and <b>TrkX</b> for the port Group parameter, where <b>X</b> is an automatically assigned value in a range corresponding to the maximum number of trunks the switch allows. (See <a href="#">Port trunk features and operation</a> for the maximum number of trunk groups allowed on the switches.)</p> <p><b>Displaying static LACP trunk data :</b> To list the configuration and status for a static LACP trunk, use the CLI <code>show lacp</code> command. To list a static LACP trunk with its assigned ports, use the CLI <code>show trunk</code> command or display the menu interface Port/Trunk Settings screen.Static LACP does not allow standby ports.</p>

## Default port operation

In the default configuration, LACP is disabled for all ports. If LACP is not configured as Active on at least one end of a link, the port does not try to detect a trunk configuration and operates as a standard, untrunked port. The following table lists the elements of per-port LACP operation. To display this data for a switch, execute the following command in the CLI:

```
switch# show lacp
```

**Table 12: LACP port status data**

Status name	Meaning
Port Numb	Shows the physical port number for each port configured for LACP operation (C1, C2, C3 ...). Unlisted port numbers indicate that the missing ports that are assigned to a static trunk group are not configured for any trunking.
LACP Enabled	<p><b>Active:</b> The port automatically sends LACP protocol packets.</p> <p><b>Passive:</b> The port does not automatically send LACP protocol packets and responds only if it receives LACP protocol packets from the opposite device. A link having either two active LACP ports or one active port and one passive port can perform dynamic LACP trunking. A link having two passive LACP ports does not perform LACP trunking because both ports are waiting for an LACP protocol packet from the opposite device.</p> <p>In the default switch configuration, LACP is disabled for all ports.</p>
Trunk Group	<p><b>TrkX:</b> This port has been manually configured into a static LACP trunk.</p> <p><b>Trunk group same as port number:</b> The port is configured for LACP, but is not a member of a port trunk.</p>
Port Status	<p><b>Up:</b> The port has an active LACP link and is not blocked or in standby mode.</p> <p><b>Down:</b> The port is enabled, but an LACP link is not established. This can indicate, For example, a port that is not connected to the network or a speed mismatch between a pair of linked ports.</p> <p><b>Disabled:</b> The port cannot carry traffic.</p> <p><b>Blocked:</b> LACP, Spanning Tree has blocked the port. (The port is not in LACP standby mode.) This may be caused by a (brief) trunk negotiation or a configuration error, such as differing port speeds on the same link or trying to connect the switch to more trunks than it can support. (See <u>Trunk configuration protocols</u>.)</p> <p>Some older devices are limited to four ports in a trunk. When eight LACP-enabled ports are connected to one of these older devices, four ports connect, but the other four ports are blocked.</p> <p><b>Standby:</b> The port is configured for dynamic LACP trunking to another device, but the maximum number of ports for the dynamic trunk to that device has already been reached on either the switch or the other device. This port will remain in reserve, or "standby" unless LACP detects that another, active link in the trunk has become disabled, blocked, or down. In this case, LACP automatically assigns a standby port, if available, to replace the failed port.</p>

*Table Continued*

Status name	Meaning
LACP Partner	<p><b>Yes:</b> LACP is enabled on both ends of the link.</p> <p><b>No:</b> LACP is enabled on the switch, but either LACP is not enabled or the link has not been detected on the opposite device.</p>
LACP Status	<p><b>Success:</b> LACP is enabled on the port, detects and synchronizes with a device on the other end of the link, and can move traffic across the link.</p> <p><b>Failure:</b> LACP is enabled on a port and detects a device on the other end of the link, but is not able to synchronize with this device, and therefore is not able to send LACP packets across the link. This can be caused, For example, by an intervening device on the link (such as a hub), a bad hardware connection, or if the LACP operation on the opposite device does not comply with the IEEE 802.3ad standard.</p>

## LACP notes and restrictions

### 802.1X (Port-based access control) configured on a port

To maintain security, LACP is not allowed on ports configured for 802.1X authenticator operation. If you configure port security on a port on which LACP (active or passive) is configured, the switch removes the LACP configuration, displays a notice that LACP is disabled on the port, and enables 802.1X on that port.

```
switch(config)# aaa port-access authenticator b1
LACP has been disabled on 802.1x port(s).
switch(config)#
```

The switch does not allow you to configure LACP on a port on which port access (802.1X) is enabled. For Example:

```
switch(config)# int b1 lacp passive
Error configuring port < port-number > : LACP and 802.1x cannot
be run together.
switch(config)#
```

To restore LACP to the port, you must first remove the 802.1X configuration of the port and then re-enable LACP active or passive on the port.

### Port security configured on a port

To maintain security, LACP is not allowed on ports configured for port security. If you configure port security on a port on which LACP (active or passive) is configured, the switch removes the LACP configuration, displays a notice that LACP is disabled on the port, and enables port security on that port. For example:

```
switch(config)# port-security a17 learn-mode static address-
limit 2 LACP has been disabled on secured port(s).
switch(config)#
```

The switch does not allow you to configure LACP on a port on which port security is enabled. For example:

```
switch(config)# int a17 lacp passive
Error configuring port A17: LACP and port security cannot be
run together.
switch(config)#
```

To restore LACP to the port, you must remove port security and re-enable LACP active or passive.



## Changing trunking methods

To convert a trunk from static to dynamic, you must first eliminate the static trunk.

### Static LACP trunks

When a port is configured for LACP (active or passive), but does not belong to an existing trunk group, you can add that port to a static trunk. Doing so disables dynamic LACP on that port, which means you must manually configure both ends of the trunk.

### Dynamic LACP trunks

You can configure a port for LACP-active or LACP-passive, but on a dynamic LACP trunk you cannot configure the other options that you can on static trunks. If you want to manually configure a trunk, use the `trunk` command.

### VLANs and dynamic LACP

A dynamic LACP trunk operates only in the default VLAN (unless you have enabled GVRP on the switch and use `Forbid` to prevent the ports from joining the default VLAN).

If you want to use LACP for a trunk on a non-default VLAN and GVRP is disabled, configure the trunk as a static trunk.

### Blocked ports with older devices

Some older devices are limited to four ports in a trunk. When eight LACP-enabled ports are connected to one of these older devices, four ports connect, but the other four ports are blocked. The LACP status of the blocked ports is shown as "Failure."

If one of the other ports becomes disabled, a blocked port replaces it (Port Status becomes "Up"). When the other port becomes active again, the replacement port goes back to blocked (Port Status is "Blocked"). It can take a few seconds for the switch to discover the current status of the ports.

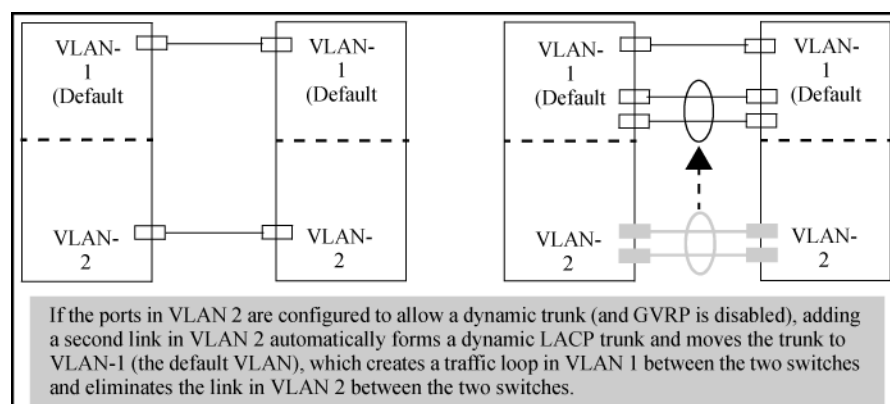
#### Blocked ports with LACP

```
switch(eth-B1-B8) # show lacp
```

LACP					
PORT NUMB	LACP ENABLED	TRUNK GROUP	PORT STATUS	LACP PARTNER	LACP STATUS
----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
B1	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B2	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B3	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B4	Active	Dyn1	Up	Yes	Success
B5	Active	Dyn1	Blocked	Yes	Failure
B6	Active	Dyn1	Blocked	Yes	Failure
B7	Active	B7	Down	No	Success
B8	Active	B8	Down	No	Success

If there are ports that you do not want on the default VLAN, ensure that they cannot become dynamic LACP trunk members. Otherwise a traffic loop can unexpectedly occur. For Example:

**Figure 18:** A dynamic LACP trunk forming in a VLAN can cause a traffic loop



Easy control methods include either disabling LACP on the selected ports or configuring them to operate in static LACP trunks.

## Spanning Tree and IGMP

If Spanning Tree, IGMP, or both are enabled in the switch, a dynamic LACP trunk operates only with the default settings for these features and does not appear in the port listings for these features.

## Half-duplex, different port speeds, or both not allowed in LACP trunks

The ports on both sides of an LACP trunk must be configured for the same speed and for full-duplex (FDx). The 802.3ad LACP standard specifies a full-duplex (FDx) requirement for LACP trunking. (10-gigabit ports operate only at FDx.)

A port configured as LACP passive and not assigned to a port trunk can be configured to half-duplex (HDx). However, in any of the following cases, a port cannot be reconfigured to an HDx setting:

- If the port is a 10-gigabit port.
- If a port is set to LACP Active, you cannot configure it to HDx.
- If a port is already a member of a static or dynamic LACP trunk, you cannot configure it to HDx.
- If a port is already set to HDx, the switch does not allow you to configure it for a static or dynamic LACP trunk.

## Dynamic/static LACP interoperation

A port configured for dynamic LACP can properly interoperate with a port configured for static (TrkX) LACP, but any ports configured as standby LACP links are ignored.

## Trunk group operation using the "trunk" option

This method creates a trunk group that operates independently of specific trunking protocols and does not use a protocol exchange with the device on the other end of the trunk. With this choice, the switch simply uses the SA/DA method of distributing outbound traffic across the trunked ports without regard for how that traffic is handled by the device at the other end of the trunked links. Similarly, the switch handles incoming traffic from the trunked links as if it were from a trunked source.

When a trunk group is configured with the `trunk` option, the switch automatically sets the trunk to a priority of "4" for Spanning Tree operation (even if Spanning Tree is currently disabled). This appears in the running-config file as `spanning-tree Trkn priority 4`. Executing `write memory` after configuring the trunk places the same entry in the startup-config file.

Use the `trunk` option to establish a trunk group between a switch and another device, where the other device's trunking operation fails to operate properly with LACP trunking configured on the switches.

## How the switch lists trunk data

### Static trunk group

Appears in the menu interface and the output from the CLI `show trunk` and `show interfaces` commands.

### Dynamic LACP trunk group

Appears in the output from the CLI `show lacp` command.

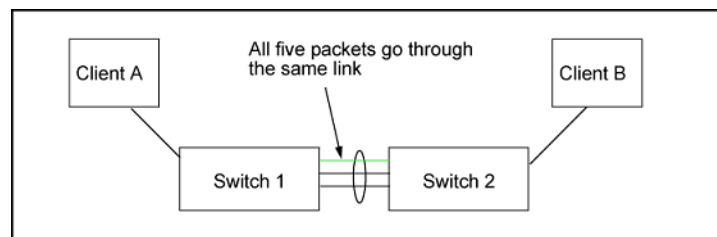
Interface option	Dynamic LACP trunk group	Static LACP trunk group	Static non-protocol
CLI <code>show trunk</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show interfaces</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show lacp</code>	Yes	Yes	No
CLI <code>show spanning-tree</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show igmp</code>	No	Yes	Yes
CLI <code>show config</code>	No	Yes	Yes

## Outbound traffic distribution across trunked links

The two trunk group options (LACP and trunk) use SA/DA pairs for distributing outbound traffic over trunked links. That is, the switch sends traffic from the same source address to the same destination address through the same trunked link, and may also send traffic from the same source address to a different destination address through the same link or a different link, depending on the mapping of path assignments among the links in the trunk. Likewise, the switch distributes traffic for the same destination address but from different source addresses through links depending on the path assignment.

The load-balancing is done on a per-communication basis. Otherwise, traffic is transmitted across the same path as shown in the figure below. That is, if Client A attached to Switch 1 sends five packets of data to Server A attached to Switch 2, the same link is used to send all five packets. The SA/DA address pair for the traffic is the same. The packets are not evenly distributed across any other existing links between the two switches; they all take the same path.

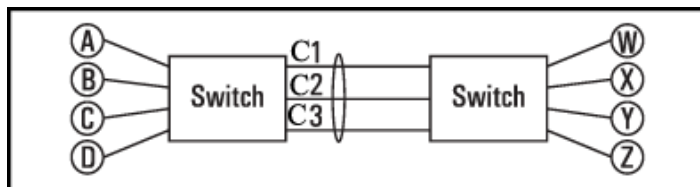
**Figure 19:** Example: of single path traffic through a trunk



The actual distribution of the traffic through a trunk depends on a calculation using bits from the SA/DA. When an IP address is available, the calculation includes the last five bits of the IP source address and IP destination address; otherwise, the MAC addresses are used. The result of that process undergoes a mapping that determines which link the traffic goes through. If you have only two ports in a trunk, it is possible that all the traffic will be sent through one port even if the SA/DA pairs are different. The more ports you have in the trunk, the more likely it is that the traffic will be distributed among the links.

When a new port is added to the trunk, the switch begins sending traffic, either new traffic or existing traffic, through the new link. As links are added or deleted, the switch redistributes traffic across the trunk group. For example, in the figure below showing a three-port trunk, traffic could be assigned as shown in the following table.

**Figure 20:** Example: of port-trunked network



**Table 13:** Example: of link assignments in a trunk group (SA/DA distribution)

Source	Destination	Link
Node A	Node W	1
Node B	Node X	2
Node C	Node Y	3
Node D	Node Z	1
Node A	Node Y	2
Node B	Node W	3

Because the amount of traffic coming from or going to various nodes in a network can vary widely, it is possible for one link in a trunk group to be fully utilized while other links in the same trunk have unused bandwidth capacity, even if the assignments were evenly distributed across the links in a trunk.

## Rate-limiting



**CAUTION:** Rate-limiting is intended for use on edge ports in a network. It is not recommended for use on links to other switches, routers, or servers within a network, or for use in the network core. Doing so can interfere with applications the network requires to function properly.

### All traffic rate-limiting

Rate-limiting for all traffic operates on a per-port basis to allow only the specified bandwidth to be used for inbound or outbound traffic. When traffic exceeds the configured limit, it is dropped. This effectively sets a usage level on a given port and is a tool for enforcing maximum service level commitments granted to network users. This feature operates on a per-port level and is not configurable on port trunks. Rate-limiting is designed to be applied at the network edge to limit traffic from non-critical users or to enforce service agreements such as those offered by Internet Service Providers (ISPs) to provide only the bandwidth for which a customer has paid.



**NOTE:**

Rate-limiting also can be applied by a RADIUS server during an authentication client session. Applying rate-limiting to desirable traffic is **not recommended**. For further details, see "RADIUS Authentication and Accounting" in the access security guide for your switch.

The switches also support ICMP rate-limiting to mitigate the effects of certain ICMP-based attacks.

ICMP traffic is necessary for network routing functions. For this reason, blocking all ICMP traffic is not recommended.

### Configuring in/out rate-limiting

**Syntax:**

```
no int <port-list> rate-limit all <in|out> percent <0-100>|kbps <0-100000000>>
```

Configures a traffic rate limit (on non-trunked ports) on the link. The `no` form of the command disables rate-limiting on the specified ports.

The `rate-limit all` command controls the rate of traffic sent or received on a port by setting a limit on the bandwidth available. It includes options for:

- Rate-limiting on inbound or outbound traffic.
- Specifying the traffic rate as either a percentage of bandwidth, or in terms of bits per second.

(Default: Disabled.)

<code>in</code> <b>or</b> <code>out</code>	Specifies a traffic rate limit on inbound traffic passing through that port or on outbound traffic.
<code>percent</code> <b>or</b> <code>kbps</code>	Specifies the rate limit as a percentage of total available bandwidth, or in kilobits per second.

**NOTE:**

The granularity of actual limits may vary across different switch models.

For more details on configuring rate-limiting, see [All traffic rate-limiting](#) on page 121.

Notes:

- The `rate-limit icmp` command specifies a rate limit on inbound ICMP traffic only (see [ICMP rate-limiting](#) on page 125).
- Rate-limiting does not apply to trunked ports (including meshed ports).
- Kbps rate-limiting is done in segments of 1% of the lowest corresponding media speed. For example, if the media speed is 1 Kbps, the value would be 1 Mbps. A 1-100 Kbps rate-limit is implemented as a limit of 100 Kbps; a limit of 100-199 Kbps is also implemented as a limit of 100 Kbps, a limit of 200-299 Kbps is implemented as a limit of 200 Kbps, and so on.
- Percentage limits are based on link speed. For example, if a 100 Mbps port negotiates a link at 100 Mbps and the inbound rate-limit is configured at 50%, then the traffic flow through that port is limited to no more than 50 Mbps. Similarly, if the same port negotiates a 10 Mbps link, then it allows no more than 5 Mbps of inbound traffic. Configuring a rate limit of 0 (zero) on a port **blocks all traffic on that port**. However, if this is the desired behavior on the port, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends using the `<port-list> disable` command instead of configuring a rate limit of 0.

You can configure a rate limit from either the global configuration level or from the port context level. For example, either of the following commands configures an inbound rate limit of 60% on ports 3 – 5:

```
switch(config)# int 3-5 rate-limit all in percent 60
switch(eth-3-5)# rate-limit all in percent 60
```

## Displaying the current rate-limit configuration

The `show rate-limit all` command displays the per-port rate-limit configuration in the running-config file.

**Syntax:**

```
show rate-limit all [<port-list>]
```

Without `[port-list]`, this command lists the rate-limit configuration for all ports on the switch.

With `[port-list]`, this command lists the rate-limit configuration for the specified ports. This command operates the same way in any CLI context.

If you want to view the rate-limiting configuration on the first six ports:

**Example:**

[Listing the rate-limit configuration](#) on page 122 shows a rate-limiting configuration for the first six ports. In this instance:

- Ports 1–4 are configured with an outbound rate limit of 200 Kbps.
- Port 5 is configured with an inbound rate limit of 20%.
- Port 6 is not configured for rate-limiting.

### Listing the rate-limit configuration

```
switch# show rate-limit all 1-6
```

#### All-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override	Outbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
-----	+	-----	-----	+	-----	-----
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override	200	kbps	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override	200	kbps	No-override
3	Disabled	Disabled	No-override	200	kbps	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override	200	kbps	No-override
5	20	%	No-override	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
6	Disabled	Disabled	No-override	Disabled	Disabled	No-override



**NOTE:** To view **RADIUS**-assigned rate-limit information, use one of the following command options:

```
show port-access
  web-based clients <port-list> detailed
  mac-based clients <port-list> detailed
  authenticator clients <port-list> detailed
```

For more on **RADIUS**-assigned rate-limits, see title "Configuring RADIUS Server Support for Switch Services" in the latest Management and Configuration Guide for your switch.

The `show running` command displays the currently applied setting for any interfaces in the switch configured for all traffic rate-limiting and ICMP rate limiting.

The `show config` command displays this information for the configuration currently stored in the `startup-config` file. (Note that configuration changes performed with the CLI, but not followed by a `write mem` command, do not appear in the `startup-config` file.)

#### Rate-limit settings listed in the `show config` output

```
switch# show config

Startup configuration: 3

; J9727A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WB.15.18.0000x
; Ver #09:14.29.eb.8f.fc.f3.ff.37.2d:ba

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type j9727a
interface 1
  rate-limit all out kbps 200
  exit
interface 2
  rate-limit all out kbps 200
  exit
interface 3
  rate-limit all out kbps 200
  exit
interface 4
  rate-limit all out kbps 200
  exit
interface 5
  rate-limit all in percent 20
  exit
```

## Operating notes for rate-limiting

- **Rate-limiting operates on a per-port basis, regardless of traffic priority.** Rate-limiting is available on all types of ports (other than trunked ports) and at all port speeds configurable for these switches.
- **Rate-limiting on a trunk is not allowed for the `all`, `bcast`, `icmp`, and `mcast` traffic types.** Rate-limiting is not supported on ports configured in a trunk group (including mesh ports). Configuring a port for rate-limiting and then adding it to a trunk suspends rate-limiting on the port while it is in the trunk. Attempting to configure rate-limiting on a port that already belongs to a trunk generates the following message: `<port-list> : Operation is not allowed for a trunked port.`
- **Rate-limiting and hardware.** The hardware will round the actual Kbps rate down to the nearest multiple of 64 Kbps.
- **Rate-limiting is visible as an outbound forwarding rate.** Because inbound rate-limiting is performed on packets during packet-processing, it is not shown via the inbound drop counters. Instead, this limit is verifiable as the ratio of outbound traffic from an inbound rate-limited port versus the inbound rate. For outbound rate-limiting, the rate is visible as the percentage of available outbound bandwidth (assuming that the amount of requested traffic to be forwarded is larger than the rate-limit).
- **Operation with other features.** Configuring rate-limiting on a port where other features affect port queue behavior (such as flow control) can result in the port not achieving its configured rate-limiting maximum. For example, in a situation where flow control is configured on a rate-limited port, there can be enough "back pressure" to hold high-priority inbound traffic from the upstream device or application to a rate that is lower than the configured rate limit. In this case, the inbound traffic flow does not reach the configured rate and lower priority traffic is not forwarded into the switch fabric from the rate-limited port. (This behavior is termed "head-of-line blocking" and is a well-known problem with flow-control.) In another type of situation, an outbound port can become oversubscribed by traffic received from multiple rate-limited ports. In this case, the actual rate for traffic on the rate-limited ports may be lower than configured because the total traffic load requested to the outbound port exceeds the port's bandwidth, and thus some requested traffic may be held off on inbound.
- **Traffic filters on rate-limited ports.** Configuring a traffic filter on a port does not prevent the switch from including filtered traffic in the bandwidth-use measurement for rate-limiting when it is configured on the same port. For example, ACLs, source-port filters, protocol filters, and multicast filters are all included in bandwidth usage calculations.
- **Monitoring (mirroring) rate-limited interfaces.** If monitoring is configured, packets dropped by rate-limiting on a monitored interface are still forwarded to the designated monitor port. (Monitoring shows what traffic is inbound on an interface, and is not affected by "drop" or "forward" decisions.)
- **Optimum rate-limiting operation.** Optimum rate-limiting occurs with 64-byte packet sizes. Traffic with larger packet sizes can result in performance somewhat below the configured bandwidth. This is to ensure the strictest possible rate-limiting of all sizes of packets.



---

**NOTE:** For the Aruba 2920 switches, use a single PDU when trying to configure through SNMP.

---





**NOTE:** Rate-limiting is applied to the available bandwidth on a port and not to any specific applications running through the port. If the total bandwidth requested by all applications is less than the configured maximum rate, then no rate-limit can be applied. This situation occurs with a number of popular throughput-testing applications, as well as most regular network applications. Consider the following Example: that uses the minimum packet size:

The total available bandwidth on a 100 Mbps port "X" (allowing for Inter-packet Gap—IPG), with no rate-limiting restrictions, is:

$$(((100,000,000 \text{ bits}) / 8) / 84) \times 64 = 9,523,809 \text{ bytes per second}$$

where:

- The divisor (84) includes the 12-byte IPG, 8-byte preamble, and 64-bytes of data required to transfer a 64-byte packet on a 100 Mbps link.
- Calculated "bytes-per-second" includes packet headers and data. This value is the maximum "bytes-per-second" that 100 Mbps can support for minimum-sized packets.

Suppose port "X" is configured with a rate limit of 50% (4,761,904 bytes). If a throughput-testing application is the only application using the port and transmits 1 Mbyte of data through the port, it uses only 10.5% of the port's available bandwidth, and the rate-limit of 50% has no effect. This is because the maximum rate permitted (50%) exceeds the test application's bandwidth usage (126,642-164,062 bytes, depending upon packet size, which is only 1.3% to 1.7% of the available total). Before rate-limiting can occur, the test application's bandwidth usage must exceed 50% of the port's total available bandwidth. That is, to test the rate-limit setting, the following must be true:

$$\text{bandwidth usage } (0.50 \times 9,523,809)$$

## ICMP rate-limiting

In IP networks, ICMP messages are generated in response to either inquiries or requests from routing and diagnostic functions. These messages are directed to the applications originating the inquiries. In unusual situations, if the messages are generated rapidly with the intent of overloading network circuits, they can threaten network availability. This problem is visible in denial-of-service (DoS) attacks or other malicious behaviors where a worm or virus overloads the network with ICMP messages to an extent where no other traffic can get through. (ICMP messages themselves can also be misused as virus carriers). Such malicious misuses of ICMP can include a high number of ping packets that mimic a valid source IP address and an invalid destination IP address (spoofed pings), and a high number of response messages (such as Destination Unreachable error messages) generated by the network.

ICMP rate-limiting provides a method for limiting the amount of bandwidth that may be used for inbound ICMP traffic on a switch port. This feature allows users to restrict ICMP traffic to percentage levels that permit necessary ICMP functions, but throttle additional traffic that may be caused by worms or viruses (reducing their spread and effect). In addition, ICMP rate-limiting preserves inbound port bandwidth for non-ICMP traffic.



### CAUTION:

ICMP is necessary for routing, diagnostic, and error responses in an IP network. ICMP rate-limiting is primarily used for throttling worm or virus-like behavior and should normally be configured to allow one to five percent of available inbound bandwidth (at 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps speeds) or 100 to 10,000 kbps (1Gbps or 10 Gbps speeds) to be used for ICMP traffic. **This feature should not be used to remove all ICMP traffic from a network.**



#### NOTE:

ICMP rate-limiting does not throttle non-ICMP traffic. In cases where you want to throttle both ICMP traffic and all other inbound traffic on a given interface, you can separately configure both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting.

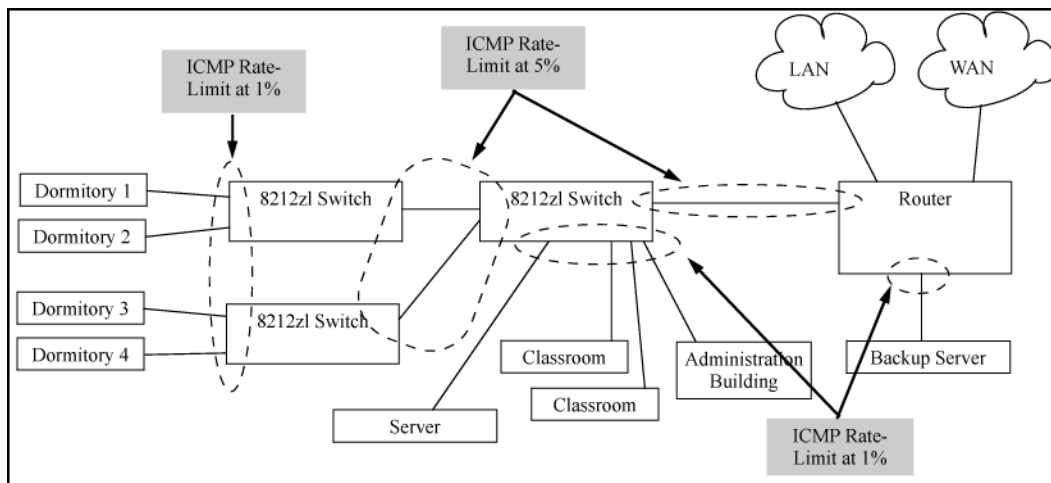
The all-traffic rate-limiting command (`rate-limit all`) and the ICMP rate-limiting command (`rate-limit icmp`) operate differently:

- All-traffic rate-limiting applies to both inbound and outbound traffic and can be specified either in terms of a percentage of total bandwidth or in terms of bits per second;
- ICMP rate-limiting applies only to inbound traffic and can be specified as only a percentage of total bandwidth.

## Guidelines for configuring ICMP rate-limiting

Apply ICMP rate-limiting on all connected interfaces on the switch to effectively throttle excessive ICMP messaging from any source. **Figure 21: Example: of ICMP rate-limiting** on page 126 shows an Example: of how to configure this for a small to mid-sized campus though similar rate-limit thresholds are applicable to other network environments. On edge interfaces, where ICMP traffic should be minimal, a threshold of 1% of available bandwidth should be sufficient for most applications. On core interfaces, such as switch-to-switch and switch-to-router, a maximum threshold of 5% should be sufficient for normal ICMP traffic. ("Normal" ICMP traffic levels should be the maximums that occur when the network is rebooting.)

**Figure 21:** Example: of ICMP rate-limiting



## Configuring ICMP rate-limiting

For detailed information about ICMP rate-limiting, see **ICMP rate-limiting** on page 125.

The `rate-limit icmp` command controls inbound usage of a port by setting a limit on the bandwidth available for inbound ICMP traffic.

#### Syntax:

```
no int <port-list> rate-limit icmp {< percent < 0-100 > | kbps < 0-10000000 > | [trap-clear]}
```

Configures inbound ICMP traffic rate-limiting. You can configure a rate limit from either the global configuration level (as shown above) or from the interface context level. The `no` form of the command disables ICMP rate-limiting on the specified interfaces.

(Default: Disabled.)

percent <1-100>	Values in this range allow ICMP traffic as a percentage of the bandwidth available on the interface.
kbps <0-10000000>	Specifies the rate at which to forward traffic in kilobits per second.
0	Causes an interface to drop all incoming ICMP traffic and is not recommended. See the <b>caution</b> .
trap-clear	Clears existing ICMP rate limiting trap condition.

Note: ICMP rate-limiting is not supported on meshed ports. (Rate-limiting can reduce the efficiency of paths through a mesh domain).

#### Example:

Either of the following commands configures an inbound rate limit of 1% on ports A3 to A5, which are used as network edge ports:

```
switch(config) # int a3-a5 rate-limit icmp 1
switch(eth-A3-A5) # rate-limit icmp 1
```



**NOTE:** When using kbps-mode ICMP rate-limiting, the rate-limiting only operates on the IP payload part of the ICMP packet (as required by metering RFC 2698). This means that effective metering is at a rate greater than the configured rate, with the disparity increasing as the packet size decreases (the packet to payload ratio is higher).

Also, in kbps mode, metering accuracy is limited at low values, For example, less than 45 Kbps. This is to allow metering to function well at higher media speeds such as 10 Gbps.

For information on using ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface, see [\*\*Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface\*\*](#) on page 127.

## Using both ICMP rate-limiting and all-traffic rate-limiting on the same interface

ICMP and all-traffic rate-limiting can be configured on the same interface. All-traffic rate-limiting applies to all inbound or outbound traffic (including ICMP traffic), while ICMP rate-limiting applies only to inbound ICMP traffic.



**NOTE:** If the all-traffic load on an interface meets or exceeds the currently configured all-traffic inbound rate-limit while the ICMP traffic rate-limit on the same interface has not been reached, all excess traffic is dropped, including any inbound ICMP traffic above the all-traffic limit (regardless of whether the ICMP rate-limit has been reached).

#### Example:

Suppose:

- The all-traffic inbound rate-limit on port "X" is configured at 55% of the port's bandwidth.
- The ICMP traffic rate-limit on port "X" is configured at 2% of the port's bandwidth.

If at a given moment:

- Inbound ICMP traffic on port "X" is using 1% of the port's bandwidth, and
- Inbound traffic of all types on port "X" demands 61% of the ports's bandwidth,

all inbound traffic above 55% of the port's bandwidth, including any additional ICMP traffic, is dropped as long as all inbound traffic combined on the port demands 55% or more of the port's bandwidth.

## Viewing the current ICMP rate-limit configuration

The `show rate-limit icmp` command displays the per-interface ICMP rate-limit configuration in the running-config file.

### Syntax:

```
show rate-limit icmp [< port-list >]
```

Without `[port-list]`, this command lists the ICMP rate-limit configuration for all ports on the switch.

With `[port-list]`, this command lists the rate-limit configuration for the specified interfaces. This command operates the same way in any CLI context

If you want to view the rate-limiting configuration on ports 1–6:

### Listing the rate-limit configuration

```
switch(config)# show rate-limit icmp 1-6
```

```
Inbound ICMP Rate Limit Maximum Percentage
```

Port	Mode	Rate Limit
1	Disabled	Disabled
2	kbps	100
3	%	5
4	%	1
5	%	1
6	Disabled	Disable

The `show running` command displays the currently applied setting for any interfaces in the switch configured for all traffic rate-limiting and ICMP rate-limiting.

The `show config` command displays this information for the configuration currently stored in the `startup-config` file. (Note that configuration changes performed with the CLI, but not followed by a `write mem` command, do not appear in the `startup-config` file.)

## Operating notes for ICMP rate-limiting

ICMP rate-limiting operates on an interface (per-port) basis to allow, on average, the highest expected amount of legitimate, inbound ICMP traffic.

- **Interface support:** ICMP rate-limiting is available on all types of ports (other than trunk ports or mesh ports), and at all port speeds configurable for the switch.
- **Rate-limiting is not permitted on mesh ports:** Either type of rate-limiting (all-traffic or ICMP) can reduce the efficiency of paths through a mesh domain.
- **Rate-limiting on a trunk is not allowed for the all, bcast, icmp, and mcast traffic types.** Neither all-traffic nor ICMP rate-limiting are supported on ports configured in a trunk group.

- **ICMP percentage-based rate-limits are calculated as a percentage of the negotiated link speed:** For example, if a 100 Mbps port negotiates a link to another switch at 100 Mbps and is ICMP rate-limit configured at 5%, the inbound ICMP traffic flow through that port is limited to 5 Mbps. Similarly, if the same port negotiates a 10 Mbps link, it allows 0.5 Mbps of inbound traffic. If an interface experiences an inbound flow of ICMP traffic in excess of its configured limit, the switch generates a log message and an SNMP trap (if an SNMP trap receiver is configured).
- **ICMP rate-limiting is port-based:** ICMP rate-limiting reflects the available percentage of an interface's entire inbound bandwidth. The rate of inbound flow for traffic of a given priority and the rate of flow from an ICMP rate-limited interface to a particular queue of an outbound interface are not measures of the actual ICMP rate limit enforced on an interface.
- **Below-maximum rates:** ICMP rate-limiting operates on a per-interface basis, regardless of traffic priority. Configuring ICMP rate-limiting on an interface where other features affect inbound port queue behavior (such as flow control) can result in the interface not achieving its configured ICMP rate-limiting maximum. For example, in some situations with flow control configured on an ICMP rate-limited interface, there can be enough "back pressure" to hold high-priority inbound traffic from the upstream device or application to a rate that does not allow bandwidth for lower-priority ICMP traffic. In this case, the inbound traffic flow may not permit the forwarding of ICMP traffic into the switch fabric from the rate-limited interface. (This behavior is termed "head-of-line blocking" and is a well-known problem with flow-control.) In cases where both types of rate-limiting (`rate-limit all` and `rate-limit icmp`) are configured on the same interface, this situation is more likely to occur.  
  
In another type of situation, an outbound interface can become oversubscribed by traffic received from multiple ICMP rate-limited interfaces. In this case, the actual rate for traffic on the rate-limited interfaces may be lower than configured because the total traffic load requested to the outbound interface exceeds the interface's bandwidth, and thus some requested traffic may be held off on inbound.
- **Monitoring (mirroring) ICMP rate-limited interfaces:** If monitoring is configured, packets dropped by ICMP rate-limiting on a monitored interface are still forwarded to the designated monitor port. (Monitoring shows what traffic is inbound on an interface, and is not affected by "drop" or "forward" decisions.)
- **Optimum rate-limiting operation:** Optimum rate-limiting occurs with 64-byte packet sizes. Traffic with larger packet sizes can result in performance somewhat below the configured inbound bandwidth. This is to ensure the strictest possible rate-limiting of all sizes of packets.
- **Outbound traffic flow:** Configuring ICMP rate-limiting on an interface does **not** control the rate of outbound traffic flow on the interface.

## ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages

If the switch detects a volume of inbound ICMP traffic on a port that exceeds the ICMP rate-limit configured for that port, it generates one SNMP trap and one informational Event Log message to notify the system operator of the condition. (The trap and Event Log message are sent within two minutes of when the event occurred on the port.) For Example:

```
I 06/30/05 11:15:42 RateLim: ICMP traffic exceeded configured limit on port A1
```

These trap and Event Log messages provide an advisory that inbound ICMP traffic on a given interface has exceeded the configured maximum. The additional ICMP traffic is dropped, but the excess condition may indicate an infected host (or other traffic threat or network problem) on that interface. The system operator should investigate the attached devices or network conditions further; the switch does not send more traps or Event Log messages for excess ICMP traffic on the affected port until the system operator resets the port's ICMP trap function.

The switch does not send more traps or Event Log messages for excess ICMP traffic on the affected port until the system operator resets the port's ICMP trap function. The reset can be done through SNMP from a network management station or through the CLI with the `trap-clear` command option.

**Syntax:**

```
interface <port-list> rate-limit icmp trap-clear
```

On a port configured with ICMP rate-limiting, this command resets the ICMP trap function, which allows the switch to generate a new SNMP trap and an Event Log message if ICMP traffic in excess of the configured limit is detected on the port.

**Example:**

An operator noticing an ICMP rate-limiting trap or Event Log message originating with port 1 on a switch would use the following command to reset the port to send a new message if the condition occurs again:

```
switch(config)# interface 1 rate-limit icmp trap-clear
```

## Determining the switch port number used in ICMP port reset commands

To enable excess ICMP traffic notification traps and Event Log messages, use the `setmib` command described on **ICMP rate-limiting trap and Event Log messages** on page 129. The port number included in the command corresponds to the internal number the switch maintains for the designated port and not the port's external identity.

To match the port's external slot/number to the internal port number, use the `walkmib ifDescr` command, as shown in the following example:

### Matching internal port numbers to external port numbers

```
switch# walkmib ifDescr
ifDescr.1 = 1
ifDescr.2 = 2
ifDescr.3 = 3
ifDescr.4 = 4
ifDescr.5 = 5
ifDescr.6 = 6
ifDescr.7 = 7
ifDescr.8 = 8
ifDescr.9 = 9
ifDescr.10 = 10
ifDescr.11 = 11
ifDescr.12 = 12
ifDescr.13 = 13
ifDescr.14 = 14
ifDescr.15 = 15
ifDescr.16 = 16
ifDescr.17 = 17
ifDescr.18 = 18
ifDescr.19 = 19
ifDescr.20 = 20
ifDescr.21 = 21
ifDescr.22 = 22
ifDescr.23 = 23
ifDescr.24 = 24
ifDescr.210 = Trk1
ifDescr.211 = Trk2
ifDescr.330 = DEFAULT_VLAN
ifDescr.4425 = Switch_software loopback interface
ifDescr.4426 = Switch software loopback interface
.
.
.
```

## Configuring inbound rate-limiting for broadcast and multicast traffic

You can configure rate-limiting (throttling) of inbound broadcast and multicast traffic on the switch, which helps prevent the switch from being disrupted by traffic storms if they occur on the rate-limited port. The rate-limiting is implemented as a percentage of the total available bandwidth on the port.

The `rate-limit` command can be executed from the global or interface context, for Example:

```
switch(config)# interface 3 rate-limit bcast in percent 10
```

or

```
switch(config)# interface 3
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit bcast in percent 10
```

### Syntax:

```
rate-limit {< bcast | mcast >} in percent < 0-100 >
```

### Parameters

in percent <0-100>

Also supports configuring limit in *kbps*

```
no rate-limit {<bcast | [mcast >]} in
```

Enables rate-limiting and sets limits for the specified inbound broadcast or multicast traffic. Only the amount of traffic specified by the percent is forwarded.

Default: Disabled

If you want to set a limit of 50% on inbound broadcast traffic for port 3, you can first enter interface context for port 3 and then execute the `rate-limit` command, as shown in [Inbound broadcast rate-limiting of 50% on port 3](#) on page 131. Only 50% of the inbound broadcast traffic will be forwarded.

### Inbound broadcast rate-limiting of 50% on port 3

```
switch(config)# int 3
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit bcast in percent 50
```

```
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit bcast
Broadcast-Traffic Rate LimitMaximum %
```

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	Disabled	%	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
5	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

If you rate-limit multicast traffic on the same port, the multicast limit is also in effect for that port, as shown in [Inbound multicast rate-limiting of 20% on port 3](#) on page 132. Only 20% of the multicast traffic will be forwarded.

### Inbound multicast rate-limiting of 20% on port 3

```
switch(eth-3)# rate-limit mcast in percent 20
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit mcast
```

Multicast-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
-----	+	-----	-----
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	20	%	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

To disable rate-limiting for a port enter the `no` form of the command, as shown in [Disabling inbound multicast rate-limiting for port 3](#) on page 132.

### Disabling inbound multicast rate-limiting for port 3

```
switch(eth-3)# no rate-limit mcast in
```

```
switch(eth-3)# show rate-limit mcast
```

Multicast-Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode	Radius Override
-----	+	-----	-----
1	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
2	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
3	Disabled	Disabled	No-override
4	Disabled	Disabled	No-override

## Operating Notes

The following information is displayed for each installed transceiver:

- Port number on which transceiver is installed.
- Type of transceiver.
- Product number — Includes revision letter, such as A, B, or C. If no revision letter follows a product number, this means that no revision is available for the transceiver.
- Part number — Allows you to determine the manufacturer for a specified transceiver and revision number.
- For a non-Aruba switches installed transceiver, no transceiver type, product number, or part information is displayed. In the Serial Number field, `non-operational` is displayed instead of a serial number.
- The following error messages may be displayed for a non-operational transceiver:
  - Unsupported Transceiver. (SelfTest Err#060)
  - This switch only supports revision B and above transceivers.
  - Self test failure.
  - Transceiver type not supported in this port.



- Transceiver type not supported in this software version.
- Not an Switch Transceiver.

## Guaranteed minimum bandwidth (GMB)

GMB provides a method for ensuring that each of a given port's outbound traffic priority queues has a specified minimum consideration for sending traffic out on the link to another device. This can prevent a condition where applications generating lower-priority traffic in the network are frequently or continually "starved" by high volumes of higher-priority traffic.

### GMB operation



**NOTE:** Earlier software releases supported GMB configuration on a per-port basis. Beginning with software release 15.18, the 2920 and 5400R switches also support GMB configuration on static trunks. (GMB configuration is not supported on dynamic LACP or distributed (DT) trunks).

For application to static trunk interfaces (2920 and 5400r only), GMB enforcement is applied individually to each port belonging to the trunk, and not to the trunk as a whole.

For any port, group of ports or, static trunks, you can use the default minimum bandwidth settings for each outbound priority queue or a customized bandwidth profile. It is also possible to disable the feature entirely.

The switch services per-port outbound traffic in a descending order of priority; that is, from the highest priority to the lowest priority. By default, each port (including each port in a static trunk) offers eight prioritized, outbound traffic queues. Tagged VLAN traffic is prioritized according to the 802.1p priority the traffic carries. Untagged VLAN traffic is assigned a priority of **0** (normal).

**Table 14:** *Per-port outbound priority queues*

802.1p Priority settings in tagged VLAN packets <sup>1</sup>	Outbound priority queue for a given port
1 (low)	1
2 (low)	2
0 (normal)	3
3 (normal)	4
4 (medium)	5
5 (medium)	6
6 (high)	7
7 (high)	8

<sup>1</sup> The switch processes outbound traffic from an untagged port at the "0" (normal) priority level.

You can use GMB to reserve a specific percentage of each port's available outbound bandwidth for each of the eight priority queues. This means that regardless of the amount of high-priority outbound traffic on a port (including each port in a static trunk), you can ensure that there will always be bandwidth reserved for lower-priority traffic.

Since the switch services outbound traffic according to priority (highest to lowest), the highest-priority outbound traffic on a given port automatically receives the first priority in servicing. Thus, in most applications, it is necessary only to specify the minimum bandwidth you want to allocate to the lower priority queues. In this case, the high-priority traffic automatically receives all unassigned bandwidth without starving the lower-priority queues.

Conversely, configuring a bandwidth minimum on only the high-priority outbound queue of a port or static trunk (and not providing a bandwidth minimum for the lower-priority queues) is not recommended, because it may "starve" the lower-priority queues.



**NOTE:** For a given port, when the demand on one or more outbound queues exceeds the minimum bandwidth configured for those queues, the switch apportions unallocated bandwidth to these queues on a priority basis. As a result, specifying a minimum bandwidth for a high-priority queue but not specifying a minimum for lower-priority queues can starve the lower-priority queues during periods of high demand on the high priority queue. For example, if a port or static trunk configured to allocate a minimum bandwidth of 80% for outbound high-priority traffic experiences a demand above this minimum, this burst starves lower-priority queues that **do not have a minimum configured**. Normally, this will not altogether halt lower priority traffic on the network, but will likely cause delays in the delivery of the lower-priority traffic.

The sum of the GMB settings for all outbound queues on a given port or static trunk cannot exceed 100%.

## Impacts of QoS queue configuration on GMB operation

The section **Configuring GMB for outbound traffic** on page 135 assumes the ports on the switch offer eight prioritized, outbound traffic queues. This may not always be the case, however, because the switch supports a QoS queue configuration feature that allows you to reduce the number of outbound queues from eight (the default) to four queues, or two.

Changing the number of queues affects the GMB commands (`interface bandwidth-min` and `show bandwidth output`) such that they operate only on the number of queues currently configured. If the queues are reconfigured, the guaranteed minimum bandwidth per queue is automatically re-allocated according to the following percentages:

**Table 15: Default GMB percentage allocations per QoS queue configuration**

802.1p priority	8 queues (default)	4 queues	2 queues
1 (lowest)	2%	10%	90%
2	3%		
0 (normal)	30%		
3	10%		
4	10%	10%	10%
5	10%		
6	15%		
7 (highest)	20%		



**NOTE:** For more information on queue configuration and the associated default minimum bandwidth settings, see the "Quality of Service (QoS): managing bandwidth more effectively" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

## Configuring GMB for outbound traffic

For any port, group of ports, or static trunk, you can configure either the default minimum bandwidth settings for each outbound priority queue or a customized bandwidth allocation. For most applications, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends configuring GMB with the same values on all ports on the switch so that the outbound traffic profile is consistent for all outbound traffic. However, there may be instances where it may be advantageous to configure special profiles on connections to servers or to the network infrastructure (such as links to routers, other switches, or to the network core).

### Syntax:

```
no int <port-list|trk_#> bandwidth-min output
```

Configures the default minimum bandwidth allocation for the outbound priority queue for each port or static trunk in the `<port-list|trk_#>`. In the eight-queue configuration, the default values per priority queue are:

- Queue 1 (low priority): 2%
- Queue 2 (low priority): 3%
- Queue 3 (normal priority): 30%
- Queue 4 (normal priority): 10%
- Queue 5 (medium priority): 10%
- Queue 6 (medium priority): 10%
- Queue 7 (high priority): 15%
- Queue 8 (high priority): 20%

The `no` form of the command disables GMB for all ports and trunks in the `<port-list>`. In this state, which is the equivalent of setting all outbound queues on a port or static trunk to **0** (zero), a high level of higher-priority traffic can starve lower-priority queues, which can slow or halt lower-priority traffic in the network.

You can configure bandwidth minimums from either the global configuration level (as shown above) or from the port or static trunk context level. For information on outbound port queues, see [Per-port outbound priority queues](#).

### Syntax:

```
no int <<port-list|trk_#>> bandwidth-min output [0-100|strict] [0-100]
```

Select a minimum bandwidth.

For ports and trunks in `<port-list|trk_#>`, specifies the minimum outbound bandwidth as a percent of the total bandwidth for each outbound queue. The queues receive service in descending order of priority of each port.



**NOTE:** For application to static trunk interfaces (2920 and 5400R only), GMB enforcement is applied individually to each port belonging to the trunk, and not to the trunk as a whole.

You must specify a bandwidth percent value for all except the highest priority queue, which may instead be set to "strict" mode. The sum of the bandwidth percentages below the top queue cannot exceed 100%. (**0** is a value for a queue percentage setting.)

Configuring a total of less than 100% across the eight queues results in unallocated bandwidth that remains harmlessly unused unless a given queue becomes oversubscribed. In this case, the unallocated bandwidth is apportioned to oversubscribed queues in descending order of priority. For example, if you configure a minimum of 10% for queues 1 to 7 and 0% for queue 8, the unallocated bandwidth is available to all eight queues in the following prioritized order:

Queue 8 (high priority)  
Queue 7 (high priority)  
Queue 6 (medium priority)  
Queue 5 (medium priority)  
Queue 4 (normal priority)  
Queue 3 (normal priority)  
Queue 2 (low priority)  
Queue 1 (low priority)

A setting of **0** (zero percent) on a queue means that no bandwidth minimum is specifically reserved for that queue for each of the ports (including trunked ports) in the `<port-list|trk_#>` .

Also, there is no benefit to setting the high-priority queue (queue 8) to **0** (zero) unless you want the medium queue (queues 5 and 6) to be able to support traffic bursts above its guaranteed minimum.

[strict]: Provides the ability to configure the highest priority queue as `strict`. Per-queue values must be specified in priority order, with queue 1 having the lowest priority and queue 8 (or 4, or 2) having the highest priority (the highest queue is determined by how many queues are configured on the switch. Two, four, and eight queues are permitted (see the `qos queue-config` command). The strict queue is provided all the bandwidth it needs. Any remaining bandwidth is shared among the non-strict queues based on need and configured bandwidth profiles (the profiles are applied to the leftover bandwidth in this case). The total sum of percentages for non-strict queues must not exceed 100.



**NOTE:** Configuring 0% for a queue can result in that queue being starved if any higher queue becomes over-subscribed and is then given all unused bandwidth.

The switch applies the bandwidth calculation to the link speed the port or trunk is currently using. For example, if a 10/100 Mbs port negotiates to 10 Mbps on the link, it bases its GMB calculations on 10 Mbps, not 100 Mbps.

Use `show bandwidth output <<port-list|trk_#>>` to display the current GMB configuration. (The `show config` and `show running` commands do not include GMB configuration data.)

---

### Example:

For example, suppose you want to configure the following outbound minimum bandwidth availability for ports 1 and 2:

Priority of outbound port queue	Minimum bandwidth %	Effect on outbound bandwidth allocation
8	20%	Queue 8 has the first priority use of all outbound bandwidth not specifically allocated to queues 1 to 7.  If, For example, bandwidth allocated to queue 5 is not being used and queues 7 and 8 become oversubscribed, queue 8 has first-priority use of the unused bandwidth allocated to queue 5.
7	15%	Queue 7 has a GMB of 15% available for outbound traffic. If queue 7 becomes oversubscribed and queue 8 is not already using all of the unallocated bandwidth, queue 7 can use the unallocated bandwidth.  Also, any unused bandwidth allocated to queues 6 to queue 1 is available to queue 7 if queue 8 has not already claimed it.
6	10%	Queue 6 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues 8 and 7 in priority for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.
5	10%	Queue 5 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues 8, 7, and 6 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.
4	10%	Queue 4 has a GMB of 10% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, and 5 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.
3	30%	Queue 3 has a GMB of 30% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, 5, and 4 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.
2	3%	Queue 2 has a GMB of 3% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to queues, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, and 3 for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.
1	2%	Queue 1 has a GMB of 2% and, if oversubscribed, is subordinate to all the other queues for any unused outbound bandwidth available on the port.

Either of the following commands configures ports 1 through 5 with bandwidth settings:

```
switch(config) # int 1-5 bandwidth-min output 2 3 30 10 10 10 15 strict
Switch(interface 1-5) # bandwidth-min output 2 3 30 10 10 10 15 strict
```

### Viewing the current GMB configuration

This command displays the per-port GMB configuration in the `running-config` file.

## Syntax:

```
show bandwidth output <port-list|trk_#>
```

Without `<port-list|trk_#>` , this command lists the GMB configuration for all ports and static trunks on the switch.

With `<port-list|trk_#>` , this command lists the GMB configuration for the specified ports and static trunks.

This command operates the same way in any CLI context. If the command lists `Disabled` for a port or trunk, there are no bandwidth minimums configured for any queue on the port or trunk. (See the description of the `no` form of the `bandwidth-min` output command.)

**Listing the GMB configuration** on page 138 displays the GMB configuration resulting from either of the above commands.

### Listing the GMB configuration

```
switch(config)# show bandwidth output 1-5, trk1
Outbound Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth %
Port    Q1  Q2    Q3  Q4    Q5  Q6  Q7  Q8
-----
1        2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
2        2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
3        2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
4        2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
5        2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
Trk1     2   3      30  10    10  10  15  strict
```

## GMB operating notes

### Impact of QoS queue configuration on GMB commands

Changing the number of queues causes the GMB commands (`interface bandwidth-min` and `show bandwidth output`) to operate only on the number of queues currently configured. In addition, when the `qos queue-config` command is executed, any previously configured `bandwidth-min` output settings are removed from the startup configuration. For the default GMB percentage allocations per number of queues, see [Default GMB percentage allocations per QoS queue configuration](#).

## Rate-limiting Unknown Unicast Traffic

Unknown unicast traffic consists of unicast packets with unknown destination MAC addresses. The switch floods the unicast packets to all interfaces that are members of the VLAN. An attacker can bring down the network by sending out packets to random destination MAC addresses and hence it is important to rate limit traffic with unknown destination addresses.

You can rate limit the unknown unicast traffic per port level in either percent or kbps mode.

### rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent

#### Syntax

```
interface port-list rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent 0-100
```

#### Description

Sets a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.

## Command context

interface

## Parameters

**in**

Sets a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.

**percent**

Specifies the rate limit as a percentage of the total available bandwidth.

**kbps**

Specifies the rate limit in Kb/s.

## Examples

```
switch(config)# int 2
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit
all                Set a rate limit for all traffic.
bcast              Set a rate limit for broadcast traffic.
icmp               Set a rate limit for ICMP traffic.
mcast              Set a rate limit for multicast traffic.
queues             Set a rate limit for each traffic queue.
unknown-unicast    Set a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast
in                 Set a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in
kbps
percent
switch(eth-2)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in percent 10
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit
  bcast              Show broadcast traffic rate limits.
  icmp               Show ICMP traffic rate limits.
  mcast              Show multicast traffic rate limits.
  queues             Show limits for outgoing queue traffic.
  unknown-unicast    Show unicast flood traffic rate limits.
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
[ethernet] PORT-LIST The ports to show information for.

switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast 2

Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port  | Inbound Limit Mode
-----+-----
2     | 10                %
```

## rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps

### Syntax

```
interface port-list rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps rate
```

### Description

Sets a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.

### Command context

interface

## Parameters

### **in**

Sets a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.

### **percent**

Specifies the rate limit as a percentage of the total available bandwidth.

### **kbps**

Specifies the rate limit in Kb/s.

## Examples

```
switch(config)# int 1
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit
all                Set a rate limit for all traffic.
bcast              Set a rate limit for broadcast traffic.
icmp               Set a rate limit for ICMP traffic.
mcast              Set a rate limit for multicast traffic.
queues             Set a rate limit for each traffic queue.
unknown-unicast    Set a rate limit for unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast
in                 Set a rate limit for incoming unicast flood traffic.
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in
kbps
percent
switch(eth-1)# rate-limit unknown-unicast in kbps 100
switch(eth-1)# show rate-limit
all                Show total traffic rate limits.
bcast              Show broadcast traffic rate limits.
icmp               Show ICMP traffic rate limits.
mcast              Show multicast traffic rate limits.
queues             Show limits for outgoing queue traffic.
unknown-unicast    Show unicast flood traffic rate limits.
switch(eth-1)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```

Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode
-----	+	-----
1	100	kbps
2	Disabled	Disabled
3	Disabled	Disabled
4	Disabled	Disabled
5	Disabled	Disabled
6	Disabled	Disabled
7	Disabled	Disabled
8	Disabled	Disabled
9	Disabled	Disabled
10	Disabled	Disabled
11	Disabled	Disabled
12	Disabled	Disabled
13	Disabled	Disabled
14	Disabled	Disabled
15	Disabled	Disabled
16	Disabled	Disabled

## show rate-limit unknown-unicast

### Syntax

```
show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```



## Description

Displays the per port rate limit configuration.

## Command context

interface

## Parameters

**ethernet** <port-list>

To view the rate limit configuration for the specified port.

## Examples

```
switch(eth-2)# show rate-limit unknown-unicast
```

```
Unknown-Unicast Traffic Rate Limit Maximum %
```

Port	Inbound Limit	Mode
1	10	kbps
2	10	%
3	Disabled	Disabled
4	Disabled	Disabled
5	Disabled	Disabled
6	Disabled	Disabled
7	Disabled	Disabled
8	Disabled	Disabled
9	Disabled	Disabled
10	Disabled	Disabled
11	Disabled	Disabled
12	Disabled	Disabled
13	Disabled	Disabled
14	Disabled	Disabled
15	Disabled	Disabled
16	Disabled	Disabled
17	Disabled	Disabled
18	Disabled	Disabled

## Jumbo frames

The maximum transmission unit(MTU) is the maximum size IP frame the switch can receive for Layer 2 frames inbound on a port. The switch drops any inbound frames larger than the MTU allowed on the port. Ports operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps can accept forward frames of up to 9220 bytes (including four bytes for a VLAN tag) when configured for jumbo traffic. You can enable inbound jumbo frames on a per-VLAN basis. That is, on a VLAN configured for jumbo traffic, all ports belonging to that VLAN and **operating** at a minimum of 1 Gbps allow inbound jumbo frames of up to 9220 bytes.

## Operating rules

- **Required port speed:** This feature allows inbound and outbound jumbo frames on ports operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps.
- **GVRP operation:** A VLAN enabled for jumbo traffic cannot be used to create a dynamic VLAN. A port belonging to a statically configured, jumbo-enabled VLAN cannot join a dynamic VLAN.
- **Port adds and moves:** If you add a port to a VLAN that is already configured for jumbo traffic, the switch enables that port to receive jumbo traffic. If you remove a port from a jumbo-enabled VLAN, the switch

disables jumbo traffic capability on the port only if the port is not currently a member of another jumbo-enabled VLAN. This same operation applies to port trunks.

- **Jumbo traffic sources:** A port belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive inbound jumbo frames through any VLAN to which it belongs, including non-jumbo VLANs. For example, if VLAN 10 (without jumbos enabled) and VLAN 20 (with jumbos enabled) are both configured on a switch, and port 1 belongs to both VLANs, port 1 can receive jumbo traffic from devices on either VLAN. For a method to allow only some ports in a VLAN to receive jumbo traffic, see [Configuring a maximum frame size](#) on page 145.

## Jumbo traffic-handling

- Configuring a voice VLAN to accept jumbo frames is not recommended. Voice VLAN frames are typically small, and allowing a voice VLAN to accept jumbo frame traffic can degrade the voice transmission performance.
- You can configure the default, primary, and/or (if configured) the management VLAN to accept jumbo frames on all ports belonging to the VLAN.
- When the switch applies the default MTU (1522-bytes including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag) to a VLAN, all ports in the VLAN can receive incoming frames of up to 1522 bytes. When the switch applies the jumbo MTU (9220 bytes including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag) to a VLAN, all ports in that VLAN can receive incoming frames of up to 9220 bytes. A port receiving frames exceeding the applicable MTU drops such frames, causing the switch to generate an Event Log message and increment the "Giant Rx" counter (displayed by `show interfaces <port-list>` ).
- The switch allows flow control and jumbo frame capability to co-exist on a port.
- The default MTU is 1522 bytes (including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag). The jumbo MTU is 9220 bytes (including 4 bytes for the VLAN tag).
- When a port is not a member of any jumbo-enabled VLAN, it drops all jumbo traffic. If the port is receiving "excessive" inbound jumbo traffic, the port generates an Event Log message to notify you of this condition. This same condition also increments the switch's "Giant Rx" counter.
- If you do not want all ports in a given VLAN to accept jumbo frames, you can consider creating one or more jumbo VLANs with a membership comprising only the ports you want to receive jumbo traffic. Because a port belonging to one jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo frames through any VLAN to which it belongs, this method enables you to include both jumbo-enabled and non-jumbo ports within the same VLAN.

For example, suppose you want to allow inbound jumbo frames only on ports 6, 7, 12, and 13. However, these ports are spread across VLAN 100 and VLAN 200 and also share these VLANs with other ports you want excluded from jumbo traffic. A solution is to create a third VLAN with the sole purpose of enabling jumbo traffic on the desired ports, while leaving the other ports on the switch disabled for jumbo traffic. That is:

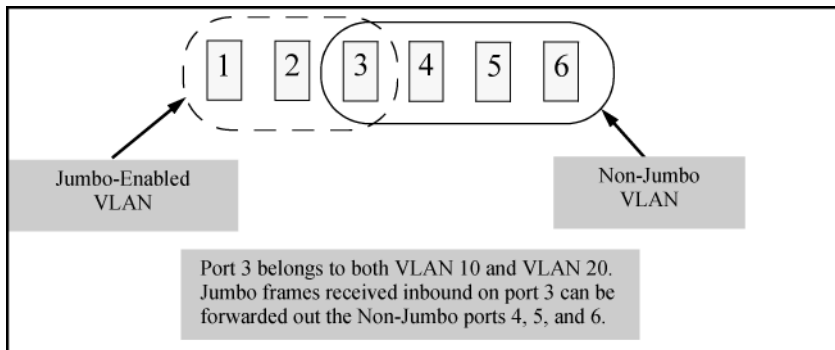
	VLAN 100	VLAN 200	VLAN 300
<b>Ports</b>	6-10	11-15	6, 7, 12, and 13
<b>Jumbo-enabled?</b>	No	No	Yes

If there are security concerns with grouping the ports as shown for VLAN 300, you can either use source-port filtering to block unwanted traffic paths or create separate jumbo VLANs, one for ports 6 and 7, and another for ports 12 and 13.

- **Outbound jumbo traffic.** Any port operating at 1 Gbps or higher can transmit outbound jumbo frames through any VLAN, regardless of the jumbo configuration. The VLAN is not required to be jumbo-enabled, and the port is not required to belong to any other, jumbo-enabled VLANs. This can occur in situations where a non-jumbo VLAN includes some ports that do not belong to another, jumbo-enabled VLAN and some ports that do belong

to another, jumbo-enabled VLAN. In this case, ports capable of receiving jumbo frames can forward them to the ports in the VLAN that do not have jumbo capability, as shown in **Figure 22: Forwarding jumbo frames through non-jumbo ports** on page 143.

**Figure 22: Forwarding jumbo frames through non-jumbo ports**



Jumbo frames can also be forwarded out non-jumbo ports when the jumbo frames received inbound on a jumbo-enabled VLAN are routed to another, non-jumbo VLAN for outbound transmission on ports that have no memberships in other, jumbo-capable VLANs. Where either of the above scenarios is a possibility, the downstream device must be configured to accept the jumbo traffic. Otherwise, this traffic will be dropped by the downstream device.

## Configuring jumbo frame operation

For detailed information about jumbo frames, see **Jumbo frames** on page 141.

### Overview

1. Determine the VLAN membership of the ports or trunks through which you want the switch to accept inbound jumbo traffic. For operation with GVRP enabled, refer to the GVRP topic under “Operating Rules”, above.
2. Ensure that the ports through which you want the switch to receive jumbo frames are operating at least at gigabit speed. (Check the Mode field in the output for the `show interfaces brief <port-list>` command.)
3. Use the `jumbo` command to enable jumbo frames on one or more VLANs statically configured in the switch. (All ports belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo frames.)
4. Execute `write memory` to save your configuration changes to the `startupconfig` file.

### Viewing the current jumbo configuration

#### Syntax:

```
show vlans
```

Lists the static VLANs configured on the switch and includes a Jumbo column to indicate which VLANs are configured to support inbound jumbo traffic. All ports belonging to a jumbo-enabled VLAN can receive jumbo

traffic. (For more information, see [Configuring a maximum frame size](#) on page 145.) See Figure **Figure 23: Example: listing of static VLANs to show jumbo status per VLAN** on page 144.

**Figure 23: Example: listing of static VLANs to show jumbo status per VLAN**

Switch(config)# show vlans				
Status and Counters - VLAN Information				
Maximum VLANs to support : 256				
Primary VLAN : DEFAULT_VLAN				
Management VLAN :				
VLAN ID	Name	Status	Voice	Jumbo
1	DEFAULT_VLAN	Port-based	No	Yes
5	VLAN5	Port-based	No	No
22	VLAN22	Port-based	No	No

Indicates which static VLANs are configured to enable jumbo frames.

### Syntax:

```
show vlans ports <port-list>
```

Lists the static VLANs to which the specified ports belong, including the Jumbo column to indicate which VLANs are configured to support jumbo traffic.

Entering only one port in *<port-list>* results in a list of all VLANs to which that port belongs.

Entering multiple ports in *<port-list>* results in a superset list that includes the VLAN memberships of all ports in the list, even though the individual ports in the list may belong to different subsets of the complete VLAN listing.

### Example:

If port 1 belongs to VLAN 1, port 2 belongs to VLAN 10, and port 3 belongs to VLAN 15, executing this command with a *port-list* of **1 - 3** results in a listing of all three VLANs, even though none of the ports belong to all three VLANs. (See [Figure 24: Listing the VLAN memberships for a range of ports](#) on page 144.)

**Figure 24: Listing the VLAN memberships for a range of ports**

Switch(config)# show vlans ports A1-A3				
Status and Counters - VLAN Information - for ports A1-A3				
VLAN ID	Name	Status	Voice	Jumbo
1	DEFAULT_VLAN	Port-based	No	Yes
10	VLAN10	Port-based	No	No
15	VLAN15	Port-based	No	No

Indicates which static VLANs are configured to enable jumbo frames.

### Syntax:

```
show vlans <vid>
```

Shows port membership and jumbo configuration for the specified *vid* . (See **Figure 25: Example: of listing the port membership and jumbo status for a VLAN** on page 145.)

**Figure 25:** Example: of listing the port membership and jumbo status for a VLAN

```
Switch(config)#_show vlan 100
Status and Counters - VLAN Information - VLAN 100
VLAN ID : 100
Name : VLAN100
Status : Port-based Voice : No
Jumbo : No
```

Lists the ports belonging to VLAN 100 and whether the VLAN is enabled for jumbo frame traffic.

Port	Information	Mode	Unknown VLAN	Status
A1		Tagged	Learn	Up
A2		Tagged	Learn	Up
A3		Tagged	Learn	Up
A4		Tagged	Learn	Down
A5		Tagged	Learn	Up

## Enabling or disabling jumbo traffic on a VLAN

### Syntax:

```
vlan <vid> jumbo
```

```
no vlan <vid> jumbo
```

Configures the specified VLAN to allow jumbo frames on all ports on the switch that belong to that VLAN. If the VLAN is not already configured on the switch, `vlan <vid> jumbo` also creates the VLAN.

A port belonging to one jumbo VLAN can receive jumbo frames through any other VLAN statically configured on the switch, regardless of whether the other VLAN is enabled for jumbo frames.

The `no` form of the command disables inbound jumbo traffic on all ports in the specified VLAN that do not also belong to another VLAN that is enabled for jumbo traffic. In a VLAN context, the command forms are `jumbo` and `no jumbo`.

(Default: Jumbos disabled on the specified VLAN.)

## Configuring a maximum frame size

You can globally set a maximum frame size for jumbo frames that will support values from 1518 bytes to 9216 bytes for untagged frames.

### Syntax:

```
jumbo max-frame-size <size>
```

Sets the maximum frame size for jumbo frames. The range is from 1518 bytes to 9216 bytes. (Default: 9216 bytes)



#### NOTE:

The `jumbo max-frame-size` is set on a GLOBAL level.

Default: 9216 bytes

## Configuring IP MTU



### NOTE:

The following feature is available on the switches covered in this guide. `jumbos` support is required for this feature. On switches that do not support this command, the IP MTU value is derived from the maximum frame size and is not configurable.

You can set the IP MTU globally by entering this command. The value of `max-frame-size` must be greater than or equal to 18 bytes more than the value selected for `ip-mtu`. For example, if `ip-mtu` is set to 8964, the `max-frame-size` is configured as 8982.

### Syntax:

```
jumbo ip-mtu <size>
```

Globally sets the IP MTU size. Values range between 1500 and 9198 bytes. This value must be 18 bytes less than the value of `max-frame-size`.

(Default: 9198 bytes)

## SNMP implementation

### Jumbo maximum frame size

The maximum frame size for jumbos is supported with the following proprietary MIB object:

```
hpSwitchMaxFrameSize OBJECT-TYPE
```

This is the value of the global `max-frame-size` supported by the switch. The default value is set to 9216 bytes.

### Jumbo IP MTU

The IP MTU for jumbos is supported with the following proprietary MIB object:

```
hpSwitchIpMTU OBJECT-TYPE
```

This is the value of the global jumbos IP MTU (or L3 MTU) supported by the switch. The default value is set to 9198 bytes (a value that is 18 bytes less than the largest possible maximum frame size of 9216 bytes). This object can be used only in switches that support `max-frame-size` and `ip-mtu` configuration.

## Displaying the maximum frame size

Use the `show jumbos` command to display the globally configured untagged maximum frame size for the switch, as shown in the following Example:

```
switch(config)# show jumbos
```

```
Jumbos Global Values
```

```
Configured : MaxFrameSize : 9216   Ip-MTU : 9198
In Use      : MaxFrameSize : 9216   Ip-MTU : 9198
```

For more information about frame size, see [Jumbo frames](#) on page 141.

## Operating notes for maximum frame size

- When you set a maximum frame size for jumbo frames, it must be on a global level. You cannot use the `jumbo max-frame-size` command on a per-port or per-VLAN basis.
- The original way to configure jumbo frames remains the same, which is per-VLAN, but you cannot set a maximum frame size per-VLAN.
- Jumbo support must be enabled for a VLAN from the CLI or through SNMP.

- Setting the maximum frame size does not require a reboot.
- When you upgrade to a version of software that supports setting the maximum frame size from a version that did not, the `max-frame-size` value is set automatically to 9216 bytes.
- Configuring a jumbo maximum frame size on a VLAN allows frames up to `max-frame-size` even though other VLANs of which the port is a member are not enabled for jumbo support.

## Troubleshooting

### A VLAN is configured to allow jumbo frames, but one or more ports drops all inbound jumbo frames

The port may not be operating at a minimum of 1 Gbps on the other switches covered in this guide. Regardless of a port's configuration, if it is actually operating at a speed lower than 1 Gbps for the other switches, it drops inbound jumbo frames. For example, if a port is configured for `Auto` mode (`speed-duplex auto`), but has negotiated a 7 Mbps speed with the device at the other end of the link, the port cannot receive inbound jumbo frames. To determine the actual operating speed of one or more ports, view the `Mode` field in the output for the following command:

```
show interfaces brief <port-list>
```

### A non-jumbo port is generating "Excessive undersize/giant frames" messages in the Event Log

The switches can transmit outbound jumbo traffic on any port, regardless of whether the port belongs to a jumbo VLAN. In this case, another port in the same VLAN on the switch may be jumbo-enabled through membership in a different, jumbo-enabled VLAN, and may be forwarding jumbo frames received on the jumbo VLAN to non-jumbo ports.

## Fault Finder

Fault Finder is a feature that helps administrators to debug unusual network activity such as flapping links or transceivers or to troubleshoot issues such as multicast or broadcast storms. Fault Finder helps in preventing network loops and taking care of situations that arise out of defective equipment and malicious attacks.

The following is the list of issues detected by the Fault Finder:

- Excessive CRC/alignment errors (bad cable)
- Excessive flapping of transceivers (bad transceiver)
- Too many undersized/giant packets (bad driver)
- Excessive late collisions (cable too long)
- High collision or drop rate (over bandwidth)
- Excessive broadcast packets (broadcast storm)
- Excessive multicast packets (multicast storm)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch HDx - reconfigure to Full Duplex)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch FDx - reconfigure port to Auto)
- Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries (link flap)
- Link loss detection (loss of link)



---

**NOTE:** Fault finder is also known as FFI (find-fix-inform).

---

## Fault Finder thresholds

Switches feature automatic fault detection, which helps protect against network loops and defective equipment. The fault detection sensitivity setting determines the types of alerts reported to the Alert Log based on their level of severity or sensitivity. The sensitivity levels are:

- **High Sensitivity.**

This policy directs the switch to send all alerts to the Alert Log. This setting is most effective on networks that have none or few problems.

- **Medium Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send alerts related to network problems to the Alert Log. If you want to be notified of problems which cause a noticeable slowdown on the network, use this setting.
- **Low Sensitivity.** This policy directs the switch to send only the most severe alerts to the Alert Log. This policy is most effective on a network where there are normally a lot of problems and you want to be informed of only the most severe ones
- **Disabled.** Disables the Alert Log and transmission of alerts (traps) to the management server (in cases where a network management tool such as ProCurve Manager is in use). Use this option when you don't want to use the Alert Log.

## Enabling Fault Finder

Enter this CLI command to enable fault detection:

### Syntax:

```
no fault-finder [fault][sensitivity <low|medium|high>][action <warn|warn-and-disable>]
```

Enables or disables Fault Finder and sets sensitivity.

When the `warn-and-disable` action option is configured, Fault Finder may also shut down a bad port in addition to sending an alert to the Alert Log.

**Default setting:** `fault-finder sensitivity medium action warn`

[`fault`]: Supported values are:

- `all`: All fault types
- `bad-driver`: Too many undersized/giant packets
- `bad-transceiver`: Excessive jabbering
- `bad-cable`: Excessive CRC/alignment errors
- `too-long-cable`: Excessive late collisions
- `over-bandwidth`: High collision or drop rate
- `broadcast-storm`: Excessive broadcasts
- `duplex-mismatch-HDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure to Full Duplex
- `duplex-mismatch-FDx`: Duplex mismatch. Reconfigure port to Auto



- `link-flap`: Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries
- `loss-of-link`: Link loss detected. (Sensitivity not applicable)

### Examples:

To set Fault Finder with a `high` sensitivity to issue a warning and then disable a port on which there is a high collision or drop rate, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder over-bandwidth sensitivity
high action warn-and-disable
```

To set Fault Finder with a `medium` sensitivity to issue a warning about excessive CRC or alignment errors on a port, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder bad-cable sensitivity
medium action warn
```

To set Fault Finder with a `low` sensitivity to issue a warning about rapid detection of link faults, you could configure these options:

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap sensitivity
low action warn
```

To disable Fault Finder, enter this command:

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder all
```

**Table 16:** *Fault finder sensitivities for supported conditions*

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
	High	Medium	Low			
Bad driver — Too many under-sized packets or too many giant packets	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (undersized/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000) Or if (giant/total) >= (sensitivity/10,000)

*Table Continued*

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Bad transceiver — Excessive jabbering - Jabbers: (Jabbers are packets longer than the MTU) - Fragments: (packets shorter than they should be)	65	2110	3614	1/10,000 IncomingOne Fragments	20 secs20 secs	If (jabbers/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)Or If fragment count in the last 20 seconds >= sensitivity
Bad cable — Excessive CRC/ alignment errors	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 secs	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Too Long Cable — Excessive late collisions (a late collision error occurs after the first 512 bit times)	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 secs	If (late collisions/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Over bandwidth - High collision rate -High drop rate	665	21257	36449	1/10,000 OutgoingOne Packet	5 mins5 mins	If (excessive collisions/ total) >= (sensitivity/ 10,000)The count of dropped packets >= sensitivity during the last 5 minutes.

Table Continued

Condition triggering fault finder	Sensitivities			Units (in packets)	Time period	Fault finder reacts:
Broadcast storm — Excessive broadcasts	1475	5000	8525	One Broadcast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of broadcast packets in the last 20 seconds $\geq$ sensitivity
Multicast storm — Excessive multicasts	1475	5000	8525	One Multicast Packet	1 sec	If the average per second of multicast packets in the last 20 seconds $\geq$ sensitivity
Duplex mismatch HDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Outgoing	20 sec	If (late collisions/ total) $\geq$ (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Duplex mismatch FDx	6	21	36	1/10,000 Incoming	20 sec	If (CRC and alignment errors/ total) $\geq$ (sensitivity/ 10,000)
Link flap — Excessive transitions between link-up and link-down states.	4	7	11	One Transitions	10 secs	If the Transition count in the last 10s $\geq$ sensitivity.

#### Example: of sensitivity calculation:

If a sensitivity is set to High, and a bad cable is causing 15 CRC errors out of a total of 3500 packets transmitted in a 20 second period:

1. CRC errors/total must be  $\geq$  (sensitivity/10,000) to trigger an alert.
2. CRC errors/total =  $15/3500 = .00043$
3. Sensitivity/10,000 =  $6/10,000 = .0006$
4. .00043 is not greater than or equal to .0006, so an alert is not triggered.

## Fault Finder

Fault Finder is a feature that helps administrators to debug unusual network activity such as flapping links or transceivers or to troubleshoot issues such as multicast or broadcast storms. Fault Finder helps in preventing network loops and taking care of situations that arise out of defective equipment and malicious attacks.

The following is the list of issues detected by the Fault Finder:

- Excessive CRC/alignment errors (bad cable)
- Excessive flapping of transceivers (bad transceiver)
- Too many undersized/giant packets (bad driver)
- Excessive late collisions (cable too long)
- High collision or drop rate (over bandwidth)
- Excessive broadcast packets (broadcast storm)
- Excessive multicast packets (multicast storm)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch HDx - reconfigure to Full Duplex)
- Duplex mismatch (duplex mismatch FDX - reconfigure port to Auto)
- Rapid detection of link faults and recoveries (link flap)
- Link loss detection (loss of link)



**NOTE:** Fault finder is also known as FFI (find-fix-inform).

## Fault-finder link-flap

### Syntax

In the config context:

```
no fault-finder link-flap [ethernet] PORT-LIST action warn | warn-and-disable SECONDS sensitivity low | medium | high
```

### Description

Configures the link-flap on a port. The default value is `warn`.

### Parameters

#### link-flap

Configure link-flap control.

#### warn

Log the event only.

#### warn-and-disable

Log the event and disable the port.

## **seconds**

Re-enable the port after waiting for the specified number of seconds. The default value is 0, which indicates that the port will not be automatically enabled.

## **sensitivity**

Indicate the sensitivity of the link-flap control threshold within a 10-second interval.

- Low indicates 10 link-flaps.
- Medium indicates 6 link-flaps.
- High indicates 3 link-flaps.

## **Parameters**

### **action**

Configure the action taken when a fault is detected.

### **ethernet *PORT-LIST***

Enable link-flap control on a list of ports.

### **warn**

Warn about faults found.

### **warn-and-disable**

Warn and disable faulty component.

## **seconds**

Configure the number of seconds for which the port remains disabled. A value of 0 means that the port will remain disabled until manually re-enabled.

## **sensitivity**

Configure the fault sensitivity level.

### **low**

Low sensitivity.

### **medium**

Medium sensitivity

### **high**

High sensitivity.

## **Subcommand Syntax**

```
no fault-finder link-flap ethernet PORT-LIST
```

## **Description**

To remove the current configuration of link-flap on a port

## **Usage**

Enable a linkFault-Finder check and set parameters for it. These commands may be repeated to enable additional checks. The default sensitivity is medium and the default action is warn.

```
no fault-finder all | fault sensitivity low | medium | high action warn | warn-and-disable
```

```
no fault-finder link-flap sensitivity low | medium | high action warn | warn-and-disable
```

```
no fault-finder link-flap PORT-LIST action warn | warn-and-disable SECONDS sensitivity low | medium | high
```

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with high sensitivity

Configure ports A1 to A5 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of high (3 flaps over 10s) and to log and disable port for 65535s if the link-flap threshold is exceeded.

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A1-A5 action warn-and-disable 65535  
sensitivity high
```

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with medium sensitivity

Configure ports A8 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of medium (6 flaps over 10s) and to log and disable port if the link-flap threshold is exceeded. User will need to re-enable the port if disabled.

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A8 action warn-and-disable 0 sensitivity medium
```

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with low sensitivity

Configure ports A22 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of low (10 flaps over 10s) and to log if the link-flap threshold is exceeded

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A22 action warn sensitivity low
```

### Disable link-flap detection

Disable link-flap detection for port A5

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder link-flap ethernet A5
```

## Show fault-finder link-flap

### Syntax

```
show fault-finder link-flap ethernet PORT-LIST
```

### Description

Display the link-flap control configuration.


### Show fault-finder link-flap

```
switch# show fault-finder link-flap A1
```

Port	Link Flap	Port Status	Sensitivity	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
A1	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	65535	45303

switch# show fault-finder link-flap

Port	Link Flap	Port Status	Sensitivity	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
A1	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	65535	45303
A5	No	Up	None	None	-	-
A22	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	-	-
A23	Yes	Down	High	warn-and-disable	100	-



**NOTE:** This example displays only the list of ports configured via the above per-port config commands, does not include the global configuration ports.

# Restrictions

- Per port configuration for options – link-flap only. Global settings for other options.
- No support for menu interface.
- No support for Web UI.
- No support for trunks.

## Using SNMP tools to manage the switch

SNMP is a management protocol that allows an SNMP client application to retrieve device configuration and status information and to configure the device (**get** and **set**). You can manage the switch via SNMP from a network management station.

To implement SNMP management, the switch must have an IP address configured either manually or dynamically (using DHCP or Bootp). If multiple VLANs are configured, each VLAN interface should have its own IP address. For DHCP use with multiple VLANs, see section "The Primary VLAN" in the "Static Virtual LANs (VLANs)" of the *Advanced traffic management guide* for your switch.



**NOTE:** If you use the switch's Authorized IP Managers and Management VLAN features, ensure that the SNMP management station, the choice of switch port used for SNMP access to the switch, or both, are compatible with the access controls enforced by these features. Otherwise, SNMP access to the switch will be blocked.

For more information on Authorized IP Managers, see the *Access security guide* for your switch. (The latest version of this guide is available on the Networking website.) For information on the Management VLAN feature, see the section "The Secure Management VLAN" in the "Static Virtual LANs (VLANs)" chapter of the *Advanced traffic management guide* for your switch.

### SNMP management features

SNMP management features on the switch include:

- SNMP version 1, version 2c, or version 3 over IP
- Security via configuration of SNMP communities (**SNMPv3 communities** on page 163)
- Security via authentication and privacy for SNMPv3 access
- Event reporting via SNMP
  - Version 1 traps
  - RMON: groups 1, 2, 3, and 9
- Flow sampling using sFlow
- Standard MIBs, such as the Bridge MIB (RFC 1493), Ethernet MAU MIB (RFC 1515), and others.

The switch SNMP agent also uses certain variables that are included in an proprietary MIB (management information base) file.

1. Type a model number of your switch (For example, 8212) or product number in the **Auto Search** text box.
2. Select an appropriate product from the drop down list.
3. Click the Display selected button.
4. From the options that appear, select Software downloads.
5. MIBs are available with switch software in the Other category.



Click on `software updates`, then `MIBs`.

## SNMPv1 and v2c access to the switch

SNMP access requires an IP address and subnet mask configured on the switch. If you are using DHCP/Bootp to configure the switch, ensure that the DHCP/Bootp process provides the IP address.

Once an IP address is configured, the main steps for configuring SNMPv1 and v2c access management features are:

### Procedure

1. Configure the appropriate SNMP communities. (See [SNMPv3 communities](#) on page 163.)
2. Configure the appropriate trap receivers.

In some networks, authorized IP manager addresses are not used. In this case, all management stations using the correct community name may access the switch with the View and Access levels that have been set for that community. If you want to restrict access to one or more specific nodes, you can use the switch's IP Authorized Manager feature. (See the access security guide for your switch.)



**CAUTION:** If network management security is a concern, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you change the write access for the "public" community to "Restricted."

## SNMPv3 access to the switch

SNMPv3 access requires an IP address and subnet mask configured on the switch. (See "IP Configuration" on page 8-2.) If you are using DHCP/Bootp to configure the switch, ensure that the DHCP/Bootp process provides the IP address. (See "DHCP/Bootp Operation".)

Once you have configured an IP address, the main steps for configuring SNMPv3 access management features are the following:

### Procedure

1. Enable SNMPv3 for operation on the switch (see [Enabling SNMPv3](#) on page 158).
2. Configure the appropriate SNMP users (see [SNMPv3 users](#) on page 159).
3. Configure the appropriate SNMP communities (see [SNMPv3 communities](#) on page 163).
4. Configure the appropriate trap receivers (see [SNMP notifications](#) on page 166).

In some networks, authorized IP manager addresses are not used. In this case, all management stations using the correct User and community name may access the switch with the View and Access levels that have been set for that community. If you want to restrict access to one or more specific nodes, you can use the IP Authorized Manager feature for the switch. (See the access security guide for your switch.)

SNMP version 3 (SNMPv3) adds some new commands to the CLI for configuring SNMPv3 functions. To enable SNMMPv3 operation on the switch, use the `snmpv3 enable` command. An initial user entry will be generated with MD5 authentication and DES privacy.

You may (optionally) restrict access to only SNMPv3 agents by using the `snmpv3 only` command. To restrict write-access to only SNMPv3 agents, use the `snmpv3 restricted-access` command.



---

**CAUTION:**

Restricting access to only version 3 messages will make the community named “public” inaccessible to network management applications (such as autodiscovery, traffic monitoring, SNMP trap generation, and threshold setting) from operating in the switch.

---

## Enabling and disabling switch for access from SNMPv3 agents

This includes the creation of the initial user record.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 enable
```

## Enabling or disabling restrictions to access from only SNMPv3 agents

When enabled, the switch rejects all non-SNMPv3 messages.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 only
```

## Enabling or disabling restrictions from all non-SNMPv3 agents to read-only access

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 restricted-access
```

## Viewing the operating status of SNMPv3

**Syntax:**

```
show snmpv3 enable
```

## Viewing status of message reception of non-SNMPv3 messages

**Syntax:**

```
show snmpv3 only
```

## Viewing status of write messages of non-SNMPv3 messages

**Syntax:**

```
show snmpv3 restricted-access
```

## Enabling SNMPv3

The `snmpv3 enable` command allows the switch to:

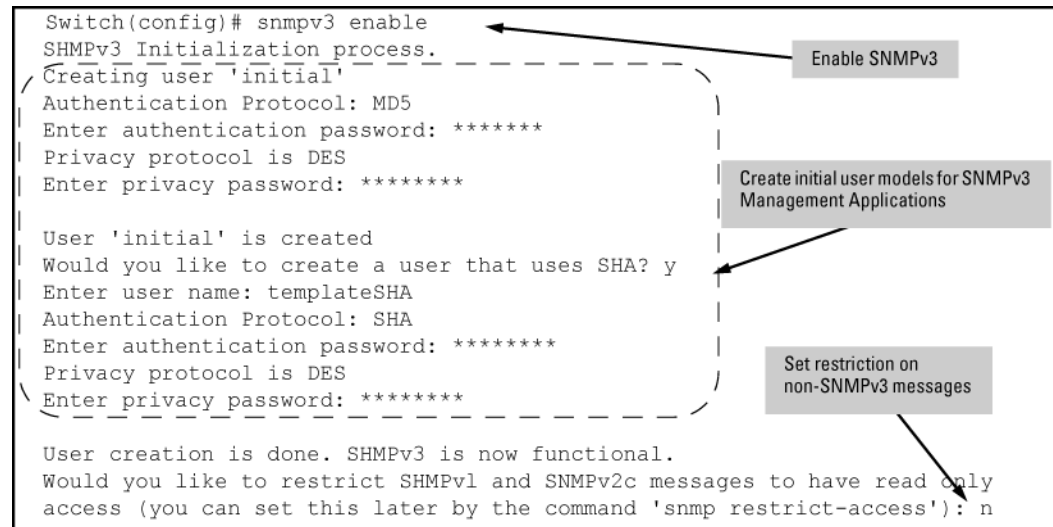
- Receive SNMPv3 messages.
- Configure initial users.
- Restrict non-version 3 messages to "read only" (optional).



**CAUTION:** Restricting access to only version 3 messages makes the community named "public" inaccessible to network management applications (such as autodiscovery, traffic monitoring, SNMP trap generation, and threshold setting) from running on the switch.

#### Example:

##### SNMP version 3 enable command



## SNMPv3 users



**NOTE:** To create new users, most SNMPv3 management software requires an initial user record to clone. The initial user record can be downgraded and provided with fewer features, but not upgraded by adding new features. For this reason, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that when you enable SNMPv3, you also create a second user with SHA authentication and DES privacy.

To use SNMPv3 on the switch, you must configure the users that will be assigned to different groups:

#### Procedure

1. Configure users in the User Table with the `snmpv3 user` command.  
To view the list of configured users, enter the `show snmpv3 user` command (see [Adding users](#) on page 160)
2. Assign users to Security Groups based on their security model with the `snmpv3 group` command (see [Assigning users to groups \(CLI\)](#) on page 161).

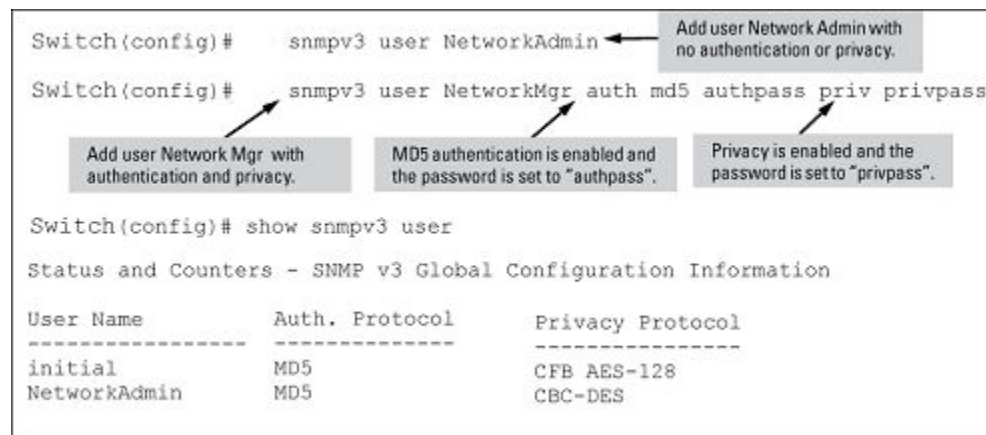


**CAUTION:** If you add an SNMPv3 user without authentication, privacy, or both, to a group that requires either feature, the user will not be able to access the switch. Ensure that you add a user with the appropriate security level to an existing security group.

## Adding users

To configure an SNMPv3 user, you must first add the user name to the list of known users with the `snmpv3 user` command, as shown in the following image.

**Figure 26:** Adding SNMPv3 users and displaying SNMPv3 configuration



## SNMPv3 user commands

### Syntax:

```
no snmpv3 user <USER_NAME> [auth md5|sha] <AUTH_PASS> [priv des|aes] <PRIV_PASS>
```

```
no snmpv3 remote-engine-id <engineid> user <username> [auth {md5| sha}
    <authentication password>] [priv {des|aes} <privacy password>]
```

### Parameters and options

#### no

Used to delete a user entry. When you delete a user, only the user name is required.

#### <AUTH\_PASS>

With authorization, you can set either MD5 or SHA authentication. The authentication password *auth\_pass* must be 6 to 32 characters and is mandatory when you configure authentication.

#### priv des|aes

With privacy, the switch supports DES (56-bit) and AES (128-bit) encryption. Defaults to DES. Only AES 128-bit and DES 56-bit encryption are supported as privacy protocols. Other non-standard encryption algorithms, such as AES-172, AES-256, and 3-DES are not supported.

#### <PRIV\_PASS>

The privacy password *priv\_pass* must be 6 to 32 characters and is mandatory when you configure privacy.

#### remote-engine-id <engineid>

Sets the SNMPv3 remote engine ID in colon-separated hexadecimal notation.

## Listing Users

To display the management stations configured to access the switch with SNMPv3 and view the authentication and privacy protocols that each station uses, enter the `show snmpv3 user` command.

### Syntax:

```
show snmpv3 user
```

Displays information about the management stations configured on VLAN 1 to access the switch.

## Display of the management stations configured on VLAN 1

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 1
switch(vlan-1)# show snmpv3 user
```

Status and Counters - SNMPv3 Global Configuration Information

User Name	Auth. Protocol	Privacy Protocol
initial	MD5	CFB AES-128
NetworkAdmin	MD5	CBC-DES

## Assigning users to groups (CLI)

Next you must set the group access level for the user by assigning the user to a group. The access level for the user is done with the `snmpv3 group` command as shown in the following image. For more details on the MIBs access for a given group, see [Group access levels](#) on page 162.

**Figure 27:** Example: of assigning users to groups

```
Switch(config)# snmpv3 group operatornoauth user NetworkAdmin sec-model ver3
Switch(config)# snmpv3 group managerpriv user NetworkMgr sec-model ver3
Switch(config)# show snmpv3 group
```

Status and Counters - SNHP v3 Global Configuration Information

Security Name	Security Model	Group Name
CommunityManagerReadOnly	ver1	ComManagerR
CommunityManagerReadWrite	ver1	ComManagerRW
CommunityOperatorReadOnly	ver1	ComOperatorRW
CommunityOperatorReadWrite	ver1	ComOperatorRW
CommunityManagerReadOnly	ver2c	ComManagerR
CommunityManagerReadWrite	ver2c	ComManagerRW
CommunityOperatorReadOnly	ver2c	ComOperatorRW
CommunityOperatorReadWrite	ver2c	ComOperatorRW
NetworkMgr	ver3	ManagerPriv
NetworkAdmin	ver3	OperatorNoAuth

Annotations in the image:

- "Add NetworkAdmin to operator noauth group" points to the command: `Switch(config)# snmpv3 group operatornoauth user NetworkAdmin sec-model ver3`
- "Add NetworkMgr to managerpriv group" points to the command: `Switch(config)# snmpv3 group managerpriv user NetworkMgr sec-model ver3`
- "Pre-assigned groups for access by Version 2c and version 1 management applications" points to the first four rows of the table (CommunityManagerReadOnly, CommunityManagerReadWrite, CommunityOperatorReadOnly, CommunityOperatorReadWrite).

### Syntax:

`no snmpv3 group`

Assigns or removes a user to a security group for access rights to the switch. To delete an entry, all the following three parameters must be included in the command:

<code>group &lt;group_name&gt;</code>	Identifies the group that has the privileges that will be assigned to the user. For more details, see <a href="#">Group access levels</a> on page 162.
<code>user &lt;user_name&gt;</code>	Identifies the user to be added to the access group that must match the user name added with the <code>snmpv3 user</code> command.
<code>sec-model {&lt;ver1   ver2c   ver3&gt;}</code>	Defines which security model to use for the added user. An SNMPv3 access group use only the ver3 security model.

## Group access levels

The switch supports eight predefined group access levels, shown in the following table. There are four levels for use by version 3 users and four are used for access by version 2c or version 1 management applications.

**Table 17: Predefined group access levels**

Group name	Group access type	Group read view	Group write view
managerpriv	Ver3 Must have Authentication and Privacy	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
managerauth	Ver3 Must have Authentication	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
operatorauth	Ver3 Must have Authentication	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView
operatornoauth	Ver3 No Authentication	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView
commanagerrw	Ver2c or Ver1	ManagerReadView	ManagerWriteView
commanagerr	Ver2c or Ver1	ManagerReadView	DiscoveryView
comoperatorrw	Ver2c or Ver1	OperatorReadView	OperatorReadView
comoperatorr	Ver2c or Ver1	OperatorReadView	DiscoveryView

**Table 18: SNMPv3 Params and Group Configs Combinations**

SNMPv3 Params	SNMPv3 group	Snmpv3 user config
noauth (no authentication and no privacy)	operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1"
auth (authentication and no privacy)	managerpriv, managerauth,operatorauth, operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1" auth md5 "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85"
priv (authentication and privacy)	managerpriv, managerauth,operatorauth, operatornoauth	snmpv3 user "user1" auth md5 "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85" priv des "45800d22ccb8b485ab52fe2d8b92e a85"

Each view allows you to view or modify a different set of MIBs:

- **Manager Read View** – access to all managed objects
- **Manager Write View** – access to all managed objects except the following:

- vacmContextTable
- vacmAccessTable
- vacmViewTreeFamilyTable
- **OperatorReadView** – no access to the following:
  - icfSecurityMIB
  - hpSwitchIpTftpMode
  - vacmContextTable
  - vacmAccessTable
  - vacmViewTreeFamilyTable
  - usmUserTable
  - snmpCommunityTable
- **Discovery View** – Access limited to samplingProbe MIB.



**NOTE:** All access groups and views are predefined on the switch. There is no method to modify or add groups or views to those that are predefined on the switch.

## SNMPv3 communities

SNMP communities are supported by the switch to allow management applications that use version 2c or version 1 to access the switch. The communities are mapped to Group Access Levels that are used for version 2c or version 1 support. This mapping happens automatically based on the communities access privileges, but special mappings can be added with the `snmpv3 community` command (see [Mapping SNMPv3 communities \(CLI\)](#) on page 163).

### Mapping SNMPv3 communities (CLI)

SNMP communities are supported by the switch to allow management applications that use version 2c or version 1 to access the switch. For more details, see [SNMPv3 communities](#) on page 163.

#### Syntax:

```
no snmpv3 community
```

Maps or removes a mapping of a community name to a group access level. To remove a mapping you need to specify only the `index_name` parameter.

<code>index &lt;index_name&gt;</code>	An index number or title for the mapping. The values of 1 to 5 are reserved and can not be mapped.
<code>name &lt;community_name&gt;</code>	The community name that is being mapped to a group access level.
<code>sec-name &lt;security_name&gt;</code>	The group level to which the community is being mapped.
<code>tag &lt;tag_value&gt;</code>	This is used to specify which target address may have access by way of this index reference.

#### Example:

The following image shows the assigning an Operator community on MgrStation1 to the *CommunityOperatorReadWrite* group. Any other operator has an access level of *CommunityOperatorReadOnly*.

**Figure 28: Assigning a community to a group access level**

Add mapping to allow write access for Operator community on MgrStation1

```

Switch(config)# snmpv3 Community index 30 name Operator sec-name
                  CommunityManagerReadWrite tag MgrStation1
Switch(config)# show snmpv3 community
    
```

```

snmpCommunityTable [rfc2576]
    
```

Index	Name	Community Name	Security Name
1		public	CommunityManagerReadWrite
2		Operator	CommunityOperatorReadOnly
3		Manager	CommunityManagerReadWrite
30		Operator	CommunityManagerReadWrite

Two Operator Access Levels

## SNMP community features

Use SNMP communities to restrict access to the switch by SNMP management stations by adding, editing, or deleting SNMP communities. You can configure up to five SNMP communities, each with either an operator-level or a manager-level view and either restricted or unrestricted write access.

Using SNMP requires that the switch have an IP address and subnet mask compatible with your network.

## Viewing and configuring non-version-3 SNMP communities (Menu)

### Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select:
2. **Switch Configuration...**
6. **SNMP Community Names**

**Figure 29: The SNMP Communities screen (default values)**

Note: This screen gives an overview of the SNMP communities that are currently configured. All fields in this screen are read-only.

Switch Configuration - SNMP Communities

Community Name	MIB View	Write Access
public	Manager	Unrestricted

Actions-> Back Add Edit Delete Help

Return to previous screen  
 Use up/down arrow keys to change record selection, left/right arrow ke

Add and Edit options are used to modify the SNMP options. See Figure 8-2.

2. Press **[A]** (for **Add** ).
- If you need information on the options in each field, press **[Enter]** to move the cursor to the Actions line, then select the Help option. When you are finished with Help, press **[E]** (for Edit) to return the cursor to the parameter fields.
3. Enter the name you want in the Community Name field, and use the Space bar to select the appropriate value in each of the other fields. (Use the **[Tab]** key to move from one field to the next.)
4. Press **[Enter]** , then **[S]** (for **Save** ).



## Listing community names and values (CLI)

This command lists the data for currently configured SNMP community names (along with trap receivers and the setting for authentication traps—see [SNMP notifications](#) on page 166).

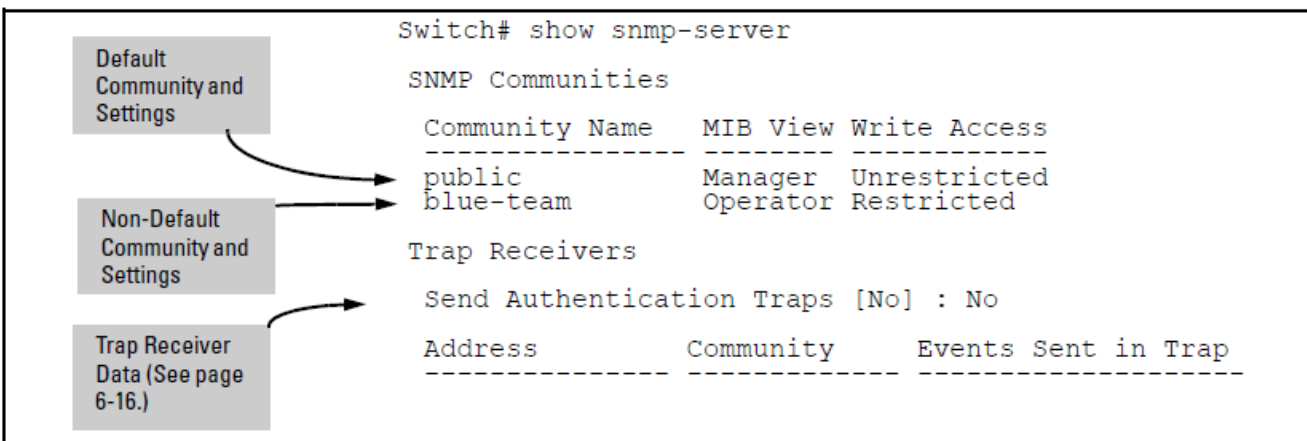
### Syntax:

```
show snmp-server [< community-string >]
```

### Example:

Lists the data for all communities in a switch; that is, both the default "public" community name and another community named "blue-team."

**Figure 30:** Example: of the SNMP community listing with two communities



To list the data for only one community, such as the "public" community, use the above command with the community name included. For Example:

```
switch# show snmp-server public
```

## Configuring community names and values (CLI)

The `snmp-server` command enables you to add SNMP communities with either default or specific access attributes, and to delete specific communities.

### Syntax:

```
no snmp-server community <community-name>
```

Configures a new community name.

- If you do not also specify `operator` or `manager`, the switch automatically assigns the community to the `operator` MIB view.
- If you do not specify `restricted` or `unrestricted`, the switch automatically assigns the community to `restricted` (read-only) access.

The `no` form uses only the `<community-name>` variable and deletes the named community from the switch.

[operator   manager]	<p>Optionally assigns an access level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At the <code>operator</code> level, the community can access all MIB objects except the CONFIG MIB.</li> <li>At the <code>manager</code> level, the community can access all MIB objects.</li> </ul>
[restricted   unrestricted]	<p>Optionally assigns MIB access type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assigning the <code>restricted</code> type allows the community to read MIB variables, but not to set them.</li> <li>Assigning the <code>unrestricted</code> type allows the community to read and set MIB variables.</li> </ul>

### Example:

To add the following communities:

Community	Access Level	Type of Access
red-team	manager ( <b>Access to all MIB objects.</b> )	unrestricted ( <b>read/write</b> )
blue-team	operator ( <b>Access to all MIB objects except the CONFIG MIB.</b> )	restricted ( <b>read-only</b> )

```
switch(config)# snmp-server community red-team
manager unrestricted
switch(config)# snmp-server community blue-team
operator restricted
```

To eliminate a previously configured community named "gold-team":

```
switch(config) # no snmp-server community gold-team
```

## SNMP notifications

The switches:

- Default Traps: A switch automatically sends default traps to trap receivers using the configured community name. You have to configure and supply the community name to use in the trap-receiver config, there is no default. Use the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>"` command to configure a community name and the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>" trap-level [all | critical | not-info | debug | none]` command to set the level of traps to send to the community.
- SNMPv2c informs
- SNMP v3 notification process, including traps

This section describes how to configure a switch to send network security and link-change notifications to configured trap receivers.

## Supported Notifications

By default, the following notifications are enabled on a switch:

- Manager password changes
- SNMP authentication failure
- Link-change traps: when the link on a port changes from up to down (linkDown) or down to up (linkUp)
- Port-security (web, MAC, or 802.1X) authentication failure
- Invalid password entered in a login attempt through a direct serial, Telnet, or SSH connection
- Inability to establish a connection with the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server
- DHCP snooping events
- ARP protection events

## General steps for configuring SNMP notifications

### Procedure

1. Determine the versions of SNMP notifications that you want to use in your network.

If you want to use SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, you must also configure a trap receiver. See the following sections and follow the required configuration procedures:

- **SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Traps** on page 167
- **Configuring an SNMP trap receiver (CLI)** on page 168
- **Enabling SNMPv2c informs (CLI)** on page 171

If you want to use SNMPv3 notifications (including traps), you must also configure an SNMPv3 management station. Follow the required configuration procedure in **Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)** on page 171.

2. To reconfigure any of the SNMP notifications that are enabled by default to be sent to a management station (trap receiver), see **Enabling Link-Change Traps (CLI)** on page 176.
3. (Optional) See the following sections to configure optional SNMP notification features and verify the current configuration:
  - **Configuring the source IP address for SNMP notifications (CLI)** on page 177
  - **Viewing SNMP notification configuration (CLI)** on page 179

## SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Traps

The switches support the following functionality from earlier SNMP versions (SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c):

- **Trap receivers:** A **trap receiver** is a management station to which the switch sends SNMP traps and (optionally) event log messages sent from the switch. From the CLI you can configure up to ten SNMP trap receivers to receive SNMP traps from the switch.
- **Default Traps:** A switch automatically sends default traps to trap receivers using the configured community name. You have to configure and supply the community name to use in the trap-receiver config, there is no default. Use the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community "<COMMUNITY_NAME>"` command to configure a community name and the `snmp-server host <IP_ADDRESS> community`

"<COMMUNITY\_NAME>" trap-level [all | critical | not-info | debug | none] command to set the level of traps to send to the community.

- **Thresholds:** A switch automatically sends all messages created when a system threshold is reached to the network management station that configured the threshold, regardless of the trap receiver configuration.

## SNMP trap receivers

Use the `snmp-server host` command to configure a trap receiver that can receive SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, and (optionally) Event Log messages. When you configure a trap receiver, you specify its community membership, management station IP address, and (optionally) the type of Event Log messages to be sent.

If you specify a community name that does not exist—that is, has not yet been configured on the switch—the switch still accepts the trap receiver assignment. However, no traps are sent to that trap receiver until the community to which it belongs has been configured on the switch.



### NOTE:

To replace one community name with another for the same IP address, you must first enter the

```
no snmp-server host <community-name> {< ipv4-address | ipv6-address >}
```

command to delete the unwanted community name. Otherwise, if you add a new community name with an IP address that is already used with a different community name, two valid community name entries are created for the same management station.

If you do not specify the event level ([none|all|not-info|critical|debug]), the switch does not send Event Log messages as traps. However, "well-known" traps and threshold traps (if configured) are still sent.

## Configuring an SNMP trap receiver (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
snmp-server host {< ipv4-addr | ipv6-addr >} < community name>
```

Configures a destination network management station to receive SNMPv1/v2c traps and (optionally) Event Log messages sent as traps from the switch, using the specified community name and destination IPv4 or IPv6 address. You can specify up to ten trap receivers (network management stations). (The default community name is `public`.)

```
[{<none | all | not-info |  
critical | debug>}]
```

(Optional) Configures the security level of the Event Log messages you want to send as traps to a trap receiver (see the following table).

- The type of Event Log message that you specify applies only to Event Log messages, not to threshold traps.
- For each configured event level, the switch continues to send threshold traps to all network management stations that have the appropriate threshold level configured.
- If you do not specify an event level, the switch uses the default value (none) and sends no Event Log messages as traps.

```
[<inform>]
```

(Optional) Configures the switch to send SNMPv2 inform requests when certain events occur. For more information, see **Enabling SNMPv2c informs (CLI)**.

**Table 19: Security levels for Event Log messages sent as traps**

Security Level	Action
None (default)	Sends no Event Log messages.
All	Sends all Event Log messages.
Not-Info	Sends all Event Log messages that are not for information only.
Critical	Sends only Event Log messages for critical error conditions.
Debug	Sends only Event Log messages needed to troubleshoot network- and switch-level problems.

#### Example:

To configure a trap receiver in a community named "red-team" with an IP address of 10.28.227.130 to receive only "critical" event log messages, you can enter the following command:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 10.28.227.130 red-team critical
```

## Overview

You can configure the threshold limit as a percentage for RMON event log memory. Range is between 1 to 100. An RMON log message is generated when the RMON event logging memory reaches the configured threshold percentage. If SNMP traps are enabled, then the same traps are generated for the RMON event.

Use the `rmonlog-set-threshold` command to set the threshold limit for RMON event log memory.

## rmonlog-set-threshold

### Syntax

```
rmonlog-set-threshold <percentage>
```

```
no rmonlog-set-threshold <percentage>
```

## Description

Configures the threshold percentage for RMON event logging. The default value is 80.

The `no` form of this command resets RMON event logging threshold to default value.

## Command context

`config`

## Parameters

### *percentage*

Specifies the threshold percentage value between 1 to 100.

## Examples

```
switch (config)# rmonlog-set-threshold 45
```

```
switch (config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; JL071A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:05

hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl071x
flexible-module A type JL081A
interface A1
    speed-duplex auto-100
    exit
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-24,A1-A4
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    ipv6 enable
    ipv6 address dhcp full
    exit
rmonlog-set-threshold 45
```

The following event log message is logged when the RMON log memory reaches the threshold value.

```
W 03/25/18 07:44:51 03443 system:The event log buffer is 45% full.
```

## SNMPv2c informs

On a switch enabled for SNMPv2c, you can use the `snmp-server host inform` command ([Enabling SNMPv2c informs \(CLI\)](#) on page 171) to send inform requests when certain events occur. When an SNMP Manager receives an inform request, it can send an SNMP response back to the sending agent on the switch to let the agent know that the inform request reached its destination.

If the sending agent on the switch does not receive an SNMP response back from the SNMP Manager within the timeout period, the inform request may be resent, based on the retry count value.

When you enable SNMPv2c inform requests to be sent, you must specify the IP address and community name of the management station that will receive the inform notification.

## Enabling SNMPv2c informs (CLI)

For information about enabling SNMPv2c informs, see [SNMPv2c informs](#) on page 170.

### Syntax:

```
no snmp-server host {< ipv4-addr | ipv6-addr >} <community name> inform [retries < count >] [timeout < interval >]
```

Enables (or disables) the `inform` option for SNMPv2c on the switch and allows you to configure options for sending SNMP inform requests.

retries	Maximum number of times to resend an <code>inform</code> request if no SNMP response is received. (Default: 3)
timeout	Number of seconds to wait for an acknowledgement before resending the <code>inform</code> request. (Default: 15 seconds)



**NOTE:** The `retries` and `timeout` values are not used to send trap requests.

To verify the configuration of SNMPv2c informs, enter the `show snmp-server` command, as shown in the following image (note indication of inform **Notify Type** in bold):

### Display of SNMPv2c inform configuration

```
switch(config)# show snmp-server
```

```
SNMP Communities
```

Community Name	MIB View	Write Access		
-----	-----	-----	public	Manager Unrestricted

```
Trap Receivers
```

```
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All
```

```
...
```

Address	Community	Events Sent	<b>Notify Type</b>	Retry	Timeout
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
15.28.333.456	guest	All	<b>inform</b>	3	15

```
Excluded MIBs
```

```
Snm Response Pdu Source-IP Information
```

```
Selection Policy : Default rfc1517
```

```
Trap Pdu Source-IP Information
```

```
Selection Policy : Configured IP  
Ip Address : 10.10.10.10
```

## Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)

The SNMPv3 notification process allows messages that are passed via SNMP between the switch and a network management station to be authenticated and encrypted.

### Procedure

1. Enable SNMPv3 operation on the switch by entering the `snmpv3 enable` command.

When SNMPv3 is enabled, the switch supports:

- Reception of SNMPv3 notification messages (traps and informs)
- Configuration of initial users
- (Optional) Restriction of non-SNMPv3 messages to "read only"

2. Configure SNMPv3 users by entering the `snmpv3 user` command. Each SNMPv3 user configuration is entered in the User Table.
3. Assign SNMPv3 users to security groups according to their level of access privilege by entering the `snmpv3 group` command.
4. Define the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration by entering the `snmpv3 notify` command.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 notify <notify_name> tagvalue <tag_name> type {inform|trap}
```

Associates the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration with a tag name used (internally) in SNMPv3 commands. To delete a notification-to-tag mapping, enter `no snmpv3 notify notify_name`.

<code>notify &lt;notify_name&gt;</code>	Specifies the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration.
<code>tagvalue &lt;tag_name&gt;</code>	Specifies the name of a tag value used in other SNMPv3 commands, such as <code>snmpv3 targetaddress params taglist tag_name</code> in Step 5.
<code>type</code>	Specifies the notification type as <code>inform</code> or <code>trap</code> . By default, the notification type is <code>trap</code> .

5. Configure the target address of the SNMPv3 management station to which SNMPv3 informs and traps are sent by entering the `snmpv3 targetaddress` command.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 targetaddress <ASCII-STR> params <ASCII-STR> <IP-ADDR> taglist <ASCII-STR>
```

Configures the IPv4 or IPv6 address, name, and configuration filename of the SNMPv3 management station to which notification messages are sent.



<code>params &lt;ASCII-STR&gt;</code>	<p>Name of the SNMPv3 station's parameters file. The parameters filename configured with <code>params &lt;ASCII-STR&gt;</code> must match the <code>params &lt;ASCII-STR&gt;</code> value entered with the <code>snmpv3 params</code> command in Step 6.</p> <p>The <code>&lt;IP-ADDR&gt;</code> sets the IP address of the destination.</p>
<code>taglist &lt;ASCII-STR&gt; [ASCII-STR] ...</code>	<p>Specifies the SNMPv3 notifications (identified by one or more <code>ASCII-STR</code> values) to be sent to the IP address of the SNMPv3 management station.</p> <p>You can enter more than one <code>ASCII-STR</code> value. Each <code>ASCII-STR</code> value must be already associated with the name of an SNMPv3 notification configuration entered with the <code>snmpv3 notify</code> command in Step 4. Use a blank space to separate values.</p> <p><b>ASCII-STR</b></p> <p>You can enter up to 103 characters in <code>ASCII-STR</code> entries following the <code>taglist</code> keyword.</p>
<code>[filter {&lt;none   debug   all   not-info   critical&gt;}]</code>	(Optional) Configures the type of messages sent to a management station. (Default: none.)
<code>[udp-port &lt; port &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Specifies the UDP port to use. (Default: 162.)
<code>[port-mask &lt; mask &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Specifies a range of UDP ports. (Default: 0.)
<code>[addr-mask &lt; mask &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Specifies a range of IP addresses as destinations for notification messages. (Default: 0.)
<code>[retries &lt; value &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Number of times a notification is retransmitted if no response is received. Range: 1-255. (Default: 3.)
<code>[timeout &lt; value &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Time (in millisecond increments) allowed to receive a response from the target before notification packets are retransmitted. Range: 0-2147483647. [Default: 1500 (15 seconds).]
<code>[max-msg-size &lt; size &gt;]</code>	(Optional) Maximum number of bytes supported in a notification message to the specified target. (Default: 1472)

6. Create a configuration record for the target address with the `snmpv3 params` command.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmpv3 params <ASCII-STR> user <user_name> sec-model <security_model>
message-processing <security_model> <security_service>
```

Applies the configuration parameters and IP address of an SNMPv3 management station (from the `params <ASCII-STR>` value configured with the `snmpv3 targetaddress` command in Step 5) to a specified SNMPv3 user (from the `user <user_name>` value configured with the `snmpv3 user` command in Step 2).

If you enter the `snmpv3 params user` command, you must also configure a security model ( `sec_model`) and message processing algorithm ( `message-processing`).

```
{<sec_model [ver1 | ver2c | ver3>]}
```

Configures the security model used for SNMPv3 notification messages sent to the management station configured with the `snmpv3 targetaddress` command in Step 5.

If you configure the security model as `ver3`, you must also configure the message processing value as `ver3`.

```
{msg-processing {<ver1 | ver2c | ver3>}  
[noaut | auth | priv]}
```

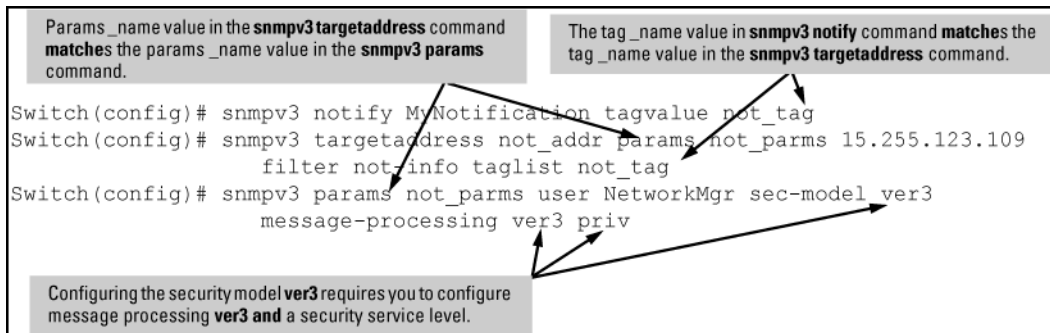
Configures the algorithm used to process messages sent to the SNMPv3 target address.

If you configure the message processing value as `ver3` and the security model as `ver3`, you must also configure a security services level ( `noauth`, `auth`, or `priv`).

### Example:

An example to how to configure SNMPv3 notification in the following image:

**Figure 31:** Example: SNMPv3 notification configuration



## Network security notifications

By default, a switch is enabled to send the SNMP notifications listed in **Supported Notifications** on page 167 when a network security event (For example, authentication failure) occurs. However, before security notifications can be sent, you must first configure one or more trap receivers or SNMPv3 management stations as described in:

- **Configuring an SNMP trap receiver (CLI)** on page 168
- **Configuring SNMPv3 notifications (CLI)** on page 171

You can manage the default configuration of the switch to disable and re-enable notifications to be sent for the following types of security events:

- ARP protection events
- Inability to establish a connection with the RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication server
- DHCP snooping events

- Dynamic IP Lockdown hardware resources consumed
- Link change notification
- Invalid password entered in a login attempt through a direct serial, Telnet, or SSH connection
- Manager password changes
- Port-security (web, MAC, or 802.1X) authentication failure
- SNMP authentication failure
- Running configuration changes

## Enabling or disabling notification/traps for network security failures and other security events (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
no snmp-server enable traps [arp-protect | auth-server-fail | dhcp-server
| dhcp-snooping | dhcpv6-snooping | dyn-ip-lockdown | dyn-ipv6-lockdown | link-change
| login-failure-mgr | mac-count-notify | mac-notify | macsec | nd-snooping | password-change-mgr
| port-security | running-config-change | snmp-authentication | startup-config-change | vsf ]
```

Enables or disables sending one of the security notification types listed below to configured trap receivers. (Unless otherwise stated, all of the following notifications are enabled in the default configuration.)

The notification sends a trap:

arp-protect	Traps for Dynamic ARP Protection.
auth-server-fail	Traps reporting authentication server unreachable.
dhcp-server	Traps for DHCP-Server.
dhcp-snooping	Traps for DHCP-Snooping.
dhcpv6-snooping	Set the traps for DHCPv6 snooping.
dyn-ip-lockdown	Traps for Dynamic Ip Lockdown.
dyn-ipv6-lockdown	Enable traps for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown.
link-change	Traps for link-up and link-down.
login-failure-mgr	Traps for management interface login failure.
mac-count-notify	Traps for MAC addresses learned on the specified ports exceeds the threshold.
mac-notify	Traps for (learned/removed) MAC address table changes.
macsec	Configure the traps for MACsec notifications.

*Table Continued*

nd-snooping	Set the trap for nd snooping
password-change-mgr	Traps for management interface password change.
port-security	Traps for port access authentication failure.
running-config-change	Traps for running config change.
snmp-authentication [extended   standard]	Select RFC-1157 (standard) or ICF-SNMP (extended) traps.
Startup-config-change	Traps for changes to the startup configuration.
vsf	Enable traps for the VSF functionality.

To determine the specific cause of a security event, check the Event Log in the console interface to see why a trap was sent. For more information, see *"Using the Event Log for Troubleshooting Switch Problems"*.

### Viewing the current configuration for network security notifications (CLI)

Enter the `show snmp-server traps` command, as shown in the following example. Note that command output is a subset of the information displayed with the `show snmp-server` command in [Display of SNMP notification configuration](#).

#### Display of configured network security notifications

```
switch(config)# show snmp-server traps
```

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : A1-A24

Traps Category	Current Status
SNMP Authentication	: Extended
Password change	: Enabled
Login failures	: Enabled
Port-Security	: Enabled
Authorization Server Contact	: Enabled
DHCP Snooping	: Enabled
Dynamic ARP Protection	: Enabled
Dynamic IP Lockdown	: Enabled

Address	Community	Events Sent	Notify Type	Retry	Timeout
15.255.5.225	public	All	trap	3	15
2001:0db8:0000:0001 :0000:0000:0000:0121	user_1	All	trap	3	15

Excluded MIBs

### Enabling Link-Change Traps (CLI)

By default, a switch is enabled to send a trap when the link state on a port changes from up to down (linkDown) or down to up (linkUp). To reconfigure the switch to send link-change traps to configured trap receivers, enter the `snmp-server enable traps link-change` command.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmp-server enable traps link-change <port-list> [all]
```

Enables or disables the switch to send a link-change trap to configured trap receivers when the link state on a port goes from up to down or down to up.

Enter `all` to enable or disable link-change traps on all ports on the switch.

**Readable interface names in traps**

The SNMP trap notification messages for linkup and linkdown events on an interface includes IfDesc and IfAlias var-bind information.

**Source IP address for SNMP notifications**

The switch uses an interface IP address as the source IP address in IP headers when sending SNMP notifications (traps and informs) or responses to SNMP requests.

For multi-netted interfaces, the source IP address is the IP address of the outbound interface of the SNMP reply, which may differ from the destination IP address in the IP header of the received request. For security reasons, it may be desirable to send an SNMP reply with the IP address of the destination interface (or a specified IP address) on which the corresponding SNMP request was received.

To configure the switch to use the source IP address on which an SNMP request was received in SNMP notification or traps and replies, enter the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands (For more information, see [Configuring the source IP address for SNMP notifications \(CLI\)](#)).

**Configuring the source IP address for SNMP notifications (CLI)**

For more information, see [Source IP address for SNMP notifications](#) on page 177.

**Syntax:**

```
no snmp-server response-source [dst-ip-of-request | [ipv4-addr | ipv6-addr] | loopback <0-7>]
```

Specifies the source IP address of the SNMP response PDU. The default SNMP response PDU uses the IP address of the active interface from which the SNMP response was sent as the source IP address.

The `no` form of the command resets the switch to the default behavior (compliant with rfc-1517).

(Default: Interface IP address)

<code>dst-ip-of-request</code>	Destination IP address of the SNMP request PDU that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU.
<code>[ipv4-addr   ipv6-addr]</code>	User-defined interface IP address that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.
<code>loopback &lt;0-7&gt;</code>	IP address configured for the specified loopback interface that is used as the source IP address in an SNMP response PDU. If multiple loopback IP addresses are configured, the lowest alphanumeric address is used.

To use the IP address of the destination interface on which an SNMP request was received as the source IP address in the IP header of SNMP traps and replies, enter the following command:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server response-source dst-ip-of-request
```

## Syntax:

```
no snmp-server trap-source [ipv4-addr | loopback <0-7>]
```

Specifies the source IP address to be used for a trap PDU. To configure the switch to use a specified source IP address in generated trap PDUs, enter the `snmp-server trap-source` command.

The `no` form of the command resets the switch to the default behavior (compliant with rfc-1517).

(Default: Use the interface IP address in generated trap PDUs)

<code>ipv4-addr</code>	User-defined interface IPv4 address that is used as the source IP address in generated traps. IPv6 addresses are not supported.
<code>loopback &lt;0-7&gt;</code>	P address configured for the specified loopback interface that is used as the source IP address in a generated trap PDU. If multiple loopback IP addresses are configured, the lowest alphanumeric address is used.



**NOTE:** When you use the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands, note the following behavior:

- The `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands configure the source IP address for IPv4 interfaces only.
- You must manually configure the `snmp-server response-source` value if you wish to change the default user-defined interface IP address that is used as the source IP address in SNMP traps (RFC 1517).
- The values configured with the `snmp-server response-source` and `snmp-server trap-source` commands are applied globally to all interfaces that are sending SNMP responses or SNMP trap PDUs.
- Only the source IP address field in the IP header of the SNMP response PDU can be changed.
- Only the source IP address field in the IP header and the SNMPv1 Agent Address field of the SNMP trap PDU can be changed.

## Verifying the configuration of the interface IP address used as the source IP address in IP headers for SNMP replies and traps sent from the switch (CLI)

Enter the `show snmp-server` command to display the SNMP policy configuration, as shown in the following example.

### Display of source IP address configuration

```
switch(config)# show snmp-server
```

```
SNMP Communities
```

Community Name	MIB View	Write Access
public	Manager	Unrestricted

```
Trap Receivers
```

```
Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All
```

```
...
```

```

Excluded MIBs
Snmp Response Pdu Source-IP Information
Selection Policy : dstIpOfRequest 1

Trap Pdu Source-IP Information
Selection Policy : Configured IP

```

<sup>1</sup> dstIpOfRequest: The destination IP address of the interface on which an SNMP request is received and used as the source IP address in SNMP replies.

## Viewing SNMP notification configuration (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
show snmp-server
```

Displays the currently configured notification settings for versions SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c traps, including SNMP communities, trap receivers, link-change traps, and network security notifications.

### Example:

In the following Example:, the `show snmp-server` command output shows that the switch has been configured to send SNMP traps and notifications to management stations that belong to the "public," "red-team," and "blue-team" communities.

**Figure 32:** Display of SNMP notification configuration

```

Switch(config)# show snmp-server

SNMP Communities
Community Name  MIB View Write Access
-----
public          Operator Restricted
blue-team       Manager  Unrestricted
red-team        Manager  Unrestricted

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Trap Category          Current Trap Configuration
-----
SNMP Authentication    extended
Password change        enabled
Login failures          enabled
Port-Security           enabled
Authorization Server Contact enabled
ARP Protection          enabled
DHCP Snooping           enabled

Address      Community  Events Sent  Notify Type  Retry  Timeout
-----
10.28.227.200 public      All          trap         3      15
10.28.227.105 red-team    Critical     trap         3      15
10.28.227.120 blue-team   Not-INFO     trap         3      15
...

```

## Advanced management: RMON

The switch supports RMON (remote monitoring) on all connected network segments. This allows for troubleshooting and optimizing your network.

The following RMON groups are supported:

- Ethernet Statistics (except the numbers of packets of different frame sizes)
- Alarm
- History (of the supported Ethernet statistics)
- Event

The RMON agent automatically runs in the switch. Use the RMON management station on your network to enable or disable specific RMON traps and events. Note that you can access the Ethernet statistics, Alarm and Event groups from the Switch Manager network management software.

## CLI-configured sFlow with multiple instances

sFlow can also be configured via the CLI for up to three distinct sFlow instances: once enabled, an sFlow receiver/destination can be independently configured for full flow-sampling and counter-polling. CLI-configured sFlow instances may be saved to the startup configuration to persist across a switch reboot.

### Configuring sFlow (CLI)

The following sFlow commands allow you to configure sFlow instances via the CLI. For more information, see **Advanced management: RMON** on page 179.

#### Syntax:

```
no sflow <receiver-instance> destination <ip-address> [< udp-port-num >]
```

Enables an sFlow receiver/destination. The receiver-instance number must be a 1, 2, or 3.

By default, the udp destination port number is 6343.

To disable an sFlow receiver/destination, enter `no sflow receiver-instance` .

#### Syntax:

```
sflow <receiver-instance> sampling <port-list> <sampling rate>
```

Once an sFlow receiver/destination has been enabled, this command enables flow sampling for that instance. The receiver-instance number is 1, 2, or 3, and the sampling rate is the allowable non-zero skipcount for the specified port or ports.

To disable flow-sampling for the specified port-list, repeat the above command with a sampling rate of 0.

#### Syntax:

```
sflow <receiver-instance> polling <port-list> <polling interval>
```

Once an sFlow receiver/destination has been enabled, this command enables counter polling for that instance. The receiver-instance number is 1, 2, or 3, and the polling interval may be set to an allowable non-zero value to enable polling on the specified port or ports.

To disable counter-polling for the specified port-list, repeat the above command with a polling interval of 0.



#### NOTE:

Under the multiple instance implementation, sFlow can be configured via the CLI or via SNMP. However, CLI-owned sFlow configurations cannot be modified via SNMP, whereas SNMP-owned instances can be disabled via the CLI using the `no sflow <receiver-instance>` command.



## Viewing sFlow Configuration and Status (CLI)

The following sFlow commands allow you to display sFlow configuration and status through the CLI [Viewing sFlow destination information](#) on page 181 is an example of `sflow agent` information.

### Syntax:

```
show sflow agent
```

Displays sFlow agent information. The agent address is normally the IP address of the first VLAN configured.

The `show sflow agent` command displays read-only switch agent information. The version information shows the sFlow version, MIB support, and software versions; the agent address is typically the IP address of the first VLAN configured on the switch.

### Viewing sflow agent information

```
switch# show sflow agent
```

```
Version          1.3;XX.11.40
Agent Address     10.0.10.228
```

### Syntax:

```
show sflow <receiver instance> destination
```

Displays information about the management station to which the sFlow sampling-polling data is sent.

The `show sflow instance destination` command includes information about the management-station's destination address, receiver port, and owner, as shown in the following example.

### Viewing sFlow destination information

```
switch# show sflow 2 destination
```

```
Destination Instance      2
sflow                     Enabled
Datagrams Sent            221
Destination Address        10.0.10.41
Receiver Port              6343
Owner                     Administrator, CLI-owned, Instance 2
Timeout (seconds)         99995530
Max Datagram Size         1400
Datagram Version Support   5
```

Note the following details:

- **Destination Address** remains blank unless it has been configured.
- **Datagrams Sent** shows the number of datagrams sent by the switch agent to the management station since the switch agent was last enabled.
- **Timeout** displays the number of seconds remaining before the switch agent will automatically disable sFlow (this is set by the management station and decrements with time).
- **Max Datagram Size** shows the currently set value (typically a default value, but this can also be set by the management station).

## Syntax:

```
show sflow <receiver instance> sampling-polling <port-list/range>
```

Displays status information about sFlow sampling and polling.

The `show sflow instance sampling-polling [port-list]` command displays information about sFlow sampling and polling on the switch, as shown in the following example. You can specify a list or range of ports for which to view sampling information.

**Figure 33:** Example: Viewing sFlow sampling and polling information

```
Switch# show sflow 2 sampling-polling A1-A4
```

Number denotes the sampling/polling instance to which the receiver is coupled.						
Port	Sampling		Dropped		Polling	
	Enabled	Rate	Header	Samples	Enabled	Interval
A1	Yes (2)	40	128	1234567890	---	---
A2	---	---	---	0	Yes (1)	60
A3	No (1)	0	100	898703	No	30
A4	Yes (3)	50	128	0	No (3)	0



**NOTE:** The sampling and polling instances (noted in parentheses) coupled to a specific receiver instance are assigned dynamically, and so the instance numbers may not always match. The key thing to note is whether sampling or polling is enabled on a port, and the sampling rates or polling intervals for the receiver instance configured on each port.

## Configuring UDLD Verify before forwarding

When an UDLD enabled port transitions to link-up, the port will begin with a UDLD blocking state. UDLD will probe via protocol packet exchange to determine the bidirectional state of the link. Until UDLD has completed the probe, all data traffic will be blocked. If the link is found to be bidirectional, UDLD will unblock the port for data traffic to pass. Once UDLD unblocks the port, other protocols will see the port as up and data traffic can be safely forwarded.

The default mode of a switch is “forward first then verify”. Enabling UDLD link-up will default to “forward first then verify”. To change the mode to “verify then forward”, you need to configure using the commands found in section 6.72.



**NOTE:** Link-UP data traffic will resumed after probing the link partner completes. All other protocols running will see the port as down.

## UDLD time delay

UDLD protocol informs the link partner simultaneously as it detects a state change from unidirectional to bidirectional traffic. Additional packet exchanges will be carried out by UDLD in addition to the existing UDLD exchanges whenever state changes from unidirectional to bidirectional.

**Table 20: Peer state transition timings**

Interval Time	Interval 1	Interval 1 + delta	Interval 2	Interval 3
	5 sec	5+(<5) sec*	10 sec	15 sec
With triggered updates	State = blockedPeer State = blocked	Inform PeerState = unblockedPeer State = unblocked	Regular UDLD TX	Regular UDLD TX
Without triggered updates	State = blockedPeer State = blocked	State = unblockedPeer State = blocked	Inform PeerState = unblockedPeer State = unblocked	Regular UDLD TX
*delta is the time when the unblock event occurs on local side				

## Restrictions

- There is no support available when configuring this mode from the web and menu interface.
- There are no new packet types are introduced with UDLD.
- There are no new UDLD timers being introduced.

## UDLD configuration commands

### Syntax:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive mode [verify-then-forward | forward-then-verify]
```

This command configures the link-keepalive mode.

Link-keepalive provides two modes of operation; `verify-then-forward` and `forward-then-verify`.

When using the `verify-then-forward` mode, the port is in a blocking state until the link configured for UDLD establishes bidirectional communication. When using the `forward-then-verify` mode, the port forwards the data then verifies the status of the link-in state.

When a unidirectional state is detected, the port is moved to a blocked state.

When a bidirectional state is detected, the data is forwarded without interruption.

### Syntax:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive mode verify-then-forward
```

Keeps the port in a logically blocked state until the link configured for UDLD has been successfully established in bi-directional communication.

### Syntax:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive mode forward-then-verify
```

Forwards the data then verifies the status of the link. If a unidirectional state is detected, the port is then moved to a blocked state.

### Syntax:

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive interval <deciseconds>
```

Configure the interval for link-keepalive. The link-keepalive interval is the time between sending two UDLD packets. The time interval is entered in deciseconds (1/10 sec). The default keepalive interval is 50 deciseconds.

**Example:**

A value of 10 is 1 sec., 11 is 1.1 sec.

**Syntax:**

```
switch(config)# link-keepalive retries <number>
```

Maximum number of sending attempts for UDLD packets before declaring the link as faulty.

Default keepalive attempt is 4.

## Show commands

**Syntax:**

```
switch(config)# show link-keepalive
```

**Sample output:**

```
Total link-keepalive enabled ports: 8
Keepalive Retries : 4
Keepalive Interval: 5 sec
Keepalive Mode : verify-then-forward
Physical Keepalive Adjacent UDLD
```

Port	Enabled	Status	Status	Switch	VLAN
1	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
2	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
3	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
4	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
5	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
6	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
7	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged
8	Yes	down	off-line	000000-000000	untagged

## RMON generated when user changes UDLD mode

RMON events are generated when UDLD is configured. The first time you configure the mode, the UDLD states will be re-initialized. An event log entry is initiated to include the reason for the initial UDLD blocking state during link up.

**Example:**

UDLD mode [verify-then-forward | forward-then-verify] is configured

Severity: - Info.

## LLDP

To standardize device discovery on all switches, LLDP is implemented while offering limited read-only support for CDP, as documented in this manual. For the latest information on your switch model, consult the Release Notes (available on the HPE Networking website). If LLDP has not yet been implemented (or if you are running an older version of software), consult a previous version of the *Management and Configuration Guide* for device discovery details.

**LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol):** provides a standards-based method for enabling the switches covered in this guide to advertise themselves to adjacent devices and to learn about adjacent LLDP devices.

**LLDP-MED (LLDP Media Endpoint Discovery):** Provides an extension to LLDP and is designed to support VoIP deployments.



**NOTE:** LLDP-MED is an extension for LLDP, and the switch requires that LLDP be enabled as a prerequisite to LLDP-MED operation.

An SNMP utility can progressively discover LLDP devices in a network by:

### Procedure

1. Reading a given device's Neighbors table (in the Management Information Base, or MIB) to learn about other, neighboring LLDP devices.
2. Using the information learned in step 1 to find and read the neighbor devices' Neighbors tables to learn about additional devices, and so on.

Also, by using `show` commands to access the switch's neighbor database for information collected by an individual switch, system administrators can learn about other devices connected to the switch, including device type (capability) and some configuration information. In VoIP deployments using LLDP-MED on the switches, additional support unique to VoIP applications is also available. See **LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)** on page 200.

## General LLDP operation

An LLDP packet contains data about the transmitting switch and port. The switch advertises itself to adjacent (neighbor) devices by transmitting LLDP data packets out all ports on which outbound LLDP is enabled and by reading LLDP advertisements from neighbor devices on ports that are inbound LLDP-enabled. (LLDP is a one-way protocol and does not include any acknowledgement mechanism.) An LLDP-enabled port receiving LLDP packets inbound from neighbor devices stores the packet data in a Neighbor database (MIB).

### LLDP-MED

This capability is an extension to LLDP and is available on the switches. See **LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)** on page 200.

## Packet boundaries in a network topology

- Where multiple LLDP devices are directly connected, an outbound LLDP packet travels only to the next LLDP device. An LLDP-capable device does not forward LLDP packets to any other devices, regardless of whether they are LLDP-enabled.
- An intervening hub or repeater forwards the LLDP packets it receives in the same manner as any other multicast packets it receives. Thus, two LLDP switches joined by a hub or repeater handle LLDP traffic in the same way that they would if directly connected.
- Any intervening 802.1D device or Layer-3 device that is either LLDP-unaware or has disabled LLDP operation drops the packet.

## LLDP operation configuration options

In the default configuration, LLDP is enabled and in both transmit and receive mode on all active ports. The LLDP configuration includes global settings, which apply to all active ports on the switch, and per-port settings, which affect only the operation of the specified ports.

The commands in the LLDP sections affect both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation. For information on operation and configuration unique to LLDP-MED, see **LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)** on page 200.

## Enable or disable LLDP on the switch

In the default configuration, LLDP is globally enabled on the switch. To prevent transmission or receipt of LLDP traffic, you can disable LLDP operation.

## Enable or disable LLDP-MED

In the default configuration for the switches, LLDP-MED is enabled by default. (Requires that LLDP is also enabled.) For more information, see **LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)** on page 200.

## Change the frequency of LLDP packet transmission to neighbor devices

On a global basis, you can increase or decrease the frequency of outbound LLDP advertisements.

## Change the Time-To-Live for LLDP packets sent to neighbors

On a global basis, you can increase or decrease the time that the information in an LLDP packet outbound from the switch will be maintained in a neighbor LLDP device.

## Transmit and receive mode

With LLDP enabled, the switch periodically transmits an LLDP advertisement (packet) out each active port enabled for outbound LLDP transmissions and receives LLDP advertisements on each active port enabled to receive LLDP traffic (**Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes (CLI)** on page 194). Per-port configuration options include four modes:

- Transmit and receive (`tx_rx`): This is the default setting on all ports. It enables a given port to both transmit and receive LLDP packets and to store the data from received (inbound) LLDP packets in the switch's MIB.
- Transmit only (`txonly`): This setting enables a port to transmit LLDP packets that can be read by LLDP neighbors. However, the port drops inbound LLDP packets from LLDP neighbors without reading them. This prevents the switch from learning about LLDP neighbors on that port.
- Receive only (`rxonly`): This setting enables a port to receive and read LLDP packets from LLDP neighbors and to store the packet data in the switch's MIB. However, the port does not transmit outbound LLDP packets. This prevents LLDP neighbors from learning about the switch through that port.
- Disable (`disable`): This setting disables LLDP packet transmissions and reception on a port. In this state, the switch does not use the port for either learning about LLDP neighbors or informing LLDP neighbors of its presence.

## SNMP notification

You can enable the switch to send a notification to any configured SNMP trap receiver(s) when the switch detects a remote LLDP data change on an LLDP-enabled port (**Configuring SNMP notification support** on page 194).

## Per-port (outbound) data options

The following table lists the information the switch can include in the per-port, outbound LLDP packets it generates. In the default configuration, all outbound LLDP packets include this information in the TLVs transmitted to neighbor devices. However, you can configure LLDP advertisements on a per-port basis to omit some of this information (**Configuring a remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements (CLI)** on page 195).

**Table 21: Data available for basic LLDP advertisements**

Data type	Configuration options	Default	Description
Time-to-Live	1	120 Seconds	The length of time an LLDP neighbor retains the advertised data before discarding it.
Chassis Type <sup>2</sup> ,	N/A	Always Enabled	Indicates the type of identifier used for Chassis ID.
Chassis ID <sup>33</sup>	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses base MAC address of the switch.
Port Type <sup>4,33</sup>	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses "Local," meaning assigned locally by LLDP.
Port Id <sup>33</sup>	N/A	Always Enabled	Uses port number of the physical port. This is an internal number reflecting the reserved slot/port position in the chassis. For more information on this numbering scheme, see the appendix "MAC Address Management".
<b>Remote Management Address</b>			
Type <sup>3,3</sup>	N/A	Always Enabled	Shows the network address type.
Address <sup>55</sup>	Default or Configured	Uses a default address selection method unless an optional address is configured. See <b>Remote management address</b> on page 188.	
System Name <sup>33</sup>	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Uses the switch's assigned name.
System Description <sup>33</sup>	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Includes switch model name and running software version, and ROM version.
Port Description <sup>33</sup>	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Uses the physical port identifier.

*Table Continued*

Data type	Configuration options	Default	Description
System capabilities supported <sup>3,3</sup>	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Identifies the switch's primary capabilities (bridge, router).
System capabilities enabled <sup>3,66 3</sup>	Enable/Disable	Enabled	Identifies the primary switch functions that are enabled, such as routing.

<sup>1</sup> The Packet Time-to-Live value is included in LLDP data packets.

<sup>2</sup> Subelement of the Chassis ID TLV.

<sup>3</sup> Populated with data captured internally by the switch. For more on these data types, refer to the IEEE P802.1AB Standard.

<sup>4</sup> Subelement of the Port ID TLV.

<sup>5</sup> Subelement of the Remote-Management-Address TLV.

<sup>6</sup> Subelement of the System Capability TLV.

## Remote management address

The switch always includes an IP address in its LLDP advertisements. This can be either an address selected by a default process or an address configured for inclusion in advertisements. See [IP address advertisements](#) on page 189.

## Debug logging

You can enable LLDP debug logging to a configured debug destination (Syslog server, a terminal device, or both) by executing the `debug lldp` command. (For more information on Debug and Syslog, see the "Troubleshooting" appendix in this guide.) Note that the switch's Event Log does not record usual LLDP update messages.

## Options for reading LLDP information collected by the switch

You can extract LLDP information from the switch to identify adjacent LLDP devices. Options include:

- Using the switch's `show lldp info` command options to display data collected on adjacent LLDP devices—as well as the local data the switch is transmitting to adjacent LLDP devices ([Displaying the global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status \(CLI\)](#) on page 189).
- Using an SNMP application that is designed to query the Neighbors MIB for LLDP data to use in device discovery and topology mapping.
- Using the `walkmib` command to display a listing of the LLDP MIB objects

## LLDP and LLDP-MED standards compatibility

The operation covered by this section is compatible with these standards:

- IEEE P802.1AB
- RFC 2922 (PTOPO, or Physical Topology MIB)
- RFC 2737 (Entity MIB)
- RFC 2863 (Interfaces MIB)
- ANSI/TIA-1057/D6 (LLDP-MED; refer to [LLDP-MED \(media-endpoint-discovery\)](#) on page 200.)



## LLDP operating rules

For additional information specific to LLDP-MED operation, see **LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)** on page 200.

### Port trunking

LLDP manages trunked ports individually. That is, trunked ports are configured individually for LLDP operation, in the same manner as non-trunked ports. Also, LLDP sends separate advertisements on each port in a trunk, and not on a per-trunk basis. Similarly, LLDP data received through trunked ports is stored individually, per-port.

### IP address advertisements

In the default operation, if a port belongs to only one static VLAN, the port advertises the lowest-order IP address configured on that VLAN. If a port belongs to multiple VLANs, the port advertises the lowest-order IP address configured on the VLAN with the lowest VID. If the qualifying VLAN does not have an IP address, the port advertises 127.0.0.1 as its IP address. For example, if the port is a member of the default VLAN (VID=1), and there is an IP address configured for the default VLAN, the port advertises this IP address. In the default operation, the IP address that LLDP uses can be an address acquired by DHCP or Bootp.

You can override the default operation by configuring the port to advertise any IP address that is manually configured on the switch, even if the port does not belong to the VLAN configured with the selected IP address (**Configuring a remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements (CLI)** on page 195). (Note that LLDP cannot be configured through the CLI to advertise an addresses acquired through DHCP or Bootp. However, as mentioned above, in the default LLDP configuration, if the lowest-order IP address on the VLAN with the lowest VID for a given port is a DHCP or Bootp address, the switch includes this address in its LLDP advertisements unless another address is configured for advertisements on that port.) Also, although LLDP allows configuring multiple remote management addresses on a port, only the lowest-order address configured on the port will be included in outbound advertisements. Attempting to use the CLI to configure LLDP with an IP address that is either not configured on a VLAN or has been acquired by DHCP or Bootp results in the following error message.

```
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx: This IP address is not configured or is a DHCP address.
```

### Spanning-tree blocking

Spanning tree does not prevent LLDP packet transmission or receipt on STP-blocked links.

### 802.1X blocking

Ports blocked by 802.1X operation do not allow transmission or receipt of LLDP packets.

## Configuring LLDP operation

### Displaying the global LLDP, port admin, and SNMP notification status (CLI)

In the default configuration, LLDP is enabled and in both transmit and receive mode on all active ports. The LLDP configuration includes global settings that apply to all active ports on the switch, and per-port settings that affect only the operation of the specified ports.

The commands in this section affect both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation. for information on operation and configuration unique to LLDP-MED, refer to “LLDP-MED (Media-Endpoint-Discovery)”.

#### Syntax:

```
show lldp config
```

Displays the LLDP global configuration, LLDP port status, and SNMP notification status. For information on port admin status, see **Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes (CLI)** on page 194.

`show lldp config` produces the following display when the switch is in the default LLDP configuration:

### Viewing the general LLDP configuration

```
switch(config)# show lldp config
```

#### LLDP Global Configuration

```
LLDP Enabled [Yes] : Yes
LLDP Transmit Interval [30] : 30
LLDP Hold time Multiplier [4] : 4
LLDP Delay Interval [2] : 2
LLDP Reinit Interval [2] : 2
LLDP Notification Interval [5] : 5
LLDP Fast Start Count [5] : 5
```

#### LLDP Port Configuration

Port	AdminStatus	NotificationEnabled	Med Topology Trap Enabled
A1	Tx_Rx	False	False
A2	Tx_Rx	False	False
A3	Tx_Rx	False	False
A4	Tx_Rx	False	False
A5	Tx_Rx	False	False
A6	Tx_Rx	False	False
A7	Tx_Rx	False	False
A8	Tx_Rx	False	False



**NOTE:** The values displayed in the LLDP column correspond to the `lldp refresh-interval` command

### Viewing port configuration details (CLI)

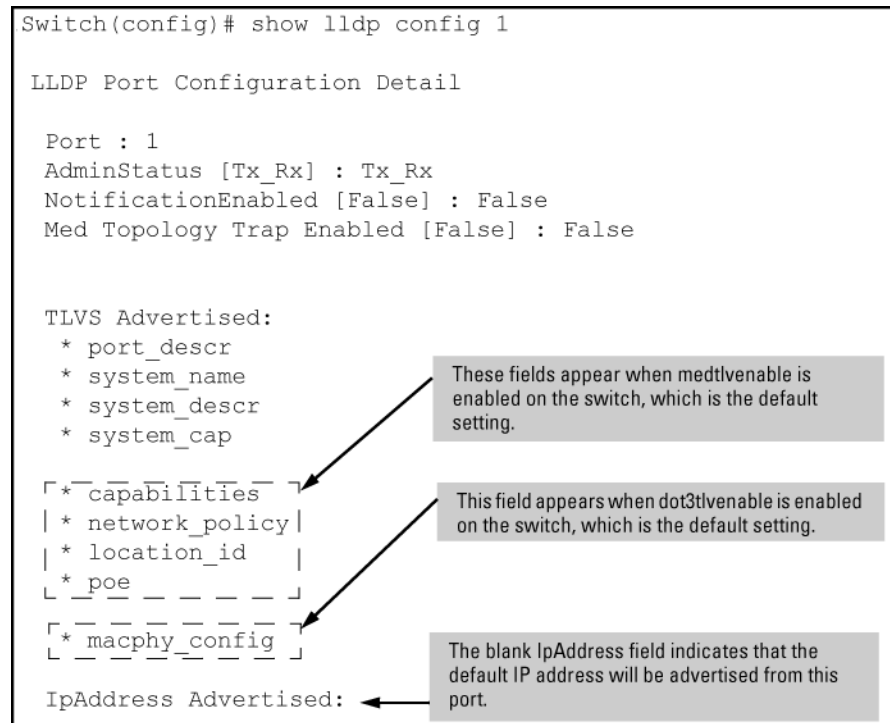
#### Syntax:

```
show lldp config <port-list>
```

Displays the LLDP port-specific configuration for all ports in *<port-list>*, including which optional TLVs and any non-default IP address that are included in the port's outbound advertisements.

For information on the notification setting, see [Configuring SNMP notification support](#) on page 194. For information on the other configurable settings displayed by this command, see [Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes \(CLI\)](#) on page 194.

**Figure 34:** Per-port configuration display



## Configuring Global LLDP Packet Controls

The commands in this section configure the aspects of LLDP operation that apply the same to all ports in the switch.

### LLDP operation on the switch

Enabling LLDP operation (the default) causes the switch to:

- Use active, LLDP-enabled ports to transmit LLDP packets describing itself to neighbor devices.
- Add entries to its neighbors table based on data read from incoming LLDP advertisements.

### Enabling or disabling LLDP operation on the switch (CLI)

For more information, see [LLDP operation on the switch](#) on page 191.

#### Syntax:

```
no lldp run
```

Enables or disables LLDP operation on the switch.

The `no` form of the command, regardless of individual LLDP port configurations, prevents the switch from transmitting outbound LLDP advertisements and causes the switch to drop all LLDP advertisements received from other devices.

The switch preserves the current LLDP configuration when LLDP is disabled. After LLDP is disabled, the information in the LLDP neighbors database remains until it times-out.

(Default: Enabled)

## Disabling LLDP

```
switch(config)# no lldp run
```

## Changing the packet transmission interval (CLI)

This interval controls how often active ports retransmit advertisements to their neighbors.

### Syntax:

```
lldp refresh-interval <5-32768>
```

Changes the interval between consecutive transmissions of LLDP advertisements on any given port.

(Default: 30 seconds)



### NOTE:

The refresh-interval must be greater than or equal to (4 x delay-interval). (The default delay-interval is 2). For example, with the default delay-interval, the lowest refresh-interval you can use is 8 seconds (4 x 2=8). Thus, if you want a refresh-interval of 5 seconds, you must first change the delay interval to 1 (that is, 4 x 1 5). If you want to change the delay-interval, use the `setmib` command.

## Time-to-Live for transmitted advertisements

The Time-to-Live value (in seconds) for all LLDP advertisements transmitted from a switch is controlled by the switch that generates the advertisement and determines how long an LLDP neighbor retains the advertised data before discarding it. The Time-to-Live value is the result of multiplying the `refresh-interval` by the `holdtime-multiplier`.

## Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements (CLI)

For more information, see [Time-to-Live for transmitted advertisements](#) on page 192.

### Syntax:

```
lldp holdtime-multiplier <2-10>
```

Changes the multiplier an LLDP switch uses to calculate the Time-to-Live for the LLDP advertisements it generates and transmits to LLDP neighbors. When the Time-to-Live for a given advertisement expires, the advertised data is deleted from the neighbor switch's MIB.

(Default: 4; Range 2–10)

### Example:

If the refresh-interval on the switch is 15 seconds and the `holdtime-multiplier` is at the default, the Time-to-Live for advertisements transmitted from the switch is 60 seconds (4 x 15).

To reduce the Time-to-Live, you could lower the `holdtime-interval` to 2, which would result in a Time-to-Live of 30 seconds.

```
switch(config)# lldp holdtime-multiplier 2
```

## Delay interval between advertisements generated by value or status changes to the LLDP MIB

The switch uses a **delay-interval** setting to delay transmitting successive advertisements resulting from these LLDP MIB changes. If a switch is subject to frequent changes to its LLDP MIB, lengthening this interval can

reduce the frequency of successive advertisements. You can change the delay-interval by using either an SNMP network management application or the CLI `setmib` command.

## Changing the delay interval between advertisements generated by value or status changes to the LLDP MIB (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
setmib lldpTxDelay.0 -i <1-8192>
```

Uses `setmib` to change the minimum time (delay-interval) any LLDP port will delay advertising successive LLDP advertisements because of a change in LLDP MIB content.

(Default: 2; Range 1–8192)

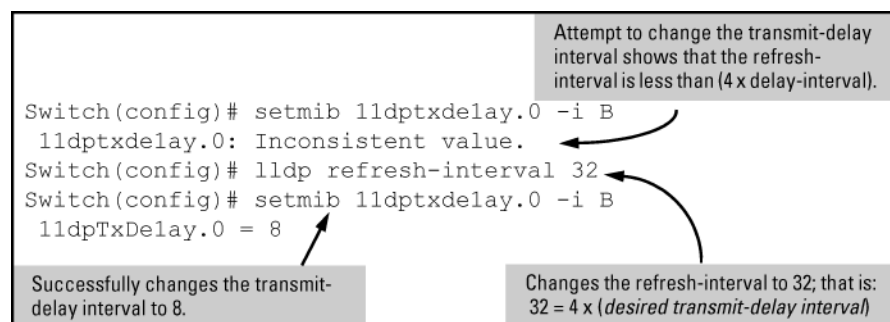


**NOTE:** The LLDP refresh-interval (transmit interval) must be greater than or equal to (4 x delay-interval). The switch does not allow increasing the delay interval to a value that conflicts with this relationship. That is, the switch displays `Inconsistent value` if (4 x delay-interval) exceeds the current transmit interval, and the command fails. Depending on the current refresh-interval setting, it may be necessary to increase the refresh-interval before using this command to increase the delay-interval.

### Example:

To change the delay-interval from 2 seconds to 8 seconds when the refresh-interval is at the default 30 seconds, you must first set the refresh-interval to a minimum of 32 seconds ( $32 = 4 \times 8$ ) as shown in the following image.

**Figure 35:** *Changing the transmit-delay interval*



## Reinitialization delay interval

In the default configuration, a port receiving a `disable` command followed immediately by a `txonly`, `rxonly`, or `tx_rx` command delays reinitializing for two seconds, during which LLDP operation remains disabled. If an active port is subjected to frequent toggling between the LLDP disabled and enabled states, LLDP advertisements are more frequently transmitted to the neighbor device. Also, the neighbor table in the adjacent device changes more frequently as it deletes, then replaces LLDP data for the affected port which, in turn, generates SNMP traps (if trap receivers and SNMP notification are configured). All of this can unnecessarily increase network traffic. Extending the reinitialization-delay interval delays the ability of the port to reinitialize and generate LLDP traffic following an LLDP disable/enable cycle.

## Changing the reinitialization delay interval (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
setmib lldpReinitDelay.0 -i <1-10>
```

Uses `setmib` to change the minimum time (reinitialization delay interval) an LLDP port will wait before reinitializing after receiving an LLDP disable command followed closely by a `txonly` or `tx_rx` command. The delay interval commences with execution of the `lldp admin-status port-list disable` command.

(Default: 2 seconds; Range 1–10 seconds)

**Example:**

The following command changes the reinitialization delay interval to five seconds:

```
switch(config)# setmib lldpreinitdelay.0 -i 5
```

## Configuring SNMP notification support

You can enable SNMP trap notification of LLDP data changes detected on advertisements received from neighbor devices, and control the interval between successive notifications of data changes on the same neighbor.

### Enabling LLDP data change notification for SNMP trap receivers (CLI)

**Syntax:**

```
no lldp enable-notification <port-list>
```

Enables or disables each port in *port-list* for sending notification to configured SNMP trap receivers if an LLDP data change is detected in an advertisement received on the port from an LLDP neighbor.

(Default: Disabled)

For information on configuring trap receivers in the switch, see [SNMP notifications](#) on page 166.

**Example:**

This command enables SNMP notification on ports 1 - 5:

```
switch(config)# lldp enable-notification 1-5
```

### Changing the minimum interval for successive data change notifications for the same neighbor

If LLDP trap notification is enabled on a port, a rapid succession of changes in LLDP information received in advertisements from one or more neighbors can generate a high number of traps. To reduce this effect, you can globally change the interval between successive notifications of neighbor data change.

**Syntax:**

```
setmib lldpnotificationinterval.0 -i <1-3600>
```

Globally changes the interval between successive traps generated by the switch. If multiple traps are generated in the specified interval, only the first trap is sent. The remaining traps are suppressed. (A network management application can periodically check the switch MIB to detect any missed change notification traps. See IEEE P802.1AB or later for more information.)

(Default: 5 seconds)

**Example:**

The following command limits change notification traps from a particular switch to one per minute.

```
switch(config)# setmib lldpnotificationinterval.0 -i 60 lldpNotificationInterval.0=60
```

### Configuring per-port transmit and receive modes (CLI)

**Syntax:**

```
lldp admin-status <port-list> {<txonly | rxonly | tx_rx | disable>}
```

With LLDP enabled on the switch in the default configuration, each port is configured to transmit and receive LLDP packets. These options enable you to control which ports participate in LLDP traffic and whether the participating ports allow LLDP traffic in only one direction or in both directions.

<code>txonly</code>	Configures the specified ports to transmit LLDP packets, but block inbound LLDP packets from neighbor devices.
<code>rxonly</code>	Configures the specified ports to receive LLDP packets from neighbors, but block outbound packets to neighbors.
<code>tx_rx</code>	Configures the specified ports to both transmit and receive LLDP packets. (This is the default setting.)
<code>disable</code>	Disables LLDP packet transmit and receive on the specified ports.

## Basic LLDP per-port advertisement content

In the default LLDP configuration, outbound advertisements from each port on the switch include both mandatory and optional data.

### Mandatory Data

An active LLDP port on the switch always includes the mandatory data in its outbound advertisements. LLDP collects the mandatory data, and, except for the Remote Management Address, you cannot use LLDP commands to configure the actual data.

- Chassis Type (TLV subelement)
- Chassis ID (TLV)
- Port Type (TLV subelement)
- Port ID (TLV)
- Remote Management Address (TLV; actual IP address is a subelement that can be a default address or a configured address)

## Configuring a remote management address for outbound LLDP advertisements (CLI)

This is an optional command you can use to include a specific IP address in the outbound LLDP advertisements for specific ports. For more information, see **Basic LLDP per-port advertisement content** on page 195.

### Syntax:

```
no lldp config <port-list> ipAddrEnable <ip-address>
```

Replaces the default IP address for the port with an IP address you specify. This can be any IP address configured in a static VLAN on the switch, even if the port does not belong to the VLAN configured with the selected IP address.

The `no` form of the command deletes the specified IP address.

If there are no IP addresses configured as management addresses, the IP address selection method returns to the default operation.

Default: The port advertises the IP address of the lowest-numbered VLAN (VID) to which it belongs. If there is no IP address configured on the VLANs to which the port belongs, and if the port is not configured to advertise an IP address from any other (static) VLAN on the switch, the port advertises an address of 127.0.0.1.)



**NOTE:** This command does not accept either IP addresses acquired through DHCP or Bootp, or IP addresses that are not configured in a static VLAN on the switch.

### Example:

If port 3 belongs to a subnetted VLAN that includes an IP address of 10.10.10.100 and you want port 3 to use this secondary address in LLDP advertisements, you need to execute the following command:

```
switch(config)# lldp config 3 ipAddrEnable 10.10.10.100
```

### Syntax:

```
no lldp config <port-list> basicTlvEnable <TLV-Type>
```

port_descr	For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string describing the port.(Default: Enabled)
system_name	For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string showing the assigned name of the system.(Default: Enabled)
system_descr	For outbound LLDP advertisements, this TLV includes an alphanumeric string describing the full name and version identification for the hardware type, software version, and networking application of the system.(Default: Enabled)
system_cap	For outbound advertisements, this TLV includes a bitmask of supported system capabilities (device functions). Also includes information on whether the capabilities are enabled.(Default: Enabled)

### Example:

If you want to exclude the system name TLV from the outbound LLDP advertisements for all ports on a switch, use this command:

```
switch(config)# no lldp config 1-24 basicTlvEnable system_name
```

If you later decide to reinstate the system name TLV on ports 1-5, use this command:

```
switch(config)# lldp config 1-5 basicTlvEnable system_name
```

## Optional Data

You can configure an individual port or group of ports to exclude one or more of the following data types from outbound LLDP advertisements.

- Port description (TLV)
- System name (TLV)
- System description (TLV)
- System capabilities (TLV)
  - System capabilities Supported (TLV subelement)
  - System capabilities Enabled (TLV subelement)
- Port speed and duplex (TLV subelement)



Optional data types, when enabled, are populated with data internal to the switch; that is, you cannot use LLDP commands to configure their actual content.

## Support for port speed and duplex advertisements

This feature is optional for LLDP operation, but is **required** for LLDP-MED operation.

Port speed and duplex advertisements are supported on the switches to inform an LLDP endpoint and the switch port of each other's port speed and duplex configuration and capabilities. Configuration mismatches between a switch port and an LLDP endpoint can result in excessive collisions and voice quality degradation. LLDP enables discovery of such mismatches by supporting SNMP access to the switch MIB for comparing the current switch port and endpoint settings. (Changing a current device configuration to eliminate a mismatch requires intervention by the system operator.)

An SNMP network management application can be used to compare the port speed and duplex data configured in the switch and advertised by the LLDP endpoint. You can also use the CLI to display this information. For more information on using the CLI to display port speed and duplex information, see [Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port](#) on page 211.

## Configuring support for port speed and duplex advertisements (CLI)

For more information, see [Support for port speed and duplex advertisements](#) on page 197.

### Syntax:

```
no lldp config <port-list> dot3TlvEnable macphy_config
```

### Parameters

#### macphy\_config

MAC Physical Config TLV

#### poepplus\_config

Power Via MDI Config TLV

#### eee\_config

EEE Config TLV

For outbound advertisements, this TLV includes the (local) switch port's current speed and duplex settings, the range of speed and duplex settings the port supports, and the method required for reconfiguring the speed and duplex settings on the device (autonegotiation during link initialization, or manual configuration).

Using SNMP to compare local and remote information can help in locating configuration mismatches.

(Default: Enabled)



**NOTE:** For LLDP operation, this TLV is optional. For LLDP-MED operation, this TLV is mandatory.

## Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP

The `port-vlan-id` option enables advertisement of the port VLAN ID TLV as part of the regularly advertised TLVs. This allows discovery of a mismatch in the configured native VLAN ID between LLDP peers. The information is visible using `show` commands and is logged to the Syslog server.

## Configuring the VLAN ID TLV

This TLV advertisement is enabled by default. To enable or disable the TLV, use this command. For more information, see [Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP](#) [Port VLAN ID TLV support on LLDP](#) on page 197.

**Syntax:**

```
no lldp config <port-list> dot1TlvEnable port-vlan-id
```

Enables the VLAN ID TLV advertisement.

The `no` form of the command disables the TLV advertisement.

Default: Enabled.

**Parameters****port-vlan-id**

Specifies the 802.1 TLV list to advertise.

**vlan-name**

Specifies that the VLAN name TLV is to be advertised.

**Enabling the VLAN ID TLV**

```
switch(config)# lldp config a1 dot1TlvEnable port-vlan-id
```

**Viewing the TLVs advertised**

The `show` commands display the configuration of the TLVs. The command `show lldp config` lists the TLVs advertised for each port, as shown in the following examples.

**Displaying the TLVs for a port**

```
switch(config)# show lldp config a1
```

```
LLDP Port Configuration Detail
```

```
Port      : A1
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
```

```
TLVS Advertised:
```

```
* port_descr
* system_name
* system_descr
* system_cap

* capabilities
* network_policy
* location_id
* poe

* macphy_config

* port_vlan_id 1
```

```
IpAddress Advertised:
```

```
:
```

<sup>1</sup>The VLAN ID TLV is being advertised.

### Local device LLDP information

```
switch(config)# show lldp config info local-device a1
```

```
LLDP Port Configuration Information Detail
```

```
Port      : A1
PortType  : local
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : A1

Port VLAN ID : 1 1
```

<sup>1</sup>The information that LLDP used in its advertisement.

### Remote device LLDP information

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device a1
```

```
LLDP Remote Device Information Detail
```

```
Local Port      : A1
ChassisType     : mac-address
ChassisId       : 00 16 35 22 ca 40
PortType        : local
PortID          : 1
SysName         : esp-dback
System Descr    : J8693A Switch, revision XX.13.03, ROM...
PortDescr       : A1

System Capabilities Supported : bridge, router
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge, router

Port VLAN ID : 200

Remote Management Address
  Type      : ipv4
  Address   : 192.168.1.1
```

## SNMP support

The LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB has the corresponding MIB variables for the Port VLAN ID TLV. The TLV advertisement can be enabled or disabled using the MIB object `lldpXdot1ConfigPortVlanTxEnable` in the `lldpXdot1ConfigPortVlanTable`.

The port VLAN ID TLV local information can be obtained from the MIB object `lldpXdot1LocPortVlanId` in the local information table `lldpXdot1LocTable`.

The port VLAN ID TLV information about all the connected peer devices can be obtained from the MIB object `lldpXdot1RemPortVlanId` in the remote information table `lldpXdot1RemTable`.

## LLDP-MED (media-endpoint-discovery)

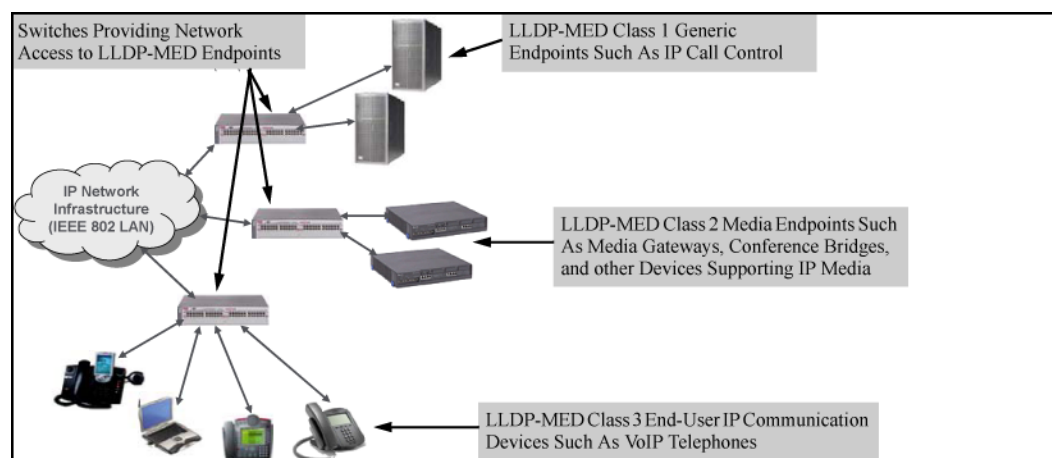
LLDP-MED (ANSI/TIA-1057/D6) extends the LLDP (IEEE 802.1AB) industry standard to support advanced features on the network edge for Voice Over IP (VoIP) endpoint devices with specialized capabilities and LLDP-MED standards-based functionality. LLDP-MED in the switches uses the standard LLDP commands described earlier in this section, with some extensions, and also introduces new commands unique to LLDP-MED operation. The `show` commands described elsewhere in this section are applicable to both LLDP and LLDP-MED operation. LLDP-MED benefits include:

- Plug-and-play provisioning for MED-capable, VoIP endpoint devices
- Simplified, vendor-independent management enabling different IP telephony systems to interoperate on one network
- Automatic deployment of convergence network policies (voice VLANs, Layer 2/CoS priority, and Layer 3/QoS priority)
- Configurable endpoint location data to support the Emergency Call Service (ECS) (such as Enhanced 911 service, 999, 112)
- Detailed VoIP endpoint data inventory readable via SNMP from the switch
- Power over Ethernet (PoE) status and troubleshooting support via SNMP
- support for IP telephony network troubleshooting of call quality issues via SNMP

This section describes how to configure and use LLDP-MED features in the switches to support VoIP network edge devices (media endpoint devices) such as:

- IP phones
- Voice/media gateways
- Media servers
- IP communications controllers
- Other VoIP devices or servers

**Figure 36:** Example: of LLDP-MED network elements



## LLDP-MED endpoint support

LLDP-MED interoperates with directly connected IP telephony (endpoint) clients having these features and services:

- Autonegotiate speed and duplex configuration with the switch
- Use the following network policy elements configured on the client port
  - Voice VLAN ID
  - 802.1p (Layer 2) QoS
  - Diffserv codepoint (DSCP) (Layer 3) QoS
- Discover and advertise device location data learned from the switch
- Support ECS (such as E911, 999, and 112)
- Advertise device information for the device data inventory collected by the switch, including:

◦ Hardware revision	◦ Software revision	◦ Manufacturer name	Asset ID
◦ Firmware revision	◦ Serial number	◦ Model name	

- Provide information on network connectivity capabilities (For example, a multi-port VoIP phone with Layer 2 switch capability)
- Support the fast-start capability



**NOTE:**

LLDP-MED is intended for use with VoIP endpoints and is not designed to support links between network infrastructure devices, such as switch-to-switch or switch-to-router links.

## LLDP-MED endpoint device classes

LLDP-MED endpoint devices are, by definition, located at the network edge and communicate using the LLDP-MED framework. Any LLDP-MED endpoint device belongs to one of the following three classes:

- Class 1 (generic endpoint devices): These devices offer the basic LLDP discovery services, network policy advertisement (VLAN ID, Layer 2/802.1p priority, and Layer 3/DSCP priority), and PoE management. This class includes such devices as IP call controllers and communication-related servers.
- Class 2 (media endpoint devices): These devices offer all Class 1 features plus media-streaming capability, and include such devices as voice/media gateways, conference bridges, and media servers.
- Class 3 (communication devices): These devices are typically IP phones or end-user devices that otherwise support IP media and offer all Class 1 and Class 2 features, plus location identification and emergency 911 capability, Layer 2 switch support, and device information management.

## LLDP-MED operational support

The switches offer two configurable TLVs supporting MED-specific capabilities:

- medTlvEnable (for per-port enabling or disabling of LLDP-MED operation)
- medPortLocation (for configuring per-port location or emergency call data)



---

**NOTE:**

LLDP-MED operation also requires the port speed and duplex TLV (dot3TlvEnable), which is enabled in the default configuration.

Topology change notifications provide one method for monitoring system activity. However, because SNMP normally employs UDP, which does not guarantee datagram delivery, topology change notification should not be relied upon as the sole method for monitoring critical endpoint device connectivity.

---

## LLDP-MED fast start control

### Syntax:

```
lldp fast-start-count <1-10>
```

An LLDP-MED device connecting to a switch port may use the data contained in the MED TLVs from the switch to configure itself. However, the `lldp refresh-interval` setting (default: 30 seconds) for transmitting advertisements can cause an unacceptable delay in MED device configuration.

To support rapid LLDP-MED device configuration, the `lldp fast-start-count` command temporarily overrides the `refresh-interval` setting for the `fast-start-count` advertisement interval. This results in the port initially advertising LLDP-MED at a faster rate for a limited time. Thus, when the switch detects a new LLDP-MED device on a port, it transmits one LLDP-MED advertisement per second out the port for the duration of the `fast-start-count` interval. In most cases, the default setting should provide an adequate `fast-start-count` interval.

(Default: 5 seconds)



---

**NOTE:**

This global command applies only to ports on which a new LLDP-MED device is detected. It does not override the `refresh-interval` setting on ports where non-MED devices are detected.

---

## Advertising device capability, network policy, PoE status and location data

The `medTlvEnable` option on the switch is enabled in the default configuration and supports the following LLDP-MED TLVs:

- LLDP-MED capabilities: This TLV enables the switch to determine:
  - Whether a connected endpoint device supports LLDP-MED
  - Which specific LLDP-MED TLVs the endpoint supports
  - The device class (1, 2, or 3) for the connected endpoint

This TLV also enables an LLDP-MED endpoint to discover what LLDP-MED TLVs the switch port currently supports.

- Network policy operating on the port to which the endpoint is connected (VLAN, Layer 2 QoS, Layer 3 QoS)
- PoE (MED Power-over-Ethernet)
- Physical location data (see [Configuring location data for LLDP-MED devices](#) on page 206)



**NOTE:** LLDP-MED operation requires the `macphy_config` TLV subelement (enabled by default) that is optional for IEEE 802.1AB LLDP operation. For more information, see the `dot3TlvEnable macphy_config` command ([Configuring support for port speed and duplex advertisements \(CLI\)](#) on page 197).

## Network policy advertisements

Network policy advertisements are intended for real-time voice and video applications, and include these TLV subelements:

- Layer 2 (802.1p) QoS
- Layer 3 DSCP (diffserv code point) QoS
- Voice VLAN ID (VID)

## VLAN operating rules

These rules affect advertisements of VLANs in network policy TLVs:

- The VLAN ID TLV subelement applies only to a VLAN configured for voice operation (`vlan <vid> voice` ).
- If there are multiple voice VLANs configured on a port, LLDP-MED advertises the voice VLAN having the lowest VID.
- The voice VLAN port membership configured on the switch can be tagged or untagged. However, if the LLDP-MED endpoint expects a tagged membership when the switch port is configured for untagged, or the reverse, a configuration mismatch results. (Typically, the endpoint expects the switch port to have a tagged voice VLAN membership.)
- If a given port does not belong to a voice VLAN, the switch does not advertise the VLAN ID TLV through this port.

## Policy elements

These policy elements may be statically configured on the switch or dynamically imposed during an authenticated session on the switch using a RADIUS server and 802.1X or MAC authentication. (Web authentication does not apply to VoIP telephones and other telecommunications devices that are not capable of accessing the switch through a Web browser.) The QoS and voice VLAN policy elements can be statically configured with the following CLI commands:

```
vlan <vid> voice
vlan <vid> {<tagged | untagged> <port-list>}
int <port-list> qos priority <0-7>
vlan <vid> qos dscp <codepoint>
```



**NOTE:** A codepoint must have an 802.1p priority before you can configure it for use in prioritizing packets by VLAN-ID. If a codepoint you want to use shows `No Override` in the `Priority` column of the DSCP policy table (display with `show qos-dscp map`, then use `qos-dscp map <codepoint> priority <0-7>` to configure a priority before proceeding. For more information on this topic, see the "Quality of Service (QoS): Managing Bandwidth More Effectively" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

## Enabling or Disabling medTlvEnable

In the default LLDP-MED configuration, the TLVs controlled by `medTlvEnable` are enabled. For more information, see [Advertising device capability, network policy, PoE status and location data](#) on page 202.

**Syntax:**

```
no lldp config <port-list> medTlvEnable <medTlv>
```

Enables or disables advertisement of the following TLVs on the specified ports:

- Device capability TLV
- Configured network policy TLV
- Configured location data TLV (see **Configuring location data for LLDP-MED devices** on page 206.)
- Current PoE status TLV

(Default: All of the above TLVs are enabled.)

Helps to locate configuration mismatches by allowing use of an SNMP application to compare the LLDP-MED configuration on a port with the LLDP-MED TLVs advertised by a neighbor connected to that port.

capabilities	<p>This TLV enables the switch to determine:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Which LLDP-MED TLVs a connected endpoint can discover</li><li>• The device class (1, 2, or 3) for the connected endpoint</li></ul> <p>This TLV also enables an LLDP-MED endpoint to discover what LLDP-MED TLVs the switch port currently supports.(Default: enabled)</p> <p>This TLV cannot be disabled unless the <code>network_policy</code>, <code>poe</code>, and <code>location_id</code> TLVs are already disabled.</p>
network_policy	<p>This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its configured network policies (voice VLAN, Layer 2 QoS, Layer 3 QoS), and allows LLDP-MED endpoint devices to autoconfigure the voice network policy advertised by the switch. This also enables the use of SNMP applications to troubleshoot statically configured endpoint network policy mismatches.(Default: Enabled)</p> <p>Network policy is advertised only for ports that are configured as members of the voice VLAN. If the port belongs to more than one voice VLAN, the voice VLAN with the lowest-numbered VID is selected as the VLAN for voice traffic. Also, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the <code>capability</code> TLV is already enabled.</p> <p>For more information, see <b>Network policy advertisements</b> on page 203.</p>

*Table Continued*



location_id	<p>This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its configured location data (if any). For more information on configuring location data, see <a href="#">Configuring location data for LLDP-MED devices</a> on page 206.(Default: Enabled)</p> <p>When disabled, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the capability TLV is already enabled.</p>
poe	<p>This TLV enables the switch port to advertise its current PoE state and to read the PoE requirements advertised by the LLDP-MED endpoint device connected to the port.(Default: Enabled)</p> <p>When disabled, this TLV cannot be enabled unless the <code>capability</code> TLV is already enabled.</p> <p>For more on this topic, see <a href="#">PoE advertisements</a> on page 205.</p>

## PoE advertisements

These advertisements inform an LLDP-MED endpoint of the power (PoE) configuration on switch ports. Similar advertisements from an LLDP-MED endpoint inform the switch of the endpoint's power needs and provide information that can be used to identify power priority mismatches.

PoE TLVs include the following power data:

- **Power type:** indicates whether the device is a power-sourcing entity (PSE) or a PD. Ports on the J8702A PoE zl module are PSE devices. A MED-capable VoIP telephone is a PD.
- **Power source:** indicates the source of power in use by the device. Power sources for PDs include PSE, local (internal), and PSE/local. The switches advertise Unknown.
- **Power priority:** indicates the power priority configured on the switch (PSE) port or the power priority configured on the MED-capable endpoint.
- **Power value:** indicates the total power in watts that a switch port (PSE) can deliver at a particular time, or the total power in watts that the MED endpoint (PD) requires to operate.

## Viewing PoE advertisements

To display the current power data for an LLDP-MED device connected to a port, use the following command:

```
show lldp info remote-device <port-list>
```

For more information on this command, see page A-60.

To display the current PoE configuration on the switch, use the following commands:

```
show power brief <port-list>
```

```
show power <port-list>
```

## Location data for LLDP-MED devices

You can configure a switch port to advertise location data for the switch itself, the physical wall-jack location of the endpoint (recommended), or the location of a DHCP server supporting the switch, endpoint, or both. You also have the option of configuring these different address types:

- **Civic address:** physical address data such as city, street number, and building information
- **ELIN (Emergency Location Identification Number):** an emergency number typically assigned to MLTS (Multiline Telephone System) Operators in North America
- **Coordinate-based location:** attitude, longitude, and altitude information (Requires configuration via an SNMP application.)

## Configuring location data for LLDP-MED devices

### Syntax:

```
no lldp config <port-list> medPortLocation <Address-Type>
```

Configures location of emergency call data the switch advertises per port in the `location_id` TLV. This TLV is for use by LLDP-MED endpoints employing location-based applications.



**NOTE:** The switch allows one `medPortLocation` entry per port (without regard to type). Configuring a new `medPortLocation` entry of any type on a port replaces any previously configured entry on that port.

```
civic-addr <COUNTRY-STR> <WHAT> <CA-TYPE> <CA-VALUE> ... [< CA-TYPE > < CA-VALUE >] ... [< CA-TYPE > < CA-VALUE >]
```

Enables configuration of a physical address on a switch port and allows up to 75 characters of address information.

COUNTRY-STR	A two-character country code, as defined by ISO 3166. Some examples include <code>FR</code> (France), <code>DE</code> (Germany), and <code>IN</code> (India). This field is required in a <code>civic-addr</code> command. (For a complete list of country codes, visit <a href="http://www.iso.org">http://www.iso.org</a> .)
WHAT	<p>A single-digit number specifying the type of device to which the location data applies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>0:</b> Location of DHCP server</li> <li><b>1:</b> Location of switch</li> <li><b>2:</b> Location of LLDP-MED endpoint (recommended application)</li> </ul> <p>This field is required in a <code>civic-addr</code> command.</p>

*Table Continued*

<p>Type/Value Pairs (CA-TYPE and CA-VALUE)</p>	<p>A series of data pairs, each composed of a location data "type" specifier and the corresponding location data for that type. That is, the first value in a pair is expected to be the civic address "type" number ( CA-TYPE), and the second value in a pair is expected to be the corresponding civic address data ( CA-VALUE).</p> <p>For example, if the CA-TYPE for "city name" is "3," the type/value pair to define the city of Paris is "3 Paris."</p> <p>Multiple type/value pairs can be entered in any order, although Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that multiple pairs be entered in ascending order of the CA-TYPE.</p> <p>When an emergency call is placed from a properly configured class 3 endpoint device to an appropriate PSAP, the country code, device type, and type/value pairs configured on the switch port are included in the transmission. The "type" specifiers are used by the PSAP to identify and organize the location data components in an understandable format for response personnel to interpret.</p> <p>A <code>civic-addr</code> command requires a minimum of one type/value pair, but typically includes multiple type/value pairs as needed to configure a complete set of data describing a given location.</p> <p>CA-TYPE: This is the first entry in a type/value pair and is a number defining the type of data contained in the second entry in the type/value pair ( CA-VALUE). Some examples of CA-TYPE specifiers include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3=city</li> <li>• 6=street (name)</li> <li>• 25=building name</li> </ul> <p>(Range: 0 - 255)For a sample listing of CA-TYPE specifiers, see <a href="#">Some location codes used in CA-TYPE fields</a>.</p> <p>CA-VALUE: This is the second entry in a type/value pair and is an alphanumeric string containing the location information corresponding to the immediately preceding CA-TYPE entry.</p> <p>Strings are delimited by either blank spaces, single quotes (' ... '), or double quotes ("... ").</p> <p>Each string should represent a specific data type in a set of unique type/value pairs comprising the description of a location, and each string must be preceded by a CA-TYPE number identifying the type of data in the string.</p> <p>A switch port allows one instance of any given CA-TYPE. For example, if a type/value pair of 6 Atlantic (to specify "Atlantic" as a street name) is configured on port A5 and later another type/value pair of 6 Pacific is configured on the same port, Pacific replaces Atlantic in the civic address location configured for port A5.</p>
<p><code>elin-addr</code> <code>&lt;emergency-number&gt;</code></p>	<p>This feature is intended for use in ECS applications to support class 3 LLDP-MED VoIP telephones connected to a switch in an MLTS infrastructure.</p>

An ELIN is a valid NANP format telephone number assigned to MLTS operators in North America by the appropriate authority. The ELIN is used to route emergency (E911) calls to a PSAP.

(Range: 1-15 numeric characters)

## Configuring coordinate-based locations

Latitude, longitude, and altitude data can be configured per switch port using an SNMP management application. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application. A further source of information on this topic is RFC 3825-Dynamic host configuration protocol option for coordinate-based location configuration information.



**NOTE:** Endpoint use of data from a medPortLocation TLV sent by the switch is device-dependent. See the documentation provided with the endpoint device.

**Table 22:** *Some location codes used in CA-TYPE fields*

Location element	Code <sup>1</sup>	Location element	Code
national subdivision	1	street number	19
regional subdivision	2	additional location data	22
city or township	3	unit or apartment	26
city subdivision	4	floor	27
street	6	room number	28
street suffix	18		

<sup>1</sup> The code assignments in this table are examples from a work-in-progress (the internet draft titled "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCPv4 and DHCPv6) Option for Civic Addresses Configuration Information draft-ietf-geopriv-dhcp-civil-06" dated May 30, 2005.) For the actual codes to use, contact the PSAP or other authority responsible for specifying the civic addressing data standard for your network.

### Example:

Suppose a system operator wants to configure the following information as the civic address for a telephone connected to her company's network through port A2 of a switch at the following location:

CA-type	CA-type	CA-VALUE
national subdivision	1	CA
city	3	Widgitville
street	6	Main

*Table Continued*

street number	19	1433
unit	26	Suite 4-N
floor	27	4
room number	28	N4-3

The following example shows the commands for configuring and displaying the above data.

### A civic address configuration

```
switch(config)# lldp config 2 medportlocation civic-addr US 2 1 CA 3
Widgitville 6 Main 19 1433 26 Suite_4-N 27 4 28 N4-3
```

```
switch(config)# show lldp config 2
LLDP Port Configuration Detail
Port : A2
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
Country Name          : US
What                  : 2
Ca-Type               : 1
Ca-Length             : 2
Ca-Value              : CA
Ca-Type               : 3
Ca-Length             : 11
Ca-Value              : Widgitville
Ca-Type               : 6
Ca-Length             : 4
Ca-Value              : Main
Ca-Type               : 19
Ca-Length             : 4
Ca-Value              : 1433
Ca-Type               : 26
Ca-Length             : 9
Ca-Value              : Suite_4-N
Ca-Type               : 27
Ca-Length             : 1
Ca-Value              : 4
Ca-Type               : 28
Ca-Length             : 4
Ca-Value              : N4-3
```

## Viewing switch information available for outbound advertisements

### Syntax:

```
show lldp info local-device [port-list]
```

Without the `[port-list]` option, displays the global switch information and the per-port information currently available for populating outbound LLDP advertisements.

With the `[port-list]` option, displays only the following port-specific information that is currently available for outbound LLDP advertisements on the specified ports:

- PortType
- PortId
- PortDesc



**NOTE:** This command displays the information available on the switch. Use the `lldp config <port-list>` command to change the selection of information that is included in actual outbound advertisements. In the default LLDP configuration, all information displayed by this command is transmitted in outbound advertisements.

In the default configuration, the switch information currently available for outbound LLDP advertisements appears similar to the display in the following example.

### Displaying the global and per-port information available for outbound advertisements

```
switch(config)# show lldp info local-device
```

```
LLDP Local Device Information
```

```
Chassis Type : mac-address
Chassis Id   : 00 23 47 4b 68 DD
System Name  : Switch1
System Description : J9091A Switch, revision XX.15.06...
System Capabilities Supported:bridge
System Capabilities Enabled:bridge
```

```
Management Address 1
```

```
Type:ipv4
Address:
```

```
LLDP Port Information
```

Port	PortType	PortId	PortDesc
1	local	1	1
2	local	2	2
3	local	3	3
4	local	4	4
5	local	5	5

<sup>1</sup>

The Management Address field displays only the LLDP-configurable IP addresses on the switch. (Only manually-configured IP addresses are LLDP-configurable.) If the switch has only an IP address from a DHCP or Bootp server, then the Management Address field is empty (because there are no LLDP-configurable IP addresses available).

### The default per-port information content for ports 1 and 2

```
switch(config)# show lldp info local 1-2
```

```
LLDP Local Port Information Detail
```

```
Port      : 1
PortType  : local
PortId    : 1
PortDesc  : 1
```

```
-----
Port       : 2
PortType   : local
PortId     : 2
PortDesc   : 2
```

## Displaying the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port

You can compare port speed and duplex information for a switch port and a connected LLDP-MED endpoint for configuration mismatches by using an SNMP application. You can also use the switch CLI to display this information, if necessary. The `show interfaces brief <port-list>` and `show lldp info remote-device [port-list]` commands provide methods for displaying speed and duplex information for switch ports. For information on displaying the currently configured port speed and duplex on an LLDP-MED endpoint, see [Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port](#) on page 211.

## Viewing the current port speed and duplex configuration on a switch port

### Syntax:

```
show interfaces brief <port-list>
```

Includes port speed and duplex configuration in the `Mode` column of the resulting display.

## Viewing advertisements currently in the neighbors MIB

### Syntax:

```
show lldp info remote-device [port-list]
```

Without the `[port-list]` option, provides a global list of the individual devices it has detected by reading LLDP advertisements. Discovered devices are listed by the inbound port on which they were discovered.

**Multiple devices** listed for a single port indicates that such devices are connected to the switch through a hub.

**Discovering the same device on multiple ports** indicates that the remote device may be connected to the switch in one of the following ways:

- Through different VLANs using separate links. (This applies to switches that use the same MAC address for all configured VLANs.)
- Through different links in the same trunk.
- Through different links using the same VLAN. (In this case, spanning-tree should be invoked to prevent a network topology loop. Note that LLDP packets travel on links that spanning-tree blocks for other traffic types.)

With the `[port-list]` option, provides a listing of the LLDP data that the switch has detected in advertisements received on the specified ports.

For descriptions of the various types of information displayed by these commands, see [Data available for basic LLDP advertisements](#).

### A global listing of discovered devices

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote
```

LLDP Remote Devices Information

LocalPort	ChassisId	PortId	PortDescr	SysName
1	00 11 85 35 3b 80	6	6	Switch
2	00 11 85 cf 66 60	8	8	Switch

## An LLDP-MED listing of an advertisement received from an LLDP-MED (VoIP telephone) source

```
switch(config)# show lldp info remote-device 1
```

### LLDP Remote Device Information Detail

```
Local Port      : A2
ChassisType     : network-address
ChassisId       : 0f ff 7a 5c
PortType        : mac-address
PortId          : 08 00 0f 14 de f2
SysName         : Switch
System Descr    : Switch, revision xx.15.06.0000x
PortDescr       : LAN Port
```

```
System Capabilities Supported : bridge, telephone
System Capabilities Enabled   : bridge, telephone
```

### Remote Management Address

### MED Information Detail <sup>1</sup>

```
EndpointClass      :Class3
Media Policy Vlan id :10
Media Policy Priority :7
Media Policy Dscp   :44
Media Policy Tagged  :False
Poe Device Type     :PD
Power Requested     :47
Power Source        :Unknown
Power Priority       :High
```

<sup>1</sup>Indicates the policy configured on the telephone. A configuration mismatch occurs if the supporting port is configured differently.

## Displaying LLDP statistics

LLDP statistics are available on both a global and a per-port levels. Rebooting the switch resets the LLDP statistics counters to zero. Disabling the transmit and/or receive capability on a port "freezes" the related port counters at their current values.

## Viewing LLDP statistics

For more information, see [Displaying LLDP statistics](#) on page 212.

### Syntax:

```
show lldp stats [port-list]
```

The **global LLDP** statistics command displays an overview of neighbor detection activity on the switch, plus data on the number of frames sent, received, and discarded per-port.

The **per-port LLDP** statistics command enhances the list of per-port statistics provided by the global statistics command with some additional per-port LLDP statistics.

### Global LLDP Counters:



Neighbor Entries List Last Updated	The elapsed time since a neighbor was last added or deleted.
New Neighbor Entries Count	The total of new LLDP neighbors detected since the last switch reboot. Disconnecting, and then reconnecting a neighbor increments this counter.
Neighbor Entries Deleted Count	The number of neighbor deletions from the MIB for AgeOut Count and forced drops for all ports. For example, if the admin status for port on a neighbor device changes from <code>tx_rx</code> or <code>txonly</code> to <code>disabled</code> or <code>rxonly</code> , the neighbor device sends a "shutdown" packet out the port and ceases transmitting LLDP frames out that port. The device receiving the shutdown packet deletes all information about the neighbor received on the applicable inbound port and increments the counter.
Neighbor Entries Dropped Count	The number of valid LLDP neighbors the switch detected, but could not add. This can occur, For example, when a new neighbor is detected when the switch is already supporting the maximum number of neighbors. See <b><u>Neighbor maximum</u></b> on page 214.
Neighbor Entries AgeOut Count	The number of LLDP neighbors dropped on all ports because of Time-to-Live expiring.

#### Per-Port LLDP Counters:

NumFramesRecvd	The total number of valid, inbound LLDP advertisements received from any neighbors on <i>port-list</i> . Where multiple neighbors are connected to a port through a hub, this value is the total number of LLDP advertisements received from all sources.
NumFramesSent	The total number of LLDP advertisements sent from <i>port-list</i> .
NumFramesDiscarded	The total number of inbound LLDP advertisements discarded by <i>port-list</i> . This can occur, For example, when a new neighbor is detected on the port, but the switch is already supporting the maximum number of neighbors. See <b><u>Neighbor maximum</u></b> on page 214. This can also be an indication of advertisement formatting problems in the neighbor device.
Frames Invalid	The total number of invalid LLDP advertisements received on the port. An invalid advertisement can be caused by header formatting problems in the neighbor device.
TLVs Unrecognized	The total number of LLDP TLVs received on a port with a type value in the reserved range. This can be caused by a basic management TLV from a later LLDP version than the one currently running on the switch.
TLVs Discarded	The total number of LLDP TLVs discarded for any reason. In this case, the advertisement carrying the TLV may be accepted, but the individual TLV is not usable.
Neighbor Ageouts	The number of LLDP neighbors dropped on the port because of Time-to-Live expiring.

## Examples:

### A global LLDP statistics display

```
switch(config)# show lldp stats
```

#### LLDP Device Statistics

```
Neighbor Entries List Last Updated : 2 hours
New Neighbor Entries Count : 20
Neighbor Entries Deleted Count : 20
Neighbor Entries Dropped Count : 0
Neighbor Entries AgeOut Count : 20
```

#### LLDP Port Statistics

Port	NumFramesRecvd	NumFramesSent	NumFramesDiscarded
A1	97317	97843	0
A2	21	12	0
A3	0	0	0
A4	446	252	0
A5	0	0	0
A6	0	0	0
A7	0	0	0
A8	0	0	0

### A per-port LLDP statistics display

```
switch(config)# show lldp stats 1
```

#### LLDP Port Statistics Detail

```
PortName : 1
Frames Discarded : 0
Frames Invalid : 0
Frames Received : 7309
Frames Sent : 7231
TLVs Unrecognized : 0
TLVs Discarded : 0
Neighbor Ageouts : 0
```

## LLDP Operating Notes

### Neighbor maximum

The neighbors table in the switch supports as many neighbors as there are ports on the switch. The switch can support multiple neighbors connected through a hub on a given port, but if the switch neighbor maximum is reached, advertisements from additional neighbors on the same or other ports will not be stored in the neighbors table unless some existing neighbors time-out or are removed.

### LLDP packet forwarding

An 802.1D-compliant switch does not forward LLDP packets, regardless of whether LLDP is globally enabled or disabled on the switch.

## One IP address advertisement per port

LLDP advertises only one IP address per port, even if multiple IP addresses are configured by `lldp config port-list ipAddrEnable` on a given port.

## 802.1Q VLAN Information

LLDP packets do not include 802.1Q header information and are always handled as untagged packets.

## Effect of 802.1X Operation

If 802.1X port security is enabled on a port, and a connected device is not authorized, LLDP packets are not transmitted or received on that port. Any neighbor data stored in the neighbor MIB for that port prior to the unauthorized device connection remains in the MIB until it ages out. If an unauthorized device later becomes authorized, LLDP transmit and receive operation resumes.

## Neighbor data can remain in the neighbor database after the neighbor is disconnected

After disconnecting a neighbor LLDP device from the switch, the neighbor can continue to appear in the switch's neighbor database for an extended period if the neighbor's `holdtime-multiplier` is high; especially if the `refresh-interval` is large. See [Changing the time-to-live for transmitted advertisements \(CLI\)](#) on page 192.

## Mandatory TLVs

All mandatory TLVs required for LLDP operation are also mandatory for LLDP-MED operation.

## LLDP and CDP data management

This section describes points to note regarding LLDP and CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) data received by the switch from other devices. LLDP operation includes both transmitting LLDP packets to neighbor devices and reading LLDP packets received from neighbor devices. CDP operation is limited to reading incoming CDP packets from neighbor devices. (switches do not generate CDP packets.)

Incoming CDP and LLDP packets tagged for VLAN 1 are processed even if VLAN 1 does not contain any ports. VLAN 1 must be present, but it is typically present as the default VLAN for the switch.



**NOTE:** The switch may pick up CDP and LLDP multicast packets from VLAN 1 even when CDP- and /or LLDP-enabled ports are not members of VLAN 1.

## LLDP and CDP neighbor data

With both LLDP and (read-only) CDP enabled on a switch port, the port can read both LLDP and CDP advertisements, and stores the data from both types of advertisements in its neighbor database. (The switch **stores** only CDP data that has a corresponding field in the LLDP neighbor database.) The neighbor database itself can be read by either LLDP or CDP methods or by using the `show lldp` commands. Take note of the following rules and conditions:

- If the switch receives both LLDP and CDP advertisements on the same port from the same neighbor, the switch stores this information as two separate entries if the advertisements have different chassis ID and port ID information.
- If the chassis and port ID information are the same, the switch stores this information as a single entry. That is, LLDP data overwrites the corresponding CDP data in the neighbor database if the chassis and port ID information in the LLDP and CDP advertisements received from the same device is the same.
- Data read from a CDP packet does not support some LLDP fields, such as "System Descr," "SystemCapSupported," and "ChassisType." For such fields, LLDP assigns relevant default values. Also:

- The LLDP "System Descr" field maps to CDP's "Version" and "Platform" fields.
- The switch assigns "ChassisType" and "PortType" fields as "local" for both the LLDP and the CDP advertisements it receives.
- Both LLDP and CDP support the "System Capability" TLV. However, LLDP differentiates between what a device is capable of supporting and what it is actually supporting, and separates the two types of information into subelements of the System Capability TLV. CDP has only a single field for this data. Thus, when CDP System Capability data is mapped to LLDP, the same value appears in both LLDP System Capability fields.
- System Name and Port Descr are not communicated by CDP, and thus are not included in the switch's Neighbors database.



**NOTE:** Because switches do not generate CDP packets, they are not represented in the CDP data collected by any neighbor devices running CDP.

A switch with CDP disabled forwards the CDP packets it receives from other devices, but does not store the CDP information from these packets in its own MIB.

LLDP data transmission/collection and CDP data collection are both enabled in the switch's default configuration. In this state, an SNMP network management application designed to discover devices running either CDP or LLDP can retrieve neighbor information from the switch regardless of whether LLDP or CDP is used to collect the device-specific information.

Protocol state	Packet generation	Inbound data management	Inbound packet forwarding
CDP Enabled	N/A	Store inbound CDP data.	No forwarding of inbound CDP packets.
CDP Disabled	N/A	No storage of CDP data from neighbor devices.	Floods inbound CDP packets from connected devices to outbound ports.
LLDP Enabled <sup>1</sup>	Generates and transmits LLDP packets out all ports on the switch.	Store inbound LLDP data.	No forwarding of inbound LLDP packets.
LLDP Disabled	No packet generation.	No storage of LLDP data from neighbor devices.	No forwarding of inbound LLDP packets.

## CDP operation and commands

By default the switches have CDP enabled on each port. This is a read-only capability, meaning that the switch can receive and store information about adjacent CDP devices but does not generate CDP packets.

When a CDP-enabled switch receives a CDP packet from another CDP device, it enters that device's data in the CDP Neighbors table, along with the port number where the data was received—and does not forward the packet. The switch also periodically purges the table of any entries that have expired. (The hold time for any data entry in the switch's CDP Neighbors table is configured in the device transmitting the CDP packet and cannot be controlled in the switch receiving the packet.) A switch reviews the list of CDP neighbor entries every three seconds and purges any expired entries.

**NOTE:**

For details on how to use an SNMP utility to retrieve information from the switch's CDP Neighbors table maintained in the switch's MIB, see the documentation provided with the particular SNMP utility.

## Viewing the current CDP configuration of the switch

CDP is shown as enabled/disabled both globally on the switch and on a per-port basis.

**Syntax:**

```
show cdp
```

Lists the global and per-port CDP configuration of the switch.

The following example shows the default CDP configuration.

**Default CDP configuration**

```
switch(config)# show cdp
```

```
Global CDP information
```

```
Enable CDP [Yes] : Yes (Receive Only)
```

```
Port CDP
```

```
----
1      enabled
2      enabled
3      enabled
.
.
.
```

## Viewing the current CDP neighbors table of the switch

Devices are listed by the port on which they were detected.

**Syntax:**

```
show cdp neighbors
```

Lists the neighboring CDP devices the switch detects, with a subset of the information collected from the device's CDP packet.

```
[[e] port-numb [detail]]
```

Lists the CDP device connected to the specified port. (Allows only one port at a time.) Using `detail` provides a longer list of details on the CDP device the switch detects on the specified port.

```
[detail [[e] port-numb]]
```

Provides a list of the details for all of the CDP devices the switch detects. Using `port-num` produces a list of details for the selected port.

The following example displays the CDP devices that the switch has detected by receiving their CDP packets.

## CDP neighbors table listing

```
switch(config)# show cdp neighbors
```

CDP neighbors information

Port	Device ID	Platform	Capability
1	Accounting (0030c1-7fcc40)	J4812A Switch. . .	S
2	Research1-1 (0060b0-889e43)	J4121A Switch. . .	S
4	Support (0060b0_761a45)	J4121A Switch. . .	S
7	Marketing (0030c5_33dc59)	J4313A Switch. . .	S
12	Mgmt NIC (099a05-09df9b)	NIC Model X666	H
12	Mgmt NIC (099a05-09df11)	NIC Model X666	H

## Enabling and Disabling CDP Operation

Enabling CDP operation (the default) on the switch causes the switch to add entries to its CDP Neighbors table for any CDP packets it receives from other neighboring CDP devices.

Disabling CDP operation clears the switch's CDP Neighbors table and causes the switch to drop inbound CDP packets from other devices without entering the data in the CDP Neighbors table.

### Syntax:

```
no cdp run
```

Enables or disables CDP read-only operation on the switch.

(Default: Enabled)

### Example:

To disable CDP read-only on the switch:

```
switch(config)# no cdp run
```

When CDP is disabled:

- `show cdp neighbors`  
displays an empty CDP Neighbors table
- `show cdp`  
displays Global CDP information  
Enable CDP [Yes]: No

## Enabling or disabling CDP operation on individual ports

In the factory-default configuration, the switch has all ports enabled to receive CDP packets. Disabling CDP on a port causes it to drop inbound CDP packets without recording their data in the CDP Neighbors table.

### Syntax:

```
no cdp enable {< [e] port-list >}
```

### Example:

To disable CDP on port A1:

```
switch(config)# no cdp enable a1
```

## Filtering CDP information

In some environments it is desirable to be able to configure a switch to handle CDP packets by filtering out the MAC address learns from untagged VLAN traffic from IP phones. This means that normal protocol processing occurs for the packets, but the addresses associated with these packets is not learned or reported by the software address management components. This enhancement also filters out the MAC address learns from LLDP and 802.1x EAPOL packets on untagged VLANs.

The feature is configured per-port.

### Configuring the switch to filter untagged traffic

Enter this command to configure the switch not to learn CDP, LLDP, or EAPOL traffic for a set of interfaces.

#### Syntax:

```
no ignore-untagged-mac <port-list>
```

Prevents MAC addresses from being learned on the specified ports when the VLAN is untagged and the destination MAC address is one of the following:

- 01000C-CCCCC (CDP)
- 0180c2- 00000e (LLDP)
- 0180c2-000003 (EAPOL)

### Configuring the switch to ignore packet MAC address learns for an untagged VLAN

```
switch(config) ignore-untagged-mac 1-2
```

### Displaying the configuration

Enter the `show running-config` command to display information about the configuration.

#### Configuration showing interfaces to ignore packet MAC address learns

```
switch(config) show running-config

Running configuration:

; J9627 Configuration Editor; Created on release XX.15.XX
; Ver #03:03.1f.ef:f0

hostname "Switch"
interface 1
    ignore-untagged-mac
    exit
interface 2
    ignore-untagged-mac
    exit
.
.
.
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-24
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
```

.  
. .

## Filtering PVID mismatch log messages

This enhancement filters out PVID mismatch log messages on a per-port basis. PVID mismatches are logged when there is a difference in the PVID advertised by a neighboring switch and the PVID of the switch port which receives the LLDP advertisement. Logging is an LLDP feature that allows detection of possible vlan leakage between adjacent switches. However, if these events are logged too frequently, they can overwhelm the log buffer and push relevant logging data out of log memory, making it difficult to troubleshoot another issue.

Logging is disabled and enabled with the support of CLI commands.

This enhancement also includes displaying the Mac-Address in the PVID mismatch log message when the port ID is Mac-Address instead of displaying garbage characters in the peer device port ID field.

Use the following command to disable the logging of the PVID mismatch log messages:

### Syntax:

```
logging filter [filter-name][sub filter id] <regularexpression> deny
```

### Regular-expression

The regular expression should match the message which is to be filtered.

### Syntax:

```
logging filter [filter-name] enable
```

## Overview

A command has been written to suppress the IPv4 / IPv6 management address transmission in outgoing LLDP packets.

A local LAN device transmits organization-specific information in the form of type, length, and value (TLV). The organization-associated values are stored in the LLDP organizationally defined local device LLDP MIB extensions. Management address TLV in IPv4 and IPv6 environments is optional from the TLV basic management set.

### TLV basic management set

- Port description TLV — Describes the port in an alpha-numeric format. The value equals the `ifDescr` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 2863.
- System name TLV — Assigns the system name in an alpha-numeric format. The value equals the `sysName` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 3418.
- System description TLV — Describes the network entity in an alpha-numeric format. The system description TLV includes the system name, versions of hardware, operating system, and networking software supported in the device. The value equals the `sysDescr` object, if the LAN device supports RFC 3418.
- System capabilities TLV — Indicates primary functions of the device and if they are enabled in the device.
- Management address TLV — Indicates the addresses of the local LLDP agent. Other remote managers can use this address to obtain information related to the local device.

The command `lldp config <all> ipAddrEnable <IP_ADDR>` is used to advertise specific IP address through the port.



The command `no lldp config <PORT_NO> basicTlvEnable management_addr` suppresses the IP address to be advertised.

## Commands

### no lldp config basicTlvEnable management\_addr

#### Syntax

In the configure context:

```
no lldp config <PORT_NUM> basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

#### Description

The feature suppresses the IPv4 or IPv6 address as well as suppresses the MAC address if the `no ip address` is configured. By default this management address TLV is enabled in switch. No other TLV (except management address TLV) suppression will occur when this command is used.

#### Parameters

##### Management\_addr

Management TLV

#### Example

```
no lldp config all basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

### lldp config

#### Syntax

```
lldp config <port-number>
```

#### Description

Configure the lldp for the desired port by number.

#### Parameter

##### basicTlvEnable

Enables the basic advertised TLV for each port by number.

#### Parameters

##### <management\_addr>

Use the option `<management_addr>` to specify specific devices to enable TLV advertisement.

#### Usage

```
lldp config <port_num> basicTlvEnable <management_addr>
```

## Show commands

Use the command `show running-config` to view the lldp configuration.

#### Example

```
switch# show running-config
```

```
Running configuration:
...
no lldp config 1 basicTlvEnable management_addr
```

### Example

```
switch# show lldp config 1

LLDP Port Configuration Detail

Port : 1
AdminStatus [Tx_Rx] : Tx_Rx
NotificationEnabled [False] : False
Med Topology Trap Enabled [False] : False
TLVS Advertised:

* management_addr

IpAddress Advertised:
```

## Overview

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that enables a server to automate assignment of IP addresses to hosts. A DHCP server can be configured to provide other network information like IP addresses of TFTP servers, DNS server, boot file name and vendor specific options. Commonly there are two types of address assignments, dynamic and manual. The lease of dynamic addresses is renewed periodically; manual leases are permanently assigned to hosts. With this feature, you can configure multiple pools of IP addresses for IP address assignment and tracking.

## IP pools

A DHCP server is configured with IP pools. The server is then instructed to use IP addresses falling into the specified range of IP while offering leases. Multiple IP pools are configured to not have duplicate or overlapping IP subnets. You can also configure a DHCP server with multiple IP ranges within an IP subnet; this confines the allocatable IP addresses within the configured IP pool.

An IP pool will be claimed valid only if it is either:

- Dynamic pool – Has a network address, subnet mask and IP range(s)
- Static pool – Should have a static IP-to-MAC binding.

The DHCP server will discard the invalid and incomplete pools and will only operate on the valid IP pools. The DHCP server will require at least one valid pool to start.

## DHCP options

On a DHCP server, an IP pool is configured with various options. These options signify additional information about the network. Options are supported with explicit commands such as `boot-file`. Option codes that correspond to explicit commands can not be configured with a generic option command; the generic option command requires an option code and TLV.



---

**NOTE:**

RFC 2132 defines various network information that a client may request when trying to get the lease.

---

## BootP support

The DHCP server also functions as BootP server. A manual binding configured in a static IP Pool may either service a BootP client request or a DHCP client request.

## Authoritative server and support for DHCP inform packets

The DHCP server receives `DHCPinform` packet when the client is already configured with static IPv4 address, so that the client can get other configuration parameters dynamically, such as default gateway address, DNS server address, etc.



---

**NOTE:** RFC 2131 states that if a client has obtained a network address through some other means (e.g., manual configuration), it may use a `DHCPinform` request message to obtain other local configuration parameters. Servers receiving a `DHCPinform` message construct a `DHCPACK` message with any local configuration parameters appropriate for the client without: allocating a new address, checking for an existing binding, filling in `yiaddr` or including lease time parameters.

---

## Authoritative pools

To process the `DHCPINFORM` packets received from a client within the given IP pool, a DHCP server has to be configured as `authoritative` for that IP pool. The server is the sole authority for this IP pool so when a client requests an IP address lease where the server is authoritative, and the server has no record of that IP address, the server will respond with `DHCPNAK` message which indicates that the client should no longer use that IP address. Any `DHCPINFORM` packet received for a non-authoritative pool will be ignored by the DHCP server.

The `authoritative` command has no effect when configured on a static pool or an incomplete pool without a network statement. In such cases, the server intentionally not send an error message.

A CLI toggle is provided under the **pool** context that will allow the `authoritative` configuration.



### NOTE:

The `authoritative` command requires a network statement to be configured on a pool.

## Authoritative dummy pools

A dummy pool, without the range statement, can be configured and made authoritative. A dummy pool allows static-bind entries which do not have matching dynamic pools with network statements to be configured. By creating a dummy pool on a DHCP server, the support for `DHCPinform` packets will not be actively serving the client on this pool. No active leases or resource consumption will be sent to the DHCP server when this option is used.

Dummy pools help the DHCP server learn the network topology.

### Example

```
dhcp-server pool dummy192
network 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.255
option 1...
option 2...
:
option n...
authoritative
exit
```

## Change in server behavior

Making the server authoritative for an IP pool changes how the server processes `DHCP REQUEST` packets.

The following table exhibits the behavior on the receiving `DHCP REQUEST` and `DHCP inform` packets from DHCP clients residing on either authoritative and non-authoritative pools.

**Table 23:** *Authoritative and non-authoritative pools*

Authoritative Pool				Non-authoritative pool		
When a DHCP client sending..	For Own IP	For IP belonging to different client	Unknown IP falling outside the range	For Own IP	For IP belonging to different client	Unknown IP falling outside the range
DHCP INFORM	send ACK	send ACK	send ACK	DROP	DROP	DROP
DHCP REQUEST	send ACK	send NACK	send NACK	send ACK	DROP	DROP

## DHCPv4 configuration commands

### DHCPv4 server

#### dhcp-server

##### Syntax

```
no dhcp-server [enable | disable]
```

##### Description

Use this command to nable/disable the DHCPv4 server in a switch. Defaults to disabled.

##### Parameters and options

##### no

Removes all DHCPv4 server configurations.

##### enable

Enables the DHCPv4 server on the device. The `no` form of this command

##### disable

Disables the DHCPv4 server on the device.

### DHCP address pool name

#### dhcp-server pool

##### Syntax

```
no dhcp-server pool <POOL-NAME>
```

##### Description

Configure the DHCPv4 server IP address pool with either a static IP or a network IP range.

##### Parameters

**pool**

DHCPv4 server IP address pool.

**ASCII-STR**

Enter an ASCII string.

**authoritative**

Configure the DHCP server authoritative for a pool.

**bootfile-name**

Specify the boot file name which is used as a boot image.

**default-router**

List of IP addresses of the default routers.

**dns-server**

List of IP addresses of the DNS servers.

**domain-name**

Configure the DNS (Domain Name System) domain name for translation of hostnames to IP addresses.

**lease**

Lease period of an IP address.

**netbios-name-server**

List of IP addresses of the NetBIOS (WINS) name servers.

**netbios-node-type**

NetBIOS node type for a Microsoft DHCPv4 client.

**network**

Subnet IP and mask of the DHCPv4 server address pool.

**option**

Raw DHCPv4 server options.

**range**

Range of IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

**static-bind**

Static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

**tftp-server**

Configure a TFTP server for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

## Authoritative

**Syntax**

```
no authoritative
```

**Description**

The DHCP server is the sole authority for the network configured under this pool. When the DHCP server is configured as authoritative, the server will respond with DHCP ACK or NACK as appropriate for all the received DHCP REQUEST and DHCP INFORM packets belonging to the subnet.

Non-authoritative DHCP INFORM packets received from the clients on a non-authoritative pool will be ignored.

## Parameters

### authoritative

Configure the DHCP server authoritative for a pool.

## DHCP client boot file

### bootfile-name

#### Syntax

```
no bootfile-name <FILENAME>
```

#### Description

Specify the boot file name to be used as the boot image.

## DHCP client default router

### default-router

#### Syntax

```
no default-router <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

#### Description

Configure the DHCP pool context to the default router for a DHCP client. List all of the IP addresses of the default routers.

Two IP addresses must be separated by a comma.

Maximum of eight default routers can be configured.

## DNS IP servers

### dns-server

#### Syntax

```
no dns-server <IP-ADDR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

#### Description

Configure the DHCP pool context to the DNS IP servers that are available to a DHCP client. List of IP addresses of the DNS servers.

Two IP addresses must be separated by comma.

Maximum of eight DNS servers can be configured.

## Configure a domain name

### domain-name

#### Syntax

```
no domain-name <NAME>
```

#### Description

Configure the DNS domain name for translation of hostnames to IP addresses.

## Configure lease time

### lease

#### Syntax

```
no lease [DD:HH:MM | infinite]
```

#### Description

Configure the lease time for an IP address in the DHCP pool. Lease time is infinite for static pools.

The default lease period is one day.

#### Parameters and options

##### DD:HH:MM

Enter lease period.

##### Lease

Lease period of an IP address.

## NetBIOS WINS servers

#### Syntax

```
no netbios-name-server <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 IP-ADDR8]
```

#### Description

Configure the DHCP pool for the NetBIOS WINS servers that are available to a Microsoft DHCP client. List all IP addresses of the NetBIOS(WINS) name servers. The Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) is a name resolution service that Microsoft DHCP clients use to correlate host names to IP addresses within a general grouping of networks.

Two IP addresses must be separated by a comma.

Maximum of 8 NetBIOS (WINS) name servers can be configured.

## NetBIOS node type

### net bios-ode-type

#### Syntax

```
no netbios-node-type [ broadcast | hybrid | mixed | peer-to-peer ]
```

#### Description

Configure the DHCP pool mode to the NetBIOS node type for a Microsoft DHCP. The NetBIOS node type for Microsoft DHCP clients can be one of four settings: broadcast, peer-to-peer, mixed, or hybrid.

#### Parameters and options

##### broadcast

Broadcast node.

##### hybrid

Hybrid node.



### **mixed**

Mixed node.

### **peer-to-peer**

Peer to peer node.

## **Subnet and mask**

### **network**

#### **Syntax**

```
no network <ip-addr/mask-length>
```

#### **Description**

Configure the DHCPv4 server pool subnet and mask for the DHCP server address pool.

Range is configured to enable pool.

#### **Parameters and options**

##### **ip-addr/mask-length**

Interface IP address/mask.

## **DHCP server options**

### **Configure DHCP server options**

#### **Syntax**

```
no option <CODE> {ascii <ascii-string>|hex <hex-string>|ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
```

##### **ascii**

Specify ASCII string as option code value.

##### **hex**

Specify hexadecimal string as option code value.

##### **ip**

Specify one or more IP addresses as option code value.

##### **ip-addr-str**

Specify IP address.

##### **ascii-str**

Enter an ASCII string.

##### **hex-str**

Specify Hexadecimal string.

Configure the raw DHCP server options.



**NOTE:** Following DHCP options are not supported:

1,3,6,12,15,44,46,50,52,54,55,57,58,59,61,66,67,82.

You can use the following available CLIs for respective DHCP option codes:

DHCP Option code	CLI Syntax
1	no network <ip-addr/mask-length>
3	no default-router <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
6	no dns-server <IP-ADDR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
15	no domain-name <name>
44	no netbios-name-server <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]
43	no option 43 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
46	no netbios-node-type <broadcast   hybrid   mixed   peer-to-peer>
60	no option 60 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
66	no tftp-server server-name < ASCII-STR>
67	no bootfile-name<filename>
138	no option 138 {ascii <ascii-string> hex <hex-string> ip <IP-ADDR-STR>[IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]}
150	no tftp-server server-ip <ip-address> or no option 150 <IP-ADDR-STR> [IP-ADDR2 ... IP-ADDR8]



**NOTE:** DHCP server raw Option 43 is supported and it is used for AirWave ZTP.

DHCP server raw Option 60 is supported from 16.06.

DHCP server raw Option 138 is supported and it is used for IPsec tunnel configuration in DHCP client.

## IP address range

### range

#### Syntax

```
no range <IP-ADDR>[<IP-ADDR>]
```

#### Description

Configure the DHCP pool to the range of IP address for the DHCP address pool.

#### Parameters and options

##### range

Range of IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

### **ip-addr**

Low IP address.

High IP address.

## **Static bindings**

### **static-bind**

#### **Syntax**

```
static-bind ip <IP-ADDR/MASK-LENGTH> mac <MAC-ADDR>
```

#### **Description**

Configure static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool. Manual bindings are IP addresses that have been manually mapped to the MAC addresses of hosts that are found in the DHCP database. Manual bindings are just special address pools. There is no limit on the number of manual bindings but you can only configure one manual binding per host pool.

#### **Parameters and options**

##### **ip**

Specify client IP address.

##### **static-bind**

Static binding information for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

##### **ip-addr / mask-length**

Interface IP address or mask.

##### **mac**

Specify client MAC address.

##### **mac-addr**

Enter a MAC address.

## **TFTP server domain name**

### **tftp-server**

#### **Syntax**

```
no tftp-server [server-name <server-name> | server-ip < ip-address >]
```

#### **Description**

Configure the TFTP server domain name for the DHCP address pool.

#### **Parameters and options**

##### **tftp-server**

Configure a TFTP server for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

##### **server-name**

TFTP server name for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

## Configure the TFTP server address

### tftp-server

#### Syntax

```
tftp-server server-ip <IP-ADDRESS>
```

#### Description

Configure the TFTP server address for the DHCP address pool.

#### Parameters and options

##### server-ip

TFTP server IP addresses for the DHCPv4 server address pool.

##### ip-addr

Specify TFTP server IP address.

## Number of ping packets

### dhcp-server ping

#### Syntax

```
no dhcp-server ping [packets <0-10>|timeout <0-10>]
```

#### Description

Specify, in the global configuration context, the number of ping packets the DHCP server will send to the pool address before assigning the address. The default is two packets.

#### Parameters and options

##### ping

Specify DHCPv4 ping parameters.

##### packets <0-10>

Specify number of ping packets in the range of 0 to 10. 0 disables ping.

##### timeout <1-10>

Ping timeout in the range of 1–10 seconds. Indicates the amount of time the DHCPv4 server must wait before timing out a ping packet. Defaults to one second.

## Save DHCP server automatic bindings

### dhcp-server database

#### Syntax

```
no dhcp-server database [file ASCII-STR] [delay<15-86400>][timeout <0-86400>]
```

#### Description

Specifies DHCPv4 database agent and the interval between database updates and database transfers.

#### Parameters and options

**delay**

Seconds to delay writing to the lease database file.

**file**

URL Format: "tftp://<ip-address>/<filename>".

**database**

Specifies DHCPv4 database agent and the interval between database updates and database transfers.

**timeout**

Seconds to wait for the transfer before failing.

**ascii-str**

Database URL.

**<15-86400>**

Delay in seconds.

**<0-86400>**

Timeout in seconds.

## DHCP server and SNMP notifications

### snmp-server enable traps

**Syntax**

```
no snmp-server enable traps dhcp-server
```

**Description**

Configure a DHCP server to send SNMP notifications to the SNMP entity. This command enables or disables event traps sent by the switch.

**Parameters and options****dhcp-server**

Traps for DHCP-Server.

## Conflict logging on a DHCP server

### dhcp-server conflict-logging

**Syntax**

```
no dhcp-server conflict-logging
```

**Description**

Enable conflict logging on a DHCP server. Default is disabled.

**Parameters and options****conflict-logging**

Enable DHCPv4 server address conflict logging.

## Enable the DHCP server on a VLAN

### dhcp-server

#### Syntax

```
dhcp-server
```

#### Description

Enable DHCPv4 server on a VLAN. DHCPv4 client or DHCPv4 relay cannot co-exist with DHCPv4 server on a VLAN.

#### Parameters and options

##### dhcp-server

Enable DHCPv4 server on a VLAN.

## Clear commands

### clear dhcp-server conflicts

#### Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server conflicts <IP-ADDR>
```

#### Description

Reset DHCPv4 server conflicts database. If IP address is specified, reset only that conflict.

#### Parameters

##### dhcp-server

Clears the DHCPv4 server information.

##### ip-addr

Specify the IP address whose conflict is to be cleared.

## Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters

### clear dhcp-server statistics

#### Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server statistics
```

#### Description

Reset all DHCP server and BOOTP counters

#### Parameters

##### statistics

Reset DHCPv4 server and BOOTP counters.

## Delete an automatic address binding

## clear dhcp-server statistics

### Syntax

```
clear dhcp-server statistics
```

### Description

Delete an automatic address binding from the DHCP server database.

### Parameters

#### binding

Reset DHCPv4 server automatic address bindings.

#### ip-addr

Specify IP address of the binding is to be cleared.

## Show commands

## show dhcp-server

### Syntax

```
show dhcp-server [binding|conflicts|database|statistics|pool <POOL-NAME>]
```

### Description

Show DHCPv4 server global configuration information for the device.

### Parameters and options

#### binding

Display the DHCPv4 server address bindings on the device..

#### conflicts

Display address conflicts found by a DHCPv4 server when addresses are offered by a client.

#### database

Display DHCPv4 server database agent information.

#### statistics

Display DHCPv4 server statistics.

#### pool <POOL-NAME>

Display the DHCPv4 server IP pool information.

### Configuring DHCPv6 snooping and DIPLDv6 through SNMP



**NOTE:** DHCPv6 snooping and Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown (DIPLDv6) are currently configurable through SNMP using MIBs. For more information, see the *MIB and Trap Matrix*.

## dhcpv6-snooping

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-snooping [vlan <VLAN-ID-RANGE>]
```

### Description

Enable or disable the global administrative status of DHCPv6 snooping. You must enable DHCP snooping globally (`dhcpv6-snooping`) to enable snooping on any VLAN.

### Parameters and options

#### no

Disabling global administrative status (`no dhcpv6-snooping`) disables snooping on all VLANs.

#### vlan <VLAN-ID-RANGE>]

Disables snooping on a VLAN or a range of VLANs. Requires enabling DHCP global snooping (`dhcpv6-snooping`).

## dhcpv6 snooping trust

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-snooping trust ethernet <PORT-LIST>
```

### Description

Configure trusted interfaces. The system forwards server packets received on trusted interfaces only.

### Parameters and options

#### no

Marks the specified interfaces as untrusted. Port state defaults to untrusted.

## dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-snooping authorized-server <IPv6-ADDRESS>
```

### Description

Configure authorized DHCP servers. For DHCPv6 snooping to allow a server to client packet to be forwarded, it must be received on a trusted port from an authorized server. If no authorized servers are configured, all server addresses are valid.



## ddhcpv6-snooping database file

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-snooping database file [ASCII-STR|delay <15-86400>| timeout<0-86400>]
```

### Description

Configure a lease entry file and its options for storing DHCPv6 snooping binding database.

### Parameters and options

#### ASCII-STR

Copies the DHCPv6 snooping lease file to a TFTP server. The parameter ASCII-STR is a URL and is in the format `tftp://<IP-ADDR>/<FILENAME>`. The TFTP address can be up to 255 characters. IP-ADDR can be an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in square brackets [].

#### timeout seconds

Configures the number of seconds to wait for the DSNOOPv6 lease file transfer to complete. An error message is displayed if the file transfer is not completed within the timeout value. A value of zero indicates that the attempt to transfer the DHCPv6 lease file retries indefinitely. The default timeout value is 300 seconds.

#### database

Configure the parameters to copy the DHCPv6 Snooping lease file to a TFTP server.

#### delay

Configure the number of seconds to wait before copying the DSNOOPv6 lease file to a TFTP server.

#### file

Copy the DHCPv6 Snooping lease file to a TFTP server.

#### timeout

Configure the number of seconds to wait for the DSNOOPv6 lease file transfer to complete.

## dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-snooping max-bindings <PORT-LIST 1-8192>
```

### Description

Configure the maximum number of binding addresses allowed per binding anchor. A binding anchor is a unique attribute that can be associated with a client address.

### Parameters and options

#### max-bindings

Configuring maximum number of binding addresses allowed per port.

- If the max-bindings value is configured **before** enabling `dhcpv6-snooping` the limit is immediately applied and the bindings are not allowed to exceed the max-bindings value.
- The max-bindings value is **set after** enabling `dhcpv6-snooping`.

- The current bindings are greater than the max-binding value, the configuration will be applied as and when clients release their IPv6 addresses.
- Current bindings are lesser than that of the value entered, the configuration will be immediately applied.

#### <PORT-LIST 1-8192>

Specify the ports on which max-bindings need to be applied in the range of 1–8192.



**IMPORTANT:** DT trunks can use jumbo VLAN as usual, but user needs to ensure that jumbo is configured on both the DT pairs, otherwise packet drops/fragmentations can be seen.

## dhcpv6-relay option 79

### Syntax

```
no dhcpv6-relay option 79
```

### Description

Enabling option 79 will force the DHCPv6 Relay agent to forward the client Link-layer address. Defaults to disabled.

## snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping

### Syntax

```
no snmp-server enable traps dhcpv6-snooping [out-of-resources|errant-reply]
```

### Description

Configure the traps for DHCPv6 snooping.

### Parameters and options

#### out-of-resources

This trap is sent when the number of bindings exceed the maximum limit of 8192 bindings.

#### errant-reply

This trap is sent when a DHCPv6 reply packet is received on an untrusted port or from an un-authorized server.

## clear dhcpv6-snooping stats

### Syntax

```
clear dhcpv6-snooping stats
```

### Description

Clears dhcpv6 snooping statistics.

## debug security dhcpv6-snooping

### Syntax

```
debug security dhcpv6-snooping [config|event|packet]
```

### Description

Enable debug for DHCPv6 snooping.

### Parameters and options

### **config**

Debug DHCPv6 snooping configuration.

### **event**

Debug a DHCPv6 snooping event.

### **packet**

Debug DHCPv6 snooping by packet.

## **ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet**

### **Syntax**

```
no ipv6 source-lockdown ethernet <PORT-LIST>
```

### **Description**

Used to configure DIPv6LD lockdown globally and on specific ports which can be configured on per-port basis using the PORT-LIST option.

### **Parameters and options**

#### **[ethernet] PORT-LIST**

Specify the ports being configured for Ipv6 source-lockdown.

### **source-lockdown**

Enable IPv6 source lockdown for a specific port.

## **ipv6 source-binding**

### **Syntax**

```
no ipv6 source-binding VLAN-ID IPV6-ADDR MAC-ADDR PORT-NUM IPV6-ADDR
```

### **Description**

Add a DHCPv6 static binding entry into the binding table. Static binding entries will have infinite lifetime.

### **Parameters and options**

#### **VLAN-ID**

The VLAN ID of the static binding entry.

#### **Ipv6-ADDRESS**

The Ipv6 address of the static binding entry.

#### **MAC-ADDRESS**

The MAC address of the static binding entry.

#### **[ethernet] PORT-NUM**

Port number of the static binding entry.

#### **IPV6-ADDR**

The Ipv6 link-local address of the static binding entry.

## **snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown**

### **Syntax**

```
no snmp-server enable traps dyn-ipv6-lockdown [out-of-resources | violations]
```

### Description

The Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown trap is sent when resources are unavailable for configuring. This trap is sent when a source lockdown violation takes place.

### Parameters and options

#### out-of-resources

Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown out of resources.

#### violations

Dynamic IPv6 lockdown violations.

## debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown

### Syntax

```
debug security dynamic-ipv6-lockdown
```

### Description

Enable debug for DIPLDv6

## Show commands for DHCPv6–snooping

### show dhcpv6-snooping

#### Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping
```

#### Description

Show dhcpv6 snooping configuration.

### show dhcpv6 snooping bindings

#### Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping bindings
```

#### Description

Show dhcpv6 snooping binding entries. This would show both dynamic and static binding entries.

### show dhcpv6 snooping statistics

#### Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-snooping stats
```

#### Description

Show dhcpv6-snooping statistics.

### show ipv6 source-lockdown

#### Syntax

```
show ipv6 source-lockdown [bindings | status]
```

#### Description

Shows IPv6 source bindings that are configured using the command `IPv6 source-bindings`.

## Parameters and options

### bindings

Show source bindings for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown ports.

### status

Show source bindings for Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown status.

## Show source bindings Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown status

```
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Bindings
```

Port Address	IPv6 Address	Vlan	MAC	Not in HW
A1	3000:abbb:1234:3456:1234:1234:1234:1234	1	123456-789101	Yes
F23	300:ab::2	4092	abcdef-123455	No

## show ipv6 source-lockdown status

### Syntax

```
show ipv6 source-lockdown status
```

### Description

Used to show IPV6 source-lockdown status per port.

## Parameters and options

### source-lockdown

Show dynamic IPv6 Lockdown.

## Show dynamic IPv6 Lockdown configuration

```
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown information
```

```
Global State: Enabled
```

```
Port Operational State
```

```
-----
```

```
1 Active
```

```
2 Active
```

```
IPv6 Source Lockdown is disabled on Ports 3-24.
```

## show snmp-server traps

### Syntax

```
show snmp-server traps <COMMUNITY-STR>
```

### Description

Shows traps controlled. Shows all information on SNMP communities, trap receivers and SNMP response or trap source-ip policy configured on the switch.

## Parameters

## traps

Show all configured traps.

### <COMMUNITY-STR>

Displays information for the specified community only.

## Show snmp-server traps

```
switch(config)# sh snmp-server traps
```

Trap Receivers

Link-Change Traps Enabled on Ports [All] : All

Traps Category		Current Status
SNMP Authentication		: Extended
Password change		: Enabled
Login failures		: Enabled
Port-Security		: Enabled
Authorization Server Contact	: Enabled	
DHCP-Snooping		: Enabled
DHCPv6-Snooping Out of Resource	: Enabled	
DHCPv6-Snooping Errant Replies	: Enabled	
Dynamic ARP Protection	: Enabled	
Dynamic IP Lockdown		: Enabled
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Out of Resource	: Enabled	
Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown Violations	: Enabled	
Startup Config change		: Disabled
Running Config Change		: Disabled
MAC address table changes	: Disabled	
MAC Address Count		: Disabled

Address	Community	Events	Type	Retry	Timeout
---------	-----------	--------	------	-------	---------

Excluded MIBs

```
switch(config)#
```

Alignment change - right shifted

## show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters

### Syntax

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature
```

### Description

#### Parameters and options

#### dhcp-snooping

Display DHCP snooping peer consistency details.

#### IGMP

Display IGMP peer consistency details.

#### loop-protect

Display Loop protect peer consistency details.

#### MLD

Display MLD peer consistency details.

## pim-dm

Display PIM-DM peer consistency details.

## pim-sm

Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

### Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature pim-sm
```

```
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Local : 20,30
```

```
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Peer : 20,30
```

## show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters

### Syntax

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global <PIM-SM>
```

### Description

Display global peer consistency details. If the platforms do not match an error message similar to `inconsistent criteria` is returned.

### Parameters and options

#### global

Display global peer consistency details.

#### <PIM-SM>

Display PIM-SM peer consistency details.

### Show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global

```
switch# show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global
```

```
Local Peer
```

```
-----
```

```
Peer config unavailable.
```

```
Image Version KB.15.18.0000x
```

```
IP Routing Disabled Disabled
```

```
Peer-keepalive interval 1000 0
```

```
PIM-DM Support Disabled Disabled
```

```
PIM-SM Support Disabled Disabled
```

```
IGMP enabled VLANs on Local :
```

```
IGMP enabled VLANs on Peer :
```

```
PIM-DM Enabled VLANs on Local : <List of Vlan>
```

```
PIM-DM Enabled VLANs on Peer : <List of Vlan>
```

```
PIM-SM enabled VLANs on Local : <List of Vlan>
```

```
PIM-SM enabled VLANs on Peer : <List of Vlan>
```

```
DHCP-snooping Enabled on Local :
```

```
DHCP-Snooping Enabled on Peer : Yes
```

```
DHCP-Snooping Enabled VLANs on Local : 1
```

```
DHCP-Snooping Enabled VLANs on Peer : 1
```

```
DHCP-Snooping Max-Binding Configured on Local : Yes
```

```
Ports Max-Bindings
```

-----  
Trk2 6

DHCP-Snooping Max-Binding Configured on Peer : No

---

## Feature pim-sm

```
show distributed-trunking consistency-parameters global feature pim-sm
```

```
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Local : 20,30
```

```
PIM-SM Enabled VLANs on Peer : 20,30
```

## show dhcpv6 relay

### Syntax

```
show dhcpv6-relay
```

### Description

Displays the DHCPv6 relay configuration. Cannot be configured from the WebUI or Menu.

---

### Sample output

```
show dhcpv6-relay
```

```
DHCPV6 Relay Agent : Enabled
```

```
Option 79 : Disabled
```



Aruba offers on-premise and cloud-based management solutions for switches, access points, and controllers.

AirWave is an award-winning on-premise Network Management Solution (NMS) that manages both Aruba and third-party network devices. AirWave is ideal for Campus networks and for organizations which prefer to have complete control over the hardware and software and have their NMS within premises (for example: either in the head office or data center or one of the large campuses).

Aruba Central is a popular cloud-based management solution for Branch and Distributed Enterprises which prefer simplicity, programmability, and integration with third-party cloud-based solutions for automation. Central offers cloud portal subscriptions through which one can manage the entire network of Aruba devices, without having to set up, upgrade, scale, or manage an NMS.

In this chapter, the focus is primarily on the Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) and connection to either AirWave or Central using ZTP for check-in, configuration download, and management.

### What is ZTP?

ZTP enables the auto-configuration of factory-default switches without requiring any manual setup process. It helps the administrators to deploy their fleet of switches at multiple branches without requiring a technical expert onsite. It is of use for distributed enterprises (for example: hotels, hospitals, retail stores, educational institutions, and other enterprises) where an administrator is not available at every site.

Aruba offers ZTP solution which reduces the overall cost of ownership. Aruba ships infrastructure devices such as switches, access points, and controllers directly to the site of usage. With ZTP, even a nontechnical user (for example: store manager in a retail chain or a class teacher in a school) can deploy devices at site. When the devices are connected to AirWave or Central, ZTP automatically sets up the required firmware and configurations, and services without the need for technical expertise on site.

## Zero Touch Provisioning

ZTP enables the auto-configuration of factory-default switches without requiring any manual setup process. It helps the administrators to deploy their fleet of switches at multiple branches without requiring a technical expert onsite. It is of use for distributed enterprises (for example: hotels, hospitals, retail stores, educational institutions, and other enterprises) where an administrator is not available at every site.

Aruba offers ZTP solution which reduces the overall cost of ownership. Aruba ships infrastructure devices such as switches, access points, and controllers directly to the site of usage. With ZTP, even a nontechnical user (for example: store manager in a retail chain or a class teacher in a school) can deploy devices at site. When the devices are connected to AirWave or Central, ZTP automatically sets up the required firmware and configurations, and services without the need for technical expertise on site.

## ZTP with AirWave

Aruba supports ZTP using:

- DHCP servers for on-premise management (see **DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP**).
- Activate for cloud-based management. Activate is a cloud-based inventory management and provisioning service (see **Activate based ZTP with AirWave**).

You can choose any of the ZTP methods based on your requirement. For example: If all the campuses and branches which an Enterprise manages are reachable within a private network, it is recommended to use DHCP

based ZTP. If an Enterprise network spans multiple campuses and branches using WAN to communicate, use Activate based ZTP.

## DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave

IPv6 based ZTP is supported from 16.06 switch version. Switches can be connected to AirWave through IPv4 or IPv6 addresses. To enable IPv6 ZTP provisioning, the `ipv6 enable` and `ipv6 address dhcp full` will be enabled by default from 16.06 switch version. These commands also get enabled when the switch upgrades from any older images to 16.06 with factory default configuration. From 16.06 release, the switch can act as DHCP server for IPv4 ZTP. The switch supports DHCP option 60 and 43 which is required for ZTP. AirWave 8.2.6.1 supports IPv6 ZTP over data port and AirWave 8.2.8 will support both IPv4 and IPv6 ZTP over OOBM port.

## Configuring DHCP-based ZTP with AirWave

ZTP auto-configures your switches as follows:

### Procedure

1. The switch boots up with the factory default configuration.
2. The switch sends out a DHCP discovery from data port/OOBM.

#### IPv4:

- The preferred configuration method uses DHCP option 43 value as a string to parse AirWave configuration. Switch expects a DHCP option 60 with value `ArubaInstantAP` along with DHCP option 43 to parse AirWave details.
- The alternative configuration method supports both encapsulated values from option 43 and direct value from option 43. Encapsulated vendor-specific sub options, with suboption code 146 is for AirWave details.

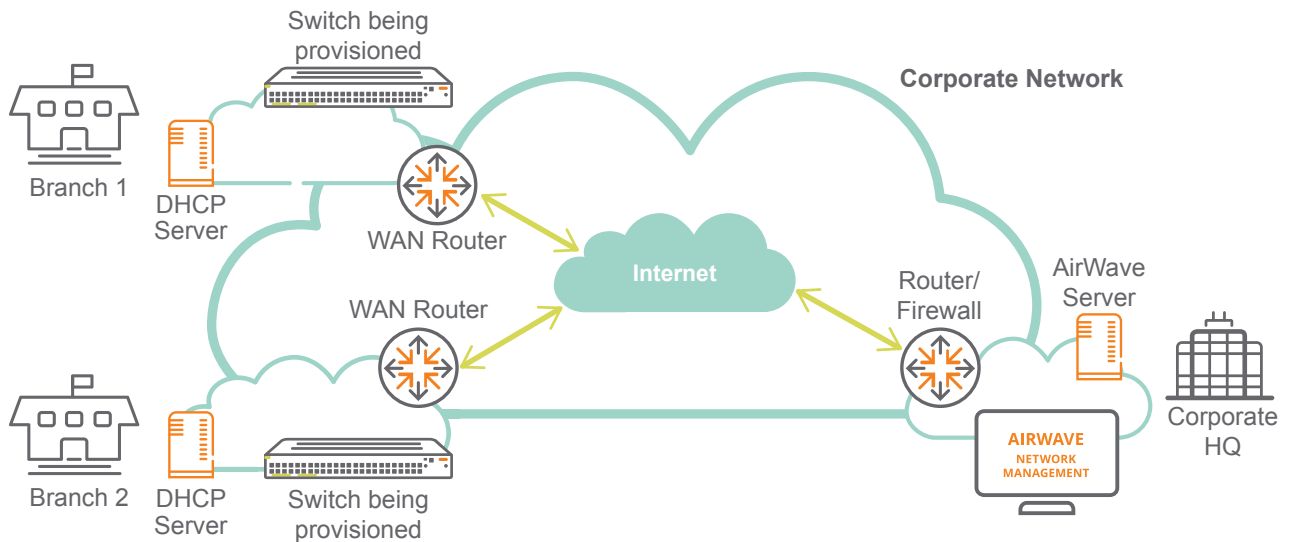


**NOTE:** IPv4 DHCP sub option 146 is not supported to configure AMP information through OOBM.

#### IPv6:

- IPv6 uses DHCP option 17 with sub option 100 and vendor class Enterprise ID as 47196.
  - DHCPv6 based ZTP on OOBM interface, `ipv6 enable` and `ipv6 address dhcp full` commands are enabled by default on OOBM interface.
3. After the AirWave details are verified and configured, the switch initiates the check-in into the AirWave server using the HTTPS communication. The AirWave configuration must be in the following format:  

```
<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP >,<shared secret>
```
  4. From 16.08, if AirWave is reachable through both OOBM and Data VLAN, switch tries to register only with AirWave using OOBM.
  5. After a successful registration, AirWave can monitor, configure, and troubleshoot the switches. Refer to *Aruba Networks and AirWave Switch Configuration Guide*.
  6. Check-in failure retry is done every 60 seconds for 10 retries.
  7. If DHCP does not provide AirWave details, the switch connects to Activate (Activate ZTP starts) for AirWave or Aruba Central details. If the DHCP options are not configured for AirWave, the switch is left in its default state for manual configuration.



In the preceding illustration, the workflow is as follows:

1. The switches being provisioned in the branches are booted obtaining the IP address from the DHCP server.
2. The DHCP servers provide information about the AirWave server in the Corporate Head Quarters.
3. The switches connect to the AirWave server through the Corporate Network (MPLS VPN or equivalent).
4. The AirWave server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the AirWave folder, switch model, and branch location.
5. An optional IPsec tunnel can be established between the branches and the Corporate HQ to secure the management traffic. For more information, refer the **Activate-based ZTP with AirWave**.



**NOTE:** If IPsec tunnel is required for AirWave, the switch requires Aruba Mobility Controller IP address, which is provided through ZTP with DHCP Option 138 (CAPWAP).

## DHCP server configuration for DHCP based ZTP

You can configure the DHCP server for AirWave using Windows DHCP server, Linux DHCP server, and ArubaOS DHCP server.

### Preferred Methods

The following methods are preferred to configure DHCP server for AirWave:

### Configure AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4

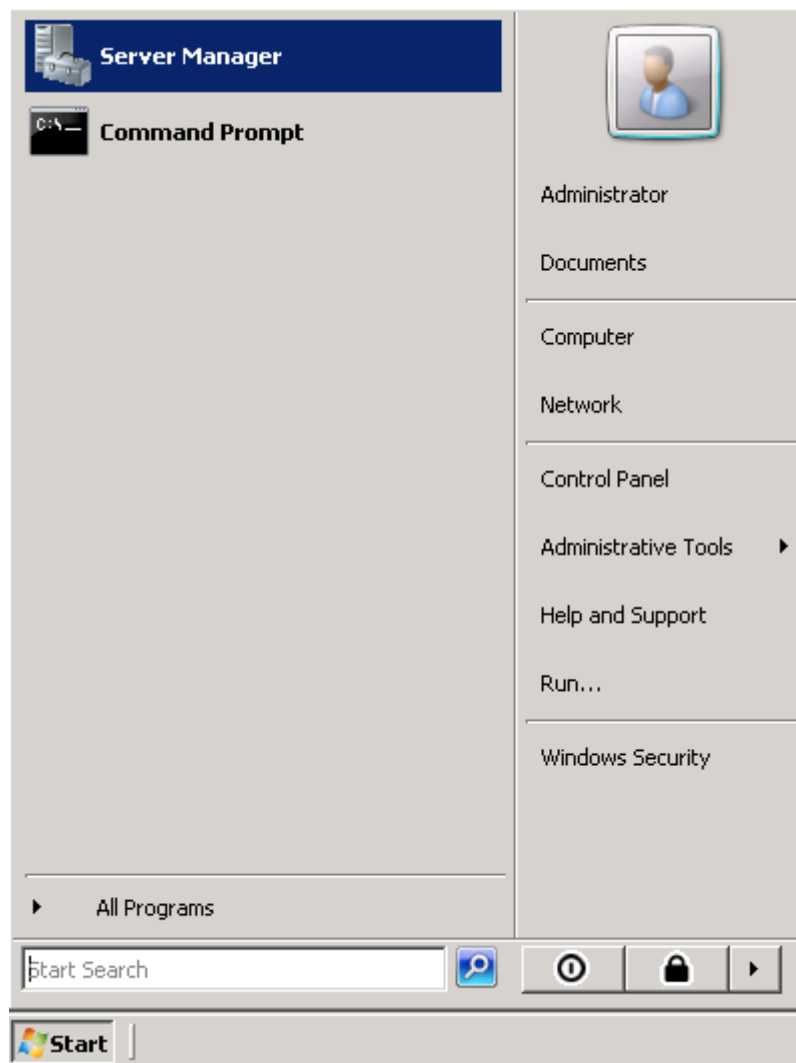


**NOTE:** AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on Windows based DHCP server is not supported.

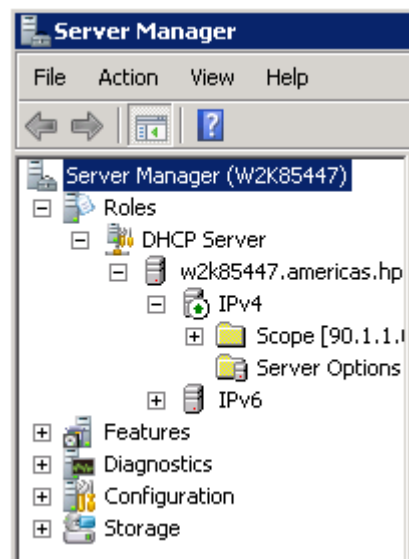
To configure the AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4, do the following steps:

#### Procedure

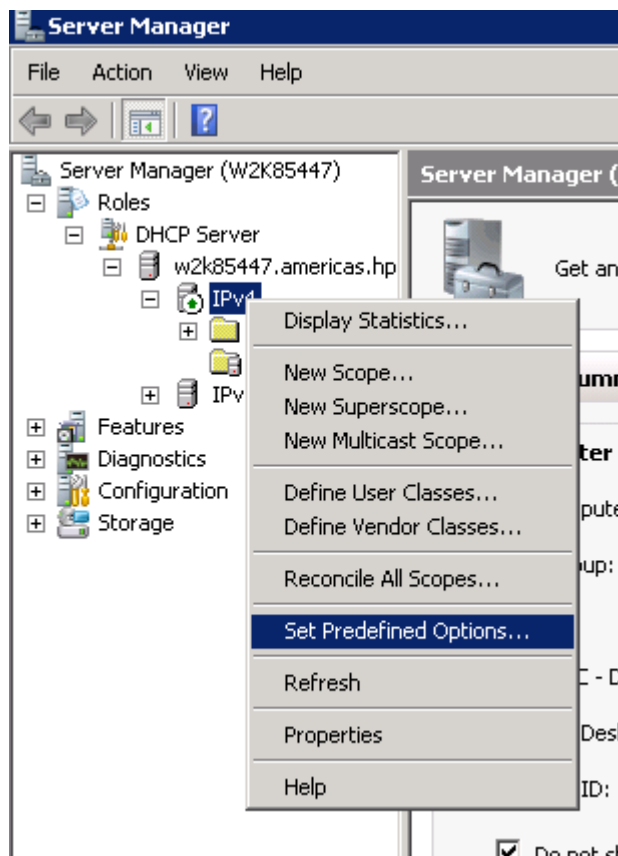
1. From the **Start** menu, select **Server Manager**.



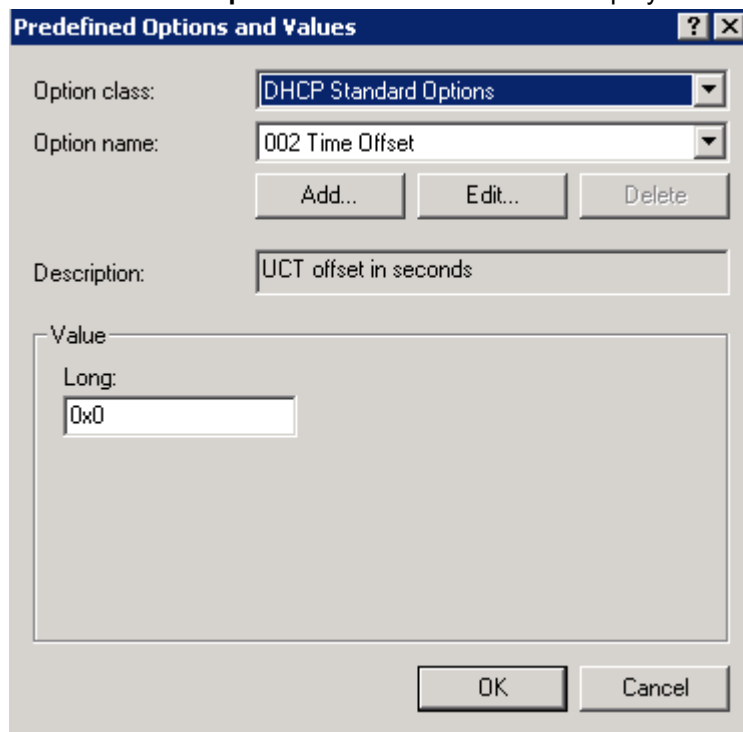
2. Select **Roles -> DHCP -> Server -> w2k8 -> IPv4**.



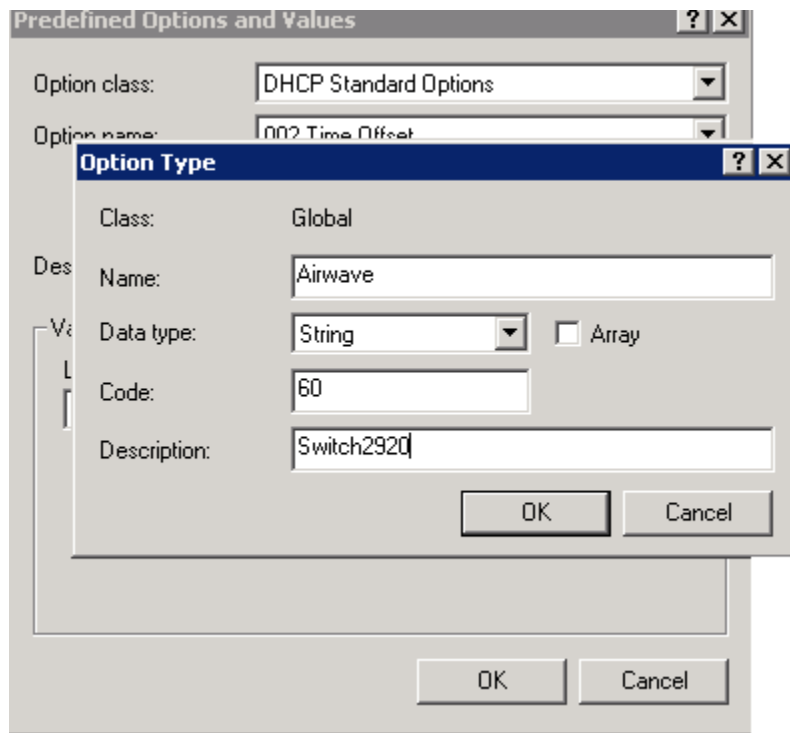
3. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options...**



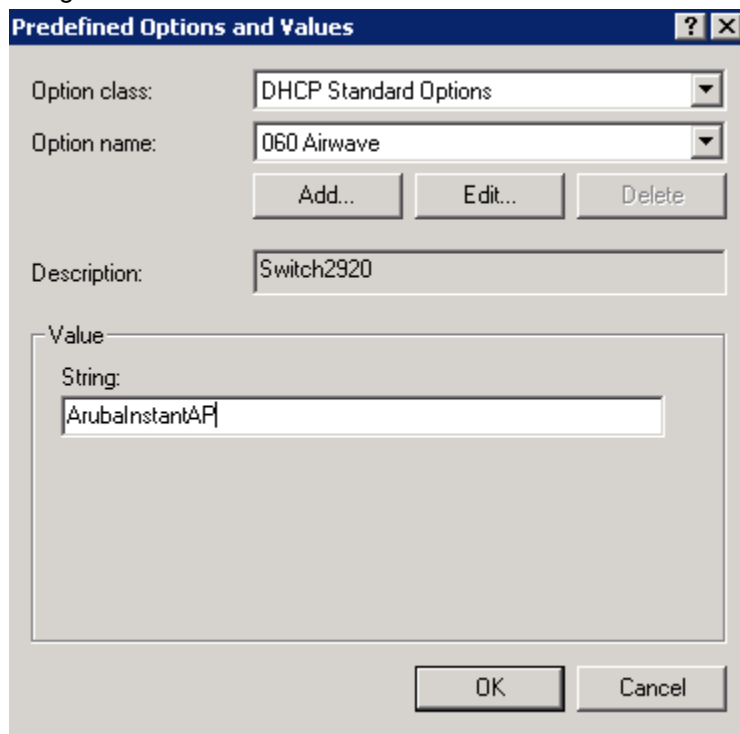
4. The **Predefined Options and Values** screen is displayed. Click **Add...**



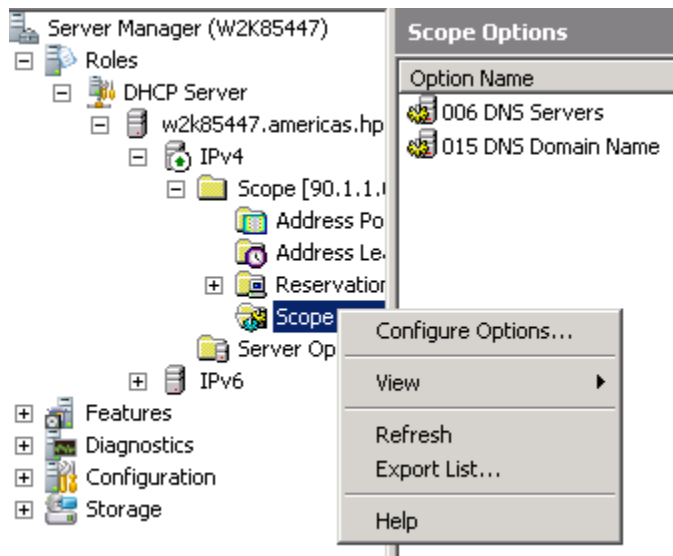
5. Enter the **Name** (any), **Data type** (select **String**), **Code** (enter 60), and **Description** (any).



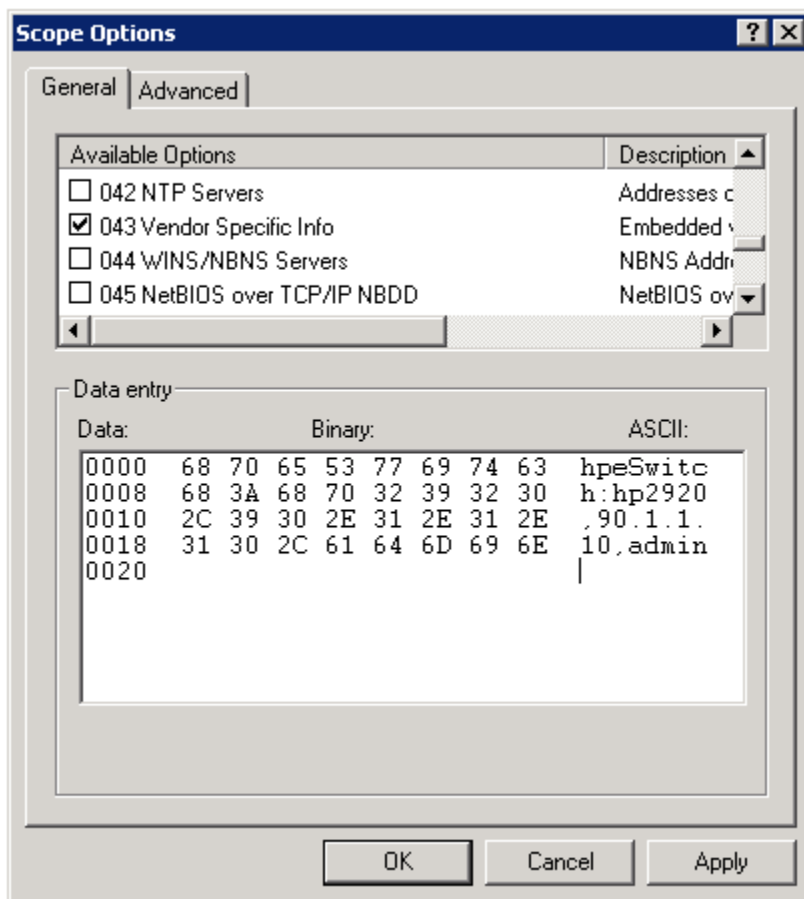
6. Click **OK**.
7. From the **Predefined Options and Values** screen, under **Value**, enter the String **ArubaInstantAP**. The string is case-sensitive and must be **ArubaInstantAP**.



8. Click **OK**.
9. Under IPv4, expand **Scope**. Right-click **Scope Options** and select **Configure Options...**



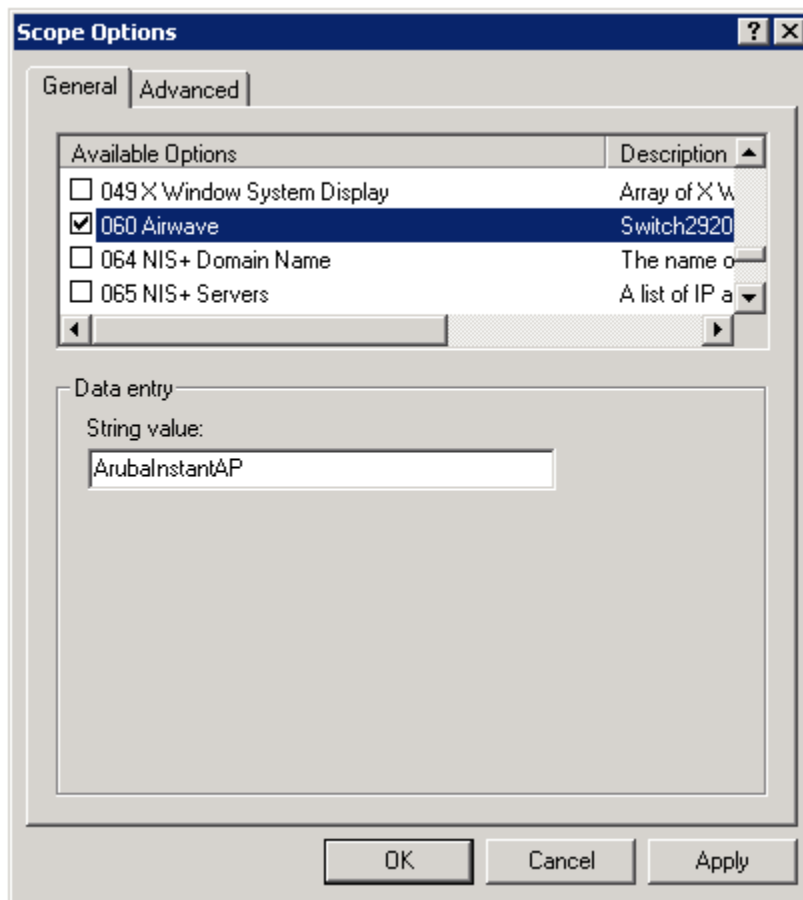
10. Under the General tab, select **043 Vendor Specific Info**. The Data entry data appears. Under ASCII, enter **hpeSwitch:hp2920,90.1.1.10, admin**. The ASCII value has the following format:  
`<Group>:<Topfolder>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`
11. To add subdirectories, use the following format: `<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`



12. Under the General tab, select **060 AirWave**. Click **OK**.



**NOTE:** No changes are required to the 060 option.



13. You can verify the AirWave details as follows:

```
switch# show amp-server
switch# show run
```

### Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option CAPWAP code 138 = array of ip-address;
ddns-update-style ad-hoc;
subnet 192.168.20.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    option tftp-server-name "192.168.20.5";
    option routers 192.168.20.31;
    option ntp-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option domain-name "Airport";
    option domain-name-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option CAPWAP 171.0.0.3;

    #option 43 "171.0.0.100";
    range 192.168.20.10 192.168.20.30;
}
```



## Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv6

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv6, enter the following information:

```
default-lease-time 900;
preferred-lifetime 600;
option dhcp-renewal-time 300;
option dhcp-rebinding-time 600;
allow leasequery;
option dhcp6.info-refresh-time 800;
dhcpv6-lease-file-name "/root/dhcpd6.leases";
host myclient {
    # The entry is looked up by this
    host-identifier option
        dhcp6.client-id 00:01:00:01:00:04:93:e0:00:00:00:00:a2:a2;

    # A fixed address
    fixed-address6 2001::1234;

    # A fixed prefix
    fixed-prefix6 2001::/64;

    # For debug (to see when the entry statements are executed)
    # (log sol when a matching Solicitation is received)
    ##if packet(0,1) = 1 { log(debug,sol); }
}

# The subnet where the server is attached
subnet6 2001::/64 {
    range6 2001::5000 2001::5090;

    # Some /64 prefixes available for Prefix Delegation (RFC 3633)
    #3ffe:501:ffff:100:: 3ffe:501:ffff:111:: /64;
    prefix6 2001:: 2001:3:: /64;

    option dhcp6.name-servers 2001::6001,2001::6002;

    option dhcp6.vendor-opts
        00:00:B8:5C: # HPE enterprise-number
        00:64:00:35: # suboption (100) + length of AW string

    #below hex values are for this ascii string : group:folder,2001::212,secret
    67:72:6f:75:70:3a:66:6f:6c:64:65:72:2c:32:30:30:31:3a:3a:32:34:32:2c:73:65:63:72:65:74;
}
```

## Configure AirWave details in ArubaOS-Switch DHCP server for IPv4



**NOTE:** AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on ArubaOS-Switch based DHCP server is not supported.

To configure the AirWave details in ArubaOS-Switch DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option 43 ascii "group:folder,192.168.240.242,secret1"
option 60 ascii "ArubaInstantAP"
```

### Alternate Methods

The following are the alternate methods to configure DHCP server for AirWave:

## Configure AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4



**NOTE:** AirWave provisioning using IPv6 on Windows based DHCP server is not supported.

To configure the AirWave details in Windows DHCP server for IPv4, do the following steps:

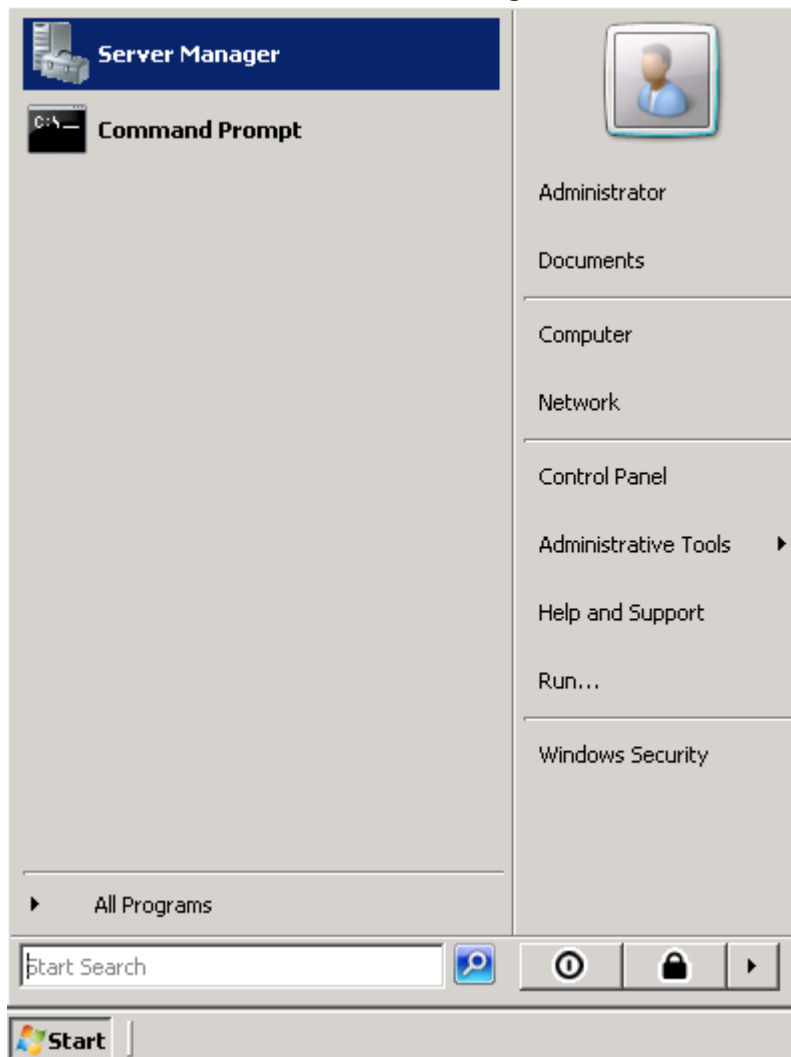


**NOTE:**

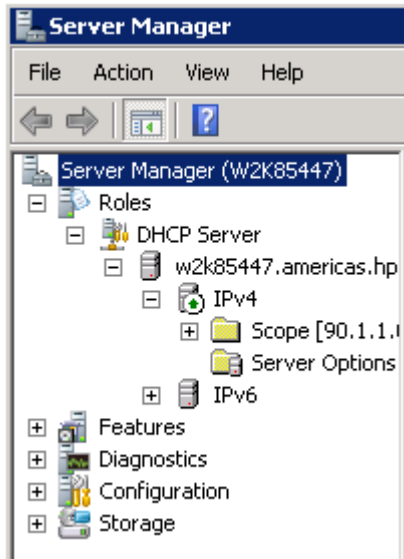
- Use these steps to configure ZTP for every switch by selecting a different Vendor Class for each type of switch.
- This method is not applicable for ZTP through OOBM.

### Procedure

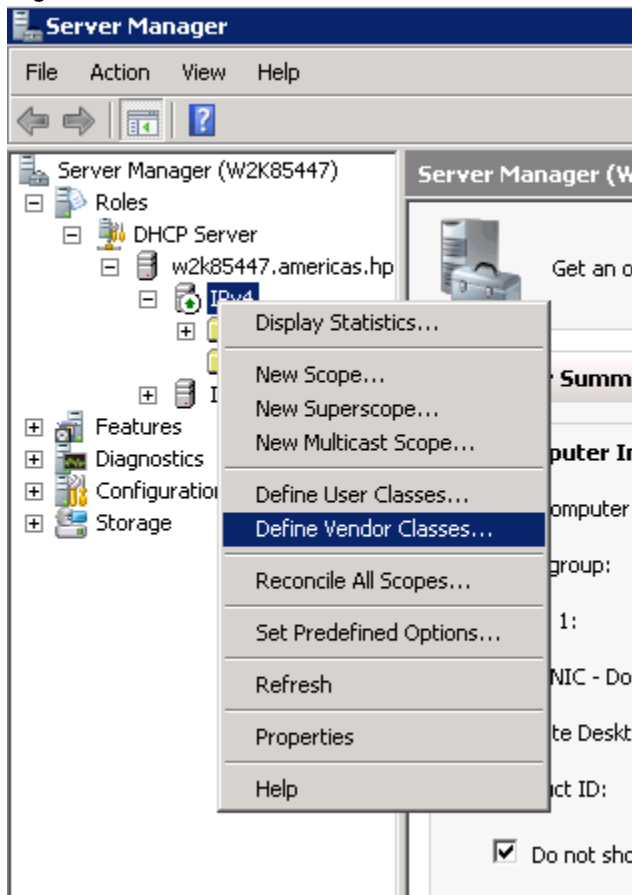
1. From the **Start** menu, select **Server Manager**.



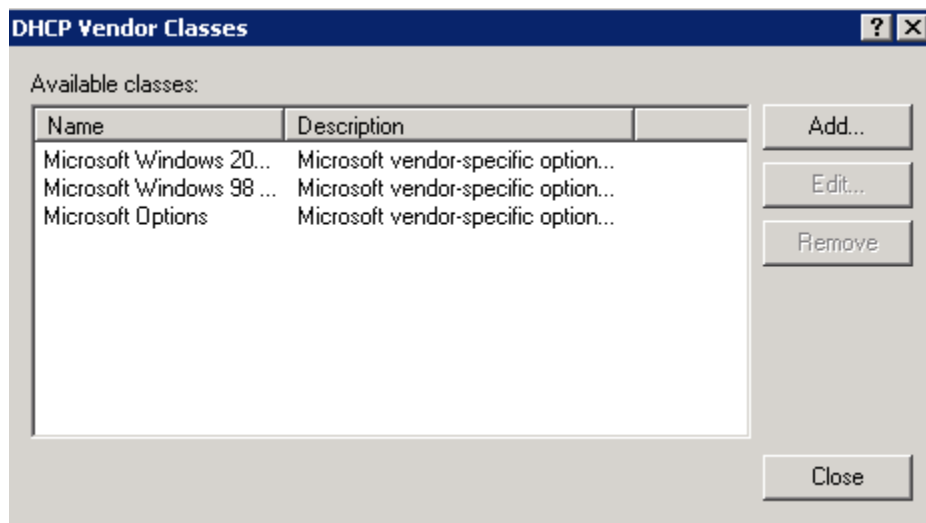
2. Select **Roles -> DHCP -> Server -> w2k8 -> IPv4**.



3. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Define Vendor Classes....**



4. The DHCP Vendor Classes window is displayed. Click **Add....**



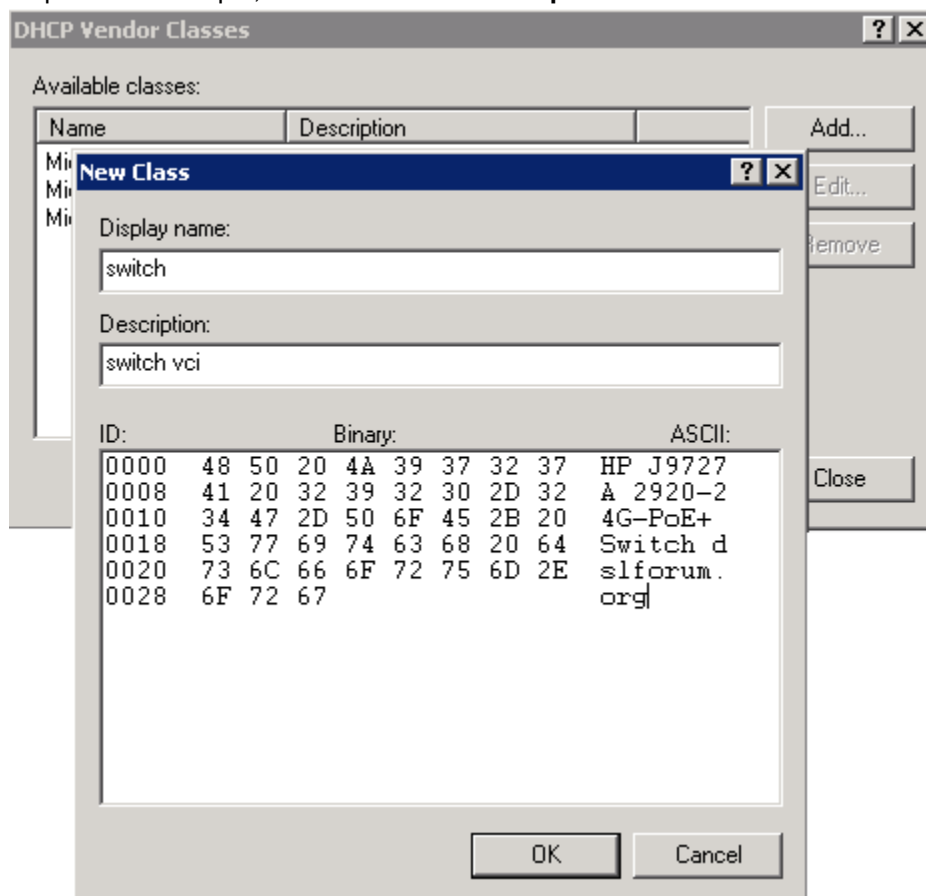
5. To get the vendor-specific value of a switch, go to the switch console and enter:

```
switch# show dhcp client vendor-specific
```

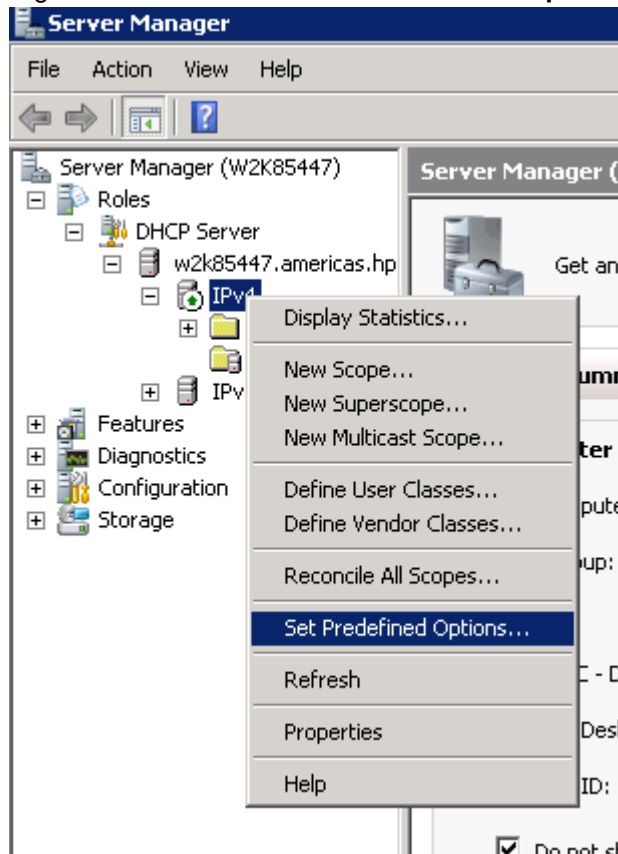
6. The following is the sample command output: Processing of Vendor Specific Configuration is enabled.

```
Vendor Class Id = J9729A 2920-24G-PoE+ Switch dslforum.org
```

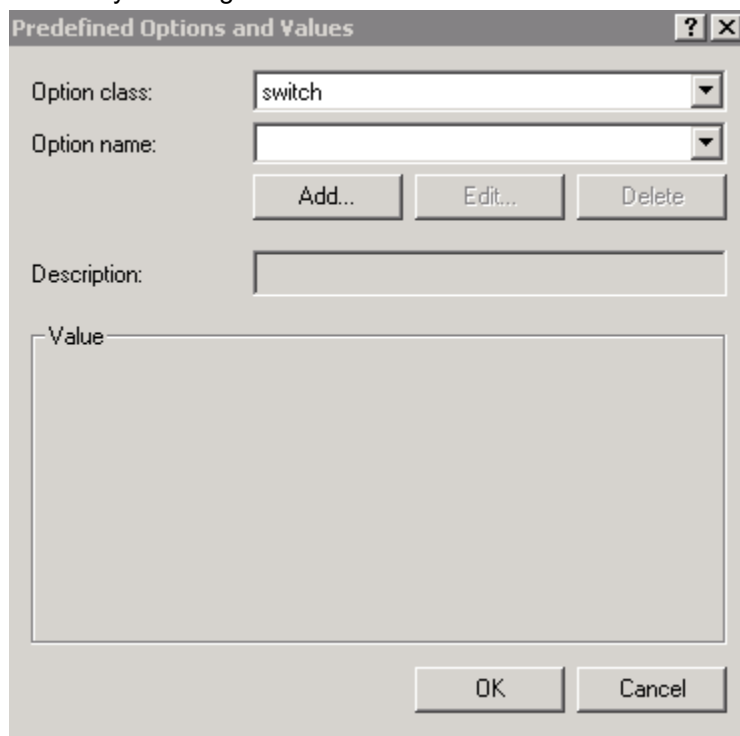
7. From the New Class window, enter the desired **Display name** (any) and the **Description** (any). For the **ASCII** field, enter the exact value that you got by executing the `show` command performed in the previous step. In this example, **Hewlett Packard Enterprise J9729A 2920-24G-PoE+ Switch dslforum.org**.



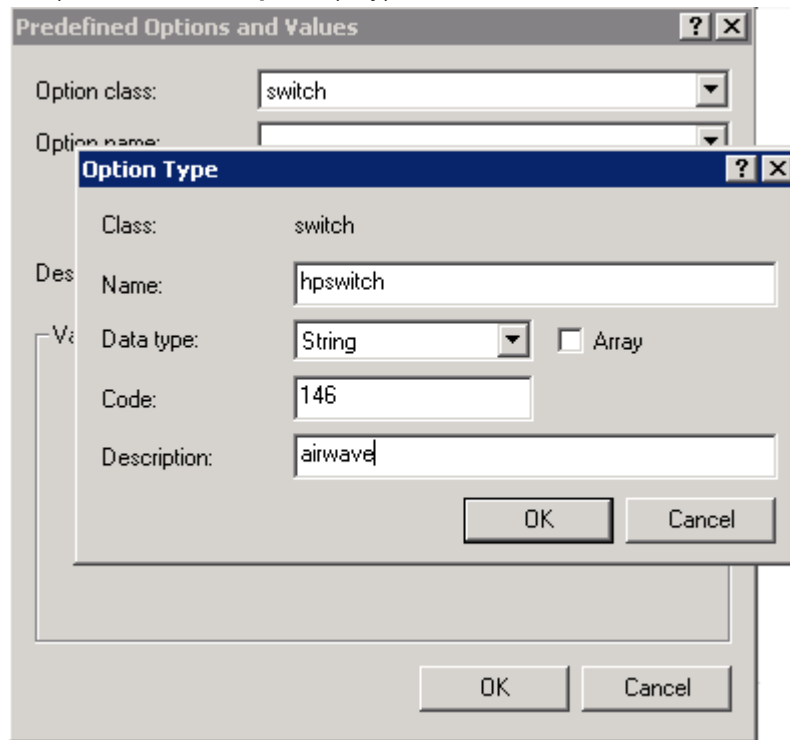
8. Click **OK**.
9. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options....**



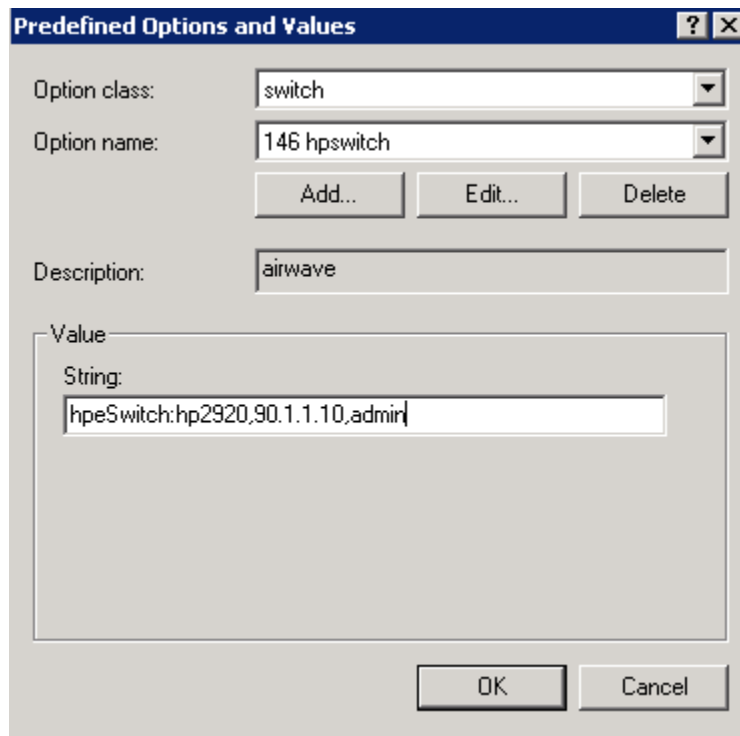
10. From the Predefined Options and Values window, select **Option class**. The Option Class displayed is the one that you configured under **DHCP Vendor Class**. In this example, the Option Class is **switch**.



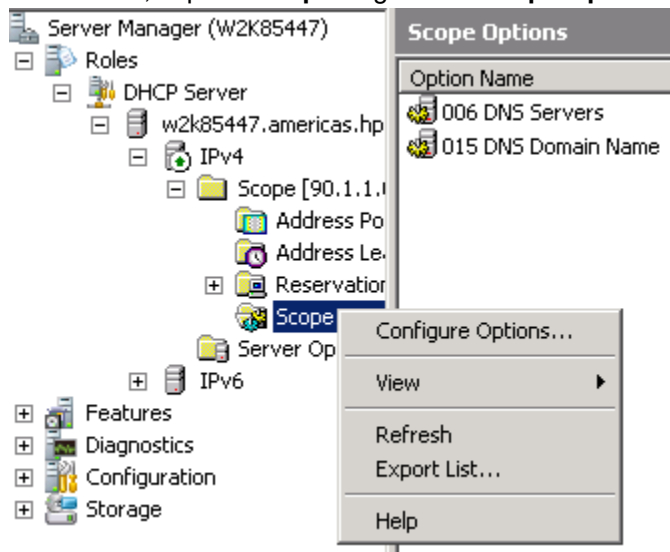
11. Click **Add....**
12. From the Option Type window, enter the desired **Class** (any), the **Data type** (select **string**), the **Code** (enter **146**), and the **Description** (any).



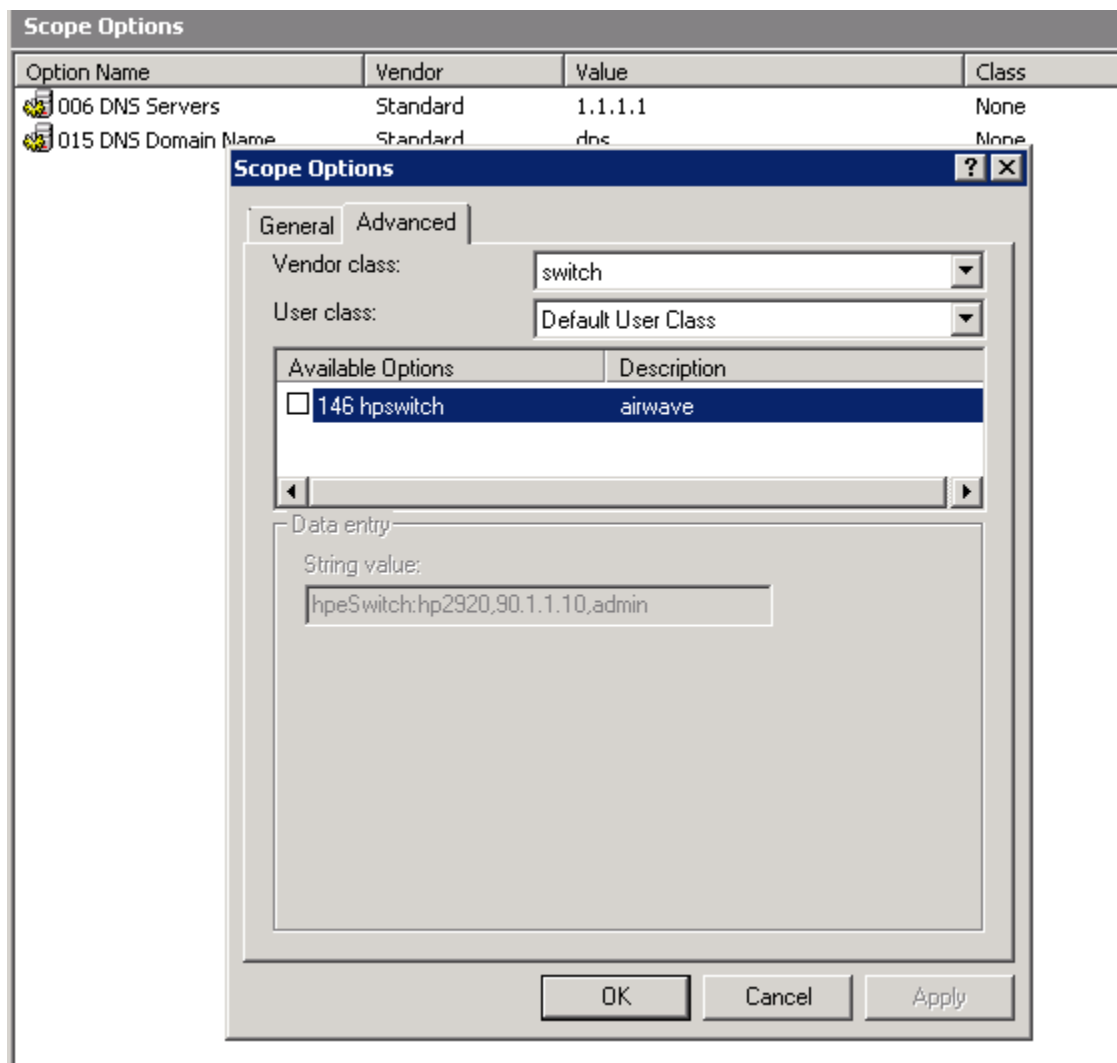
13. Click **OK**.
14. Under the Predefined **Options and Values** window, enter the **Value String**. In this example, enter **hpeSwitch:hp2920,90.1.1.10, admin**. The String has the following format:  
`<Group>:<Topfolder>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`
15. To add sub-folders, use the following format:  
`<Group>:<Topfolder>:<folder1>,<AMP IP>,<shared secret>`



16. Click **OK**.
17. Under **IPv4**, expand **Scope**. Right-click **Scope Options** and select **Configure Options...**



18. From the **Scope Options** window:
  - a. Select the **Advanced** tab.
  - b. Under Vendor class, select the desired switch. In this example, **switch**.
  - c. Select the **146 switch** option.
  - d. Click **OK**.



19. You can verify the AirWave details as follows:

```
switch# show amp-server
switch# show run
```

## Configure AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4

To configure the AirWave details in Linux DHCP server for IPv4, enter the following information:

```
option space ArubaInstantAP;
option ArubaInstantAP.cfg code 144 = text;
option ArubaInstantAP.img code 145 = text;
option ArubaInstantAP.org code 146 = text;
option CAPWAP code 138 = array of ip-address;

ddns-update-style ad-hoc;

subnet 192.168.20.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    option tftp-server-name "192.168.20.5";
    option routers 192.168.20.31;
    option ntp-servers 192.168.20.5;
    option domain-name "Airport";
    option domain-name-servers 192.168.20.5;
```



```

option CAPWAP 171.0.0.3, 192.168.20.31;

class "vendor-class" {
    match substring (option vendor-class-identifier,0,2);
    #match option vendor-class-identifier;
}
subclass "vendor-class" "HP" {
    vendor-option-space ArubaInstantAP;
    #option ArubaInstantAP.cfg "runningConfig_5400R.txt";
    #option ArubaInstantAP.img "KB_16_01_0004.swi";
    option ArubaInstantAP.org "aw_group:fold,171.0.0.100,secret1234";
}
subclass "vendor-class" "Ar" {
    vendor-option-space ArubaInstantAP;
    #option ArubaInstantAP.cfg "runningConfig_5400R.txt";
    #option ArubaInstantAP.img "KB_16_01_0004.swi";
    option ArubaInstantAP.org "aw_group:fold,171.0.0.100,secret1234";
}
range 192.168.20.10 192.168.20.30;
}

```

## Limitations

- The HTTPS check-in to AirWave does not support HTTPS proxy.
- For non-ZTP cases, the AirWave check-in starts by validating the following condition:  
Primary or Management VLAN must be configured with the IP address and one of the interfaces must be UP.  
By default, VLAN 1 is the primary VLAN.
- OOBM redirection is not supported by VSF.

## Best Practices

- Implement ZTP in a secure and private environment. Any public access may compromise the security of the switch, as follows:
  - Since ZTP is enabled only on the factory default configuration of the switch, DHCP snooping is not enabled. The Rogue DHCP server must be manually managed.
  - The DHCP offer is in plain data without encryption. Therefore, the offer can be listened by any device on the network and they can in turn obtain the AirWave information.
  - The TLS certificate of the server is not validated by the switch during the HTTPs check-in to AirWave. The AirWave server must be hosted in a private and secure environment of the switch.

## Configure AirWave details manually

This section focuses on configuring the switch manually to reach out to AirWave. Manual configuration may be required, if ZTP is disabled due to the following scenarios or if AirWave credentials are not provided during the DHCP offer:

- Switch with configuration that explicitly disables ZTP
- Switch with nondefault configuration
- Switches that have upgraded from older images to 16.xx

In any of the above scenarios, you need to manually configure to reach the AirWave server using the `amp-server` command. This command helps you configure the AirWave IP address, group, folder, and shared secret. You must have the `manager` role to execute this command.

For example:

```
switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group "group" folder "folder" secret "branch1024"
```

The `show amp-server` command shows the configuration details:

```
AirWave Configuration details
AMP Server IP : 192.168.1.1
AMP Server Group : GROUP
AMP Server Folder : folder
AMP Server Secret : branch1024
AMP Server Config Status: Configured
```

## amp-server

### Syntax

```
amp-server ip <IP-ADDR> group <GROUP> folder <FOLDER> secret <SECRET>
```

```
no amp-server
```

### Description

The `amp-server` command configures AirWave Management Platform (AMP) IP address, group, folder, and shared secret for triggering the device registration with AMP.

The `no` form of this command removes the configuration for the AMP server.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Parameters

#### **IP-ADDR**

AMP server IPv4 address.

#### **GROUP**

AMP server group name.

#### **FOLDER**

AMP server folder name.

#### **SECRET**

AMP server shared secret string.

### Example

```
Switch(config)# amp-server
ip                Configure AMP server IP address.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip
IP-ADDR          Enter an IP address.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1
group            AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group
```

```

GROUPNAME-STR          AMP server group name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11
folder                  AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder
FOLDERNAME-STR         AMP server folder name.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11
secret                  AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11 secret
SECRET-STR              AMP server shared secret string.
Switch(config)# amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group grp11 folder fld11 secret scrt11

```

To view the AirWave configuration details, use the `show amp-server` command.

### **show amp-server**

AMP Server Configuration details

```

AMP Server IP           : 192.168.1.1
AMP Server Group        : grp11
AMP Server Folder       : fld11
AMP Server Secret       : scrt11
AMP Server Config Status : Configured

```

### **show running-configuration**

```
switch# show running-config
```

```

; JL071A Configuration Editor; Created on release #KB.16.06.0000x
; Ver #13:03.f8.1c.fb.7f.bf.bb.ff.7c.59.fc.7b.ff.ff.fc.ff.ff.3f.ef:05

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type jl071x
flexible-module A type JL081A
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
oobm
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-24,A1-A4
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
amp-server ip 192.168.1.1 group "grp11" folder "fld11" secret "scrt11"

```

## **debug ztp**

### **Syntax**

```

debug ztp
no debug ztp

```

### **Description**

Enables or disables ZTP debug logging.

### **Parameters and options**

#### **ztp**

Zero Touch Provisioning.

#### **no**

The `no debug ztp` command disables ZTP debug logging.

## Stacking support

The ZTP process for stacked switches with Central is similar to the one for the standalone switch, with the exception that only the commander in the stack checks in with Central. Backplane stacking on 2920 is the only supported stacked switch.

## Disabling ZTP

ZTP is disabled if you make any of the following changes to the switch configuration:

- Enter the switch configuration mode using the `configure terminal` command.
- Enter into Menu and exit without doing any configuration
- Use CLI, SNMP, REST APIs, menu interface, or the web GUI to configure any settings. The change is shown in the running-configuration of the switch.
- When device is upgraded from any 15.xx version to 16.01, see [Image Upgrade](#).
- Once DHCP server or Activate offers Airwave/Central details, ZTP is disabled. If the details are offered again, it is ignored.

## Image Upgrade

If you upgrade from any 15.xx version to version 16.xx, the following minimal set of configuration is validated to enable or disable the ZTP process:

- If the switch has any other VLAN apart from the default VLAN, ZTP gets disabled.
- In default VLAN, if the IPv4 address is not set as DHCP (default option is DHCP), ZTP gets disabled.
- In default VLAN, if IPv6 is enabled or configured, ZTP gets disabled.

If you have any other configuration during the upgrade, ZTP will continue to be in the enabled state.

## Using SNMPv3 in AirWave Template

- The SNMPv3 `engine-id` in the AirWave template must be a variable whose value is retrieved from the target switch at runtime. The same `engine-id` variable must be configured as a local `engine-id` in the template. The local `engine-id` makes a target switch to have constant `engine-id` always. The template must not have hardcoded `engine-id`. The SNMPv3 `engine-id` must be unique for each device in the network managed by AirWave.

```
snmp-server engine-id local "%snmpv3_engineid%"
snmpv3 engine-id "%snmpv3_engineid%"
```

- There must be at least one SNMPv3 user configuration in the template. The user configuration must have plaintext key values for auth and priv. The plaintext keys will be encrypted when template is pushed to switch. Each SNMPv3 user should be assigned to a suitable SNMPv3 group with security model as version 3 in the template.

```
snmpv3 enable
snmpv3 group managerauth user "snmpv3user" sec-model ver3
snmpv3 user "snmpv3user" auth md5 "snmpv3user" priv des "snmpv3user"
```

- The following is the sample template:

```
%template_header%
hostname "%hostname%"
```

```

%module_command%
include-credentials
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
snmp-server engine-id local "%snmpv3_engineid%"
snmpv3 engineid "%snmpv3_engineid%"
snmpv3 enable
snmpv3 group managerauth user "snmpv3user" sec-model ver3
snmpv3 user "snmpv3user" auth md5 "snmpv3user" priv des "snmpv3user"
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged %vlan_1_untag_command%
%if use_dhcp=1%
    ip address dhcp-bootp
%endif%
%if use_dhcp=0%
    ip address %ip_address% %netmask%
%endif%
    ipv6 enable
%if use_ipv6_dhcp=1%
    ipv6 address dhcp full
%endif%
%if use_ipv6_dhcp=0%
    ipv6 address %ipv6_address%/%ipv6_prefix_length%
%endif%
    exit
amp-server ip 192.168.240.242 group "group" folder "folder" secret "secret"

```

## Troubleshooting

### Cause

You can troubleshoot switches by using the SSH connection and the device logs available in AirWave. For a list of all RMON message, refer to *ArubaOS-Switch Event Log Message Reference Guide*.

You can enable the debug logging with the `debug ztp` command, see [debug ztp](#).

### AMP server messages

To display the AMP server debug messages, enter:

```
switch# debug ztp
```

To print the debug messages to the terminal, enter:

```
switch# debug destination session
```

## Activate based ZTP with AirWave

ZTP with Activate is used in the following scenarios to help switches check in through the Internet with public facing instances of Airwave:

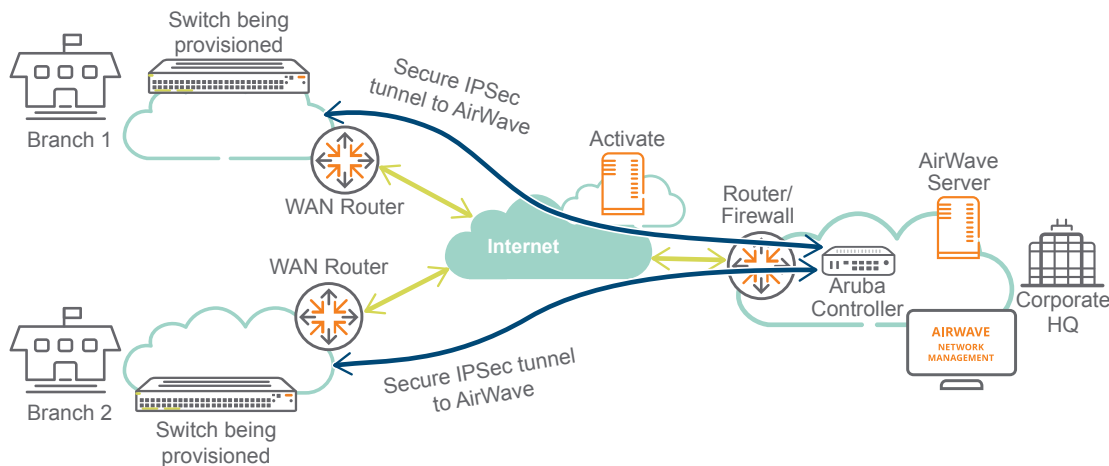
- Deployments where administrators do not have a DHCP server to configure Airwave options
- Absence of corporate network reaching every branch

**NOTE:**

- Activate based ZTP is not supported for IPv6.
- Activate based ZTP is not supported for both IPv4 and IPv6 through OOBM.

## Configuring Activate-based ZTP with AirWave

For Activate-based ZTP, the switch connects to Aruba Activate service through the Internet and autoconfiguration takes place based on the settings provided in Activate. For more information on how to set up an Activate account, folder and their rules, refer to the *Aruba Activate User Guide*.



In the preceding illustration, the workflow is as follows:

1. The switches being provisioned in the branches are booted and connect to the Activate on the cloud.
2. Based on the administrator's provisioning (folder, rule), the device is placed in the appropriate folder before getting redirected to the AirWave server in the Corporate HQ.
3. The switches connect to the AirWave server, and the server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the AirWave folder, switch model, and branch location.
4. Optionally, an IPsec tunnel to the Controller in the HQ can be constructed to secure the management traffic to AirWave. This configuration can be set as part of the initial configuration push from Activate.

## IPsec for AirWave Connectivity

### Overview

This feature supports secure communication between the switch and Aruba mobility controller (VPN concentrator) for AirWave traffic. The switch also provides the necessary support for ZTP by establishing a secure tunnel between the switch and AirWave, which are provided by a DHCP server or Activate.

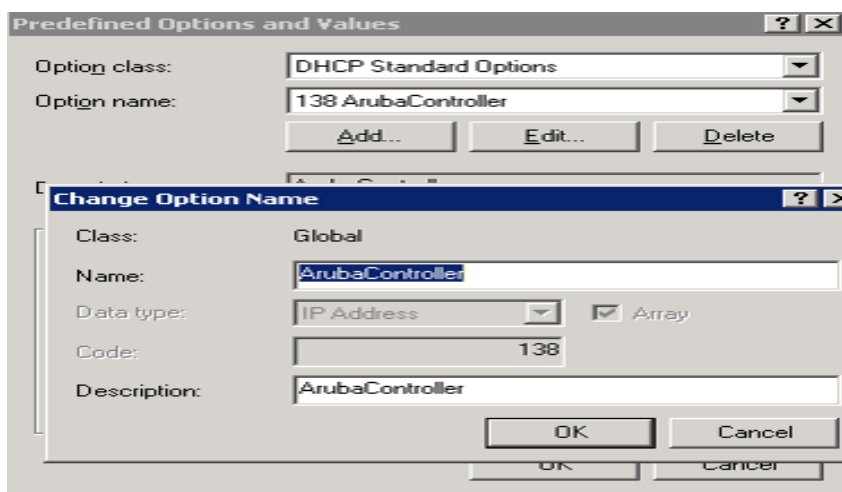
IPsec ensures that communication between the switch and AirWave server (management traffic) is protected by establishing a secure channel between the switches and the Aruba VPN Controller (connected to AirWave server).

## IPsec for Management Traffic

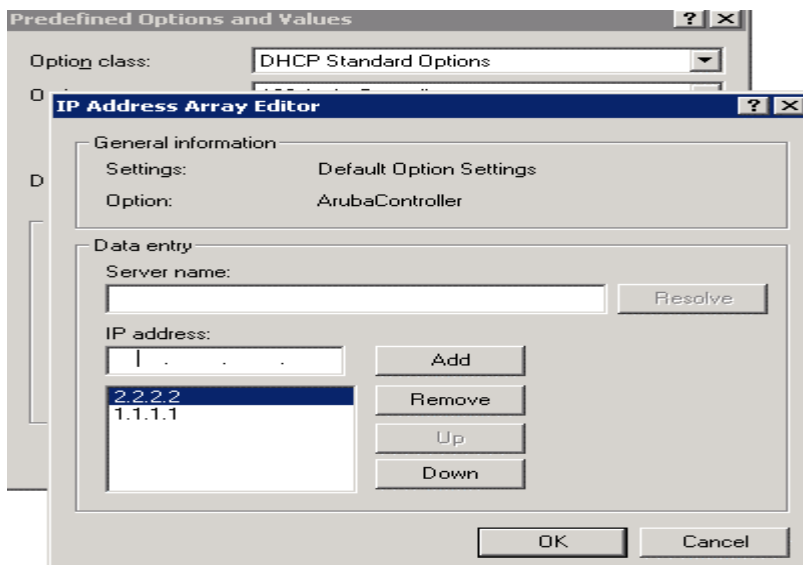
IPsec supports ZTP in deployment scenarios less restrictive than private LANs. ZTP enables switches to be configured and managed automatically without administrator intervention. In a deployment scenario where a switch and AirWave are located in different branches connected through an untrusted public network (the Internet), the communication between the switch and AirWave server can be protected.

You can configure IPsec tunnel using any of the following methods:

- Activate ZTP
- DHCP ZTP with option 138
  1. To assign controller IP addresses, select DHCP option 138.



2. Define the controller IP addresses for both the primary and secondary controllers.



- Manual configuration

## IPsec Tunnel Establishment

- IPsec tunnel for AirWave is auto-configured. The switch decides to create IPsec tunnel only when an Aruba controller IP is present in the device before establishing the connection to AirWave.
- If the controller IP is not provided, the switch will try to establish a direct connection to AirWave.
- If the controller IP is present, the switch auto configures and initiates an IPsec tunnel interface. Once the tunnel is established, the Aruba controller provides an inner IP which the switch will then use as source IP to send any AirWave bound traffic. The switch then creates a static route to AirWave with the IPsec tunnel interface as the gateway.

## IPsec Tunnel Failures

The following behaviors can cause an IPsec tunnel creation failure:

- Time  
The time in the switch has to be valid and correct. Time issues have been observed on this switch. Ensure that NTP configuration is set up on switch and on the controller where the tunnel is terminating.
- Authentication  
The switch MAC addresses for both members must be added to the Aruba controller whitelist.
- Controller IP  
The controller IP must be reachable from the switch.
- Inner IP pool  
Ensure the inner IP pool is configured on the controller. Tunnel establishment is not successful, if the pool is full.
- Static Route  
There must not be any conflicting static route in the system for the AirWave IP configured.
- License  
The controller must have sufficient license to support IPsec tunnels.

## IPsec tunnel to secondary controller

ArubaOS-Switch assists support for IPsec tunnel between switch and the Aruba Controller (VPN concentrator) to carry the switch generated traffic to multiple services behind the Aruba Controller. The services include AirWave management station, ClearPass, DNS, Syslog, and so on.

IPsec tunnel needs a backup support for IPsec session failure. If the existing IPsec session is lost, the switch is able to establish a new IPsec tunnel session with a backup controller (secondary controller).

## Backup controller support for IPsec tunnel

The switch supports two controllers with all the services such as ClearPass, Syslog, DNS, and AirWave. In such scenarios, a controller functions as a backup controller.

1. `aruba-vpn` is modified to support backup controller IP.

```
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

```
no aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.1  
backup-peer-ip          Configure the Aruba VPN backup IP address.
```



```
tos          Configure the Aruba VPN tos value.  
ttl          Configure the Aruba VPN ttl value.  
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.1 backup-peer-ip 171.0.0.3
```

2. When the switch is configured with both the primary and backup controllers, the switch will establish IPsec tunnel connection with primary controller.
3. Switch initiates a new IPsec session with either primary or backup controller once "Dead Peer Detection" event is triggered for existing IPsec session.
4. Switch retries establishing IPsec session with both primary and backup controllers alternatively until a successful IPsec handshake.
5. Switch tries to establish the IPsec tunnel with the same controller when the following events occur:
  - Switch IP change
  - Vlan ID change
  - Redundancy switch over
6. If `aruba-vpn type` is *amp*, after five consecutive AirWave check-in failures, the existing tunnel is destroyed and an IPsec tunnel is established with the other controller.



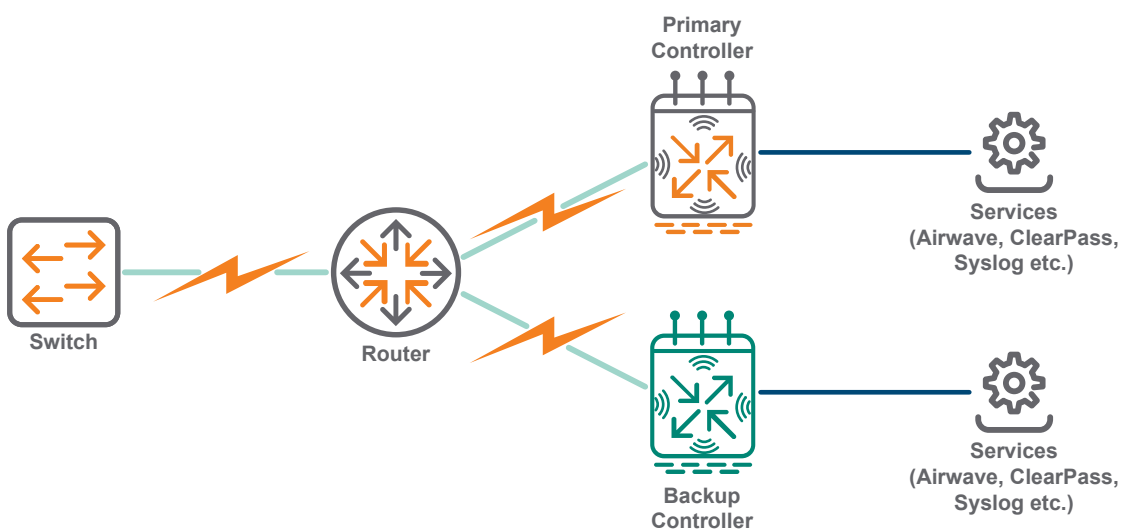
---

**NOTE:** ZTP continues to support existing DHCP options for AirWave or Controller IP discovery. You can configure both the primary and backup controllers IP in DHCP.

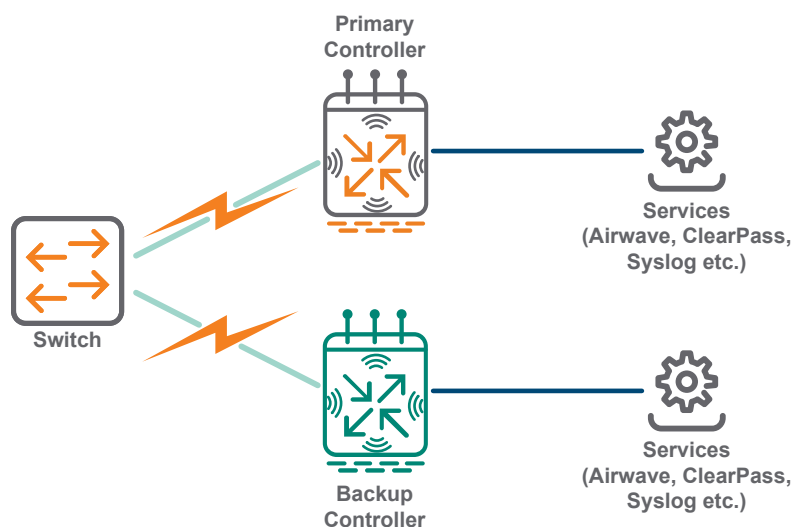
---

## Switch reachability to the controllers

**Figure 37:** *Controllers through same VLAN*



**Figure 38:** *Controllers through different VLANs*



## Restrictions

1. Priority based failover is not supported.
2. When there is a failover to backup controller, the primary controller will not try to re-establish the IPsec session when it becomes active.
3. Failover to the other (either primary or secondary) controller results in data loss. All the existing application sessions in the switch will be terminated.



---

**NOTE:** The failover will take up to three minutes.

---

4. The events such as time change and port flap, breaks the existing IPsec session and triggers a failover. The new IPsec session is established with a backup controller. In such scenario, switch does not perform any reachability test before selecting a controller to retry.

## AirWave IP after discovery

AirWave IP and Aruba Controller IP (either from the Activate Server or from a DHCP server) are established and auto configured in an IPsec-IPv4 Tunnel. Once received, the IPsec tunnel is auto configured and established to send AirWave traffic securely. The Aruba Controller provides an inner-ip to the switch which then can communicate with AirWave.

## Configuring the Aruba controller

On the Aruba Controller, configure through CLI:

### Procedure

1. Add the switch MAC address to whitelist for authentication. For more information, refer [http://www.arubanetworks.com/techdocs/ArubaOS\\_63\\_Web\\_Help/Content/ArubaFrameStyles/Control\\_Plane/Whitelists\\_on\\_Campus\\_and\\_Remote\\_APs.htm](http://www.arubanetworks.com/techdocs/ArubaOS_63_Web_Help/Content/ArubaFrameStyles/Control_Plane/Whitelists_on_Campus_and_Remote_APs.htm)
2. Add an IP address pool that can be assigned to switch after tunnel creation. The IP range must not overlap with the interfaces IP on the controller.

```
ip local pool "ipsec" 2.0.0.100 2.0.0.255
```

3. Create access lists that permit AirWave traffic and assign them to ap-roles. It is required only if the controller version is less than 6.5.2.0 or 8.1.0.0. If required, you can add specific acls such as `sys-switch-role`.

```
ip access-list session acl
any any tcp 22 permit
any any tcp 443 permit
user-role sys-switch role
access-list session acl
```

4. View the whitelist.

## AirWave Controller IP configuration commands

### aruba-vpn type

#### Syntax

```
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

no aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

aruba-vpn type any peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>

no aruba-vpn type any peer-ip <IP_addr> backup-peer-ip <IP_addr>
```

## Description

Configure the Aruba VPN type, peer IP address. When Aruba VPN type is `any`, the tunnel is established independent of Airwave configuration.

The no form of the command removes the `aruba-vpn type` statement from the configuration.

## Parameters

### `type`

Configure the controller IP.

### `amp`

Configure Remote Access VPN session to protect specific switch generated traffic. It also supports secure ZTP of Airwave Management Platform (AMP) server.

### `any`

Configure Remote Access VPN session to protect specific switch generated traffic. Secure ZTP is not supported.

### `<IP_addr>`

IP address of the VPN.

## Usage

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip
```

```
switch(config)# aruba-vpn type any
```



### NOTE:

- When you configure `aruba-vpn type` as `any`, the switch creates a tunnel and updates the `inner-ip`.
- You can create routes using the `ip route` command for next hop as `aruba-vpn` sends management traffic over the tunnel. For example: `ip route 2.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 tunnel aruba-vpn`

## Show commands

### `show aruba-vpn`

#### Syntax

```
show aruba-vpn type <VPN-TYPE>
```

#### Description

Show Aruba-VPN configuration information.

```
show aruba-vpn
```

```
show aruba-vpn
```

#### Aruba VPN details

```
Aruba VPN Type           : amp
Aruba VPN Peer IP        : 171.0.0.1
Aruba VPN Backup Peer IP : 171.0.0.3
Aruba VPN Config Status  : Configured
Aruba VPN tos            : Value from IPv4 header
Aruba VPN ttl            : 64
```

#### show aruba-vpn type amp

```
show aruba-vpn type amp
```

#### Aruba VPN details

```
Aruba VPN Type           : amp
Aruba VPN Peer IP        : 171.0.0.1
Aruba VPN Backup Peer IP : 171.0.0.3
Aruba VPN Config Status  : Configured
Aruba VPN tos            : Value from IPv4 header
Aruba VPN ttl            : 64
```

## show ip route

### Syntax

```
show ip route
```

### Description

Show the IP route.

#### show ip route

```
show ip route
```

#### IP Route Entries

Destination	Gateway	VLAN	Type	Sub-Type	Metric	Dist.
0.0.0.0/0	192.168.20.31	1	static		250	1
**2.0.0.9/32	aruba-vpn		static		1	1
*2.0.0.108/32	aruba-vpn		connected		1	0
127.0.0.0/8	reject		static		0	0
127.0.0.1/32	lo0		connected		1	0
192.168.20.0/24	DEFAULT_VLAN	1	connected		1	0

\*The inner IP received from the Aruba Controller.

\*\*Static Route for AirWave IP. Added automatically by the switch after tunnel establishment.

## show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn

### Syntax

```
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

### Description

Auto-configured tunnel interface before creating IPsec. The tunnel ID is auto generated and to avoid conflict with user generated tunnel interface, the tunnel id is always the max tunnel supported by the switch + 1.

## aruba-vpn

Display the configuration and status details of aruba-vpn tunnel.

### brief

Display brief configuration and status for all tunnels.

### Usage

```
show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

```
show interfaces tunnel brief
```

```
show interfaces [tunnel] [<TUNNEL-LIST> | <TUNNEL-NAME> | brief | type]
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces tunnel aruba-vpn
```

#### Tunnel Configuration :

```
Tunnel           : tunnel-129
Tunnel Name       : aruba-vpn-tunnel
Tunnel Status     : Enabled
Source Address    : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address : 171.0.0.3
Mode              : IPsec IPv4
TOS               : Value from IPv4 header
TTL               : 64
IPv6              : Disabled
MTU               : 1280
```

#### Current Tunnel Status :

```
Tunnel State           : Up
Destination Address Route : 0.0.0.0/0
Next Hop IP            : 192.168.20.31
Next Hop Interface      : vlan-1
Next Hop IP Link Status : Up
Source Address          : Configured on vlan-1
IP Datagrams Received   : 11
IP Datagrams Transmitted : 36
```

```
switch(config)# show interfaces tunnel brief
```

#### Status - Tunnel Information Brief

```
Tunnel           : tunnel-129
Mode              : IPsec IPv4
Source Address    : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address : 171.0.0.3
Configured Tunnel Status : Enabled
Current Tunnel State : Up
```

## show crypto-ipsec sa

### Syntax

```
show crypto ipsec sa
```

### Description

## Show crypto-IPsec statistics.

```
switch# show crypto ipsec sa
```

```
Crypto IPSec Status
Interface           : 1
Source Address      : 192.168.20.10
Destination Address  : 171.0.0.3
Source Port         : 0
SPI                : 3767553536
Destination Port    : 0
Encapsulation Protocol : ESP
Encryption         : AES
PFS                : 0
Hash               : SHA1
PFS Group          :
Mode               : tunnel
Key Life           : 3600
Key Size           : 0
Remaining key Life  : 3303
Remaining key Size  : 0
Interface          : 2
Source Address      : 171.0.0.3
Destination Address  : 192.168.20.10
Source Port         : 0
SPI                : 4173307552
Destination Port    : 0
Encapsulation Protocol : ESP
Encryption         : AES
PFS                : 0
Hash               : SHA1
PFS Group          :
Mode               : tunnel
Key Life           : 3600
Key Size           : 0
Remaining key Life  : 3301
Remaining key Size  : 0
```

### Usage

```
show crypto ipsec statistics
```

## show running-configuration

### Syntax

```
show running-configuration
```



**NOTE:** IP route or tunnel interface will not be displayed in show run as they are auto created.

## show running-configuration

```
show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; JL258A Configuration Editor; Created on release #XX.XX.XX.XXXX
; Ver #11:10.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:bc
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl258a
ip default-gateway 192.168.20.31
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-10
    ip address 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.0
    exit
amp-server ip 2.0.0.9 group "aw_group" folder "fold" secret "secret123"
aruba-vpn type amp peer-ip 171.0.0.3
```

# ZTP with Aruba Central

Aruba Central does not require any configuration of local DHCP server or other network components but requires a switch with Internet access.

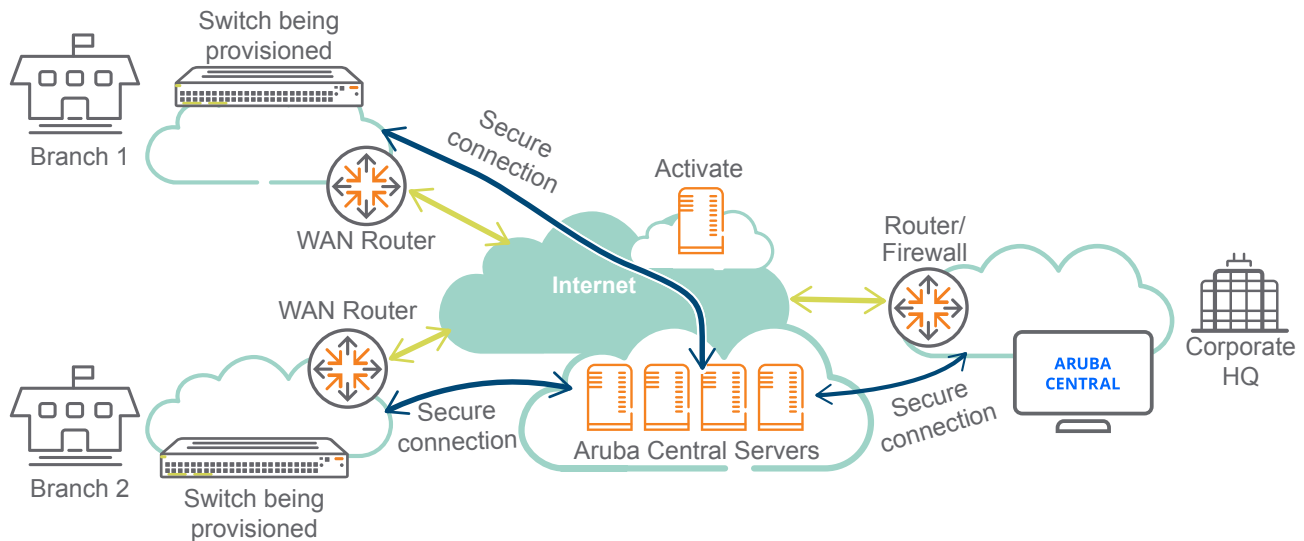
Users with access to Aruba Central cloud portal must provision their switches and assign licenses accordingly. Once complete, Aruba Central will automatically program the Activate portal with the required switch details and the group to which the switch must check in.



## NOTE:

- Aruba Central does not support IPv6 connectivity.
- Aruba Central is not applicable for connection through OOBM interface.

The following diagram illustrates the working of Aruba Central ZTP:



The workflow is as follows:

1. The switches provisioned in the branches boot and connect to Activate.
2. To establish a TLS connection with Activate, the switches send the Activate server domain name (`devices-v2.arubanetworks.com`) in the `server_name` SNI extension field of the Client Hello message to Activate.
3. Switches obtain the Aruba Central URL from Activate and establishes a TLS connection with Aruba Central. While establishing the TLS connection, the switches send the server name of Aruba Central in the `server_name` SNI extension field of the Client Hello message to Aruba Central.
4. Based on administrator's provisioning (such as folder, rule), the device is placed in the appropriate folder before being redirected to Aruba Central.
5. The switches check-in with Aruba Central and the server pushes the configuration to the switches based on the group, switch model, and branch location.

For more information on Aruba Central configuration, refer to the *Aruba Central Configuration Guide*.

After the switch successfully checks-in with Aruba Central, the following management interfaces on the switch are disabled:

- WebUI
- REST
- SNMP



- TR-69
- Menu

There is a restriction on executing the following commands over CLI:

- boot
- recopy
- erase
- reload
- startup-default
- upgrade-software
- setup
- delete
- reboot
- restore
- menu
- write memory
- amp-server

## LED Blink feature

Central connectivity loss is indicated by LEDs. If connectivity is broken and Aruba-Central is enabled, the USB/FDX and Locator LEDs will blink. The LEDs will stop blinking once the switch is connected back to Central.

## Aruba Central Configuration manually

In factory default switches, ZTP with Central is turned ON. ZTP can be disabled in the following scenarios:

- Switches with edited configuration
- Switches where the administrator has explicitly turned off ZTP with Central

In any of the mentioned scenarios, an administrator can manually configure Aruba Central using the `aruba-central` command.

### aruba-central

#### Syntax

```
aruba-central {enable | disable | support-mode {enable | disable}}
```

#### Description

Configure Aruba Central server support. When enabled, and when a server web address has been obtained using Aruba Activate, the system will connect to an Aruba Central server. The system will obtain configuration updates and most local configuration commands will be disabled. This mode is enabled by default.

Enter support mode to enable all configuration commands. Normally, when the system is connected to an Aruba Central server, the configuration is updated from that server and most local configuration commands are disabled. Support mode enables those commands for use in troubleshooting problems. Support mode is disabled by

default. When the system is not connected to Aruba Central server, the full command set is enabled for local configuration.

### Restrictions

- Switch communication to Aruba Central is not supported via OOBM.
- Aruba-central is not supported in FIPS switches and it will be disabled by default.



**CAUTION:** To avoid broadcast storm or loops in your network while configuring ZTP, do not have redundant links after you complete ZTP and Airwave registration. Authorize the new switch and then push the Golden Configuration template from Airwave.

### Example

Enable Aruba Central server support

```
switch(config)# aruba-central enable
```

Disable Aruba Central server support

```
switch(config)# aruba-central disable
```

Enter support mode to enable all CLI configuration commands

```
switch(config)# aruba-central support-mode enable
```

This mode will enable all CLI configuration commands, including those normally reserved by the Aruba Central service.  
Use of this mode may invalidate the configuration provisioned through Aruba Central server.  
Continue (y/n)?



**NOTE:** Starting with 16.09 release when switches are on-boarding to Central, SNMP access is read-only, and SNMP traps are supported.

## aruba-central support-mode

### Syntax

```
aruba-central support-mode
```

### Description

Enter support mode to enable all configuration commands. Normally, when the system is connected to an Aruba Central server, the configuration is updated from that server and most local configuration commands are disabled. Support mode enables those commands for use in troubleshooting problems. Support mode is disabled by default. When the system is not connected to Aruba Central server, the full command set is enabled for local configuration.

### Usage

```
aruba-central support-mode {enable | disable}
```

### Example

```
switch(config)# aruba-central support-mode enable
```

This mode will enable all CLI configuration commands, including those normally reserved by the Aruba Central service.  
Use of this mode may invalidate the configuration provisioned through Aruba Central server.  
Continue (y/n)?

## Activating ArubaOS-Switch Firmware Integration

CLIs are available for Activate firmware updates which enables, update, checks and shows firmware upgrades.

### Operating Notes

Switch will periodically check with Activate every seven days for the latest image version.

Download the image from the URL provided by Activate and upgrade the switch with the new image.

### Restrictions

When a switch is managed by either AirWave or Aruba Central, the automatic firmware check is disabled.

Activate upgrade from the non-supported build is disabled upon upgrading to version 16.03.

Upon upgrade from version 16.02 to version 16.03 with activate provision enabled, activate software update will be enabled.

## activate software-update enable

### Syntax

```
activate software-update [enable | disable]
```

### Description

Enables or disables the Activate software update.

Activate software-update is enabled by default.

### Parameters

#### disable

Disables the Activate software update.

#### enable

Enables the Activate software update.

### Example

Switch will check with activate for every seven days for latest image available and RMON logs will be generated:

```
I 10/25/16 14:04:27 05219 activate:  
A system software update is available to version WB.16.02.0012.
```

## activate software-update check

### Syntax

```
activate software-update check
```

### Description

Check the Activate software update manually.

## Example

```
switch(config)$# activate software-update check

Configuration and Status - Activate Software Update

  Activate Server Address      : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
  Activate Server Polling     : Enabled
  Installed Software Version   : WB.xx.xx
  Server Software Version     : Not available - server communication error.
  Server Software Image URL    : Not available - server communication error.
switch(config)$
```



**NOTE:** This switch is not connected to Activate, hence communication error is shown in “Server Software Version” and “Server Software Image URL” field.

## activate software-update update

### Syntax

```
switch#(config) activate software-update update
```

### Description

Updates the software for Activate.

### Parameters

#### primary

Update primary software image using the Aruba Activate server.

#### secondary

Update secondary software image using the Aruba Activate server.

### Example

```
switch# activate software-update update

This command will save the current configuration,
update the selected software image, and reboot the
system to the selected partition.

Continue (y/n)? y

000M
```

## show activate software-update

### Syntax

```
show activate software-update
```

### Description

Show the configuration and status of the Activate software update.

### Example output

```
switch(config)$ show activate software-update

Configuration and Status - Activate Software Update
```

```

Activate Server Address      : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activate Server Polling     : Enabled
Installed Software Version  : WB.xx.xx
Server Software Version     : Not available - server communication error.
Server Software Image URL   : Not available - server communication error.
switch(config)$

```

## Show activate provision

### Syntax

```
show activate provision
```

### Description

Show the configuration and status of the Activate Provision services.

### Examples

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision service
Activate server address      : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activate server polling     : Enabled
Activation key               : ABC-XYZ-123

```

### Default status when Activate server polling is not started

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service   : Enabled
Activate Server Address     : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key               : Not Available
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status   : Not Updated
Activate DNS Lookup         : NA
Proxy Server DNS Lookup     : NA
Activate Connection Status  : NA
Error Reason                 : NA

```

### Connected to Activate (post DNS resolution) and got Central URL

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service   : Enabled
Activate Server Address     : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key               : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTTP Time Sync Status   : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup         : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup     : NA
Activate Connection Status  : Success
Error Reason                 : NA

```

### Disable the Activate polling, after getting the Central URL

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

```

Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

Activate Provision Service   : Disabled
Activate Server Address     : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com

```

```
Activation Key           : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTP Time Sync Status : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup      : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup  : NA
Activate Connection Status : Success
Error Reason             : NA
```

### Unsuccessful Activate connection when device entry not present in Activate

```
switch(config)# show activate provision
```

#### Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address    : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key             : Not Available
NTP/HTP Time Sync Status  : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Resolution    : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup    : NA
Activate Connection Lookup : Failure
Error Reason              : Failed response received.
Status code               : not-authenticated
```

### Activate pushing AirWave parameters to switch

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

#### Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address    : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key             : ZAELQSRB
NTP/HTP Time Sync Status  : Time sync from NTP
Activate DNS Lookup        : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup    : NA
Activate Connection Status : Success
Error Reason              : NA
```

### Unsuccessful Activate connection due to unresolved Activate server address

```
switch(config)#show activate provision
```

#### Configuration and Status - Activate Provision Service

```
Activate Provision Service : Enabled
Activate Server Address    : devices-v2.arubanetworks.com
Activation Key             : Not Available
Time Sync Status          : Time sync from NTP pool
Activate DNS Lookup        : Failure
Proxy Server DNS Lookup    : NA
Activate Connection Status : NA
Error Reason              : NA
```



**NOTE:** DNS resolution is a field in the WebUI (under **Dependencies** section), it will show DNS resolution as *failure* .

Fields added in 16.07.	Status	Validation
Time sync status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Time sync from NTP</li> <li>Time sync from HTTP</li> <li>Time sync from other source</li> <li>Not updated</li> <li>NA</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default - Not updated, time is not updated from NTP and HTTP.</li> <li>NA - In this case switch get the time through SNTP/ CLI/time server configuration before NTP/ HTTP.</li> </ul>
Activate DNS Lookup.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Success</li> <li>Failure</li> <li>NA</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default - NA</li> <li>Other outputs are based on <b>devices-v2.arubanetworks.com</b> DNS lookup.</li> </ul>
Proxy Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Success</li> <li>Failure</li> <li>NA</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NA - If proxy is not configured.</li> <li>Other outputs are based on proxy lookup.</li> </ul>
Activate Connection Status.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Success</li> <li>Failure</li> <li>NA</li> </ul>	Default - NA
Error Reason		Default - NA

## Troubleshooting

You can troubleshoot switches by using the SSH connection and the device logs available in AirWave. For a list of all RMON message, refer to *Event Log Messages Guide* of your switch

You can enable the debug logging with the debug ztp command, see **debug ztp** .

## Show aruba-central

### Syntax

```
show aruba-central
```

### Description

Shows Aruba Central server information.

### Example

```
switch#show aruba-central
Configuration and Status - Aruba Central

Server URL           : https://internal.central.arubanetworks.com/ws
Connected            : Yes
Mode                 : Managed
Last Disconnect Time  : NA
Server DNS Lookup     : Success
Proxy Server DNS Lookup : NA
Error Reason          : NA
```

Fields added in 16.07.	Status	Validation
Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Success</li> <li>• Failure</li> <li>• NA</li> </ul>	By default status is NA. Other status is based on DNS resolution.
Proxy Server DNS Lookup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Success</li> <li>• Failure</li> <li>• NA</li> </ul>	If proxy is not configured, status will be NA. Otherwise Status will be set based on proxy server DNS lookup.
Error Reason		Default-NA

## debug ztp

### Syntax

```
debug ztp
no debug ztp
```

### Description

Enables or disables ZTP debug logging.

### Parameters and options

#### ztp

Zero Touch Provisioning.

#### no

The `no debug ztp` command disables ZTP debug logging.

## Stacking support

The ZTP process for stacked switches with Central is similar to the one for a standalone switch, with the exception that only the commander in the stack checks in with Central. For switches supported on Central when stacking is ON, refer to the *Aruba Central Switch Configuration Guide*.

## HTTP Proxy support with ZTP overview

The Aruba switch connects through Public Cloud or infrastructure to access Aruba Activate and Aruba Central. The switch can use a combination of the Public and Private networks to access Aruba AirWave, and Aruba ClearPass. In this case, the switch is visible as an Internet asset that can cause data breaching. Routing connections through the enterprise proxy servers prevents the data breaching.

The ArubaOS-Switch does not set up an HTTP/SSL connection with the public or private server directly. Instead, the switch sets up a TCP connection with the proxy server.

If the public server is available and reachable through the proxy server, then the switch connection to the destination server is successful. After establishing the connection, the proxy server behaves as a Network Address Translation (NAT) device, in which case, the proxy server forwards the received packets to the intended destinations.

### Limitations:



- HTTPS proxy is not supported.
- Authenticating the HTTP proxy is not supported.
- HTTP proxy support is only for IPv4 endpoints.

### Configuring ZTP:

When the switch is provisioned for Central or Controller, switch is managed once it is connected to the public network. In case the user wants to reach the public network through the proxy, then the IP address of the proxy server must be present in the switch before initiating the Activate or Central connectivity.

In ZTP mode, the proxy IP address can be received using the DHCP option. The ZTP mode works when the switch is booted with a default configuration. For the switch to connect to public servers through proxy, the proxy IP must be known through DHCP. The switch requests an IP address from the primary VLAN.

The proxy IP address is received through a vendor-specific DHCP option. The switch parses and uses the proxy IP address to connect in ZTP mode. Aruba switches reserve suboption -148 under DHCP vendor-specific option 43 for configuring proxy URL.

After the switch is out of ZTP mode, the proxy IP address if configured through CLI takes precedence. Otherwise, the Aruba OS switch may use the DHCP received proxy IP address for connectivity.

## e Proxy Configuration

When configuring the proxy server, the following applications will be taking the proxy route to reach the destination. You can configure the proxy server as indicated in DHCP or `proxy server` command.

- Aruba AirWave
- Aruba Activate
- Firmware download through MNP
- Aruba ClearPass connectivity
- Aruba Central connectivity
- TR69 support

### Support for Aruba AirWave

AirWave is used to manage the ArubaOS-Switches and its communication to the switch is over HTTPS. When AirWave is deployed with Aruba controller, an IPsec tunnel is created between the switch and the controller. All the communication between the switch and AirWave occurs through the tunnel. In this case, the proxy is bypassed implicitly.

AirWave establishes ICMP, SNMP, and SSH connections to the switch for switch management. Since AirWave does not have the visibility for the switch IP address, the ICMP, SNMP, and SSH connections will not be initiated to the switch. So reverse NAT functionality must be enabled for ensuring these packets reach the switch. If AirWave must work without proxy, then AirWave IP is bypassed explicitly.

### Support for Aruba ClearPass

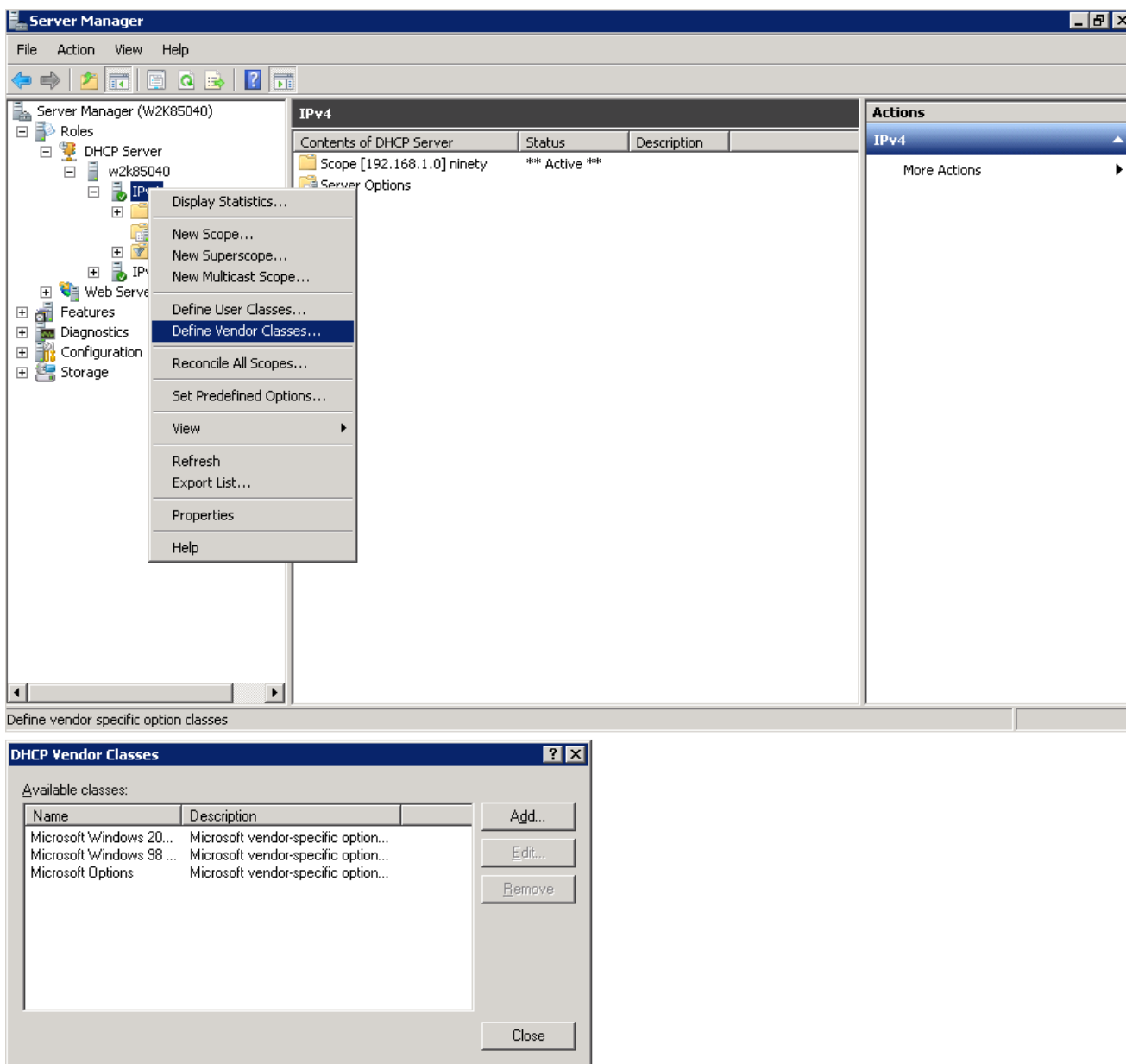
For downloading a user role from ClearPass, switch initiates HTTPS connection with ClearPass. If the proxy is configured, proxy server is used to reach ClearPass. When ClearPass is deployed with Aruba controller, ClearPass must be explicitly exempted from proxy. Add the ClearPass IP address in the exception list of the proxy as the communication happens through the IPsec tunnel or normally.

### Proxy Configuration using windows DHCP server

In the ZTP provisioning, you can push the Proxy server and exception configurations through a Windows DHCP server using DHCP option 148.

## Procedure

1. Add a new **DHCP Server** role. Navigate to **Server Manager > Roles > DHCP sever > domain DHCP Server > IPv4**. In the master pane of the Server Manager window, click **IPv4** and select **Define Vendor classes**.



2. To get vendor-specific value of a switch, go to switch command prompt and enter `show dhcp client vendor-specific` command. Vendor class identifier for the switch (VCI) appears as follows:

```
Switch# show dhcp client vendor-specific
```

```
Vendor Class Id = J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch
```

Processing of Vendor Specific Configuration is enabled.

3. Add **Displayed name** and **Description** for the **New Vendor Class** in the ASCII field, add `J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch` value exactly obtained from the switch, otherwise the option may not work.

New Class

Display name:

HP J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch

Description:

HP J9854A 2530-24G-PoE+-2SFP+ Switch

ID:

Binary:

ASCII:

0000	48	50	20	4A	39	38	35	34	HP J9854
0008	41	20	32	35	33	30	2D	32	A 2530-2
0010	34	47	2D	50	6F	45	2B	2D	4G-PoE+-
0018	32	53	46	50	2B	20	53	77	2SFP+ Sw
0020	69	74	63	68					itch

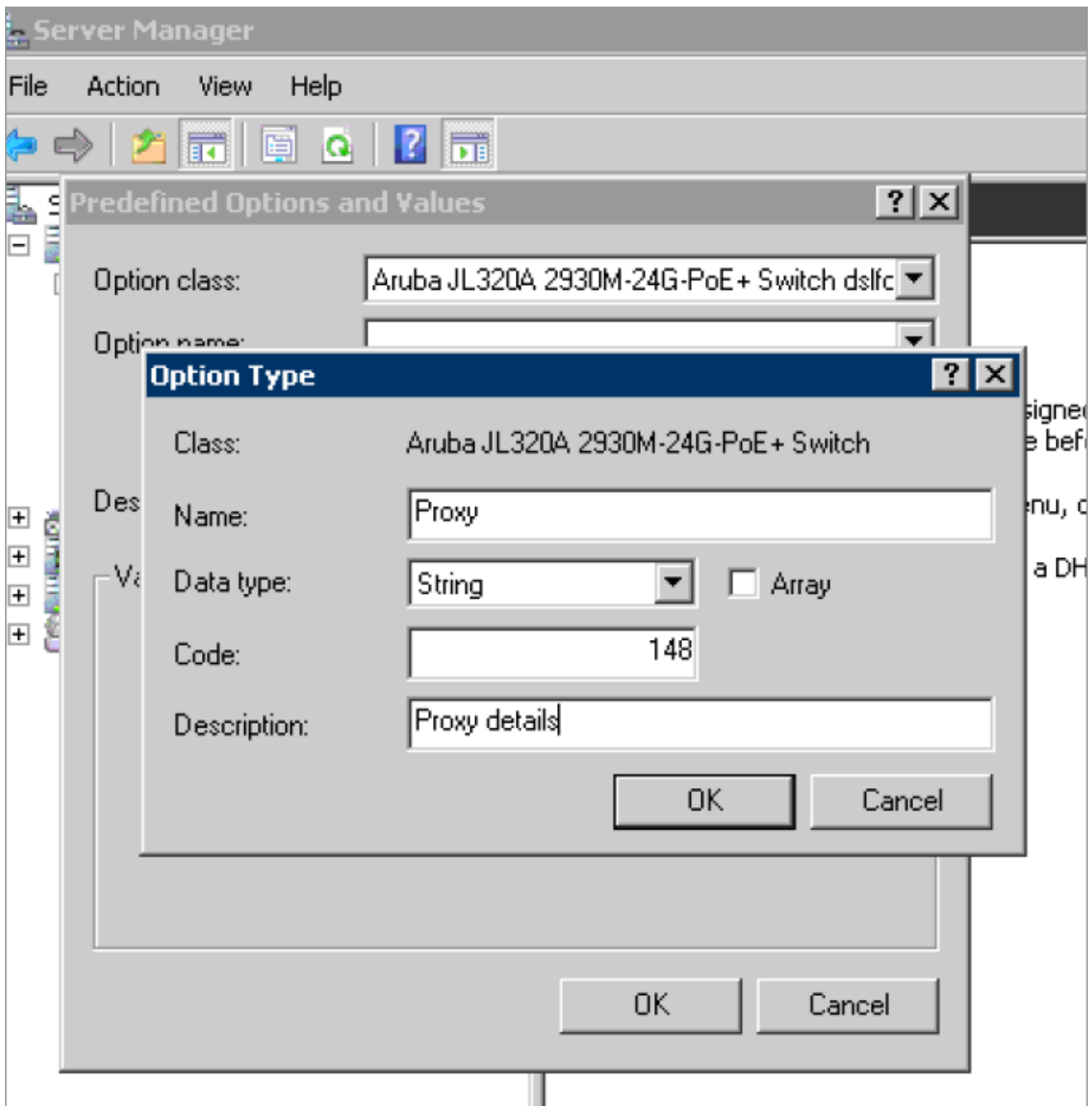
OK

Cancel

4. Right-click **IPv4** and select **Set Predefined Options**. Select option class as the newly defined vendor class, click **ADD** and enter the following information for Proxy details:
  - a. Name - Proxy
  - b. Data Type - String
  - c. Code - 148
  - d. Description - Proxy details.

Chapter 11 Zero Touch Provisioning with AirWave and Central

287



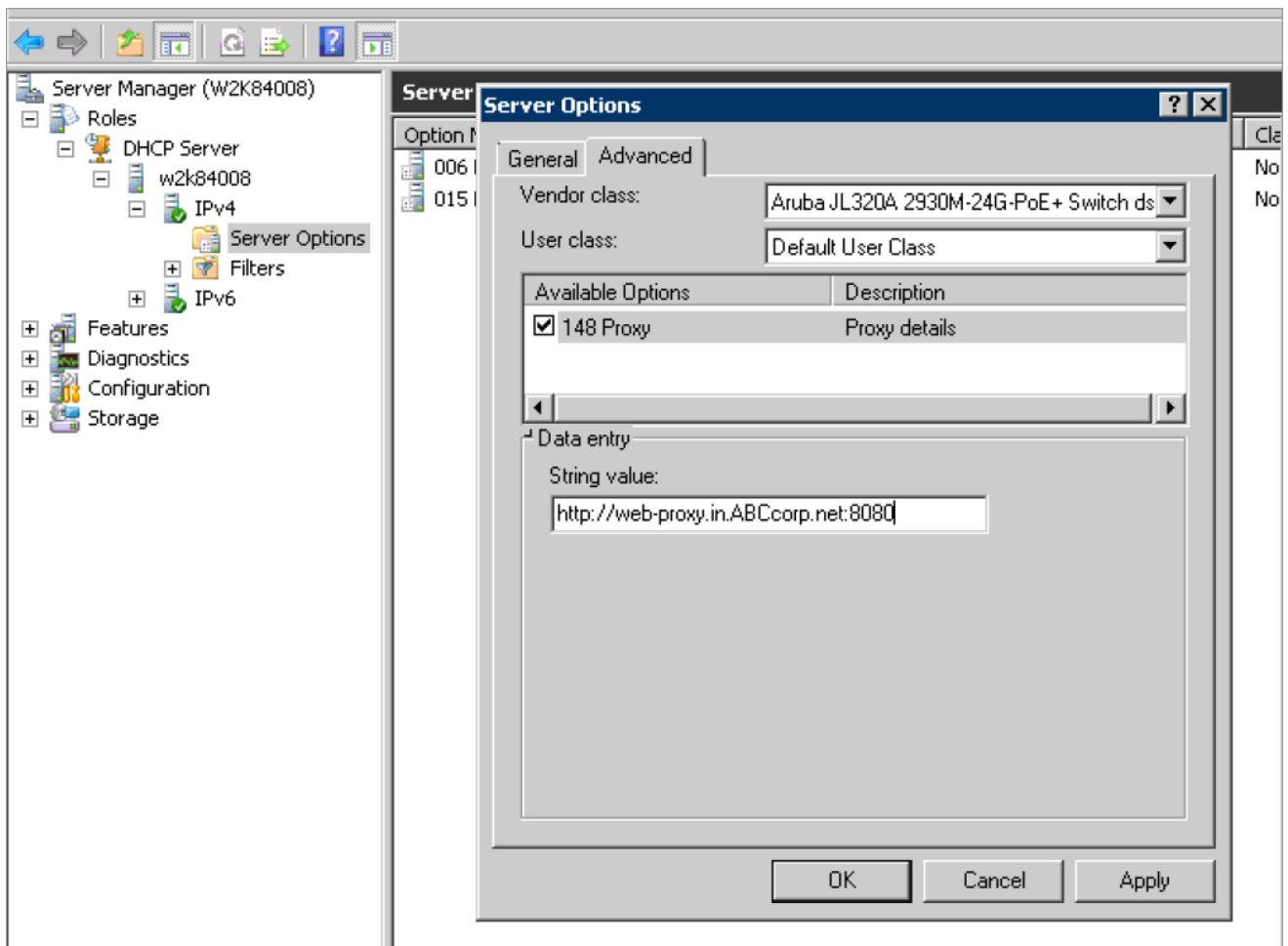
Now the new vendor class will have new suboption with code 148. Next is to add these vendor class and suboptions to the scope. To add proxy server details to scope, navigate to **Server Manager** and select **Server Options** in the **IPv4** window.

5. Right click server options and select **Configure options**. Go to **Advanced** tab, select the vendor class from the menu as the newly defined class. New suboptions that are added appears.

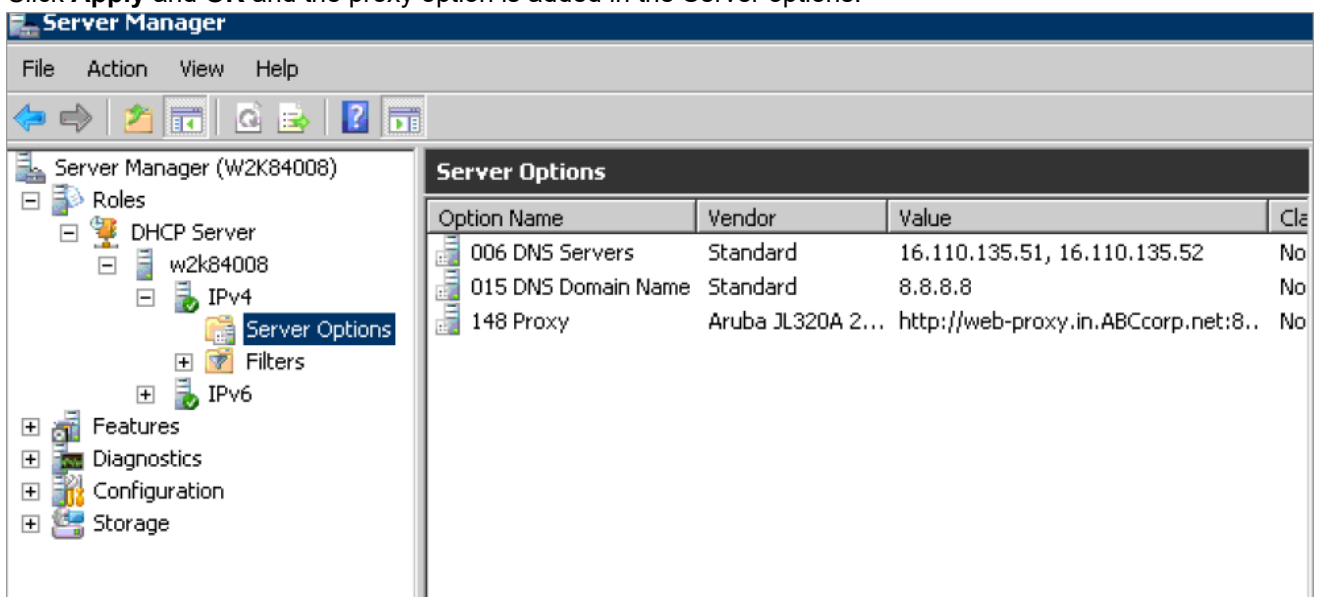
Check 148 and add Proxy details in string value field, in the format as mentioned:

<http://web-proxy.in.ABCcorp.net:8080> or <http://192.168.50.18:3128>

Check 144 and add configuration filename in string value field (optional).



6. Click **Apply** and **OK** and the proxy option is added in the Server options.



7. Now restart the DHCP service and download new DHCP attributes in the switch, you can check that the proxy details are correctly downloaded in the switch using the `show proxy config` command.

## proxy server

### Syntax

```
proxy server <http://<ip-addr/FQDN>:port number>
```

```
no proxy server
```

### Description

Configures the URL/IP address to reach the proxy server. Provide the correct proxy port number along with the URL/IP address. Port number must be in the range of 1024 to 65535. HTTPS proxy server is not supported.

The `no` form of this command removes the proxy server.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Parameters

*url:port number*

Specifies the URL address with port number for the proxy server.

### Parameters

*ip-addr:port number*

Specifies the IP address with port number for the proxy server.

### Example

```
switch(config)# proxy server "http://web-proxy.au.abccorp.net:3128"  
switch(config)# proxy server "http://192.168.0.6:8080"
```

## proxy exception ip | host

### Syntax

```
proxy exception ip | host {ip-addr/mask-length | hostname}
```

```
no proxy exception ip | host {ip-addr/mask-length | hostname}
```

### Description

Configures an IPv4 address/mask length and URL to the list of IP address and host, which can be reached without the HTTP proxy server.

The `no` form of this command removes the proxy exception for the specified entry (IPv4 address/host name).

### Command context

```
config
```

### Parameters

*ip-addr/mask-length | hostname*

Specifies IPv4 address/mask length and host name.

## Example

```
switch(config)# proxy exception ip 192.168.0.10/12
switch(config)# proxy exception host "http://web-proxy.au.abdcorp.net:3128"
```

## show proxy config

### Syntax

```
show proxy config
```

### Description

Shows the proxy configuration.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Examples

```
switch(config)# show proxy config
```

Http Proxy Configuration details

Server URL : http://web-proxy.au.abccorp.net:3128

Manually configured exceptions

No	Exception
1	192.168.0.10/12
2	http://web-proxy.au.abdcorp.net:3128

Automatically added exceptions

No	Exception
1	2.0.0.9



**NOTE:** On configuring IPsec tunnel, Airwave IP is automatically added as an exception in the switch. The IPsec tunnel is configured directly over the network bypassing the HTTP proxy server.

## LACP-MAD Passthrough commands

### Configuration command

The following command defines whether LACP is enabled on a port, and whether it is in active or passive mode when enabled. When LACP is enabled and active, the port sends LACP packets and listens to them. When LACP is enabled and passive, the port sends LACP packets only if it is spoken to. When LACP is disabled, the port ignores LACP packets. If the command is issued without a mode parameter, 'active' is assumed. During dynamic link aggregation using LACP, ports with the same key are aggregated as a single trunk. MAD passthrough applies only to trunks and not to physical ports.

```
switch# no interface <port-list> lacp [mad-passthrough <enable|disable>|active|passive|key <key>]
```

### show commands

LACP-MAD supports the following show commands:

- show LACP-MAD passthrough configuration on LACP trunks

```
switch# show lacp [counters [<port-list>] | local [<port-list>] |peer [<port-list>] | distributed | mad-passthrough [counters [<port-list>]]]
```

- show LACP-MAD passthrough counters on ports

```
switch# show lacp mad-passthrough counters [<port-list>]
```

### clear command

Clear all LACP statistics including MAD passthrough counters. Resets LACP packets sent and received on all ports.

```
switch# clear lacp statistics
```

## LACP-MAD overview

Link Aggregation Control Protocol-Multi-Active Detection (LACP-MAD) is a detection mechanism deployed by switches to recover from a breakup of the Virtual Switching Framework (VSF) stack due to link or other failure.

LACP-MAD is implemented by sending extended LACP data units (LACPDUs) with a type length value (TLV) that conveys the active ID of an VSF virtual device. The active ID is identical to the member ID of the master and is thus unique to the VSF virtual device. When LACP MAD detection is enabled, the members exchange their active IDs by sending extended LACPDUs.

- When the VSF virtual device operates normally, the active IDs in the extended LACPDUs sent by all members are the same, indicating that there is no multi-active collision.
- When there is a breakup in the VSF stack, the active IDs in the extended LACPDUs sent by the members in different VSF virtual devices are different, indicating that there are multi-active collisions.



LACP-MAD passthrough helps VSF-capable devices detect multi-access and take corrective action. These devices do not initiate transmission of LACP-MAD frames or participate in any MAD decision making process. These devices simply forward LACP-MAD TLVs received on one interface to the other interfaces on the trunk. LACP-MAD passthrough can be enabled for 24 LACP trunks. By default, LACP-MAD passthrough is disabled.

## Overview

To simplify the deployment of mobility and IoT devices, Aruba switches have a mechanism to automatically detect devices based on their LLDP signatures and apply configuration to the port to which they are connected. This reduces the time needed to add, move, or change devices on the network and also eliminates potential misconfigurations on the port.

Device Profiles allow an administrator to create configuration containers for different classes of devices and associate them with certain device types. The configuration containers are stored as part of the config, but do not come into effect until a device with the right LLDP signature is connected to a port on that switch. Device profiles allow network administrators to apply port settings automatically, eliminating configuration mistakes as well as reducing the time taken to connect wired devices.

Organization-specific TLVs and subtypes that come as part of LLDP messages are used to detect and apply profiles to devices. A maximum of 16 devices can be detected and defined using Device Profiles. The following sections talk about the operational steps that need to be followed to add Mobility and IoT devices as well as features such as Rogue AP detection that can be used for mobile-first deployments with Aruba APs.

## Auto configuring Aruba APs

The auto device detection and configuration detects a directly connected Aruba AP dynamically and applies predefined configurations to ports on which the Aruba AP is detected.

You can create port configuration profiles, associate them to a device type, and enable or disable a device type. One of the device types supported is `aruba-ap` and it is used to identify all the Aruba APs.

When a configured device type is connected on a port, the system automatically applies the corresponding port profile. Connected devices are identified using LLDP. When the LLDP information on the port ages out, the device profile is removed.

By default, the device profile feature is disabled. When you enable the device profile support for a device type, if no other device profile is mapped to the device type, the default device profile `default-ap-profile` is associated with the device type. You can modify the AP default device profile configuration but you cannot delete it. The `default-ap-profile` command supports only the AP device type.



**NOTE:** Only APs which are connected directly will be detected.

## Associating a device with a profile

To associate an Aruba access point (AP) device-type to a user-defined profile, use the context `Switch(device-aruba-ap) #`. All Aruba access points use the identifier **aruba-ap**.

The `no` form of the command removes the device type association and disables the feature for the device type.

The feature is disabled by default.

### device-profile name

#### Syntax

```
device-profile name <PROFILE-NAME> [untagged-vlan <VLAN-ID> |
                                     tagged-vlan <VLAN-LIST> | cos <COS-VALUE> |
                                     ingress-bandwidth <Percentage> |
                                     egress-bandwidth <Percentage> |
```

```
{poe-priority {critical | high | low} |  
speed-duplex {auto |auto-10 | auto-100 | ...} |  
poe-max-power <Watts> |  
allow-jumbo-frames | allow-tunneled-node]
```

```
no device-profile name <PROFILE-NAME> [untagged-vlan <VLAN-ID> |  
tagged-vlan <VLAN-LIST> | cos <COS-VALUE> |  
ingress-bandwidth <Percentage> |  
egress-bandwidth <Percentage> |  
{poe-priority {critical | high | low} |  
speed-duplex {auto |auto-10 | auto-100 | ...} |  
poe-max-power <Watts> |  
allow-jumbo-frames | allow-tunneled-node]
```

## Description

This command is used to create a user-defined profile. A profile is a named collection of port settings applied as a group. You can modify the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it. You can create four additional profiles.

The `no` form of the command removes the user-defined profiles.

The `default-ap-profile` has the following values:

- `untagged-vlan: 1`
- `tagged-vlan: None`
- `ingress-bandwidth: 100`
- `egress-bandwidth: 100`
- `cos: 0`
- `speed-duplex: auto`
- `poe-max-power: class/LLDP`
- `poe-priority: critical`

You can modify these parameters. For example, you can execute `no untagged-vlan` to create a device profile with tagged only ports.

## Parameters

`name`

Specifies the name of the profile to be configured. The profile names can be at most 32 characters long.

`cos`

The Class of Service (CoS) priority for traffic from the device.

`untagged-vlan`

The port is an untagged member of specified VLAN.

`tagged-vlan`

The port is a tagged member of the specified VLANs.

`allow-tunneled node`

Configuration to allow Tunneled Node when device profile is applied on port.

`ingress-bandwidth`

The ingress maximum bandwidth for the device port.

`egress-bandwidth`

The egress maximum bandwidth for the device port.

`poe-priority`

The PoE priority for the device port.

`speed-duplex`

The speed and duplex for the device port.

`poe-max-power`

The maximum PoE power for the device port. The value is set based on PD Class detection and/or LLDP negotiation. `poe-max-power` will have class appropriate value depending on the class of your AP. (Example: class4 = 25.5W, class 3=13W, class2=6.49W, class1=3.84W, class0=13W)

### Restrictions

- You can modify the configuration parameters of the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it or change its name.
- The profile configuration is only applicable to access points.

## device-profile type

From within the configure context:

### Syntax

```
device-profile type <DEVICE> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable ]
```

### Description

This command specifies an approved device type in order to configure and attach a profile to it. The profile's configuration is applied to any port where a device of this type is connected.

### Approved device types

#### aruba-ap

Aruba access point device.

#### arubaos-switch

ArubaOS switch

### Parameters

From within the **device-aruba-ap** context

#### associate <PROFILE-NAME>

Associated the specified device type by profile name.

#### enable

Enables the automatic profile association.

#### disable

Disables the automatic profile association.

### Usage

```
no device-profile type <DEVICE> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> |enable | disable]
```



---

**NOTE:** The device types supported are `aruba-ap` and `arubaos-switch`.

---

## device-profile type device-name

### Syntax

```
device-profile type [aruba-ap | aruba-switch | scs-wan-cpe |  
device-name <DEVICE-NAME> associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable]
```

```
no device-profile type [aruba-ap | aruba-switch | scs-wan-cpe |  
device-name <DEVICE-NAME> associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable]
```

### Description

Associates the device profile with the type of device by identity.

The `no` form of this command removes the device profile from the device type.

### Command context

`config`

### Parameters

**associate** <PROFILE-NAME>

Selects the profile name associated with the device-type.

**enable**

Selects the profile of the device being enabled.

**disable**

Selects the profile of the device being disabled.

### Usage

- The command `device-profile type aruba-ap enable` enables profile for Aruba-AP.
- Device Name is defined the same as Device Identity.

## show device-profile

### Syntax

Within the configure context:

```
show device-profile
```

### Description

Show device profile configuration and status.

### config

Show the device profile configuration details for a single, or all, profiles.

### status

Show currently applied device profiles.

## Usage

```
show device-profile config <PROFILE-NAME>
```

```
show device-profile status
```

---

### show device-profile config

```
Switch# Show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

---

### show device-profile config profile1

```
Switch(device-profile)# show device-p config test

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : profile1
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

## show command device-profile status

### Syntax

```
show device-profile [config | status]
```

### Description

Displays the device-profile configuration or device-profile status.

### Parameters

#### config

Show device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.

#### status

Show currently applied device profiles status.

## show device-profile status

```
Switch# show device-profile status
```

Device Profile	Status	
Port	Device Type	Applied Device Profile
----	-----	-----
5	aruba-ap	profile1
10	aruba-ap	profile1

## show device-profile config

### Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

### Description

Shows the device profile configuration.

### Command context

config

### Examples

Use the command `show device-profile config` to display the device profile configuration.

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config
```

```
Device Profile Configuration
```

```
Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
```

```
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

```
Configuration for device-profile : test
```

```
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

```
Configuration for device-profile : default-aos-profile
```

```
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
```

```
cos           : None
speed-duplex  : auto
poe-max-power : Class/LLDP
poe-priority  : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

Configuration for device-profile : default-scs-profile

```
untagged-vlan : 1
tagged-vlan   : None
ingress-bandwidth : 100%
egress-bandwidth : 100%
cos           : None
speed-duplex  : auto
poe-max-power : Class/LLDP
poe-priority  : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

Configuration for device-profile : default-device-profile

```
untagged-vlan : 1
tagged-vlan   : None
ingress-bandwidth : 100%
egress-bandwidth : 100%
cos           : None
speed-duplex  : auto
poe-max-power : Class/LLDP
poe-priority  : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

Device Profile Association

```
Device Type   : aruba-ap
Profile Name   : default-ap-profile
Device Status  : Disabled

Device Type   : aruba-switch
Profile Name   : default-aos-profile
Device Status  : Disabled

Device Type   : scs-wan-cpe
Profile Name   : default-scs-profile
Device Status  : Disabled
```

## show device-profile status

### Syntax

```
show device-profile status
```

### Description

Shows the profile status of the device.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Example

Use the show device-profile status command to view status.



```
switch(config)# show device-profile status
Port      Device-type      Applied device profile
-----
A1        <device-name>      abc
```

## Default AP Profile

Creates a user-defined profile.

The profile name is a valid character string with the maximum permissible length of 32. The default profile is named `default-ap-profile` and cannot be modified.

The default configuration parameters may be modified using the command `device-<PROFILE NAME> default-ap-profile`. Up to four different profiles may be configured.

The `no` command removes the user-defined profiles.

## allow-jumbo-frames

### Syntax

```
allow-jumbo-frames
```

### Description

Configure jumbo frame support for the device port. Jumbo frames are not enabled by default.

## Auto configuring IoT Devices

Wired IoT devices can also be automatically configured using device profiles. Since the market for IoT devices is vast, with several hundred manufacturers and thousands of devices, instead of hardcoding the LLDP signatures, Aruba switches provide a way for an administrator to create a device type for the IoT devices in their deployment. By associating the custom device type that they create with a device profile, users can leverage the power profiles not only for Aruba devices but also for other manufacturers. The requirement for automatic detection of IoT devices is that they should support LLDP.

## Creating a device identity and associating a device type

### Procedure

1. Create a device identity using the command:

```
switch# device-identity name <DEVICE-NAME>
```

2. Specify the OUI used in LLDP's organization using specific TLV, (type =127). OUI should be in XXXXXX format. The default OUI "000000" indicates that device-identity will not use LLDP to identify device:

```
switch(config)# device-identity name <DEVICE-NAME> lldp oui <MAC_OUI>
sub-type <SUBTYPE>
```

To add new device on switch:

```
switch(config)# device-identity name abc lldp oui a1b2c3 sub 2
```

To remove device from switch:

```
switch(config)# no device-identity name abc
```

3. Show device identity configuration:

```
switch(config)# show device-identity lldp
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Oui	Subtype
1	abc	a1b2c3	2



**NOTE:** The maximum devices that can be configured using device-identity are 16. The maximum devices that can be associated using device-profile are 19. The maximum profiles that can be created using device-profile are 17.

## show device-identity

### Syntax

```
show device-identity
```

### Description

Specify name of the device to be discovered.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Usage

```
device-identity name <device_name> lldp oui <mac_oui> subtype <subtype>
```

```
no device-identity name <device_name> lldp oui <mac_oui> subtype <subtype>
```

### Example

```
device-identity name avayaPhone lldp oui 00096e sub-type 1
```

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-identity
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Protocol
1	avayaPhone	LLDP

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-identity lldp
```

Device Identity Configuration

Index	Device name	Oui	Subtype
1	avayaPhone	00096e	1

## device-profile type-device associate

From within the configure context:

### Syntax

```
device-profile type-device <DEVICE_NAME> [associate <PROFILE-NAME> | enable | disable ]
```

## Description

Specify device name defined in device-identity in order to configure and attach a profile to it. Device identity uses discovery protocol like LLDP to identify device. LLDP makes use of OUI and sub type of organizational specific TLV type 127 to detect device.

## Approved device types

### aruba-ap

Aruba access point device.

### arubaos-switch

ArubaOS switch

## Parameters

### <DEVICE\_NAME>

Defines in device-identity.

### associate <PROFILE-NAME>

Associated the specified device type by profile name.

### enable

Enables the automatic profile association.

### disable

Disables the automatic profile association.

## Usage

Use the following command to configure a device:

```
device-identity name <DEVICE_NAME> lldp oui <OUI> subtype <SUBTYPE>.
```

## Example

```
device-p device-type avayaPhone associate avaya
```



**NOTE:** The device types supported are `aruba-ap` and `arubaos-switch`.

## show device-profile config

## Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

## Description

Shows the device profile configuration.

## Command context

```
config
```

## Examples

Use the command `show device-profile config` to display the device profile configuration.

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-p con avaya
```

## Device Profile Configuration

```
Configuration for device-profile : avaya
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

## show device-profile status

### Syntax

```
show device-profile [config | status]
```

### Description

Displays the device-profile configuration or device-profile status.

### Parameters

#### config

Show device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.

#### status

Show currently applied device profiles status.

## show device-profile status

```
Switch# show device-profile status
```

Device Profile Status

Port	Device-type	Applied device profile
A2	avayaPhone	avaya

## Support for Aruba device types

The following Aruba device types are supported:

- Aruba-AP
- ArubaOS-Switch
- Any device that can be defined using LLDP OUI and subtype in the switch

## Isolating Rogue APs

One of the important features to turn on in a mobile-first deployment is the ability of the switches to detect and quarantine rogue access points. Administrators would like to prevent unauthorized access to their networks and a rogue AP can open up the network to unwanted users and traffic.

The Rogue AP Isolation feature detects and blocks any unauthorized APs in the network. You can either log or block the rogue device. If the action requested is to log the rogue device, the MAC address of the rogue device is

logged in the system logs (RMON). If the action is to block the rogue device, the traffic to and from the MAC address of the rogue device is blocked. The MAC is also logged in the system log.

When an Aruba AP detects a rogue AP on the network, it sends out the MAC address of the AP as well as the MAC of the clients connected to the AP to the switch using the ArubaOS-Switch proprietary LLDP TLV protocol. The switch then adds a rule in its hardware table to block all the traffic originating from the rogue AP's MAC address.

The `rogue-ap-isolation` command configures the rogue AP isolation for the switch and gives the option to enable or disable the rogue AP isolation feature. The `rogue-ap-isolation action` command gives you the ability to block the traffic to or from the rogue device or log the MAC of the rogue device. When the action is set to block, the rogue MAC is logged as well. By default, the action is set to block.

The `rogue-ap-isolation whitelist` command lets you add devices detected as possible rogue APs to the whitelist. A maximum of 128 MAC addresses are supported for the whitelist.

The `clear rogue-aps` command clears the detected rogue AP device MAC address.

## Using the Rogue AP Isolation feature

### Procedure

1. Check the feature state:

```
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation

Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Disabled
Rogue AP Action : Block

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

2. Enable the feature:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation enable
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation

Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Enabled
Rogue AP Action : Block

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

3. Change the action type from block to log:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation action log
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation

Rogue AP Isolation

Rogue AP Status : Enabled
Rogue AP Action : Log

Rogue MAC Address Neighbour MAC Address
-----
```

#### 4. List the current whitelist entries:

```
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

Rogue AP Whitelist Configuration

Rogue AP MAC
-----
```

#### 5. Add a new whitelist entry:

```
switch# rogue-ap-isolation whitelist 005056-00326a
switch# show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

Rogue AP Whitelist Configuration

Rogue AP MAC
-----
00:50:56:00:32:6a
```

## rogue-ap-isolation

### syntax

```
rogue-ap-isolation {enable | disable}
```

### Description

Configures the rogue AP isolation for the switch.

### Parameters

enable

Enables the rogue AP isolation.

disable

Disables the rogue AP isolation.

## rogue-ap-isolation action

### syntax

```
rogue-ap-isolation action {log | block}
```

### Description

Configures the action to take for the rogue AP packets. This function is disabled by default.

### Parameters

action

Configure the action to take for rogue AP packets. By default, the rogue AP packets are blocked.

### Parameters

log

Logs traffic to or from any rogue access points.

block

Blocks and logs traffic to or from any rogue access points.

## rogue-ap-isolation whitelist

### syntax

```
no rogue-ap-isolation whitelist <MAC-ADDRESS>
```

### Description

Configures the rogue AP Whitelist MAC addresses for the switch. Use this command to add to the whitelist the MAC addresses of approved access points or MAC addresses of clients connected to the rogue access points. These approved access points will not be added to the rogue AP list even if they are reported as rogue devices.

### Parameters

MAC-ADDRESS

Specifies the MAC address of the device to be moved from the rogue AP list to the whitelist.

### Parameters

no

Removes the MAC address individually by specifying the MAC.

### Restrictions

You can add a maximum of 128 MAC addresses to the whitelist.

## clear rogue-ap-isolation

### syntax

```
clear rogue-ap-isolation { <MAC-ADDRESS> | all }
```

### Description

Removes the MAC addresses from the rogue AP list.

### Parameters

MAC-ADDRESS

Specifies the MAC address of the device to be moved from the rogue AP list.

all

Clears all MAC addresses from the rogue AP list.

### Restrictions

The MAC addresses cleared using this option will be added back to the rogue list under the following cases:

1. The LLDP administrator status of the port on which the AP that reported the MAC is disabled and enabled back.
2. The data that is in the rogue AP TLV sent from the AP that informed the rogue MAC has changed.
3. To permanently ignore a MAC from being detected as rogue, add it to the whitelist.

## Feature Interactions

## L3 MAC

The Rogue AP isolation feature will not block a MAC configured as an IP receive MAC address on a VLAN interface. This event will be logged in RMON if such MACs are detected as rogue.

Conversely, any MAC already blocked by Rogue AP isolation will not be allowed to be configured as an IP receive MAC address of a VLAN interface.

For example:

```
switch# vlan 1 ip-recv-mac-address 247703-3effbb
Cannot add an entry for the MAC address 247703-3effbb because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

## Limitations

- You can add a maximum of 128 MAC addresses to the whitelist.
- When a MAC is already authorized by any of the port security features such as LMA, WMA, or 802.1X, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- When a MAC is already configured as an IP received MAC of a VLAN interface, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it by using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- When a MAC is already locked out via `lockout-mac` or locked down using the `static-mac` configuration, the MAC is logged but you cannot block it using the `rogue-ap-isolation` feature. A RMON event is logged to notify the user.
- The number of rogue MACs supported on a switch is a function of the value of `max-vlans` at boot time. Since the resources are shared with the `lockout-mac` feature, the scale is dependent on how many lockout addresses have been configured on the switch using the `lockout-mac` feature. The following table lists the scale when there are no lockout addresses configured on the switch:

Max VLAN	Supported MACs
0 < VLAN <= 8	200
8 < VLAN <= 16	100
16 < VLAN <= 256	64
256 < VLAN <= 1024	16
1024 < VLAN <= 2048	8
2048 < VLAN <= 4094	4

The switch will create an RMON log entry and the rogue MAC will be ignored when the limit is reached.



**NOTE:** If the `max-vlans` value is changed to a different value, the scale of rogue MACs supported will not change until the next reboot.



## Troubleshooting

### Switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs

#### Symptom

The switch does not detect the rogue AP TLVs that could be sent from the neighboring device.

#### Cause

The LLDP administrator status of a port is moved from `txOnly` to `tx_rx` or `rx_only` within 120 seconds of the previous state change to `txOnly`.

#### Action

1. Wait for 120 seconds before moving from the state `txOnly` to the state `tx_rx` or `rx_only`.
2. Move the administrator status to `disable` and then back to `tx_rx` or `rx_only`.

### Show commands

Use the following show commands to view the various configurations and status.

Command	Description
<code>show rogue-ap-isolation</code>	Shows the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The status of the feature: enabled or disabled.</li><li>• The current action type for the rogue MACs detected.</li><li>• The list of MAC addresses detected as rogue and the MAC address of the AP that reported them.</li></ul>
<code>show rogue-ap-isolation whitelist</code>	Shows the rogue AP whitelist configuration.

## Requirements

Only APs directly connected to the switch will be detected.

## Limitations

- Only one device type is supported, `aruba-ap`, and it is used to identify all the Aruba APs.
- You can modify the configuration parameters of the default profile, `default-ap-profile`, but you cannot delete it or change its name.
- If the port was part of any protocol VLANs prior to the device profile application, those VLANs will not be removed while applying the device profile.
- Enabling jumbo frame support in a profile affects other ports with different profiles. When a profile has jumbo frames enabled and is applied to any port, all other ports that are members of any VLAN listed in the profile will also have jumbo frame support.

# Feature Interactions

## Profile Manager and 802.1X

Profile Manager interoperates with RADIUS when it is working in the client mode. When a port is blocked due to 802.1X authentication failure, the LLDP packets cannot come in on that port. Therefore, the Aruba AP cannot be detected and the device profile cannot be applied. When the port gets authenticated, the LLDP packets comes in, the AP is detected, and the device profile is applied.

You must ensure that the RADIUS server will not supply additional configuration such as VLAN or CoS during the 802.1X authentication as they will conflict with the configuration applied by the Profile Manager. If the RADIUS server supplies any such configurations to a port, the device profile will not be applied on such ports.

## Profile Manager and LMA/WMA/MAC-AUTH

If either LMA, WMA, or MAC-AUTH is enabled on an interface, all the MAC addresses reaching the port must be authenticated. If LMA, WMA, or MAC-AUTH is configured on an interface, the user can have more granular control and does not need the device profile configuration. Therefore, the device profile will not be applied on such interface.

## Profile manager and Private VLANs

When the device profile is applied, a check is performed to verify if the VLAN addition violates any PVLAN requirements. The following PVLAN related checks are done before applying the VLANs configured in the device profile to an interface:

- A port can be a member of only one VLAN from a given PVLAN instance.
- A promiscuous port cannot be a member of a secondary VLAN.

## MAC lockout and lockdown

The Rogue AP isolation feature uses the MAC lockout feature to block MACs in hardware. Therefore, any MAC blocked with the Rogue AP isolation feature cannot be added with the `lockout-mac` or `static-mac` command if the action type is set to `block`.

For example:

```
switch# lockout-mac 247703-7a8950
Cannot add the entry for the MAC address 247703-7a8950 because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

```
switch# static-mac 247703-7a8950 vlan 1 interface 1
Cannot add the entry for the MAC address 247703-7a8950 because it is already
blocked by rogue-ap-isolation.
```

Similarly, any MAC that was added with the `lockout-mac` or `static-mac` command and that is being detected as rogue will be logged, but not blocked in hardware as it already is set to block. If the MAC is removed from `lockout-mac` or `static-mac` but is still in the rogue device list, it will be blocked back in hardware if the action type is `block`.

## LMA/WMA/802.1X/Port-Security

Any configuration using LMA, WMA, 802.1X, or Port-Security will not be blocked if the Rogue AP isolation feature is enabled. All these features act only when a packet with the said MAC is received on a port.

If `rogue-ap-isolation` blocks a MAC before it is configured to be authorized, packets from such MACs will be dropped until one of the following happens:

- Rogue action is changed to LOG.
- Rogue-AP isolation feature is disabled.
- The MAC is not detected as rogue anymore.
- LLDP is disabled on the port (or globally).

Once a MAC has been authorized by one of these features, it will not be blocked by Rogue AP isolation. A RMON will be logged to indicate the failure to block.

The Rogue AP module will retry to block any such MACs periodically. In the event of the MAC no longer being authorized, Rogue AP isolation will block the MAC again. No RMON is logged to indicate this event.

## Troubleshooting

### Dynamic configuration not displayed when using “show running-config”

#### Symptom

The `show running-config` command does not display the dynamic configuration applied through the device profile.

#### Cause

The `show running-config` command shows only the permanent user configuration and parameters configured through device profile.

#### Action

Use the specific `show device-profile` command to display the parameters dynamically configured through the device profile.

### The `show run` command displays non-numerical value for untagged-vlan

#### Symptom

The `show run` command displays one of the following values for `untagged-vlan`:

- `no untagged-vlan`
- `untagged-vlan : None`

#### Cause

The `no device-profile` or the `no rogue-ap-isolation whitelist` command is executed to configure `untagged-vlan` to 0.

## Action

No action is required.

## Show commands

Use the following show commands to view the various configurations and status.

Command	Description
<code>show device-profile</code>	Shows the device profile configuration and status.
<code>show device-profile config</code>	Shows the device profile configuration details for a single profile or all profiles.
<code>show device-profile status</code>	Shows currently applied device profiles.
<code>show run</code>	Shows the running configuration.

## Overview

The switches support several methods for transferring files to and from a physically connected device or via the network, including TFTP, Xmodem, and USB. This appendix explains how to download new switch software, upload or download switch configuration files and software images, and upload command files for configuring ACLs.

## Downloading switch software

Switch periodically provides switch software updates through the Switch Networking website. For more information, see the support and warranty booklet shipped with the switch, or visit <http://www.hpe.com/networking> and click on **software updates**.



**NOTE:** This manual uses the terms **switch software** and **software image** to refer to the downloadable software files the switch uses to operate its networking features. Other terms sometimes include **Operating System**, or **OS**.

## General software download rules

- Switch software that you download via the menu interface always goes to primary flash.
- After a software download, you must reboot the switch to implement the new software. Until a reboot occurs, the switch continues to run on the software it was using before the download.



**NOTE:**

Downloading new switch software does not change the current switch configuration. The switch configuration is contained in separate files that can also be transferred. See **Transferring switch configurations** on page 325.

In most cases, if a power failure or other cause interrupts a flash image download, the switch reboots with the image previously stored in primary flash. In the unlikely event that the primary image is corrupted (which may occur if a download is interrupted by a power failure), the switch goes into boot ROM mode. In this case, use the boot ROM console to download a new image to primary flash.

## Using TFTP to download software from a server

This procedure assumes that:

- A software version for the switch has been stored on a TFTP server accessible to the switch. (The software file is typically available from the Switch Networking website at <http://www.hpe.com/networking>.)
- The switch is properly connected to your network and has already been configured with a compatible IP address and subnet mask.
- The TFTP server is accessible to the switch via IP.

Before you use the procedure, do the following:

- Obtain the IP address of the TFTP server in which the software file has been stored.
- If VLANs are configured on the switch, determine the name of the VLAN in which the TFTP server is operating.
- Determine the name of the software file stored in the TFTP server for the switch (For example, E0820.swi).



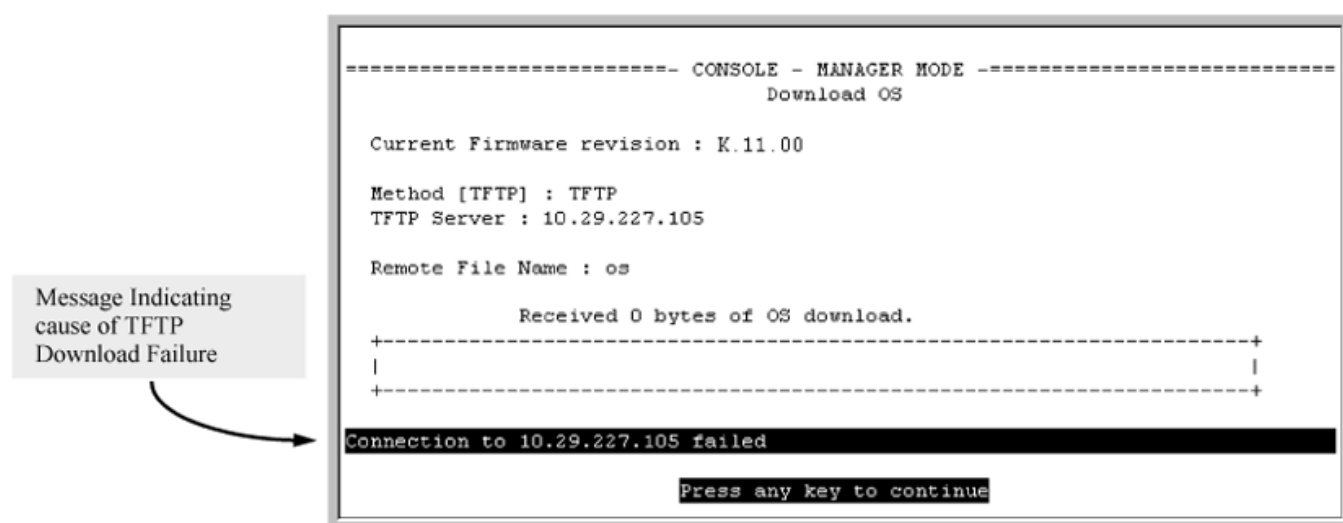
**NOTE:** If your TFTP server is a UNIX workstation, ensure that the case (upper or lower) that you specify for the filename is the same case as the characters in the software filenames on the server.

## Troubleshooting TFTP download failures

### Cause

When using the menu interface, if a TFTP download fails, the Download OS (Operating System, or software) screen indicates the failure as seen in the following figure.

**Figure 39:** Example: of message for download failure



Some of the causes of download failures include:

- Incorrect or unreachable address specified for the **TFTP Server** parameter. This may include network problems.
- Incorrect VLAN.
- Incorrect name specified for the **Remote File Name** parameter, or the specified file cannot be found on the TFTP server. This can also occur if the TFTP server is a UNIX machine and the case (upper or lower) for the filename on the server does not match the case for the filename entered for the **Remote File Name** parameter in the **Download OS** (Operating System, or software) screen.
- One or more of the switch's IP configuration parameters are incorrect.
- For a UNIX TFTP server, the file permissions for the software file do not allow the file to be copied.
- Another console session (through either a direct connection to a terminal device or through Telnet) was already running when you started the session in which the download was attempted.

To find more information on the cause of a download failure:

- Examine the messages in the switch's Event Log by executing the `show log tftp` command from the CLI.
- For descriptions of individual Event Log messages, see the latest version of the event log message reference guide for your switch, available on the Switch website. (See "Getting Documentation From the Web".)



**NOTE:** If an error occurs in which normal switch operation cannot be restored, the switch automatically reboots itself, and an appropriate message is displayed after the reboot.

## Downloading from a server to flash using TFTP (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
copy tftp flash <ip-address> <remote-file> [<primary | secondary>]
```

Automatically downloads a switch software file to primary or secondary flash. If you do not specify the flash destination, the TFTP download defaults to primary flash.

### Example:

To download a switch software file named `k0800.swi` from a TFTP server with the IP address of `10.28.227.103` to primary flash:

### Procedure

1. Execute `copy` as shown below:

The command to download an OS (switch software)

```
switch# copy tftp flash 10.28.227.103 k0800.swi
The primary OS Image will be deleted, continue [y/n]? y 1
01431K 2
```

- <sup>1</sup>This message means that the image you want to upload will replace the image currently in primary flash.
- <sup>2</sup>Dynamic counter continually displays the number of bytes transferred.

When the switch finishes downloading the software file from the server, it displays this progress message:

```
Validating and Writing System Software to FLASH ...
```

2. When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software image. To do so, use one of the following commands:

### Syntax:

```
boot system flash {<primary | secondary>}
```

Boots from the selected flash.

### Syntax:

```
reload
```

Boots from the flash image and startup-config file. A switch covered in this guide (with multiple configuration files), also uses the current startup-config file.

For more information on these commands, see "Rebooting the Switch" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

3. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly, execute `show system` and check the **Firmware revision** line.

For information on primary and secondary flash memory and the boot commands, see "Using Primary and Secondary Flash Image Options" in the basic operation guide for your switch.



**NOTE:** If you use `auto-tftp` to download a new image in a redundant management system, the active management module downloads the new image to both the active and standby modules. Rebooting after the `auto-tftp` process completes reboots the entire system.

## Using SCP and SFTP

For some situations you may want to use a secure method to issue commands or copy files to the switch. By opening a secure, encrypted SSH session and enabling `ip ssh file transfer`, you can then use a third-party software application to take advantage of SCP and SFTP. SCP and SFTP provide a secure alternative to TFTP for transferring information that may be sensitive (like switch configuration files) to and from the switch. Essentially, you are creating a secure SSH tunnel as a way to transfer files with SFTP and SCP channels.

Once you have configured your switch to enable secure file transfers with SCP and SFTP, files can be copied to or from the switch in a secure (encrypted) environment and TFTP is no longer necessary.

To use these commands, you must install on the administrator workstation a third-party application software client that supports the SFTP and/or SCP functions. Some examples of software that supports SFTP and SCP are PuTTY, Open SSH, WinSCP, and SSH Secure Shell. Most of these are freeware and may be downloaded without cost or licensing from the internet. There are differences in the way these clients work, so be sure you also download the documentation.

As described earlier in this chapter you can use a TFTP client on the administrator workstation to update software images. This is a plain-text mechanism that connects to a standalone TFTP server or another switch acting as a TFTP server to obtain the software image files. Using SCP and SFTP allows you to maintain your switches with greater security. You can also roll out new software images with automated scripts that make it easier to upgrade multiple switches simultaneously and securely.

SFTP is unrelated to FTP, although there are some functional similarities. Once you set up an SFTP session through an SSH tunnel, some of the commands are the same as FTP commands. Certain commands are not allowed by the SFTP server on the switch, such as those that create files or folders. If you try to issue commands such as `create` or `remove` using SFTP, the switch server returns an error message.

You can use SFTP just as you would TFTP to transfer files to and from the switch, but with SFTP, your file transfers are encrypted and require authentication, so they are more secure than they would be using TFTP. SFTP works only with SSH version 2 (SSH v2).



**NOTE:** SFTP over SSH version 1 (SSH v1) is not supported. A request from either the client or the switch (or both) using SSH v1 generates an error message. The actual text of the error message differs, depending on the client software in use. Some examples are:

```
Protocol major versions differ: 2 vs. 1
Connection closed

Protocol major versions differ: 1 vs. 2
Connection closed

Received disconnect from <ip-addr> : /usr/local/libexec/
sftp-server: command not supported
Connection closed
```



SCP is an implementation of the BSD `rcp` (Berkeley UNIX remote copy) command tunneled through an SSH connection.

SCP is used to copy files to and from the switch when security is required. SCP works with both SSH v1 and SSH v2. Be aware that the most third-party software application clients that support SCP use SSHv1.

The general process for using SCP and SFTP involves three steps:

### Procedure

1. Open an SSH tunnel between your computer and the switch if you have not already done so.  
(This step assumes that you have already set up SSH on the switch.)
2. Execute `ip ssh filetransfer` to enable secure file transfer.
3. Use a third-party client application for SCP and SFTP commands.

## Enabling SCP and SFTP

For more information about secure copy and SFTP, see [Using SCP and SFTP](#) on page 316.

### Procedure

1. Open an SSH session as you normally would to establish a secure encrypted tunnel between your computer and the switch.

For more detailed directions on how to open an SSH session, see "Configuring secure shell (SSH)" in the access security guide for your switch. Please note that this is a one-time procedure for new switches or connections. If you have already done it once you should not need to do it a second time.

2. To enable secure file transfer on the switch (once you have an SSH session established between the switch and your computer), open a terminal window and enter the following command:

```
switch(config)# ip ssh filetransfer
```

For information on disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP, see [Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP for enhanced security](#) on page 317.

## Disabling TFTP and auto-TFTP for enhanced security

Using the `ip ssh filetransfer` command to enable SFTP automatically disables TFTP and auto-TFTP (if either or both are enabled), as shown below.

### Switch configuration with SFTP enabled

```
switch(config)# ip ssh filetransfer
Tftp and auto-tftp have been disabled. 1
switch(config)# sho run
```

Running configuration:

```
; J9091A Configuration Editor; Created on release #xx.15.xx

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type J8702A
module 2 type J702A
vlan 1
  name "DEFAULT VLAN"
  untagged A1-A24,B1-B24
  ip address 10.28.234.176 255.255.240.0
```

```
exit
ip ssh filetransfer 2
no tftp-enable
password manager
password operator
```

<sup>1</sup> Enabling SFTP automatically disables TFTP and auto-tftp and displays this message.

<sup>2</sup> Viewing the configuration shows that SFTP is enabled and TFTP is disabled.

If you enable SFTP and then later disable it, TFTP and auto-TFTP remain disabled unless they are explicitly re-enabled.

Operating rules are:

- The TFTP feature is enabled by default, and can be enabled or disabled through the CLI or an SNMP application. Auto-TFTP is disabled by default and must be configured through the CLI.
- While SFTP is enabled, TFTP and auto-TFTP cannot be enabled from the CLI. Attempting to enable either non-secure TFTP option while SFTP is enabled produces one of the following messages in the CLI:

```
SFTP must be disabled before enabling tftp.
```

```
SFTP must be disabled before enabling auto-tftp.
```

Similarly, while SFTP is enabled, TFTP cannot be enabled using an SNMP management application. Attempting to do so generates an "inconsistent value" message. (An SNMP management application cannot be used to enable or disable auto-TFTP.)

- To enable SFTP by using an SNMP management application, you must first disable TFTP and, if configured, auto-TFTP on the switch. You can use either an SNMP application or the CLI to disable TFTP, but you must use the CLI to disable auto-TFTP.

## Enabling SSH V2 (required for SFTP)

```
switch(config)# ip ssh version 2
```



**NOTE:** As a matter of policy, administrators should **not** enable the SSH V1-only or the SSH V1-or-V2 advertisement modes. SSHv1 is supported on only some legacy switches (such as the Switch Series 2500).

## Confirming that SSH is enabled

```
switch(config)# show ip ssh
```

Once you have confirmed that you have enabled an SSH session (with the `show ip ssh` command), enter `ip ssh filetransfer` so that SCP and/or SFTP can run. You can then open your third-party software client application to begin using the SCP or SFTP commands to safely transfer files or issue commands to the switch.



### NOTE:

Any attempts to use SCP or SFTP without using `ip ssh filetransfer` cause the SCP or SFTP session to fail. Depending on the client software in use, you will receive an error message on the originating console, for Example:

```
IP file transfer not enabled on the switch
```

## Disabling secure file transfer

```
switch(config)# no ip ssh filetransfer
```

## Authentication

Switch memory allows up to ten public keys. This means the authentication and encryption keys you use for your third-party client SCP/SFTP software can differ from the keys you use for the SSH session, even though both SCP and SFTP use a secure SSH tunnel.



### NOTE:

SSH authentication is mutually exclusive with RADIUS servers.

Some clients, such as PSCP (PuTTY SCP), automatically compare switch host keys for you. Other clients require you to manually copy and paste keys to the `$HOME/.ssh/known_hosts` file. Whatever SCP/SFTP software tool you use, after installing the client software you must verify that the switch host keys are available to the client.

Because the third-party software utilities you may use for SCP/SFTP vary, you should refer to the documentation provided with the utility you select before performing this process.

## SCP/SFTP operating notes

- Any attempts to use SCP or SFTP without using `ip ssh filetransfer` will cause the SCP or SFTP session to fail. Depending on the client software in use, you will receive an error message on the originating console, for Example:

```
IP file transfer not enabled on the switch
```

- There is a delay when SFTP is copying an image onto the switch, and although the command prompt returns in a couple of seconds, the switch may take approximately a minute and half writing the image to flash. You can keep entering the `show flash` command to see when the copy is complete and the flash is updated. You can also check the log for an entry similar to the following:

```
I 01/09/13 16:17:07 00150 update: Primary Image updated.
```

```
I 01/09/13 16:13:22 00636 ssh: sftp session from 15.22.22.03
```

- When an SFTP client connects, the switch provides a file system displaying all of its available files and folders. No file or directory creation is permitted by the user. Files may be only uploaded or downloaded, according to the permissions mask. All of the necessary files the switch needs are already in place on the switch. You do not need to (nor can you) create new files.
- The switch supports one SFTP session or one SCP session at a time.
- All files have read-write permission. Several SFTP commands, such as `create` or `remove`, are not allowed and return an error message. The switch displays the following files:

```
/
+---cfg
|   running-config
|   startup-config
+---log
|   crash-data
|   crash-data-a
|   crash-data-b
|   crash-data-c
|   crash-data-d
|   crash-data-e           "       "
|   crash-data-f ""
|   crash-data-g
|   crash-data-h           "       "
|   crash-data-I ""
|   crash-data-J ""
|   crash-data-K ""
|   crash-data-L "       "
|   crash-log
```

```

| crash-log-a
| crash-log-b
| crash-log-c
| crash-log-d
| crash-log-e""
| crash-log-f""
| crash-log-g
| crash-log-h" "
| crash-log-I" "
| crash-log-J" "
| crash-log-K" "
| crash-log-L" "
| event log
+---os
| primary
| secondary
\---ssh
| +---mgr_keys
| | authorized_keys
| \---oper_keys
| | authorized_keys
\---core
| port_1-24.cor core-dump for ports 1-24 (stackable switches only)
| port_25-48.cor core-dump for ports 25-48 (stackable switches only)

```

Once you have configured your switch for secure file transfers with SCP and SFTP, files can be copied to or from the switch in a secure (encrypted) environment and TFTP is no longer necessary.

## Troubleshooting SSH, SFTP, and SCP operations

### Cause

You can verify secure file transfer operations by checking the switch's event log, or by viewing the error messages sent by the switch that most SCP and SFTP clients print out on their console.



**NOTE:** Messages that are sent by the switch to the client depend on the client software in use to display them on the user console.

### Broken SSH connection

If an ssh connection is broken at the wrong moment (for instance, the link goes away or spanning tree brings down the link), a fatal exception occurs on the switch. If this happens, the switch gracefully exits the session and produces an Event Log message indicating the cause of failure. The following three examples show the error messages that may appear in the log, depending on the type of session that is running (SSH, SCP, or SFTP):

```

ssh: read error Bad file number, session aborted I 01/01/90
00:06:11 00636 ssh: sftp session from ::ffff:10.0.12.35 W
01/01/90 00:06:26 00641 ssh:

sftp read error Bad file number, session aborted I 01/01/90
00:09:54 00637 ssh: scp session from ::ffff:10.0.12.35 W 01/
01/90

ssh: scp read error Bad file number, session aborted

```



#### NOTE:

The `Bad file number` is from the system error value and may differ depending on the cause of the failure. In the third Example:, the device file to read was closed as the device read was about to occur.

## Attempt to start a session during a flash write

If you attempt to start an SCP (or SFTP) session while a flash write is in progress, the switch does not allow the SCP or SFTP session to start. Depending on the client software in use, the following error message may appear on the client console:

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Flash access in  
progress  
  
lost connection
```

## Failure to exit from a previous session

This next Example: shows the error message that may appear on the client console if a new SCP (or SFTP) session is started from a client before the previous client session has been closed (the switch requires approximately ten seconds to timeout the previous session):

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Wait for previous  
session to complete  
  
lost connection
```

## Attempt to start a second session

The switch supports only one SFTP session or one SCP session at a time. If a second session is initiated (For example, an SFTP session is running and then an SCP session is attempted), the following error message may appear on the client console:

```
Received disconnect from 10.0.12.31: 2: Other SCP/SFTP  
session running  
  
lost connection
```

## Using Xmodem to download switch software from a PC or UNIX workstation

This procedure assumes that:

- The switch is connected via the Console RS-232 port to a PC operating as a terminal. (For information on connecting a PC as a terminal and running the switch console interface, see the installation and getting started guide you received with the switch.)
- The switch software is stored on a disk drive in the PC.
- The terminal emulator you are using includes the Xmodem binary transfer feature. (For example, in the HyperTerminal application included with Windows NT, you would use the **Send File** option in the **Transfer** drop-down menu.)

## Downloading to primary or secondary flash using Xmodem and a terminal emulator (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
copy xmodem flash [<primary | secondary>]
```

Downloads a software file to primary or secondary flash. If you do not specify the flash destination, the Xmodem download defaults to primary flash.

### Example:

To download a switch software file named `E0822.swi` from a PC (running a terminal emulator program such as HyperTerminal) to primary flash:

### Procedure

1. Execute the following command in the CLI:

```
switch# copy xmodem flash  
Press 'Enter and start XMODEM on your host...
```

2. Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the Xmodem transfer. For example, using HyperTerminal:
  - a. Click on **Transfer**, then **Send File**.
  - b. Type the file path and name in the Filename field.
  - c. In the Protocol field, select **Xmodem**.
  - d. Click on the **[Send]** button.

The download can take several minutes, depending on the baud rate used in the transfer.

3. When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software. To do so, use one of the following commands:

#### Syntax:

```
boot system flash {<primary | secondary>}
```

Reboots from the selected flash

#### Syntax:

```
reload
```

Reboots from the flash image currently in use

For more information on these commands, see "Rebooting the Switches" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

4. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly:

```
switch# show system
```

Check the **Firmware revision** line. It should show the software version that you downloaded in the preceding steps.

If you need information on primary/secondary flash memory and the boot commands, see "Using Primary and Secondary Flash Image Options" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

## Switch-to-switch download

You can use TFTP to transfer a software image between two switches of the same series. The CLI enables all combinations of flash location options.

### Switch-to-switch download to primary flash (Menu)

Using the menu interface, you can download a switch software file from either the primary or secondary flash of one switch to the primary flash of another switch of the same series.

## Procedure

1. From the switch console Main Menu in the switch to receive the download, select **7. Download OS** screen.
2. Ensure that the **Method** parameter is set to **TFTP** (the default).
3. In the **TFTP Server** field, enter the IP address of the remote switch containing the software file you want to download.
4. For the **Remote File Name** , enter one of the following:

- a. To download the software in the primary flash of the source switch, enter  
`flash`  
in lowercase characters.
- b. To download the software in the secondary flash of the source switch, enter  
`/os/secondary`  
.

5. Press **[Enter]**, and then **[X]** (for **eXecute** ) to begin the software download.

A "progress" bar indicates the progress of the download. When the entire switch software download has been received, all activity on the switch halts and the following messages appear:

**Validating and writing system software to FLASH...**

6. After the primary flash memory has been updated with the new software, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software. Return to the Main Menu and press **[6]** (for **Reboot Switch** ). You then see this prompt:

**Continue reboot of system? : No**

Press the space bar once to change **No** to **Yes**, then press **[Enter]** to begin the reboot.

7. To confirm that the software downloaded correctly:

- a. From the Main Menu, select  
**Status and Counters**  
**General System Information**
- b. Check the **Firmware revision** line.

## Downloading the OS from another switch (CLI)

Where two switches in your network belong to the same series, you can download a software image between them by initiating a `copy tftp` command from the destination switch. The options for this CLI feature include:

- Copy from primary flash in the source to either primary or secondary in the destination.
- Copy from either primary or secondary flash in the source to either primary or secondary flash in the destination.

## Downloading from primary only (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
copy tftp flash <ip-addr> flash [primary | secondary]
```

When executed in the destination switch, downloads the software flash in the source switch's primary flash to either the primary or secondary flash in the destination switch.

If you do not specify either a primary or secondary flash location for the destination, the download automatically goes to primary flash.

To download a software file from primary flash in a switch with an IP address of 10.29.227.103 to the primary flash in the destination switch, you would execute the following command in the destination switch's CLI:

---

#### Switch-to-switch, from primary in source to either flash in destination

```
switch# copy tftp flash 10.29.227.13 flash
Device will be rebooted, do you want to continue [y/n]? y
00107K 1
```

<sup>1</sup>Running Total of Bytes Downloaded

### Downloading from either flash in the source switch to either flash in the destination switch (CLI)

#### Syntax:

```
copy tftp flash <ip-addr> {</os/primary> | </os/secondary>} [primary | secondary]
```

This command (executed in the destination switch) gives you the most options for downloading between switches. If you do not specify either a primary or secondary flash location for the destination, the download automatically goes to primary flash.

To download a software file from secondary flash in a switch with an IP address of 10.28.227.103 to the secondary flash in a destination switch, you would execute the following command in the destination switch's CLI:

---

#### Switch-to-switch, from either flash in source to either flash in destination

```
switch# copy tftp flash 10.29.227.13 flash /os/secondary secondary
Device will be rebooted, do you want to continue [y/n]? y
00184K
```

### Using AirWave to update switch software

AirWave can be used to update switch products. For further information, refer to the **ZTP with Airwave network Management** chapter in this manual.

## Copying software images



#### NOTE:

For details on how switch memory operates, including primary and secondary flash, see "Switch Memory and Configuration" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

---

### TFTP: Copying a software image to a remote host (CLI)

#### Syntax:

```
copy flash tftp <ip-addr> <filename>
```

Copies the primary flash image to a TFTP server.

#### Example:



To copy the primary flash to a TFTP server having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
switch# copy flash tftp 10.28.227.105 k0800.swi
```

where `k0800.swi` is the filename given to the flash image being copied.

## Transferring switch configurations

Using the CLI commands described in the section beginning with **TFTP: Copying a configuration file to a remote host (CLI)** on page 325, you can copy switch configurations to and from a switch, or copy a software image to configure or replace an ACL in the switch configuration.



### NOTE:

For greater security, you can perform all TFTP operations using SFTP, as described in the section **Using SCP and SFTP** on page 316.

You can also use the `include-credentials` command to save passwords, secret keys, and other security credentials in the running config file. For more information, see the section on "Saving Security Credentials in a Config File" in the access security guide for your switch.

## TFTP: Copying a configuration file to a remote host (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
copy {<startup-config | running-config>} tftp < ip-addr > < remote-file > [pc | unix]
```

```
copy config <filename> tftp <ip-addr> <remote-file> [pc | unix]
```

This command can copy a designated config file in the switch to a TFTP server. For more information, see "Multiple Configuration Files" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

### Example:

To upload the current startup configuration to a file named `sw8200` in the configs directory on drive "d" in a TFTP server having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
switch# copy startup-config tftp 10.28.227.105  
d:\configs\sw8200
```

## TFTP: Copying a configuration file from a remote host (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
copy tftp {<startup-config | running-config> < ip-address > < remote-file >} [pc | unix]
```

```
copy tftp config <filename> <ip-address> <remote-file> [pc | unix]
```

This command can copy a configuration from a remote host to a designated config file in the switch. For more information, see "Multiple Configuration Files" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

For more information on flash image use, see "Using Primary and Secondary Flash Image Options" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

### Example:

To download a configuration file named `sw8200` in the `configs` directory on drive "d" in a remote host having an IP address of 10.28.227.105:

```
switch# copy tftp startup-config 10.28.227.105
d:\configs\sw8200
```

## TFTP: Copying a customized command file to a switch (CLI)

Using the `copy tftp` command with the `show-tech` option provides the ability to copy a customized command file to the switch. When the `show tech custom` command is executed, the commands in the custom file are executed instead of the hard-coded list of commands. If no custom file is found, the current hard-coded list is executed. This list contains commands to display data, such as the image stamp, running configuration, boot history, port settings, and so on.

### Syntax:

```
copy tftp show-tech <ipv4 or ipv6 address> <filename>
```

Copies a customized command file to the switch (see [Using the copy tftp show-tech command to upload a customized command file](#) on page 326).

### Using the copy tftp show-tech command to upload a customized command file

```
switch(config)# copy tftp show-tech 10.10.10.3 commandfile1
```

### Syntax:

```
show tech custom
```

Executes the commands found in a custom file instead of the hard-coded list.



#### NOTE:

Exit the global config mode (if needed) before executing `show tech` commands.

You can include `show tech` commands in the custom file, with the exception of `show tech custom`. For example, you can include the command `show tech all`.

If no custom file is found, a message displays stating "No SHOW-TECH file found." (No custom file was uploaded with the `copy tftp show-tech` command.)

### The show tech custom command

```
switch# show tech custom
No SHOW-TECH file found.
```

## Xmodem: Copying a configuration file to a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation (CLI)

To use this method, the switch must be connected via the serial port to a PC or UNIX workstation. You will need to:

- Determine a filename to use
- Know the directory path you will use to store the configuration file.

**Syntax:**

```
copy {<startup-config | running-config>} xmodem {<pc | unix>}
```

```
copy config <filename> xmodem {<pc | unix>}
```

Uses Xmodem to copy a designated configuration file from the switch to a PC or UNIX workstation. For more information, see "Multiple Configuration Files" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

**Example:**

To copy a configuration file to a PC serially connected to the switch:

1. Determine the file name and directory location on the PC.
2. Execute the following command:

```
switch# copy startup-config xmodem pc  
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

3. After you see the above prompt, press **[Enter]**.
4. Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the file transfer.

## Xmodem: Copying a configuration file from a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation (CLI)

To use this method, the switch must be connected via the serial port to a PC or UNIX workstation on which is stored the configuration file you want to copy. To complete the copying, you need to know the name of the file to copy and the drive and directory location of the file.

**Syntax:**

```
copy xmodem startup-config {<pc | unix>}
```

```
copy xmodem config <filename> < {pc | unix}>
```

Copies a configuration file from a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation to a designated configuration file on the switch.

For more information, see "Multiple Configuration Files" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

**Example:**

To copy a configuration file from a PC serially connected to the switch:

**Procedure**

1. Execute the following command:

```
switch# copy xmodem startup-config pc  
Device will be rebooted, do you want to continue [y/n]? y  
Press 'Enter' and start XMODEM on your host...
```

2. After you see the above prompt, press **[Enter]**.
3. Execute the terminal emulator commands to begin the file transfer.
4. When the download finishes, you must reboot the switch to implement the newly downloaded software. To do so, use one of the following commands:

**Syntax:**

```
boot system flash [primary | secondary]
```

```
boot system flash [config < filename >]
```

Switches boot from the designated configuration file. For more information, see "Multiple Configuration Files" in the basic operation guide for your switch.

**Syntax:**

```
reload
```

Reboots from the flash image currently in use.

(For more on these commands, see "Rebooting the Switch" in the basic operation guide for your switch.)

## Overview

The switches have several built-in tools for monitoring, analyzing, and troubleshooting switch and network operation:

- **Status:** Includes options for displaying general switch information, management address data, port status, port and trunk group statistics, MAC addresses detected on each port or VLAN, and STP, IGMP, and VLAN data.
- **Counters:** Display details of traffic volume on individual ports.
- **Event Log:** Lists switch operating events ([Using the Event Log for troubleshooting switch problems](#) on page 386 ).
- **Alert Log:** Lists network occurrences detected by the switch—in the System > Logging screen of the WebAgent.
- **Configurable trap receivers:** Uses SNMP to enable management stations on your network to receive SNMP traps from the switch.
- **Port monitoring (mirroring):** Copy all traffic from the specified ports to a designated monitoring port.



**NOTE:** Link test and ping test—analysis tools in troubleshooting situations—are described in [Troubleshooting](#) on page 356. See [Diagnostic tools](#) on page 424.

## Accessing port and trunk group statistics

Use the CLI to view port counter summary reports, and to view detailed traffic summary for specific ports.

### Trunk bandwidth utilization

- Trunk interface counters display the accumulated statistics over the trunk members' ports since the time they are added into trunk.
- Bandwidth utilization for trunks is calculated by averaging the value of the sum of bandwidth utilization for each trunk member in the last 5 minute interval .

### `show interfaces`

#### Syntax

```
show interfaces [brief | config | <PORT-LIST>]
```

#### Description

Shows interface information for ports or trunk groups in brief or configuration detail.

#### Command context

```
operator or manager
```

## Parameters

### brief

Shows the current operating status for all ports or trunk groups on the switch in brief detail.

### config

Shows the configuration data for all ports or trunk groups on the switch.

### <PORT-LIST>

Specifies the list of ports for which status information will be shown.

### <TRUNK-GROUP>

Specifies the trunk group for which status information will be shown. The status information shown consists of total transmit and receive counters and weighted average rate for the trunk group specified. The weighted average rate is calculated in 5 minute intervals.

## Usage

Both external and internal ports are supported on the same module. Internal ports have an “I” suffix in the output of the show command to indicate that they are internal ports.

- “10GbE-INT” – Internal 10G data-plane ports (1i-2i, 4i-5i)
- “1GbE-INT” – Internal 1G control-plane port (3i)
- Port 3i always shows as link-down.

## Examples

Show brief information and status of all interfaces.

```
switch# show interfaces brief
```

Status and Counters - Port Status

Port	Type	Intrusion		Status	Mode	MDI Mode	Flow Ctrl	Bcast Limit
		Alert	Enabled					
B1	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	Auto-10-100	Auto	off	0
B2	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B3	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B4	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B5	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0
B6	100/1000T	No	Yes	Down	1000FDx	Auto	off	0

Show the configuration of the interfaces currently available.

```
switch# show interfaces config
```

Port Settings

Port	Type	Enabled	Mode	Flow Ctrl	MDI
B1	100/1000T	Yes	Auto-10-100	Disable	Auto
B2	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B3	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B4	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B5	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto
B6	100/1000T	Yes	Auto	Disable	Auto

Show brief information and status of interfaces for ports D1i, D2i, and D3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief d1i-d3i
```

```
Status and Counters - Port Status
Port   Type           | Intrusion
      | Alert      Enabled Status Mode           MDI  Flow Bcast
      | -----+-----
D1i    10GbE-INT    | No          Yes    Up    10GigFD      NA   off  0
D2i    10GbE-INT    | No          Yes    Up    10GigFD      NA   off  0
D3i    1GbE-INT     | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      NA   off  0
```

Show the brief information and status of interfaces for ports B1 through internal port B3i.

```
switch# show interfaces brief b1-b3i
```

```
Status and Counters - Port Status
Port   Type           | Intrusion
      | Alert      Enabled Status Mode           MDI  Flow Bcast
      | -----+-----
B1     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B2     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B3     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B4     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B5     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B6     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B7     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B8     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B9     100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B10    100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B11    100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B12    100/1000T    | No          Yes    Down  1000FDx      Auto off  0
B1i    10GbE-INT     | No          Yes    Up     10GigFD      NA   off  0
B2i    10GbE-INT     | No          Yes    Up     10GigFD      NA   off  0
B3i    1GbE-INT     | No          Yes    Up     1000FDx      NA   off  0
```

Show detailed interface information for port trunk 1.

```
switch# show interface trk1
```

```
Status and Counters - Port Counters for port Trk1
Name : Trk1
MAC Address : 3464a9-b1b8bf
Link Status : Up
Totals (Since boot or last clear) :
  Bytes Rx : 777,713,956
  Unicast Rx : 1,154,693
  Bcast/Mcast Rx : 48,563
  Bytes Tx : 596,853,141
  Unicast Tx : 0
  Bcast/Mcast Tx : 607,474,910
Errors (Since boot or last clear) :
  FCS Rx : 0
  Alignment Rx : 0
  Runts Rx : 0
  Giants Rx : 0
  Total Rx Errors : 0
  Drops Tx : 0
  Collisions Tx : 0
  Late Colln : 0
  Excessive Colln : 0
  Deferred Tx : 0
Others (Since boot or last clear) :
  Discard Rx : 0
  Unknown Protos : 0
  Out Queue Len : 0
Rates (5 minute weighted average) :
  Total Rx(Kbps) : 76,800
  Unicast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 21
  B/Mcast Rx (Pkts/sec) : 114,878
  Utilization Rx : 00.76 %
  Total Tx(Kbps) : 76,800
  Unicast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 0
  B/Mcast Tx (Pkts/sec) : 114,900
Utilization Tx : 00.76 %
```

## show interfaces trunk-utilization

### Syntax

```
show interfaces trunk-utilization
```

### Description

Shows the bandwidth utilization calculations for all trunk members.

### Command context

operator or manager

### Example

Show bandwidth utilization for trunks.

```
Switch(config)# show interfaces trunk-utilization
```

Status and Counters - Port Utilization

Port	Rx			Tx		
	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util	Kbits/sec	Pkts/sec	Util
Trk1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Trk2	0	0	0	0	0	0
Trk10	0	0	0	0	0	0

## Statistic interactions of interface counters

**Table 24: Statistic interactions**

Interface counters are cleared using the command `clear statistics`. When certain actions are taken to ports and trunks, the outcome of the `clear` command differs.

Action taken	Trigger	Interaction with interface counter
Adding Port into trunk	CLI/SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Interface counters for this port will be cleared across all sessions.</li><li>Average rate counters are not cleared.</li></ul>
Removing Port from trunk	CLI/SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Interface counters for this port will be cleared across all sessions.</li><li>Average rate counters are not cleared.</li></ul>
Trunk port coming Up	CLI enable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No change in counters.</li><li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li><li>Average rate counters are not cleared. Counters will start from 0 when the trunk port comes up.</li></ul>

*Table Continued*



Action taken	Trigger	Interaction with interface counter
Trunk port coming Up	Cable connect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No change in counters.</li> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are not cleared. Counters will start from 0 when the trunk port comes up.</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	CLI disable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are cleared.</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	Cable disconnect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are cleared.</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	Module crash/ module reload	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are cleared.</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	Save power - off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are cleared.</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	Stacking member reboot/ crash/shutdown.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for this port are not cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters of this port is not cleared.</li> <li>Utilization for the port is cleared.</li> <li>Utilization for the trunk group is updated accordingly</li> </ul>
Trunk port going Down	Module remove/ member remove.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Statistics for removed trunk port can not be accessed as the port is removed.</li> <li>Interface counters for the trunk group is updated.</li> <li>Utilization for the trunk group is updated.</li> </ul>
Clear statistics on physical port which is part of trunk	CLI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not allowed.</li> <li>The error message <code>Module not present for port or invalid port: &lt;PORT-NUM&gt;</code> displays when the command <code>clear statistics</code> is executed on a port which part of a trunk.</li> </ul>
Clear statistics on trunk.	CLI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface counters for physical ports which are part of trunk will be cleared.</li> <li>Average rate counters are not cleared.</li> </ul>

## Reset port counters

When troubleshooting network issues, you can clear all counters and statistics without rebooting the switch using the `clear statistics global` command or using the menu.

SNMP displays the counter and statistics totals accumulated since the last reboot, and it is not affected by the `clear statistics global` command or the `clear statistics <PORT-LIST>` command. Clearing statistics initiates an SNMP trap.



**IMPORTANT:** Once cleared, statistics cannot be reintroduced.

## clear statistics

### Syntax

```
clear statistics [<PORT-LIST>|global]
```

### Description

This command clears all counters and statistics for all interfaces except SNMP.

### Parameters and options

**<PORT-LIST>**

Clears the counters and statistics for specific ports.

**global**

Clears all counters and statistics for all interfaces except SNMP.

## MAC address tables

### MAC address views and searches

You can view and search MAC addresses using the CLI or the menu.

#### show mac-add detail

### Syntax

```
show mac-address detail
```

### Description

Shows the age of the learned MAC addresses in the MAC table. The age of a specific MAC-address will be displayed in `dd:hr:min:sec.msec` format.

### Command context

manager

### Examples

show mac-add detail on a specified switch.

```
switch# show mac-add detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
3c4a92-31c100	F23	1	0000:00:00:00.34
9cb654-ce6169	A2	1	0000:00:02:37.93
c09134-cd2740	F23	1	0000:00:00:00.28
c09134-cd277d	F23	1	0000:00:00:23.62

f0921c-85b0e0	F24	1	0000:00:00:08.29
f0921c-85b0e9	F24	1	0000:00:00:09.47

show mac-add detail for Vxlan Tunnel supporting and non-supporting platforms.

```
switch# show mac-address detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
f0921c-b6e940	L22	1	0000:00:23:26.93
0180c2-00000f	A24	50	0000:00:00:00.00
d18cc2-00000f	A24	50	0001:21:43:59.92
e18dd2-00000f	A24	50	0000:18:23:24.22

show mac-add detail for platforms not supporting Vxlan Tunnels.

```
stack-Switch# show mac-address detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
009c02-d80f28	1/2	1	0000:00:00:30.18
3464a9-abe500	1/2	1	0030:07:01:20.23

## show mac-address

### Syntax

```
show mac-address [vlan <VLAN-ID> ] [<PORT-LIST>] [<MAC-ADDR>] [TUNNEL-ID]
```

### Description

Lists all MAC addresses on the switch and their corresponding port numbers. You can also choose to list specific addresses and ports, or addresses and ports on a VLAN. The switches operate with a multiple forwarding database architecture.

### Command context

manager

### Parameters

**vlan <VLAN-ID>**

Show MAC addresses learned on a specified VLAN.

**PORT-LIST**

Show MAC addresses learned on the specified ports.

**<MAC-ADDR>**

Show the specified port for a specified MAC address.

**TUNNEL-ID**

Show MAC addresses learned on the specified VXLAN tunnel.

## Usage

### `show mac-address`

Lists all learned MAC addresses on the switch and their corresponding port numbers.

### `show mac-address a1-a4,a6`

Lists all learned MAC addresses on one or more ports and their corresponding port numbers.

### `show mac-address vlan 100`

Lists all learned MAC addresses on a VLAN and their corresponding port numbers.

### `show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail`

## Syntax

### Syntax

```
show mac-address <MAC-ADDRESS> detail
```

## Description

Specifies the age and existing details of the specific mac address given.

manager

## Parameters

### `<MAC-ADDRESS>`

Specifies the mac-address being requested in detail.

## Examples

Show mac-address detail for **f0921c-b6e97e**.

```
switch# show mac-address f0921c-b6e97e detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
f0921c-b6e97e	L22	1	0000:00:00:30.18

Show mac-address detail for a stacked switch.

```
switch-Stack# show mac-address 009c02-d80f28 detail
```

Status and Counters - Port Address Table

MAC Address	Port	VLAN	Age (d:h:m:s.ms)
009c02-d80f28	1/2	1	0000:00:00:30.18

## Using the menu to view and search MAC addresses

To determine which switch port on a selected VLAN the switch uses to communicate with a specific device on the network:

### Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select **1. Status and Counters ...** , and then select **5. VLAN Address Table**.
2. Use the arrow keys to scroll to the VLAN you want, and then press **Enter** on the keyboard to select it.

```

----- CONSOLE - MANAGER MODE -----
Status and Counters - Address Table

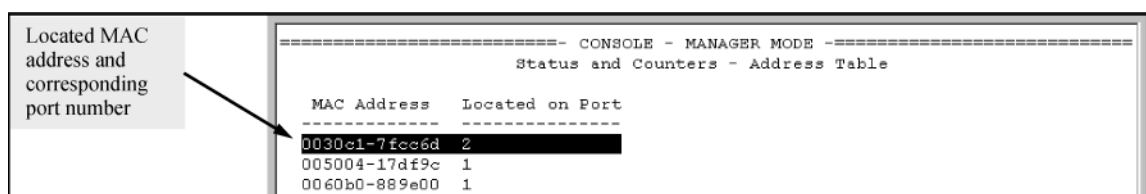
MAC Address    Located on Port
-----
0030c1-7f49c0  A3
0030c1-7fec40  A1
0030c1-b29ac0  A3
0060b0-17de5b  A3
0060b0-880a80  A2
0060b0-df1a00  A3
0060b0-df2a00  A3
0060b0-e9a200  A3
009027-e74f90  A3
080009-21ae84  A3
080009-62c411  A3
080009-6563e2  A3

Actions->  Back  Search  Next page  Prev page  Help
Return to previous screen.
Use up/down arrow keys to scroll to other entries, left/right arrow keys to
change action selection, and <Enter> to execute action.

```

The switch then displays the MAC address table for that VLAN (**Figure 40: Example of the address table** on page 337.)

**Figure 40: Example of the address table**



3. To page through the listing, use **Next page** and **Prev page** .

## Finding the port connection for a specific device on a VLAN

This feature uses a device's MAC address that you enter to identify the port used by that device.

### Procedure

1. Proceeding from the figure above, press **[S]** (for **Search** ), to display the following prompt:

```
Enter MAC address: _
```

2. Enter the MAC address you want to locate and press **[Enter]**.

The address and port number are highlighted if found. If the switch does not find the MAC address on the currently selected VLAN, it leaves the MAC address listing empty.

3. Press **[P]** (for **Prev page** ) to return to the full address table listing.

## Viewing and searching port-level MAC addresses

This feature displays and searches for MAC addresses on the specified port instead of for all ports on the switch.

### Procedure

1. From the Main Menu, select:

**1. Status and Counters ...**

## 7. Port Address Table

2. Use the Space bar to select the port you want to list or search for MAC addresses, then press **[Enter]** to list the MAC addresses detected on that port.

### Determining whether a specific device is connected to the selected port

Proceeding from Step 2, above:

#### Procedure

1. Press **[S]** (for **Search**), to display the following prompt:

```
Enter MAC address: _
```

2. Enter the MAC address you want to locate and press **[Enter]**.

The address is highlighted if found. If the switch does not find the address, it leaves the MAC address listing empty.

3. Press **[P]** (for **Prev page**) to return to the previous per-port listing.

## MSTP data

### show spanning-tree

#### Syntax

```
show spanning-tree
```

#### Description

Displays the global and regional spanning-tree status for the switch, and displays the per-port spanning-tree operation at the regional level.

Values for the following parameters appear only for ports connected to active devices: *Designated Bridge*, *Hello Time*, *PtP*, and *Edge*.

## show spanning-tree command output

Figure 41: show spanning-tree command output

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree
```

Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) Information

```
STP Enabled : Yes
Force Version : MSTP-operation
IST Mapped VLANs : 1,66

Switch MAC Address : 0004ea-5e2000
Switch Priority : 32768
Max Age : 20
Max Hops : 20
Forward Delay : 15

Topology Change Count : 0
Time Since Last Change : 2 hours
```

Switch's Spanning Tree Configuration and Identity of VLANs Configured in the Switch for the IST Instance

```
CST Root MAC Address : 00022d-47367f
CST Root Priority : 0
CST Root Path Cost : 4000000
CST Root Port : A1
```

Identifies the overall spanning-tree root for the network.

```
IST Regional Root MAC Address : 00883-028300
IST Regional Root Priority : 32768
IST Regional Root Path Cost : 200000
IST Remaining Hops : 19
```

Lists the switch's MSTP root data for connectivity with other regions and STP or RSTP devices.

```
Protected Ports : A4
Filtered Ports : A7-A10
```

Identifies the spanning-tree root for the IST Instance for the region.

```
Internal Spanning Tree Data (IST Instance) for the region in which the Switch Operates
```

Identifies the ports with BPDU protection and BPDU filtering enabled.

```
Yes means the switch is operating the port as if it is connected to switch, bridge, or end node (but not a hub).
```

Yes means the switch is operating the port as if it is connected to switch, bridge, or end node (but not a hub).

Port	Type	Cost	Prio	rity	State	Designated	Hello	Time	PtP	Edge
A1	100/1000T	Auto	128		Forwarding	000883-028300	9		Yes	No
A2	100/1000T	Auto	128		Blocked	0001e7-948300	9		Yes	No
A3	100/1000T	Auto	128		Forwarding	000883-02a700	2		Yes	No
A4	100/1000T	Auto	128		Disabled					
A5	100/1000T	Auto	128		Disabled					
.	.	.	.	.	.					
.	.	.	.	.	.					

For Edge, No (admin-edge-port operation disabled) indicates the port is configured for connecting to a LAN segment that includes a bridge or switch. Yes indicates the port is configured for a host (end node) link. Refer to the admin-edge-port description under "Configuring MSTP Per-Port Parameters" on page 3-24.

## IP IGMP status

### show ip igmp

#### Syntax

```
show ip igmp <VLAN-ID> [config] [group <IP-ADDR>|groups] [statistics]
```

#### Description

Global command that lists IGMP status for all VLANs configured in the switch, including:

- VLAN ID (VID) and name
- Querier address
- Active group addresses per VLAN
- Number of report and query packets per group
- Querier access port per VLAN

### Parameters and options

#### config

Displays the IGMP configuration information, including VLAN ID, VLAN name, status, forwarding, and Querier information.

#### vlan-id

Per-VLAN command listing above, IGMP status for specified VLAN (VID).

#### group <IP-ADDR>

Lists the ports currently participating in the specified group, with port type, Access type, Age Timer data and Leave Timer data.

#### groups

Displays VLAN-ID, group address, uptime, expiration time, multicast filter type, and the last reporter for IGMP groups.

#### statistics

Displays IGMP operational information, such as VLAN IDs and names, and filtered and flooding statistics.

### Output from show ip igmp config command

```
Switch(config)# show ip igmp config

IGMP Service

VLAN ID  VLAN Name      IGMP    Forward with  Querier Querier
-----  -
1         DEFAULT_VLAN  No      No            Yes     125
2         VLAN2         Yes     No            Yes     125
12        New_Vlan      No      No            Yes     125
```

### IGMP statistical information

```
switch(vlan-2)# show ip igmp statistics
```

#### IGMP Service Statistics

```
Total VLANs with IGMP enabled      : 1
Current count of multicast groups joined : 1
```

#### IGMP Joined Groups Statistics

VLAN ID	VLAN Name	Filtered	Flood
2	VLAN2	2	1



# VLAN information

## show vlan

### Syntax

show vlan <VLAN-ID>

### Description

Lists the maximum number of VLANs to support, existing VLANs, VLAN status (static or dynamic), and primary VLAN.

### Parameters

<VLAN-ID>

Lists the following for the specified VLAN:

- Name, VID, and status (static/dynamic)
- Per-port mode (tagged, untagged, forbid, no/auto)
- "Unknown VLAN" setting (Learn, Block, Disable)
- Port status (up/down)

### List data on specific VLANs

The next three figures show how you can list data for the following VLANs:

Ports	VLAN	VID
A1-A12	DEFAULT_VLAN	1

Table Continued

A1, A2	VLAN-33	33
A3, A4	VLAN-44	44

**Figure 42:** Listing the VLAN ID (vid) and status for specific ports

Switch# show vlan ports A1-A2			
Status and Counters = VLAN Information - for ports A1,A2			
802.1Q	VLAN ID	Name	Status
-----	-----	-----	-----
1		DEFAULT_VLAN	Static
33		VLAN-33	Static

Because ports A1 and A2 are not members of VLAN-44, it does not appear in this listing.

**Figure 43:** Example of VLAN listing for the entire switch

Switch# show vlan			
Status and Counters - VLAN Information			
VLAN support : Yes			
Maximum VLANs to support : 9			
Primary VLAN: DEFAULT_VLAN			
802.1Q	VLAN ID	Name	Status
-----	-----	-----	-----
1		DEFAULT_VLAN	Static
33		VLAN-33	Static
44		VLAN-44	Static

**Figure 44:** Port listing for an individual VLAN

Switch(config)# show vlan 1			
Status and Counters - VLAN Information - VLAN 1			
VLAN ID : 1			
Name : DEFAULT_VLAN			
Status : Static			
Voice : Yes			
Jumbo : No			
Port	Information	Mode	Unknown VLAN Status
-----	-----	-----	-----
A1	Untagged	Learn	Up
A2	Tagged	Learn	Up
A3	Untagged	Learn	Up
A4	Untagged	Learn	Down
A5	Untagged	Learn	Up
A6	Untagged	Learn	Up
A7	Untagged	Learn	Up

## Configuring a source switch in a local mirroring session

Enter the `mirror port` command on the source switch to configure an exit port on the same switch. To create the mirroring session, use the information gathered in [High-level overview of the mirror configuration process](#) on page 344.

## Syntax

```
mirror-port <PORT-NUM>
no mirror-port <PORT-NUM>
```

The **no** form of the command removes the mirroring session and any mirroring source previously assigned to that session.

Assigns the exit port to use for the specified mirroring session. You must execute command from the global configuration level.

```
switch(config)# mirror-port
[ethernet] PORT-NUM   Define the mirror port for diagnostic purposes.
switch(config)# mirror-port 1
switch(config)# interface 2
switch(eth-2)# monitor
switch(eth-2)# interface 3
switch(eth-3)# monitor
```

```
switch(eth-3)# show monitor
```

Network Monitoring Port

Mirror Port: 1

Monitoring sources

-----

2

3

```
switch(config)# show running-config
```

Running configuration:

```
; J9855A Configuration Editor; Created on release #YA.16.0x.0000x
; Ver #14:01.44.00.04.19.02.13.98.82.34.61.18.28.f3.84.9c.63.ff.37.27:45
hostname "switch"
mirror-port 1
interface 2
    monitor
    exit
interface 3
    monitor
    exit
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-50
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
```

## Using the Menu to configure local mirroring

## Menu and WebAgent limits

You can use the Menu and WebAgent to quickly configure or reconfigure local mirroring and allow any combination of source ports, trunks, and a mesh as the mirroring source.

## High-level overview of the mirror configuration process

### Determine the mirroring session and destination

#### For a local mirroring session

Determine the port number for the exit port (such as A5, B10, and so forth).

## Troubleshooting traffic mirroring

### Cause

If mirrored traffic does not reach the configured remote destination (endpoint) switch or remote exit port, check the following configurations:

If the destination for mirrored traffic is on a different VLAN than the source, routing must be correctly configured along the path from the source to the destination.



---

**CAUTION:** A mirroring exit port should be connected only to a network analyzer, IDS, or other network edge device that has no connection to other network resources. Configuring a mirroring exit port connection to a network can result in serious network performance problems, and is strongly discouraged.

---

## Interface monitoring features

You can designate monitoring of inbound and outbound traffic on:

**Ports and static trunks:** Allows monitoring of individual ports, groups of contiguous ports, and static port trunks.

The switch monitors network activity by copying all traffic inbound and outbound on the specified interfaces to the designated monitoring port, to which a network analyzer can be attached.

If a tagged packet arrives on a monitored port, the packet will remain tagged when it goes out a monitored port even if that port is configured as untagged. If the packet is untagged, it will remain untagged going out the monitor port. The monitor port state (tagged or untagged) does not affect the tagging of the packet. However, egress mirroring does not reflect the tagged or untagged characteristic to the mirror port, instead it reflects the tagged or untagged characteristic of the mirror port.



---

**NOTE:** When both inbound and outbound monitoring is done, and IGMP is enabled on any VLAN, you may get two copies of IGMP packets on the monitored port.

Port trunks cannot be used as a monitoring port.

The switch can monitor static LACP trunks, but not dynamic LACP trunks.

It is possible, when monitoring multiple interfaces in networks with high traffic levels, to copy more traffic to a monitor port than the link can support. In this case, some packets may not be copied to the monitor port.

---

## Configuring port and static trunk monitoring (Menu)

This procedure describes configuring the switch for monitoring when monitoring is disabled. (If monitoring has already been enabled, the screens will appear differently than shown in this procedure.)

1. From the console Main Menu, select:  
**2. Network Monitoring Port**
2. In the Actions menu, press **[E]** (for Edit).
3. If monitoring is currently disabled (the default) then enable it by pressing the Space bar (or **[Y]**) to select Yes.
4. Press the down arrow key to display a screen similar to the following and move the cursor to the **Monitoring Port** parameter.
5. Use the Space bar to select the port to use for monitoring.
6. Highlight the Monitor field and use the Space bar to select the interfaces to monitor:  
**Ports:** Use for monitoring ports or static trunks.
7. If you are monitoring ports or static trunks, use the down arrow key to move the cursor to the **Action** column for the individual ports and position the cursor at a port you want to monitor.
8. Press the Space bar to select **Monitor** for each port and trunk that you want monitored. (Use the down arrow key to move from one interface to the next in the **Action** column.)
9. When you finish selecting ports to monitor, press **[Enter]**, then press **[S]** (for **Save** ) to save your changes and exit from the screen.
10. Return to the Main Menu.

## Configuring port and static trunk monitoring (CLI)

You must use the following configuration sequence to configure port and static trunk monitoring in the CLI:

1. Assign a monitoring (mirror) port.
2. Designate the port(s) and/or static trunk(s) to monitor.

## Displaying the monitoring configuration

### Syntax:

```
show monitor
```

This command lists the port assigned to receive monitored traffic and the ports and/or trunks being monitored.

For example, if you assign port 5 as the monitoring port and configure the switch to monitor ports 2-4, `show monitor` displays the following:

### Monitored port listing

```
switch(config)# show monitor

Network Monitoring Port

Mirror Port: 5 1

Monitoring sources 2
```

2  
3  
4

- <sup>1</sup>Port receiving monitored traffic.
- <sup>2</sup>Monitored Ports

## Configuring the monitor port

### Syntax:

```
no mirror-port [< port-num >]
```

This command assigns or removes a monitoring port, and must be executed from the global configuration level. Removing the monitor port disables port monitoring and resets the monitoring parameters to their factory-default settings.

For example, to assign port 6 as the monitoring port:

```
switch(config)# mirror-port 6
```

To turn off monitoring:

```
switch(config)# no mirror-port
```

## Selecting or removing monitoring source interfaces

After you configure a monitor port you can use either the global configuration level or the interface context level to select ports or static trunks as monitoring sources. You can also use either level to remove monitoring sources.

### Syntax:

```
no interface <monitor-list> monitor
```

<monitor-list>

Includes port numbers and static trunk names such as **4, 7, 5-8, trk1**.



**NOTE:** Individual ports and static trunks can be monitored at the same time.

Elements in the monitor list can include port numbers and static trunk names at the same time.

For example, with a port such as port 5 configured as the monitoring (mirror) port, you would use either of the following commands to select these interfaces for monitoring:

- Ports 6-9, and 14
- Trunk 2

### Selecting ports and static trunks as monitoring sources

```
switch(config)# int 6-9, 14 trk2, monitor
```

## Disabling monitoring at the interface context and the global config level

```
switch(eth-1-3, 5)# no int 5 monitor 1  
switch(eth-1-3, 5)# no monitor  
  
switch(config)# no int 5 monitor 2  
switch(config)# no int 1-3, 5 monitor
```

- <sup>1</sup>These two commands show how to disable monitoring at the interface context level for a single port or all ports in an interface context level.
- <sup>2</sup>These two commands show how to disable monitoring at the global config level for a single port or a group of ports.

There are three fan types:

- Power supply fans
- Fan-tray fans
- Stacking switch fans

## show system

### Syntax

```
show system [chassislocate | information | temperature ]
```

### Description

Shows global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

### Command context

manager and operator

### Parameters

#### chassislocate

Shows the chassis locator LED status. Possible values are ON, Off, and Blink. When the status is On or Blink, the number of minutes that the Locator LED will continue to be on or to blink is displayed.

#### information

Displays global system information and operational parameters for the switch.

#### temperature

Shows system temperature and settings.

### Usage

- To show system fans, see [\*\*show system fans\*\*](#)
- To show chassis power supply and settings, see [\*\*show system power-supply\*\*](#)
- To show system fans for VSF members, see [\*\*show system fans vsf\*\*](#)

### Examples

Locating the system chassis by LED blink using the `show system chassislocate` command.



```
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: ON 5 minutes 5 seconds
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: BLINK 10 minutes 6 seconds
Switch(config)# show system chassislocate
Chassis Locator LED: OFF
```

Showing the general switch system information by using the `show system` command.

```
Switch(config)# show system
Status and Counters - General System Information

System Name       : Switch
System Contact    :
System Location   :

MAC Age Time (sec) : 300
Time Zone         : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None

Software revision : T.13.XX      Base MAC Addr   : 001635-b57cc0
ROM Version       : K.12.12      Serial Number    : LP621KI005

Up Time           : 51 secs       Memory - Total   : 152,455,616
CPU Util (%)      : 3             Free            : 110,527,264

IP Mgmt  - Pkts Rx : 0             Packet - Total   : 6750
          Pkts Tx : 0             Buffers  Free    : 5086
                                   Lowest     : 5086
                                   Missed      : 0
```

## show system fans

### Syntax

```
show system fans
```

### Description

Shows the state, status, and location of system fans.

### Command context

manager and operator

### Usage

Command can be executed using various command contexts. See examples for use of command context PoEP and VSF.

### Examples

The state of all system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans`.

```
Switch# show system fans

Fan Information
Num | State | Failures | Location
```

```

-----+-----+-----+-----
Fan-1 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-2 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-3 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-4 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-5 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-6 | Fan OK      | 0      | Fan Tray
Fan-7 | Fan Removed | 0      | PS 1
Fan-8 | Fan Failed  | 2      | PS 2
Fan-9 | Fan OK      | 0      | PS 3
Fan-10| Fan OK      | 0      | PS 4

```

```

1 / 10 Fans in Failure State
1 / 10 Fans have been in Failure State

```

The state of all system fans within the PoEP context is shown by using the command `show system fans`.

```
Switch(PoEP)# show system fans
```

```

Fan Information
  Num | State      | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Fan-1 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Fan-2 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Fan-3 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Fan-4 | Fan Removed | 0        | PS 1
Fan-5 | Fan Failed  | 2        | PS 2

```

```

1 / 5 Fans in Failure State
1 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State

```

The state of all stacked switch system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans` within the stacked context.

```
Switch(stacked)# show system fans
```

```

Fan Information
Member 1

  Num | State      | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Sys-1 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-2 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-3 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-4 | Fan Removed | 0        | PS 1
Sys-5 | Fan Failed  | 2        | PS 2

```

```

0 / 5 Fans in Failure State
0 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State

```

```

Member 2

  Num | State      | Failures | Location
-----+-----+-----+-----
Sys-1 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-2 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-3 | Fan OK      | 0        | Chassis
Sys-4 | Fan OK      | 0        | PS 1
Sys-5 | Fan OK      | 0        | PS 2

```

```

0 / 5 Fans in Failure State
0 / 5 Fans have been in Failure State

```

The state of all VSF switch members system fans is shown by using the command `show system fans` from within the VSF context.

```
VSF-Switch# show system fans
```

Fan Information

VSF-Member 1

Num	State	Failures	Location
Sys-1	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-2	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-3	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-4	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-5	Fan Removed	0	PS 1
Sys-6	Fan Failed	2	PS 2

1 / 6 Fans in Failure State

1 / 6 Fans have been in Failure State

VSF-Member 2

Num	State	Failures	Location
Sys-1	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-2	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-3	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-4	Fan OK	0	Fan Tray
Sys-5	Fan OK	0	PS 1
Sys-6	Fan OK	0	PS 2

0 / 6 Fans in Failure State

0 / 6 Fans have been in Failure State

## show system power-supply

### Syntax

```
show system power-supply [detailed | fahrenheit]
```

### Description

Shows power supply information in either full detail or full detail in Fahrenheit only. Default temperature is displayed in degrees Celsius.

### Command context

manager and operator

### Parameters

#### detailed

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information.

#### fahrenheit

Shows detailed switch power supply sensor information with temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.

## Usage

- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for the local power supplies only.
- The `show system power-supply detailed` command shows detailed information for power supplies in the powered state only.

## Examples

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply
```

Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC 120V/240V	700
3			Not Present	--	0
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	2750

3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.  
Total power: 4150 W

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status in detail for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%) Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM (47%)
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 90 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 210/118 Volts Power Supplied : 16 Watts Power Capacity : 2750 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 30.9C/86.0F Internal Temp (C/F) : 65.6C/149.0F

```
Fan 1 Speed      : 2000 RPM (37%)
Fan 2 Speed      : 1950 RPM (36%)
```

```
3 / 4 supply bays delivering power.
Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.
```

Use of the command `show system power-supply fahrenheit` shows the power supply status in Fahrenheit for all active switches.

```
Switch# show system power-supply detailed fahrenheit
Power Supply Status:
```

Mem	PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	2	J9829A	IN5BGZ81KX	Powered	Power Consumption : 51 Watts AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	3	J9828A	IN5BGZ81KY	Powered	Power Consumption : 43 Watts AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
1	4			Not Present	
2	1	J9830A	IN5BGZ81KZ	Powered	Power Consumption : 95 Watts AC MAIN/AUX Voltage : 118/208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	2	J9829A	IN5BGZ81KX	Powered	Power Consumption : 51 Watts AC Input Voltage : 208 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	3	J9828A	IN5BGZ81KY	Powered	Power Consumption : 43 Watts AC Input Voltage : 119 Volts Inlet/Internal Temp : 85.6F/87.7F Fan 1 Speed (util) : 1650RPM (20%) Fan 2 Speed (util) : 1600RPM (19%)
2	4			Not Present	

```
6 / 8 supply bays delivering power.
Total Input Power: 378 Watts
```

Use of the command `show system power-supply detailed` shows the power supply status all active switches including a nonpowered J9830A PSU.

```
switch# show system power-supply detailed
```

```
Status and Counters - Power Supply Detailed Information
```

PS#	Model	Serial	State	Status
1	J9828A	IN30G4D009	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 44 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 31 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.0C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 30.5C/86.0F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM
2	J9828A	IN30G4D00C	Powered	AC Power Consumption : 46 Watts AC MAIN Voltage : 209 Volts Power Supplied : 21 Watts Power Capacity : 700 Watts Inlet Temp (C/F) : 27.7C/80.6F Internal Temp (C/F) : 32.5C/89.6F Fan 1 Speed : 1600 RPM Fan 2 Speed : 1600 RPM
3			Not Present	
4	J9830A	IN43G4G05H	Aux Not Powered	
2 / 4 supply bays delivering power. Currently supplying 68 W / 4150 W total power.				

Use of the command `show system power-supply` shows the power supply status all active switches with power supply #2 showing permanent failure.

```
switch# show system power-supply
```


Power Supply Status:

PS#	Model	Serial	State	AC/DC + V	Wattage
1			Not Present	--	0
2	J9829A	IN30G4D00C	Permanent Failure	AC 120V/240V	1100
3	J9829A	IN30G4D00D	Powered	--	1100
4	J9829A	IN43G4G05H	Powered	AC 120V/240V	1100
3 / 4 supply bays delivering power. Total power: 3300 W					

**Table 25:** Field key for output of `show system power-supply` detailed

Field	Description
AC Power Consumption	Actual power consumed from AC input
AC MAIN/AUX Voltage	Actual voltage measured on AC Input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two voltages are displayed for PS#4, as the J9830A includes two AC input IEC connectors.</li> <li>Most power-supplies contain a single AC Input IEC connector and are labeled MAIN.</li> </ul>

Table Continued

Field	Description
Power Supplied	Actual voltage being supplied from the power-supply to the switch for general power and PoE.
Power Capacity	The maximum power that the power-supply can provide to the switch.
Inlet Temp (C/F)	The thermal sensor at the inlet of the power-supply - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit
Internal Temp (C/F)	<div> <div>The thermal sensor internal to the power-supply (will vary depending upon the model) - shown in both Celsius and Fahrenheit.</div> <div>  <b>NOTE:</b> There is no "Output Temperature Sensor" on either the 5400R or 3810M switches. </div> </div>
Fan Speed	Shows the current fan speed in RPM and the percent of total fan speed utilization. For PSUs that contain more than one fan, a separate line will be included for each.
Currently Supplying	A summary of the total power being supplied and the total capacity (same summary as seen on the command <code>show system power-supply</code> ).

## Fan failures and SNMP traps

### Power supply fan-fault

Power supply events indicating an internal fan-fault are reported by SNMP traps issued up to 10 seconds after the corresponding power supply fan fault occurs.

For single event power supply fan faults, a corresponding SNMP trap is issued.

#### Single event and corresponding SNMP trap issued for a power supply fan-fault and recovery

Shown is a fan-fault (fan 1 of 2) and spontaneous recovery a few seconds after within power supply in bay number 2. The event is issued as informative (I).

```
I 11/30/16 14:01:59 02778 chassis: AM1: Internal power supply 2: Fan 1 OK.
```

### Fan-tray fan-fault events

For single event fan-tray fan-faults, the corresponding SNMP traps are issued only for fans within the fan-tray.

#### Single event and corresponding SNMP trap issued for a fan-tray fan-fault and recovery

Shown is a fan-tray fan-fault (fan number 3) and spontaneous recovery a few seconds after. The event is issued as "Informative" (I).

```
I 11/30/16 14:03:08 00070 chassis: AM1: Fan OK: Fan: 3 Failures: 1
```

Shown is a fan-tray fan-fault (fan number 3) failure. The event is issued as a "Warning" (w).

```
W 11/30/16 14:02:38 00070 chassis: AM1: Fan failure: Fan: 3 Failures: 1
```

## Overview

This chapter addresses performance-related network problems that can be caused by topology, switch configuration, and the effects of other devices or their configurations on switch operation. (For switch-specific information on hardware problems indicated by LED behavior, cabling requirements, and other potential hardware-related problems, see the installation guide you received with the switch.)



**NOTE:** Switch software updates are periodically placed on the Switch Networking website. It is recommended that you check this website for software updates that may have fixed a problem you are experiencing.

For information on support and warranty provisions, see the Support and Warranty booklet shipped with the switch.

## Troubleshooting approaches

### Cause

Use these approaches to diagnose switch problems:

- Check the HPE website for software updates that may have solved your problem: <http://www.hpe.com/networking>
- Check the switch LEDs for indications of proper switch operation:
  - Each switch port has a Link LED that should light whenever an active network device is connected to the port.
  - Problems with the switch hardware and software are indicated by flashing the Fault and other switch LEDs. For a description of the LED behavior and information on using the LEDs for troubleshooting, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Check the network topology/installation. For topology information, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Check cables for damage, correct type, and proper connections. You should also use a cable tester to check your cables for compliance to the relevant IEEE 802.3 specification. For correct cable types and connector pin-outs, see the installation guide shipped with the switch.
- Use the Port Utilization Graph and Alert Log in the WebAgent included in the switch to help isolate problems. These tools are available through the WebAgent:
  - Port Utilization Graph
  - Alert log
  - Port Status and Port Counters screens
  - Diagnostic tools (Link test, Ping test, configuration file browser)
- For help in isolating problems, use the easy-to-access switch console built into the switch or Telnet to the switch console. For operating information on the Menu and CLI interfaces included in the console, see chapters 3 and 4. These tools are available through the switch console:



- Status and Counters screens
- Event Log
- Diagnostics tools (Link test, Ping test, configuration file browser, and advanced user commands)

## Browser or Telnet access problems

### Cannot access the WebAgent

- Access may be disabled by the Web Agent Enabled parameter in the switch console. Check the setting on this parameter by selecting:

#### **2. Switch Configuration**

##### **1. System Information**

- The switch may not have the correct IP address, subnet mask, or gateway. Verify by connecting a console to the switch's Console port and selecting:

#### **2. Switch Configuration**

##### **5. IP Configuration**

Note: If DHCP/Bootp is used to configure the switch, the IP addressing can be verified by selecting:

##### **1. Status and Counters...**

##### **2. Switch Management Address Information**

Also check the DHCP/Bootp server configuration to verify correct IP addressing.

- If you are using DHCP to acquire the IP address for the switch, the IP address "lease time" may have expired so that the IP address has changed. For more information on how to "reserve" an IP address, see the documentation for the DHCP application that you are using.
- If one or more IP-authorized managers are configured, the switch allows inbound telnet access only to a device having an authorized IP address. For more information on IP Authorized managers, see the access security guide for your switch.
- Java™ applets may not be running on the web browser. They are required for the switch WebAgent to operate correctly. Refer to the online Help on your web browser for how to run the Java applets.

### Cannot Telnet into the switch console from a station on the network

- Off-subnet management stations can lose Telnet access if you enable routing without first configuring a static (default) route. That is, the switch uses the IP default gateway only while operating as a Layer 2 device. While routing is enabled on the switch, the IP default gateway is not used. You can avoid this problem by using the ip route command to configure a static (default) route before enabling routing. For more information, see "IP Routing Features" in the multicast and routing guide for your switch.

- Telnet access may be disabled by the `Inbound Telnet Enabled` parameter in the System Information screen of the menu interface:

#### **2. Switch Configuration**

##### **1. System Information**

- The switch may not have the correct IP address, subnet mask, or gateway. Verify by connecting a console to the switch's Console port and selecting:

#### **2. Switch Configuration**

## 5. IP Configuration

- If you are using DHCP to acquire the IP address for the switch, the IP address "lease time" may have expired so that the IP address has changed. For more information on how to "reserve" an IP address, see the documentation for the DHCP application that you are using.
- If one or more IP-authorized managers are configured, the switch allows inbound telnet access only to a device having an authorized IP address. For more information on IP Authorized managers, see the access security guide for your switch.

## Unusual network activity

Network activity that fails to meet accepted norms may indicate a hardware problem with one or more of the network components, possibly including the switch. Such problems can also be caused by a network loop or simply too much traffic for the network as it is currently designed and implemented. Unusual network activity is usually indicated by the LEDs on the front of the switch or measured with the switchconsole interface or with a network management tool. For information on using LEDs to identify unusual network activity, see the installation guide you received with the switch.

A topology loop can also cause excessive network activity. The Event Log "FFI" messages can be indicative of this type of problem.

## General problems

### The network runs slow; processes fail; users cannot access servers or other devices

Broadcast storms may be occurring in the network. These may be caused by redundant links between nodes.

- If you are configuring a port trunk, finish configuring the ports in the trunk before connecting the related cables. Otherwise you may inadvertently create a number of redundant links (that is, topology loops) that will cause broadcast storms.
- Turn on STP to block redundant links
- Check for FFI messages in the Event Log

### Duplicate IP addresses

This is indicated by this Event Log message:

```
ip: Invalid ARP source: IP address on IP address
```

where both instances of *IP address* are the same address, indicating that the switch's IP address has been duplicated somewhere on the network.

### Duplicate IP addresses in a DHCP network

If you use a DHCP server to assign IP addresses in your network, and you find a device with a valid IP address that does not appear to communicate properly with the server or other devices, a duplicate IP address may have been issued by the server. This can occur if a client has not released a DHCP-assigned IP address after the intended expiration time and the server "leases" the address to another device. This can also happen, for example, if the server is first configured to issue IP addresses with an unlimited duration, and then is subsequently configured to issue IP addresses that will expire after a limited duration. One solution is to configure "reservations" in the DHCP server for specific IP addresses to be assigned to devices having specific MAC addresses. For more information, see the documentation for the DHCP server.

One indication of a duplicate IP address in a DHCP network is this Event Log message:

```
ip: Invalid ARP source: <IP-address>  
on <IP-address>
```

where both instances of *IP-address* are the same address, indicating that the IP address has been duplicated somewhere on the network.

### The switch has been configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, but has not received a DHCP or Bootp reply

When the switch is first configured for DHCP/Bootp operation, or if it is rebooted with this configuration, it immediately begins sending request packets on the network. If the switch does not receive a reply to its DHCP/Bootp requests, it continues to periodically send request packets, but with decreasing frequency. Thus, if a DHCP or Bootp server is not available or accessible to the switch when DHCP/Bootp is first configured, the switch may not immediately receive the desired configuration.

After verifying that the server has become accessible to the switch, reboot the switch to re-start the process.

## 802.1Q Prioritization problems

### Ports configured for non-default prioritization (level 1 to 7) are not performing the specified action

If the ports were placed in a trunk group after being configured for non-default prioritization, the priority setting was automatically reset to zero (the default). Ports in a trunk group operate only at the default priority setting.

## Addressing ACL problems

### ACLs are properly configured and assigned to VLANs, but the switch is not using the ACLs to filter IP layer 3 packets

ACL filtering on the switches applies only to routed packets and packets having a destination IP address (DA) on the switch itself.

Also, the switch applies assigned ACLs only at the point where traffic enters or leaves the switch on a VLAN. Ensure that you have correctly applied your ACLs ("in" and/or "out") to the appropriate VLANs.

### The switch does not allow management access from a device on the same VLAN

The implicit `deny any` function that the switch automatically applies as the last entry in any ACL always blocks packets having the same DA as the switch's IP address on the same VLAN. That is, bridged packets with the switch itself as the destination are blocked as a security measure.

To preempt this action, edit the ACL to include an ACE that permits access to the switch's DA on that VLAN from the management device.

### Error (Invalid input) when entering an IP address

When using the "host" option in the Command syntax, ensure that you are not including a mask in either dotted decimal or CIDR format. Using the "host" option implies a specific host device and therefore does not permit any mask entry.

#### Correctly and incorrectly specifying a single host

```
switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100 1

switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100 255.255.255.2552
Invalid input: 255.255.255.255

switch(config)# access-list 6 permit host 10.28.100.100/32 3
Invalid input: 10.28.100.100/32
```

- <sup>1</sup>Correct.
- <sup>2</sup>Incorrect. No mask needed to specify a single host.
- <sup>3</sup>Incorrect. No mask needed to specify a single host.

## Apparent failure to log all "deny" matches

Where the `log` statement is included in multiple ACEs configured with a "deny" option, a large volume of "deny" matches generating logging messages in a short period of time can impact switch performance. If it appears that the switch is not consistently logging all "deny" matches, try reducing the number of logging actions by removing the `log` statement from some ACEs configured with the "deny" action.

## The switch does not allow any routed access from a specific host, group of hosts, or subnet

The implicit `deny any` function that the switch automatically applies as the last entry in any ACL may be blocking all access by devices not specifically permitted by an entry in an ACL affecting those sources. If you are using the ACL to block specific hosts, a group of hosts, or a subnet, but want to allow any access not specifically permitted, insert `permit any` as the last explicit entry in the ACL.

## The switch is not performing routing functions on a VLAN

Two possible causes of this problem are:

- Routing is not enabled.
- An ACL may be blocking access to the VLAN (on a switch covered in this guide). Ensure that the switch's IP address on the VLAN is not blocked by one of the ACE entries in an ACL applied to that VLAN. A common mistake is to either not explicitly permit the switch's IP address as a DA or to use a wildcard ACL mask in a `deny` statement that happens to include the switch's IP address. For an Example: of this problem, see section "General ACL Operating Notes" in the "Access Control Lists (ACLs)" of the latest access security guide for your switch.

## Routing through a gateway on the switch fails

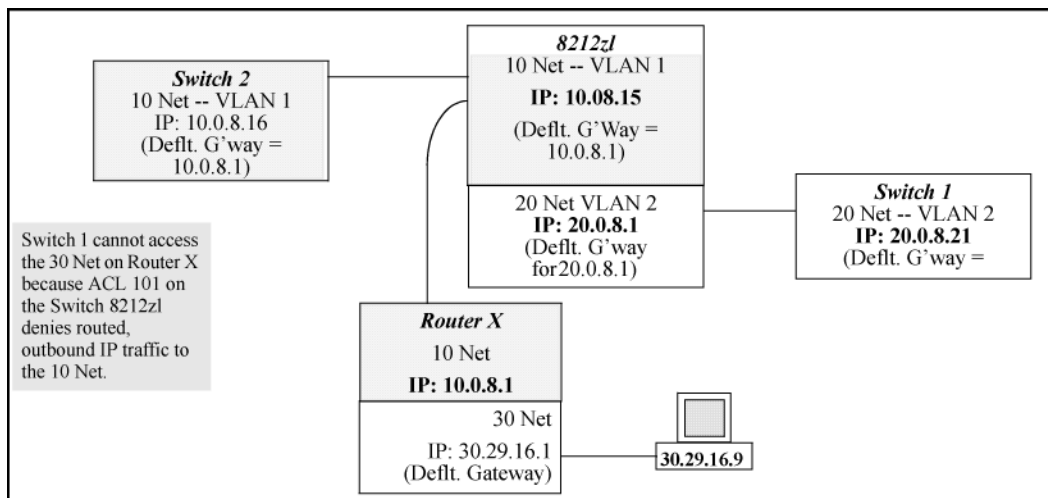
Configuring a "deny" ACE that includes a gateway address can block traffic attempting to use the gateway as a next-hop.

## Remote gateway case

Configuring ACL "101" (example below) and applying it outbound on VLAN 1 in the figure below includes the router gateway (10.0.8.1) needed by devices on other networks. This can prevent the switch from sending ARP and other messages to the gateway router to support traffic from authorized remote networks.

In **Figure 45: Inadvertently blocking a gateway** on page 361, this ACE (see data in bold below) denies access to the 10 Net's 10.0.8.1 router gateway needed by the 20 Net (Subnet mask is 255.255.255.0). **See: example**

**Figure 45: Inadvertently blocking a gateway**



To avoid inadvertently blocking the remote gateway for authorized traffic from another network (such as the 20 Net in this Example):

### Procedure

1. Configure an ACE that specifically permits authorized traffic from the remote network.
2. Configure narrowly defined ACEs to block unwanted IP traffic that would otherwise use the gateway; such ACEs might deny traffic for a particular application, particular hosts, or an entire subnet.
3. Configure a "permit any" ACE to specifically allow any IP traffic to move through the gateway.

### ACE blocking an entire subnet

```
switch(config)# access-list config

ip access-list extended "101"
  deny ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 10.0.8.30 0.0.0.255
  permit ip 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
  exit
```

### Local gateway case

If you use the switch as a gateway for traffic you want routed between subnets, use these general steps to avoid blocking the gateway for authorized applications:

### Procedure

1. Configure gateway security first for routing with specific permit and deny statements.
2. Permit authorized traffic.
3. Deny any unauthorized traffic that you have not already denied in step 1.

## IGMP-related problems

## IP multicast (IGMP) traffic that is directed by IGMP does not reach IGMP hosts or a multicast router connected to a port

IGMP must be enabled on the switch and the affected port must be configured for "Auto" or "Forward" operation.

## IP multicast traffic floods out all ports; IGMP does not appear to filter traffic

The IGMP feature does not operate if the switch or VLAN does not have an IP address configured manually or obtained through DHCP/Bootp. To verify whether an IP address is configured for the switch or VLAN, do one of the following:

- **Try using the WebAgent:** If you can access the WebAgent, then an IP address is configured.
- **Try to telnet to the switch console:** If you can Telnet to the switch, an IP address is configured.
- **Use the switch console interface:** From the Main Menu, check the Management Address Information screen by clicking on:
  1. Status and Counters
  2. Switch Management Address Information

## LACP-related problems

### Unable to enable LACP on a port with the `interface <port-number> lacp` command

In this case, the switch displays the following message:

```
Operation is not allowed for a trunked port.
```

You cannot enable LACP on a port while it is configured as a static Trunk port. To enable LACP on a static-trunked port:

#### Procedure

1. Use the `no trunk <port-number>` command to disable the static trunk assignment.
2. Execute `interface <port-number> lacp` .



**CAUTION:** Removing a port from a trunk without first disabling the port can create a traffic loop that can slow down or halt your network. Before removing a port from a trunk, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you either disable the port or disconnect it from the LAN.

## Port-based access control (802.1X)-related problems



#### NOTE:

To list the 802.1X port-access Event Log messages stored on the switch, use `show log 802`.

See also [Radius-related problems](#) on page 365.

## The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests

In this case, the switch attempts authentication using the secondary method configured for the type of access you are using (console, Telnet, or SSH).

There can be several reasons for not receiving a response to an authentication request. Do the following:

- Use `ping` to ensure that the switch has access to the configured RADIUS servers.
- Verify that the switch is using the correct encryption key (RADIUS secret key) for each server.
- Verify that the switch has the correct IP address for each RADIUS server.
- Ensure that the `radius-server timeout` period is long enough for network conditions.

### The switch does not authenticate a client even though the RADIUS server is properly configured and providing a response to the authentication request

If the RADIUS server configuration for authenticating the client includes a VLAN assignment, ensure that the VLAN exists as a static VLAN on the switch. See "How 802.1X Authentication Affects VLAN Operation" in the access security guide for your switch.

### During RADIUS-authenticated client sessions, access to a VLAN on the port used for the client sessions is lost

If the affected VLAN is configured as untagged on the port, it may be temporarily blocked on that port during an 802.1X session. This is because the switch has temporarily assigned another VLAN as untagged on the port to support the client access, as specified in the response from the RADIUS server. See "How 802.1X Authentication Affects VLAN Operation" in the access security guide for your switch.

### The switch appears to be properly configured as a supplicant, but cannot gain access to the intended authenticator port on the switch to which it is connected

If `aaa authentication port-access` is configured for Local, ensure that you have entered the local **login** (operator-level) username and password of the authenticator switch into the `identity` and `secret` parameters of the supplicant configuration. If instead, you enter the enable (manager-level) username and password, access will be denied.

### The supplicant statistics listing shows multiple ports with the same authenticator MAC address

The link to the authenticator may have been moved from one port to another without the supplicant statistics having been cleared from the first port. See "Note on Supplicant Statistics" in the chapter on Port-Based and User-Based Access Control in the access security guide for your switch.

### The `show port-access authenticator <port-list>` command shows one or more ports remain open after they have been configured with `control unauthorized`

802.1X is not active on the switch. After you execute `aaa port-access authenticator active`, all ports configured with `control unauthorized` should be listed as Closed.

#### Authenticator ports remain "open" until activated

```
switch(config)# show port-access authenticator e 9
Port Access Authenticator Status
Port-access authenticator activated no : No
Access Authenticator Authenticator
Port Status Control State Backend State
----
9      Open  1    FU      Force Auth    Idle

switch(config)# show port-access authenticator active
switch(config)# show port-access authenticator e 9
Port Access Authenticator Status
```

```

Port-access authenticator activated no : Yes
Access Authenticator Authenticator
Port Status Control State Backend State
-----
9 Closed FU Force Unauth Idle

```

<sup>1</sup>Port A9 shows an “Open” status even though Access Control is set to Unauthorized (Force Auth). This is because the port-access authenticator has not yet been activated.

## RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch

Use `show radius` to verify that the encryption key (RADIUS secret key) the switch is using is correct for the server being contacted. If the switch has only a global key configured, it either must match the server key or you must configure a server-specific key. If the switch already has a server-specific key assigned to the server's IP address, it overrides the global key and must match the server key.

### Displaying encryption keys

```

switch(config)# show radius
Status and Counters - General RADIUS Information
Deadtime(min) : 0
Timeout(secs) : 5
Retransmit Attempts : 3
Global Encryption Key : My-Global-Key
Dynamic Authorization UDP Port : 3799

Server IP Addr Auth Acct DM/ Time
Port Port CoA Window Encryption Key
-----
10.33.18.119 1812 1813 --- 119-only-key

```

Also, ensure that the switch port used to access the RADIUS server is not blocked by an 802.1X configuration on that port. For example, `show port-access authenticator <port-list>` gives you the status for the specified ports. Also, ensure that other factors, such as port security or any 802.1X configuration on the RADIUS server are not blocking the link.

## The authorized MAC address on a port that is configured for both 802.1X and port security either changes or is re-acquired after execution of `aaa port-access authenticator <port-list> initialize`

If the port is force-authorized with `aaa port-access authenticator <port-list> control authorized` command and port security is enabled on the port, then executing `initialize` causes the port to clear the learned address and learn a new address from the first packet it receives after you execute `initialize`.

## A trunked port configured for 802.1X is blocked

If you are using RADIUS authentication and the RADIUS server specifies a VLAN for the port, the switch allows authentication, but blocks the port. To eliminate this problem, either remove the port from the trunk or reconfigure the RADIUS server to avoid specifying a VLAN.

## QoS-related problems



## Loss of communication when using VLAN-tagged traffic

If you cannot communicate with a device in a tagged VLAN environment, ensure that the device either supports VLAN tagged traffic or is connected to a VLAN port that is configured as `Untagged`.

## Radius-related problems

### The switch does not receive a response to RADIUS authentication requests

In this case, the switch attempts authentication using the secondary method configured for the type of access you are using (console, Telnet, or SSH).

There can be several reasons for not receiving a response to an authentication request. Do the following:

- Use `ping` to ensure that the switch has access to the configured RADIUS server.
- Verify that the switch is using the correct encryption key for the designated server.
- Verify that the switch has the correct IP address for the RADIUS server.
- Ensure that the `radius-server timeout` period is long enough for network conditions.
- Verify that the switch is using the same UDP port number as the server.



**NOTE:** Because of an inconsistency between the Windows XP 802.1x supplicant timeout value and the switch default timeout value, which is 5, when adding a backup RADIUS server, set the switch `radius-server timeout` value to 4. Otherwise, the switch may not failover properly to the backup RADIUS server.

### RADIUS server fails to respond to a request for service, even though the server's IP address is correctly configured in the switch

Use `show radius` to verify that the encryption key the switch is using is correct for the server being contacted. If the switch has only a global key configured, it either must match the server key or you must configure a server-specific key. If the switch already has a server-specific key assigned to the server's IP address, it overrides the global key and must match the server key.

#### Global and unique encryption keys

```
switch(config)# show radius
Status and Counters - General RADIUS Information
  Deadtime(min) : 0
  Timeout(secs) : 5
  Retransmit Attempts : 3
  Global Encryption Key : My-Global-Key 1
  Dynamic Authorization UDP Port : 3799

  Server IP Addr   Auth Port  Acct Port  DM/CoA  Time Window  Encryption Key
  -----
  10.33.18.119    1812    1813      -      -      -      119-only-key 2
```

- 1  
Global RADIUS Encryption Key
- 2

## MSTP and fast-uplink problems



### CAUTION:

If you enable MSTP, Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you leave the remainder of the MSTP parameter settings at their default values until you have had an opportunity to evaluate MSTP performance in your network. Because incorrect MSTP settings can adversely affect network performance, you should avoid making changes without having a strong understanding of how MSTP operates. To learn the details of MSTP operation, see the IEEE802.1s standard.

## Broadcast storms appearing in the network

This can occur when there are physical loops (redundant links) in the topology. Where this exists, you should enable MSTP on all bridging devices in the topology to detect the loop.

## STP blocks a link in a VLAN even though there are no redundant links in that VLAN

In 802.1Q-compliant switches, MSTP blocks redundant physical links even if they are in separate VLANs. A solution is to use only one, multiple-VLAN (tagged) link between the devices. Also, if ports are available, you can improve the bandwidth in this situation by using a port trunk. See "Spanning Tree Operation with VLANs" in "Static Virtual LANs (VLANs)" in the advanced traffic management guide for your switch.

## Fast-uplink troubleshooting

Some of the problems that can result from incorrect use of fast-uplink MSTP include temporary loops and generation of duplicate packets.

Problem sources can include:

- Fast-uplink is configured on a switch that is the MSTP root device.
- Either the `Hello Time` or the `Max Age` setting (or both) is too long on one or more switches. Return the `Hello Time` and `Max Age` settings to their default values (2 seconds and 20 seconds, respectively, on a switch).
- A "downlink" port is connected to a switch that is further away (in hop count) from the root device than the switch port on which fast-uplink MSTP is configured.
- Two edge switches are directly linked to each other with a fast-uplink (Mode = `Uplink`) connection.
- Fast uplink is configured on both ends of a link.
- A switch serving as a backup MSTP root switch has ports configured for fast-uplink MSTP and has become the root device because of a failure in the original root device.

## SSH-related problems

### Switch access refused to a client

Even though you have placed the client's public key in a text file and copied the file (using the `copy tftp pub-key-file` command) into the switch, the switch refuses to allow the client to have access. If the source SSH client is an SSHv2 application, the public key may be in the PEM format, which the switch (SSHv1) does not interpret. Check the SSH client application for a utility that can convert the PEM-formatted key into an ASCII-formatted key.

## Executing IP SSH does not enable SSH on the switch

The switch does not have a host key. Verify by executing `show ip host-public-key`. If you see the message

```
ssh cannot be enabled until a host key is configured (use 'crypto' command).
```

you need to generate an SSH key pair for the switch. To do so, execute `crypto key generate` (see "Generating the switch's public and private key pair" in the SSH chapter of the access security guide for your switch.)

## Switch does not detect a client's public key that does appear in the switch's public key file (`show ip client-public-key`)

The client's public key entry in the public key file may be preceded by another entry that does not terminate with a new line (CR). In this case, the switch interprets the next sequential key entry as simply a comment attached to the preceding key entry. Where a public key file has more than one entry, ensure that all entries terminate with a new line (CR). While this is optional for the last entry in the file, not adding a new line to the last entry creates an error potential if you either add another key to the file at a later time or change the order of the keys in the file.

## An attempt to copy a client public-key file into the switch has failed and the switch lists one of the following messages

```
Download failed: overlength key in key file.
```

```
Download failed: too many keys in key file.
```

```
Download failed: one or more keys is not a valid RSA public key.
```

The public key file you are trying to download has one of the following problems:

- A key in the file is too long. The maximum key length is 1024 characters, including spaces. This could also mean that two or more keys are merged together instead of being separated by a <CR> <LF>.
- There are more than ten public keys in the key file.
- One or more keys in the file is corrupted or is not a valid rsa public key.

## Client ceases to respond ("hangs") during connection phase

The switch does not support data compression in an SSH session. Clients often have compression turned on by default, but then disable it during the negotiation phase. A client that does not recognize the compression-request FAILURE response may fail when attempting to connect. Ensure that compression is turned **off** before attempting a connection to prevent this problem.

## TACACS-related problems

### All users are locked out of access to the switch

If the switch is functioning properly, but no username/password pairs result in console or Telnet access to the switch, the problem may be caused by how the TACACS+ server and/or the switch are configured. Use one of the following methods to recover:

- Access the TACACS+ server application and adjust or remove the configuration parameters controlling access to the switch.
- If the above method does not work, try eliminating configuration changes in the switch that have not been saved to flash (boot-up configuration) by causing the switch to reboot from the boot-up configuration (which includes only the configuration changes made prior to the last `write memory` command.) If you did not use

`write memory` to save the authentication configuration to flash, pressing the `Reset` button reboots the switch with the boot-up configuration.

- Disconnect the switch from network access to any TACACS+ servers and then log in to the switch using either Telnet or direct console port access. Because the switch cannot access a TACACS+ server, it defaults to local authentication. You can then use the switch's local Operator or Manager username/password pair to log on.
- As a last resort, use the `Clear/Reset` button combination to reset the switch to its factory default boot-up configuration. Taking this step means you will have to reconfigure the switch to return it to operation in your network.

## No communication between the switch and the TACACS+ server application

If the switch can access the server device (that is, it can `ping` the server), a configuration error may be the problem. Some possibilities include:

- The server IP address configured with the switch's `tacacs-serverhost` command may not be correct. (Use the switch's `show tacacs-server` command to list the TACACS+ server IP address.)
- The encryption key configured in the server does not match the encryption key configured in the switch (by using the `tacacs-server key` command). Verify the key in the server and compare it to the key configured in the switch. (Use `show tacacs-server` to list the global key. Use `show config` or `show config running` to list any server-specific keys.)
- The accessible TACACS+ servers are not configured to provide service to the switch.

## Access is denied even though the username/password pair is correct

Some reasons for denial include the following parameters controlled by your TACACS+ server application:

- The account has expired.
- The access attempt is through a port that is not allowed for the account.
- The time quota for the account has been exhausted.
- The time credit for the account has expired.
- The access attempt is outside of the time frame allowed for the account.
- The allowed number of concurrent logins for the account has been exceeded.

For more help, see the documentation provided with your TACACS+ server application.

## Unknown users allowed to login to the switch

Your TACACS+ application may be configured to allow access to unknown users by assigning them the privileges included in a *default user* profile. See the documentation provided with your TACACS+ server application.

## System allows fewer login attempts than specified in the switch configuration

Your TACACS+ server application may be configured to allow fewer login attempts than you have configured in the switch with the `aaa authentication num-attempts` command.

## TimeP, SNTP, or Gateway problems

## The switch cannot find the time server or the configured gateway

TimeP, SNTP, and Gateway access are through the primary VLAN, which in the default configuration is the DEFAULT\_VLAN. If the primary VLAN has been moved to another VLAN, it may be disabled or does not have ports assigned to it.

## VLAN-related problems

### Monitor port

When using the monitor port in a multiple-VLAN environment, the switch handles broadcast, multicast, and unicast traffic output from the monitor port as follows:

- If the monitor port is configured for tagged VLAN operation on the same VLAN as the traffic from monitored ports, the traffic output from the monitor port carries the same VLAN tag.
- If the monitor port is configured for untagged VLAN operation on the same VLAN as the traffic from the monitored ports, the traffic output from the monitor port is untagged.
- If the monitor port is not a member of the same VLAN as the traffic from the monitored ports, traffic from the monitored ports does not go out the monitor port.

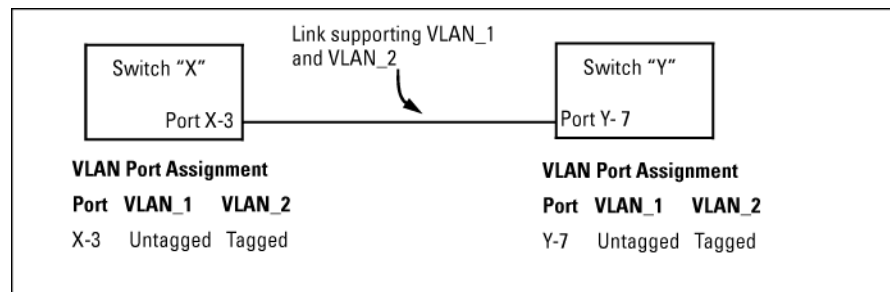
### None of the devices assigned to one or more VLANs on an 802.1Q-compliant switch are being recognized

If multiple VLANs are being used on ports connecting 802.1Q-compliant devices, inconsistent VLAN IDs may have been assigned to one or more VLANs. For a given VLAN, the same VLAN ID must be used on all connected 802.1Q-compliant devices.

### Link configured for multiple VLANs does not support traffic for one or more VLANs

One or more VLANs may not be properly configured as "Tagged" or "Untagged." A VLAN assigned to a port connecting two 802.1Q-compliant devices must be configured the same on both ports. For example, VLAN\_1 and VLAN\_2 use the same link between switch "X" and switch "Y," as shown in **Figure 46: Example: of correct VLAN port assignments on a link** on page 369.

**Figure 46:** Example: of correct VLAN port assignments on a link



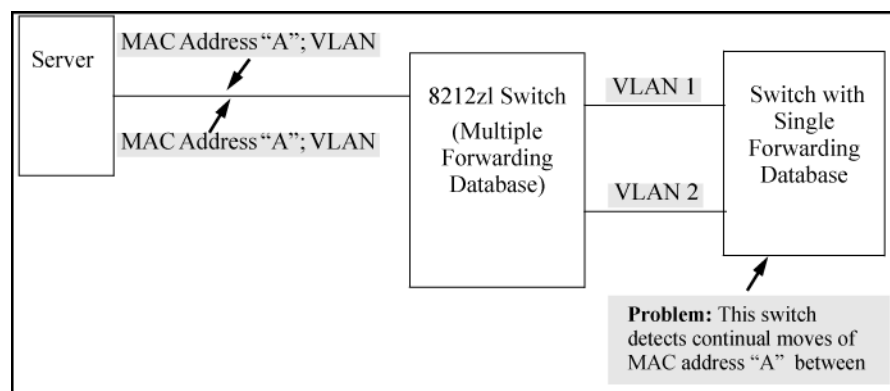
- If VLAN\_1 (VID=1) is configured as "Untagged" on port 3 on switch "X," it must also be configured as "Untagged" on port 7 on switch "Y." Make sure that the VLAN ID (VID) is the same on both switches.
- Similarly, if VLAN\_2 (VID=2) is configured as "Tagged" on the link port on switch "A," it must also be configured as "Tagged" on the link port on switch "B." Make sure that the VLAN ID (VID) is the same on both switches.

## Duplicate MAC addresses across VLANs

The switches operate with multiple forwarding databases. Thus, duplicate MAC addresses occurring on different VLANs can appear where a device having one MAC address is a member of more than one 802.1Q VLAN, and the switch port to which the device is linked is using VLANs (instead of MSTP or trunking) to establish redundant links to another switch. If the other device sends traffic over multiple VLANs, its MAC address consistently appears in multiple VLANs on the switch port to which it is linked.

Be aware that attempting to create redundant paths through the use of VLANs causes problems with some switches. One symptom is that a duplicate MAC address appears in the Port Address Table of one port and then later appears on another port. While the switches have multiple forwarding databases and thus do not have this problem, some switches with a single forwarding database for all VLANs may produce the impression that a connected device is moving among ports because packets with the same MAC address but different VLANs are received on different ports. You can avoid this problem by creating redundant paths using port trunks or spanning tree.

**Figure 47:** Example: of duplicate MAC address



## Disabled overlapping subnet configuration

Previous software versions allowed configuration of VLAN IP addresses in overlapping subnets which can cause incorrect routing of packets and result in IP communication failure. As of software version WB.15.09, overlapping subnet configurations are no longer allowed. An overlapping subnet is determined by the configuration order. The subnet that is configured first is valid, but any subsequent IP addresses that overlap are not allowed.

When the switch is booted into software version WB.15.09 or later, and the configuration file includes overlapping subnets, the following occurs:

- The event log provides an error message in the format:

```
ip: VLANx : IP initialization failed for vlan x.
```

For a multinetted VLAN (multiple IP addresses assigned to the VLAN), only the IP addresses that are overlapping subnets are removed. The other IP addresses on the VLAN are retained and function correctly. The error message can be somewhat misleading; the IP addresses on the VLAN that are not overlapping are initialized correctly.

- The output of the `show ip` command correctly indicates that the overlapping IP address does not exist on the VLANs that have error messages in the event log.

- The output of the `show running-config` command incorrectly indicates that the overlapping IP address is configured. In **Figure 48: An IP address that is not actually configured on the VLAN** on page 371, the IP address shown in VLAN6 is not actually configured on the VLAN; it has been removed.

**Figure 48: An IP address that is not actually configured on the VLAN**

```
switch(config)# show running-config

.
.
.
vlan 5
  name "VLAN5"
  ip address 11.22.33.1 255.0.0.0
  exit
vlan 6
  name "VLAN6"
  ip address 11.23.34.1 255.255.255.0
  exit
```

The information is retained in the config file to allow you to boot up the switch and have it function as it did when it was configured with earlier software that allows overlapping subnets. If you attempt to remove the overlapping subnet from the VLAN, the switch displays an error message similar to:

```
The IP address <ip-address> is not configured on this VLAN
```

This occurs because the overlapping IP address has been removed and is not visible to the switch. To resolve this:

- Enter the `show ip` command to determine which addresses are visible to the switch.
- Remove the erroneous IP addresses from the config file by entering the `no ip address` command to remove all the IP addresses from the specific VLAN. Be sure to document the other valid IP addresses on that VLAN so they can be restored after removing the erroneous IP addresses from the config file.

If you go back to a software version prior to WB.15.09 before removing the overlapping IP address, the prior software version enables the overlapping IP subnet.

## Fan failure

Whenever a fan failure occurs, the Fan/Fault LEDs blink amber and a log entry is recorded. During a fan failure, all operational fans are automatically set to the maximum operating speed until the fan failure has been resolved. At that time, the fan speed is reset to the minimum operating speed.

## Mitigating flapping transceivers

In traditional switches, the state of a link is driven directly by the reported state of the port, which is required for rapid detection of link faults. However, the consequence of this is that a marginal transceiver, optical, or wire cabling, one that "flaps" up and down several times per second, can cause STP and other protocols to react poorly, resulting in a network outage. The link-flap option expands the functionality of the existing fault finder function to include a "link-flap" event and a new action of "warn-and-disable." Together, these additions allow the errant condition to be detected, and the port in question can be optionally disabled.

### Syntax:

```
fault-finder <link-flap> sensitivity {<low | medium | high>} > action {<warn | warn-and-disable>}
```

Default settings: Sensitivity = Medium; Action = Warn

Sensitivity thresholds are static. In a 10-second window, if more than the threshold number of link state transitions (up or down) are detected, the event is triggered. The 10-second window is statically determined, that is, the counters are reset every 10 seconds, as opposed to being a sliding window. The counters are polled twice per second (every 500 milliseconds), and the event is triggered if the sensitivity threshold is crossed at that time.

The sensitivity thresholds are:

High	3 transitions in 10 seconds
Medium	6 transitions in 10 seconds
Low	10 transitions in 10 seconds

Configuring the link-flap event and corresponding action applies to all ports and port types (it is a global setting per FFI event type). Note that normal link transition protocols may prevent link state changes from occurring fast enough to trigger the event for some port types, configurations, and sensitivity settings.

When the link-flap threshold is met for a port configured for warn (For example, `fault-finder link-flap sensitivity medium action warn`), the following message is seen in the switch event log.

```
02672 FFI: port <number>-Excessive link state transitions
```

When the link-flap threshold is met for a port configured for warn-and-disable (For example, `fault-finder linkflap sensitivity medium action warn-and-disable`), the following messages are seen in the switch event log.

```
02672 FFI: port <number>-Excessive link state transitions
```

```
02673 FFI: port <number>-Port disabled by Fault-finder.
```

```
02674 FFI: port <number>-Administrator action required to re-enable.
```

The warn-and-disable action is available for all fault-finder events on an individual basis. It may be used, For example, to disable a port when excessive broadcasts are received. Because the fault-generated disabling of a port requires operator intervention to re-enable the port, such configuration should be used with care. For example, link-flap-initiated disablement is not desired on ports that are at the client edge of the network, because link state changes there are frequent and expected.

Hewlett Packard Enterprise does not recommend automatic disabling of a port at the core or distribution layers when excessive broadcasts are detected, because of the potential to disable large parts of the network that may be uninvolved and for the opportunity to create a denial-of-service attack.

## Fault-finder link-flap

### Syntax

In the config context:

```
no fault-finder link-flap [ethernet] PORT-LIST action warn | warn-and-disable SECONDS sensitivity low | medium | high
```

### Description

Configures the link-flap on a port. The default value is `warn`.

### Parameters

#### link-flap

Configure link-flap control.

#### warn

Log the event only.



**warn-and-disable**

Log the event and disable the port.

**seconds**

Re-enable the port after waiting for the specified number of seconds. The default value is 0, which indicates that the port will not be automatically enabled.

**sensitivity**

Indicate the sensitivity of the link-flap control threshold within a 10-second interval.

- Low indicates 10 link-flaps.
- Medium indicates 6 link-flaps.
- High indicates 3 link-flaps.

**Parameters****action**

Configure the action taken when a fault is detected.

**ethernet *PORT-LIST***

Enable link-flap control on a list of ports.

**warn**

Warn about faults found.

**warn-and-disable**

Warn and disable faulty component.

**seconds**

Configure the number of seconds for which the port remains disabled. A value of 0 means that the port will remain disabled until manually re-enabled.

**sensitivity**

Configure the fault sensitivity level.

**low**

Low sensitivity.

**medium**

Medium sensitivity

**high**

High sensitivity.

**Subcommand Syntax**

```
no fault-finder link-flap ethernet PORT-LIST
```

**Description**

To remove the current configuration of link-flap on a port

**Usage**

Enable a linkFault-Finder check and set parameters for it. These commands may be repeated to enable additional checks. The default sensitivity is medium and the default action is warn.

```
no fault-finder all | fault sensitivity low | medium | high action warn | warn-and-disable
```

```
no fault-finder link-flap sensitivity low | medium | high action warn | warn-and-disable
```

```
no fault-finder link-flap PORT-LIST action warn | warn-and-disable SECONDS sensitivity low | medium | high
```

---

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with high sensitivity

Configure ports A1 to A5 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of high (3 flaps over 10s) and to log and disable port for 65535s if the link-flap threshold is exceeded.

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A1-A5 action warn-and-disable 65535  
sensitivity high
```

---

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with medium sensitivity

Configure ports A8 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of medium (6 flaps over 10s) and to log and disable port if the link-flap threshold is exceeded. User will need to re-enable the port if disabled.

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A8 action warn-and-disable 0 sensitivity medium
```

---

### Configure ports for link-flap detection with low sensitivity

Configure ports A22 for link-flap detection with sensitivity of low (10 flaps over 10s) and to log if the link-flap threshold is exceeded

```
switch(config)# fault-finder link-flap ethernet A22 action warn sensitivity low
```

---

### Disable link-flap detection

Disable link-flap detection for port A5

```
switch(config)# no fault-finder link-flap ethernet A5
```

## Show fault-finder link-flap

### Syntax

```
show fault-finder link-flap ethernet PORT-LIST
```

### Description

Display the link-flap control configuration.

---


### Show fault-finder link-flap

```
switch# show fault-finder link-flap A1
```

Port	Link Flap	Port Status	Sensitivity	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
A1	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	65535	45303

switch# show fault-finder link-flap

Port	Link Flap	Port Status	Sensitivity	Action	Disable Timer	Disable Time Left
A1	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	65535	45303
A5	No	Up	None	None	-	-
A22	Yes	Down	Low	warn-and-disable	-	-
A23	Yes	Down	High	warn-and-disable	100	-



**NOTE:** This example displays only the list of ports configured via the above per-port config commands, does not include the global configuration ports.

Restrictions

- Per port configuration for options – link-flap only. Global settings for other options.
- No support for menu interface.
- No support for Web UI.
- No support for trunks.

Viewing transceiver information

This features provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for transceivers with Diagnostic Optical Monitoring (DOM) support. The following table indicates the support level for specific transceivers:

Product #	Description	Support <sup>1</sup>
J8436A	10GbE X2–SC SR Optic	V
J8437A	10GbE X2–SC LR Optic	V
J8440B	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J8440C	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J4858A	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858B	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858C	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V (some)

Table Continued

Product #	Description	Support <sup>1</sup>
J9054B	100-FX SFP-LC Transceiver	N
J8177C	Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC	NA
J9150A	10GbE SFP+ SR Transceiver	D
J9151A	10GbE SFP+ LR Transceiver	D
J9152A	10GbE SFP+ LRM Transceiver	D
J9153A	10GbE SFP+ ER Transceiver	D
J9144A	10GbE X2-SC LRM Transceiver	D
J8438A	10GbE X2-SC ER Transceiver	D
JH233A	40G QSFP+ MPO eSR4 Transceiver	V
JH232A	40G QSFP+ LC LR4 SM Transceiver	V
JL308A	40G QSFP+BI-DI	V
JH231A	40G QSFP+ MPO SR4 Transceiver	V

<sup>1</sup> Support indicators:

- V - Validated to respond to DOM requests
- N - No support of DOM
- D - Documented by the component suppliers as supporting DOM
- NA - Not applicable to the transceiver (copper transceiver)



**NOTE:** Not all transceivers support Digital Optical Monitoring. If DOM appears in the Diagnostic Support field of the `show interfaces transceiver detail` command, or the `hpicfTransceiverMIB hpicfXcvrDiagnostics` MIB object, DOM is supported for that transceiver.

## Viewing information about transceivers (CLI)

### Syntax:

```
show interfaces transceiver [port-list] [detail]
```

Displays information about the transceivers. If a port is specified, displays information for the transceiver in that port.

[detail]	Displays detailed transceiver information.
----------	--

## MIB support

The `hpicfTransceiver` MIB is available for displaying transceiver information.

## Viewing transceiver information

The transceiver information displayed depends on the `show` command executed.

The output for `show interfaces transceiver [port-list]` is shown below. You can specify multiple ports, separated by commas, and the information for each transceiver will display.

### Output for a specified transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 21
```

Transceiver Technical information:

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657

If there is no transceiver in the port specified in the command, the output displays as shown below.

### Output when no transceiver is present in specified interface

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 22
```

No Transceiver found on interface 22

When no ports are specified, information for all transceivers found is displayed.

### Output when no ports are specified

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver
```

Transceiver Technical information:

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657
22	1000SX	J4858B	P834DIP2	

You can specify `all` for `port-list` as shown below.

## Output when “all” is specified

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver all
```

```
No Transceiver found on interface 1
```

```
No Transceiver found on interface 2
```

```
.  
. .  
.
```

```
No Transceiver found on interface 24
```

```
Transceiver Technical information:
```

Port	Type	Product Number	Serial Number	Part Number
21	1000SX	J4858C	MY050VM9WB	1990-3657
22	1000SX	J4858B	P834DIP2	

## Information displayed with the detail parameter

When the `show interfaces transceiver [port-list] detail` command is executed, the following information displays.

**Table 26: General transceiver information**

Parameter	Description
Interface Index	The switch interface number
Transceiver-type	Pluggable transceiver type
Transceiver model	Pluggable transceiver model
Connector-type	Type of connector of the transceiver
Wavelength	For an optical transceiver: the central wavelength of the laser sent, in nm. If the transceiver supports multiple wavelengths, the values will be separated by a comma.
Transfer Distance	Link-length supported by the transceiver in meters. The corresponding transfer medium is shown in brackets following the transfer distance value, For example, 50um multimode fiber. If the transceiver supports multiple transfer media, the values are separated by a comma.

*Table Continued*

Parameter	Description
Diagnostic Support	Shows whether the transceiver supports diagnostics: <b>None</b> Supported <b>DOM</b> Supported <b>VCT</b> Supported
Serial Number	Serial number of the transceiver

The information in the next three tables is only displayed when the transceiver supports DOM.

**Table 27: DOM information**

Parameter	Description
Temperature	Transceiver temperature (in degrees Centigrade)
Voltage	Supply voltage in transceiver (Volts)
Bias	Laser bias current (mA)
RX power	Rx power (mW and dBm))
TX power	Tx power (mW and dBm)

The alarm information for GBIC/SFP transceivers is shown in this table.

**Table 28: Alarm and error information (GBIC/SFP transceivers only)**

Alarm	Description
RX loss of signal	Incoming (RX) signal is lost
RX power high	Incoming (RX) power level is high
RX power low	Incoming (RX) power level is low
TX fault	Transmit (TX) fault
TX bias high	TX bias current is high
TX bias low	TX bias current is low

*Table Continued*

Alarm	Description
TX power high	TX power is high
TX power low	TX power is low
Temp high	Temperature is high
Temp low	Temperature is low
Voltage High	Voltage is high
Voltage Low	Voltage is low

The alarm information for XENPAK transceivers is shown in this table.

**Table 29: Alarm and error information (XENPAK transceivers)**

Alarm	Description
WIS local fault	WAN Interface Sublayer local fault
Receive optical power fault	Receive optical power fault
PMA/PMD receiver local fault	Physical Medium Attachment/Physical Medium Dependent receiver local fault
PCS receiver local fault	Physical Coding Sublayer receiver local fault
PHY XS receive local fault	PHY Extended Sublayer receive local fault
RX power high	RX power is high
RX power low	RX power is low
Laser bias current fault	Laser bias current fault
Laser temperature fault	Laser temperature fault
Laser output power fault	Laser output power fault
TX fault	TX fault
PMA/PMD transmitter local fault	PMA/PMD transmitter local fault
PCS Transmit local fault	PCS transmit local fault

*Table Continued*



Alarm	Description
PHY XS transmit local fault	PHY SX transmit local fault
TX bias high	TX bias current is high
TX bias low	TX bias current is low
TX power high	TX power is high
TX power low	TX power is low
Temp high	Temperature is high
Temp low	Temperature is low

An Example: of the output for the show interfaces transceiver [port-list] detail for a 1000SX transceiver is shown below.

#### Detailed information for a 1000SX Mini-GBIC transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 21 detail
```

```
Transceiver in 21
Interface index      : 21
Type                 : 1000SX
Model                : J4858C
Connector type       : LC
Wavelength           : 850nm
Transfer distance    : 300m (50um), 150m (62.5um),
Diagnostic support    : DOM
Serial number        : MY050VM9WB
```

```
Status
Temperature : 50.111C
Voltage      : 3.1234V
TX Bias      : 6mA
TX Power     : 0.2650mW, -5.768dBm
RX Power     : 0.3892mW, -4.098dBm
```

```
Time stamp      : Mon Mar 7 14:22:13 2011
```

An Example: of the output for a 10GbE-LR transceiver is shown below.

#### Detailed information for a 10GbE-LR transceiver

```
switch(config)# show interfaces transceiver 23 detail
```

```
Transceiver in 23
Interface Index      : 24
Type                 : 10GbE-LR
Model                : J8437A
Connector type       : SC
Wavelength           : Channel #0: 1310nm, #1:0nm, #2:0nm, #3:0nm
Transfer distance    : 10000m (SM)
Diagnostic support    : DOM
```

```
Serial number      : ED456SS987

Status
Temperature       : 32.754C
TX Bias           : 42.700mA
TX Power          : 0.5192mW, -2.847dBm
RX Power          : 0.0040mW, -23.979dBm
```

Recent Alarms:

```
Rx power low alarm
Rx power low warning
```

Recent errors:

```
Receive optical power fault
PMA/PMD receiver local fault
PMA/PMD transmitter local fault
PCS receive local fault
PHY XS transmit local fault
```

```
Time stamp : Mon Mar 7 16:26:06 2013
```

## Viewing transceiver information for copper transceivers with VCT support

This feature provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for copper transceivers with Virtual Cable Test (VCT) support. The cable quality of the copper cables connected between transceivers can be ascertained using the transceiver cable diagnostics. Results of the diagnostics are displayed with the appropriate CLI show commands and with SNMP using the hpicfTransceiver MIB.

The J8177C 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC is supported.

### Testing the Cable

Enter the `test cable-diagnostics` command in any context to begin cable diagnostics for the transceiver. The diagnostic attempts to identify cable faults. The tests may take a few seconds to complete for each interface. There is the potential of link loss during the diagnostic.

#### Syntax:

```
test cable-diagnostics [port-list]
```

Invokes cable diagnostics and displays the results.

#### Output from test cable-diagnostics command

```
Switch # test cable-diagnostics a23-a24
```

The 'test cable-diagnostics' command will cause a loss of link and will take a few seconds per interface to complete.

```
Continue (Y/N)? y
```

MDI Port	Cable Pair	Distance Status	Pair to Fault	Pair Skew	MDI Polarity	Mode
A23	1-2	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	
	7-8	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	
A24	1-2	Short	2 m			
	3-6	Impedance	3 m			

4-5	Impedance	3 m
7-8	Open	1 m

## Copper cable diagnostic test results

```
switch# show interfaces transceiver a23 detail
```

```
Transceiver in A23
Interface Index   : 23
Type              : 1000T-sfp
Model             : J8177C
Connector Type    : RJ45
Wavelength        : n/a
Transfer Distance : 100m (copper),
Diagnostic Support : VCT
Serial Number     : US051HF099

Link Status       : Up
Speed             : 1000
Duplex            : Full
```

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
A23	1-2	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	6 ns	Normal	

```
Test Last Run : Fri Apr 22 20:33:23 2011
```

## General transceiver information

Parameter	Description
Interface Index	The switch interface number
Transceiver-type	Pluggable transceiver type
Transceiver model	Pluggable transceiver model
Connector-type	Type of connector of the transceiver
Wavelength	For an optical transceiver: the central wavelength of the laser sent, in nm. If the transceiver supports multiple wavelengths, the values will be separated by a comma. An electrical transceiver value is displayed as N/A.
Transfer Distance	Link-length supported by the transceiver in meters. The corresponding transfer medium is shown in brackets following the transfer distance value, For example, 50um multimode fiber. If the transceiver supports multiple transfer media, the values are separated by a comma.

*Table Continued*

Parameter	Description
Diagnostic Support	Shows whether the transceiver supports diagnostics: <b>None</b> Supported <b>DOM</b> Supported <b>VCT</b> Supported
Serial Number	Serial number of the transceiver
Link Status	Link up or down
Speed	Speed of transceiver in Mbps
Duplex	Type of duplexing
Cable Status	Values are OK, Open, Short, or Impedance
Distance to Fault	The distance in meters to a cable fault (accuracy is +/- 2 meters); displays 0 (zero) if there is no fault
Pair Skew	Difference in propagation between the fastest and slowest wire pairs
Pair Polarity	Signals on a wire pair are polarized, with one wire carrying the positive signal and one carrying the negative signal.
MDI Mode	The MDI crossover status of the two wire pairs (1&2, 3&6, 4&5, 7&8), will be either MDI or MDIX

## Viewing transceiver information

This feature provides the ability to view diagnostic monitoring information for transceivers with Diagnostic Optical Monitoring (DOM) support. The following table indicates the support level for specific transceivers:

Product #	Description	Support <sup>1</sup>
J8436A	10GbE X2-SC SR Optic	V
J8437A	10GbE X2-SC LR Optic	V
J8440B	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA

*Table Continued*

Product #	Description	Support <sup>1</sup>
J8440C	10GbE X2-CX4 Xcver	NA
J4858A	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858B	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V
J4858C	Gigabit-SX-LC Mini-GBIC	V (some)
J9054B	100-FX SFP-LC Transceiver	N
J8177C	Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC	NA
J9150A	10GbE SFP+ SR Transceiver	D
J9151A	10GbE SFP+ LR Transceiver	D
J9152A	10GbE SFP+ LRM Transceiver	D
J9153A	10GbE SFP+ ER Transceiver	D
J9144A	10GbE X2-SC LRM Transceiver	D
J8438A	10GbE X2-SC ER Transceiver	D

<sup>1</sup> Support indicators:

- V - Validated to respond to DOM requests
- N - No support of DOM
- D - Documented by the component suppliers as supporting DOM
- NA - Not applicable to the transceiver (copper transceiver)



**NOTE:** Not all transceivers support Digital Optical Monitoring. If DOM appears in the Diagnostic Support field of the `show interfaces transceiver detail` command, or the `hpicfTransceiverMIB hpicfXcvrDiagnostics` MIB object, DOM is supported for that transceiver.

# Using the Event Log for troubleshooting switch problems

The Event Log records operating events in single- or double-line entries and serves as a tool to isolate and troubleshoot problems.

Once the log has received 2000 entries, it discards the oldest message each time a new message is received. The Event Log window contains 14 log entry lines. You can scroll through it to view any part of the log.

Once the log has received 2000 entries, it discards the oldest message each time a new message is received. The Event Log window contains 14 log-entry lines. You can scroll through it to view any part of the log.



## NOTE:

The Event Log is **erased** if power to the switch is interrupted or if you enter the `boot system` command. The contents of the Event Log are **not** erased if you:

- Reboot the switch by choosing the **Reboot Switch** option from the menu interface.
- Enter the `reload` command from the CLI.

## Event Log entries

As shown in **Figure 49: Format of an event log entry** on page 386, each Event Log entry is composed of six or seven fields, depending on whether numbering is turned on or not:

**Figure 49:** *Format of an event log entry*

Severity	Date	Time	Event number	System	Module	Management Module	Event Message
M	10/28/09	21:45:42	03002	system:	AM1:		System reboot due to Reset Switch

Item	Description
<b>Severity</b>	One of the following codes (from highest to lowest severity): <b>M</b> —(major) indicates that a fatal switch error has occurred. <b>E</b> —(error) indicates that an error condition occurred on the switch. <b>W</b> —(warning) indicates that a switch service has behaved unexpectedly. <b>I</b> —(information) provides information on normal switch operation. <b>D</b> —(debug) is reserved for internal diagnostic information.
<b>Date</b>	The date in the format <b>mm/dd/yy</b> when an entry is recorded in the log.
<b>Time</b>	The time in the format <b>hh:mm:ss</b> when an entry is recorded in the log.
<b>Event number</b>	The number assigned to an event. You can turn event numbering on and off with the <code>no log-number</code> command.

*Table Continued*

Item	Description
<b>System module</b>	The internal module (such as "ports:" for port manager) that generated a log entry. If VLANs are configured, a VLAN name also appears for an event that is specific to an individual VLAN.
<b>Event message</b>	A brief description of the operating event.

**Table 30: Event Log system modules**

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
802.1x	<p>802.1X authentication: Provides access control on a per-client or per-port basis:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Client-level security that allows LAN access to 802.1X clients (up to 32 per port) with valid user credentials</li> <li>Port-level security that allows LAN access only on ports on which a single 802.1X-capable client (supplicant) has entered valid RADIUS user credentials</li> </ul>	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
acl	<p>ACLs: Filter layer-3 IP traffic to or from a host to block unwanted IP traffic and block or limit other protocol traffic such as TCP, UDP, IGMP, and ICMP. ACEs specify the filter criteria and an action (permit or deny) to take on a packet if it meets the criteria.</p>	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
addrmgr	<p>Address Table Manager: Manages MAC addresses that the switch has learned and are stored in the switch's address table.</p>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
arp-protect	Dynamic ARP Protection: Protects the network from ARP cache poisoning. Only valid ARP requests and responses are relayed or used to update the local ARP cache. ARP packets with invalid IP-to-MAC address bindings advertised in the source protocol address and source physical address fields are discarded.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
auth	Authorization: A connected client must receive authorization through web, AMC, RADIUS-based, TACACS+-based, or 802.1X authentication before it can send traffic to the switch.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
cdp	Cisco Discovery Protocol: Supports reading CDP packets received from neighbor devices, enabling a switch to learn about adjacent CDP devices. HPE does not support the transmission of CDP packets to neighbor devices.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
chassis	Hardware operation, including modules and ports, power supply, fans, transceivers, CPU interrupt errors, switch temperature, and so on. Chassis messages include events on Power Over Ethernet (POE) operation.	<i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i>  <i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
connfilt	Connection-rate filtering: Used on the network edge to protect the network from attack by worm-like malicious code by detecting hosts that are generating IP traffic that exhibits this behavior and (optionally) either throttling or dropping all IP traffic from the offending hosts.  Connection-rate filtering messages include events on virus throttling. Virus throttling uses connection-rate filtering to stop the propagation of malicious agents.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>

*Table Continued*



System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
console	Console interface used to monitor switch and port status, reconfigure the switch, and read the event log through an in-band Telnet or out-of-band connection.	<i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i>
cos	Class of Service (CoS): Provides priority handling of packets traversing the switch, based on the IEEE 802.1p priority carried by each packet. CoS messages also include QoS events. The QoS feature classifies and prioritizes traffic throughout a network, establishing an end-to-end traffic priority policy to manage available bandwidth and improve throughput of important data.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
dca	Dynamic Configuration Arbiter (DCA) determines the client-specific parameters that are assigned in an authentication session.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
dhcp	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server configuration: Switch is automatically configured from a DHCP (Bootp) server, including IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, Timep Server address, and TFTP server address.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
dhcp v6c	DHCP for IPv6 prefix assignment	<i>IPv6 Configuration Guide</i>
dhcpr	DHCP relay: Forwards client-originated DHCP packets to a DHCP network server.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
download	Download operation for copying a software version or files to the switch.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
dhcp-snoop	DHCP snooping: Protects your network from common DHCP attacks, such as address spoofing and repeated address requests.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
dma	Direct Access Memory (DMA): Transmits and receives packets between the CPU and the switch.	—
fault	Fault Detection facility, including response policy and the sensitivity level at which a network problem should generate an alert.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
fdr-log	FDR collects information that is “interesting” at the time of the crash, as well as when the switch is misbehaving, but has not crashed. Runtime logs are written to FDR memory while the switch is running, and crashtime logs are collected and stored in the FDR buffer during a switch crash.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
ffi	Find, Fix, and Inform: Event or alert log messages indicating a possible topology loop that causes excessive network activity and results in the network running slow. FFI messages include events on transceiver connections with other network devices.	<i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i>  <i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
garp	Generic Attribute Registration Protocol (GARP), defined in the IEEE 802.1D-1998 standard.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
gvrp	GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP): Manages dynamic 802.1Q VLAN operations, in which the switch creates temporary VLAN membership on a port to provide a link to another port in the same VLAN on another device.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
hpesp	Management module that maintains communication between switch ports.	<i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i>
idm	Identity-driven Management: Optional management application used to monitor and control access to switch.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>

Table Continued

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
igmp	Internet Group Management Protocol: Reduces unnecessary bandwidth usage for multicast traffic transmitted from multimedia applications on a per-port basis.	<i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>
inst-mon	Instrumentation Monitor: Identifies attacks on the switch by generating alerts for detected anomalies.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
ip	IP addressing: Configures the switch with an IP address and subnet mask to communicate on the network and support remote management access; configures multiple IP addresses on a VLAN; enables IP routing on the switch.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i> <i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>
ipaddrmgr	IP Address Manager: Programs IP routing information in switch hardware.	<i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>
iplock	IP Lockdown: Prevents IP source address spoofing on a per-port and per-VLAN basis by forwarding only the IP packets in VLAN traffic that contain a known source IP address and MAC address binding for the port.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
ipx	Novell Netware protocol filtering: On the basis of protocol type, the switch can forward or drop traffic to a specific set of destination ports on the switch.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
kms	Key Management System: Configures and maintains security information (keys) for all routing protocols, including a timing mechanism for activating and deactivating an individual protocol.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
lACP	LACP trunks: The switch can either automatically establish an 802.3ad-compliant trunk group or provide a manually configured, static LACP trunk.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
ldbal	Load balancing in LACP port trunks or 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree protocol (MSTP) that uses VLANs in a network to improve network resource utilization and maintain a loop-free environment. Load-balancing messages also include switch meshing events. The switch meshing feature provides redundant links, improved bandwidth use, and support for different port types and speeds.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>  <i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
lldp	Link-Layer Discovery Protocol: Supports transmitting LLDP packets to neighbor devices and reading LLDP packets received from neighbor devices, enabling a switch to advertise itself to adjacent devices and to learn about adjacent LLDP devices.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
loop_protect	Loop protection: Detects the formation of loops when an unmanaged device on the network drops spanning tree packets and provides protection by transmitting loop protocol packets out ports on which loop protection has been enabled.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
macauth	Web and MAC authentication: Port-based security employed on the network edge to protect private networks and the switch itself from unauthorized access using one of the following interfaces: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web page login to authenticate users for access to the network</li> <li>• RADIUS server that uses a device's MAC address for authentication</li> </ul>	<i>Access Security Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
maclock	<p>MAC lockdown and MAC lockout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MAC lockdown prevents station movement and MAC address "hijacking" by requiring a MAC address to be used only on an assigned port on the switch. MAC Lockdown also restricts the client device to a specific VLAN.</li> <li>MAC lockout blocks a specific MAC address so that the switch drops all traffic to or from the specified address.</li> </ul>	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
mgr	Windows-based network management solutions for managing and monitoring performance of HPE switches.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
mld	Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD): IPv6 protocol used by a router to discover the presence of multicast listeners. MLD can also optimize IPv6 multicast traffic flow with the snooping feature.	<i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>
mtm	Multicast Traffic Manager (MTM): Controls and coordinates L3 multicast traffic for upper layer protocols.	<i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>
netinet	Network Internet: Monitors the creation of a route or an Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) entry and sends a log message in case of failure.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
pagp	Ports Aggregation Protocol (PAgP): Obsolete. Replaced by LACP (802.3ad).	—

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
ports	<p>Port status and port configuration features, including mode (speed and duplex), flow control, broadcast limit, jumbo packets, and security settings.</p> <p>Port messages include events on POE operation and transceiver connections with other network devices.</p>	<p><i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i></p> <p><i>Management and Configuration Guide</i></p> <p><i>Access Security Guide</i></p>
radius	RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) authentication and accounting: A network server is used to authenticate user-connection requests on the switch and collect accounting information to track network resource usage.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
ratelim	Rate-limiting: Enables a port to limit the amount of bandwidth a user or device may utilize for inbound traffic on the switch.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
sflow	Flow sampling: sFlow is an industry standard sampling technology, defined by RFC 3176, used to continuously monitor traffic flows on all ports providing network-wide visibility into the use of the network.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
snmp	Simple Network Management Protocol: Allows you to manage the switch from a network management station, including support for security features, event reporting, flow sampling, and standard MIBs.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
sntp	Simple Network Time Protocol: Synchronizes and ensures a uniform time among interoperating devices.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
ssh	Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2): Provides remote access to management functions on a switch via encrypted paths between the switch and management station clients capable of SSH operation.  SSH messages also include events from the Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) feature. SFTP provides a secure alternative to TFTP for transferring sensitive information, such as switch configuration files, to and from the switch in an SSH session.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
ssl	Secure Socket Layer Version 3 (SSLv3), including Transport Layer Security (TLSv1) support: Provides remote web access to a switch via encrypted paths between the switch and management station clients capable of SSL/TLS operation.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
stack	Stack management: Uses a single IP address and standard network cabling to manage a group (up to 16) of switches in the same IP subnet (broadcast domain), resulting in a reduced number of IP addresses and simplified management of small workgroups for scaling your network to handle increased bandwidth demand.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
stp	Multiple-instance spanning tree protocol/MSTP (802.1s): Ensures that only one active path exists between any two nodes in a group of VLANs in the network. MSTP operation is designed to avoid loops and broadcast storms of duplicate messages that can bring down the network.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>

*Table Continued*

System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
system	Switch management, including system configuration, switch bootup, activation of boot ROM image, memory buffers, traffic and security filters. System messages also include events from management interfaces (menu and CLI) used to reconfigure the switch and monitor switch status and performance.	<i>Basic Operation Guide</i> <i>Access Security Guide</i>
tacacs	TACACS+ authentication: A central server is used to control access to the switches (and other TACACS-aware devices) in the network through a switch's console port (local access) or Telnet (remote access).	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
tcp	Transmission Control Protocol: A transport protocol that runs on IP and is used to set up connections.	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
telnet	Session established on the switch from a remote device through the Telnet virtual terminal protocol.	<i>Basic Operation Guide</i>
tftp	Trivial File Transfer Protocol: Supports the download of files to the switch from a TFTP network server.	<i>Basic Operation Guide</i>
timep	Time Protocol: Synchronizes and ensures a uniform time among interoperating devices.	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
udld	Uni-directional Link Detection: Monitors a link between two switches and blocks the ports on both ends of the link if the link fails at any point between the two devices.	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
udpf	UDP broadcast forwarding: Supports the forwarding of client requests sent as limited IP broadcasts addressed to a UDP application port on a network server.	<i>Multicast and Routing Guide</i>

*Table Continued*



System module	Description	Documented in Switch hardware/ software guide
update	Updates (TFTP or serial) to HPE switch software and updates to running-config and start-up config files	<i>Basic Operation Guide</i>
usb	Auxiliary port that allows you to connect external devices to the switch.	<i>Installation and Getting Started Guide</i>
vlan	<p>Static 802.1Q VLAN operations, including port-and protocol-based configurations that group users by logical function instead of physical location</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A port-based VLAN creates a layer-2 broadcast domain comprising member ports that bridge IPv4 traffic among themselves.</li> <li>• A protocol-based VLAN creates a layer-3 broadcast domain for traffic of a particular routing protocol, and comprises member ports that bridge traffic of the specified protocol type among themselves.</li> </ul> <p>VLAN messages include events from management interfaces (menu and CLI) used to reconfigure the switch and monitor switch status and performance.</p>	<i>Advanced Traffic Management Guide</i>
xmodem	Xmodem: Binary transfer feature that supports the download of software files from a PC or UNIX workstation.	<i>Basic Operation Guide</i>

## Using the CLI

### Syntax:

```
show logging [-a, -b, -r, -s, -t, -m, -e, -p, -w, -i, -d, command, filter] [< option-str >]
```

By default, the `show logging` command displays the log messages recorded since the last reboot in chronological order:

<code>-a</code>	Displays all recorded log messages, including those before the last reboot.
<code>-b</code>	Displays log events as the time since the last reboot instead of in a date/time format.
<code>-r</code>	Displays all recorded log messages, with the most recent entries listed first (reverse order).
<code>-s</code>	Displays the active management module (AM) and standby management module (SM) log events.
<code>-t</code>	Displays the log events with a granularity of 10 milliseconds.
<code>-m</code>	Displays only major log events.
<code>-e</code>	Displays only error event class.
<code>-p</code>	Displays only performance log events.
<code>-w</code>	Displays only warning log events.
<code>-i</code>	Displays only informational log events.
<code>-d</code>	Displays only debug log events.
<code>command</code>	Displays only command logs.
<code>filter</code>	Displays only log filter configuration and status information.
<code>&lt;option-str&gt;</code>	Displays all Event Log entries that contain the specified text. Use an <code>&lt;option-str&gt;</code> value with <code>-a</code> or <code>-r</code> to further filter <code>show logging</code> command output.

### Example:

To display all Event Log messages that have "system" in the message text or module name, enter the following command:

```
switch# show logging -a system
```

To display all Event Log messages recorded since the last reboot that have the word "system" in the message text or module name, enter:

```
switch# show logging system
```

## Clearing Event Log entries

### Syntax:

```
clear logging [command]
```

Removes all entries from the event log display output.

Use the `clear logging` command to hide, but not erase, Event Log entries displayed in `show logging` command output. Only new entries generated after you enter the command will be displayed.

To redisplay all hidden entries, including Event Log entries recorded prior to the last reboot, enter the `show logging -a` command.

The `command` option removes all entries from the command log.

## Turning event numbering on

### Syntax:

```
no log-numbers
```

Turns event numbering on and off

## Using log throttling to reduce duplicate Event Log and SNMP messages

A recurring event can generate a series of duplicate Event Log messages and SNMP traps in a relatively short time. As a result, the Event Log and any configured SNMP trap receivers may be flooded with excessive, exactly identical messages. To help reduce this problem, the switch uses **log throttle periods** to regulate (throttle) duplicate messages for recurring events, and maintains a counter to record how many times it detects duplicates of a particular event since the last system reboot.

When the first instance of a particular event or condition generates a message, the switch initiates a log throttle period that applies to all recurrences of that event. If the logged event recurs during the log throttle period, the switch increments the counter initiated by the first instance of the event, but does not generate a new message.

If the logged event repeats again after the log throttle period expires, the switch generates a duplicate of the first message, increments the counter, and starts a new log throttle period during which any additional instances of the event are counted, but not logged. Thus, for a particular recurring event, the switch displays only one message in the Event Log for each log throttle period in which the event reoccurs. Also, each logged instance of the event message includes counter data showing how many times the event has occurred since the last reboot. The switch manages messages to SNMP trap receivers in the same way.

### Log throttle periods

The length of the log throttle period differs according to an event's severity level:

Severity level	Log throttle period
I (Information)	6000 Seconds
W (Warning)	600 Seconds
D (Debug)	60 Seconds
M (Major)	6 Seconds

### Example:

Suppose that you configure VLAN 100 on the switch to support PIM operation, but do not configure an IP address. If PIM attempts to use VLAN 100, the switch generates the first instance of the following Event Log message and counter.



### NOTE:

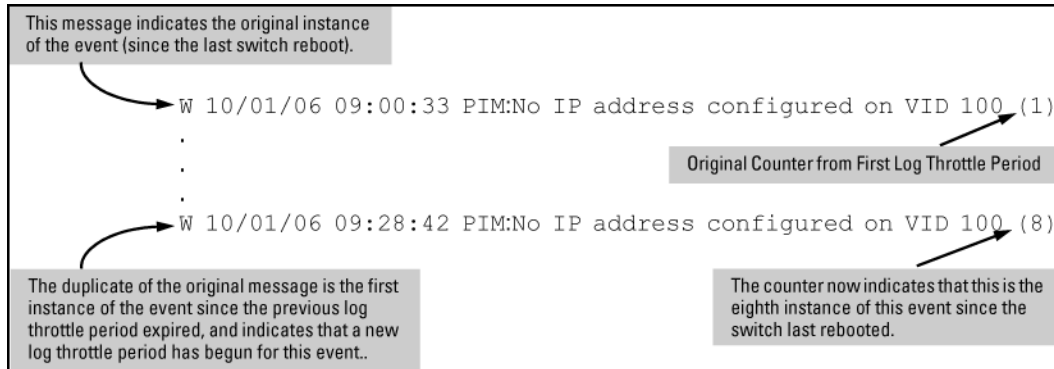
In **The first instance of an event message and counter** on page 400 the counter (1) indicates that this is the first instance of this event since the switch last rebooted.

## The first instance of an event message and counter

```
W 10/01/12 09:00:33 PIM:No IP address configured on VID 100 (1)
```

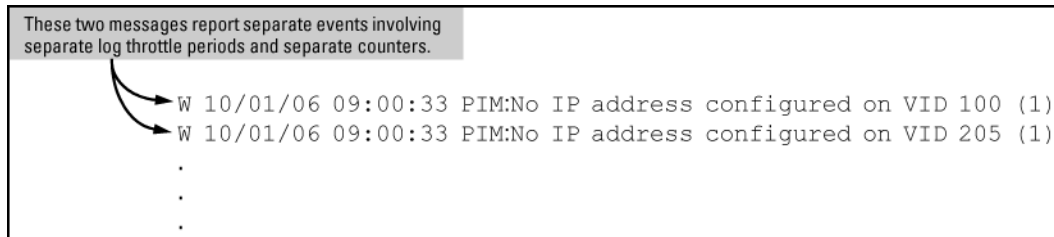
If PIM operation causes the same event to occur six more times during the initial log throttle period, there are no further entries in the Event Log. However, if the event occurs again after the log throttle period has expired, the switch repeats the message (with an updated counter) and starts a new log throttle period.

**Figure 50:** Duplicate messages over multiple log throttling periods



Note that if the same type of event occurs under different circumstances, the switch handles these as unrelated events for the purpose of Event Log messages. For example, if PIM operation simultaneously detects that VLANs 100 and 205 are configured without IP addresses, you see log messages similar to the following:

**Figure 51:** Example: of log messages generated by unrelated events of the same type



## Example: of event counter operation

Suppose the switch detects the following after a reboot:

- Three duplicate instances of the PIM "Send error" during the first log throttle period for this event
- Five more instances of the same Send error during the second log throttle period for this event
- Four instances of the same Send error during the third log throttle period for this event

In this case, the duplicate message appears three times in the Event Log (once for each log throttle period for the event being described), and the duplicate message counter increments as shown in the following table. (The same operation applies for messages sent to any configured SNMP trap receivers.)

**Table 31: How the duplicate message counter increments**

Instances during 1st log throttle period	Instances during 2nd log throttle period	Instances during 3rd log throttle period	Duplicate message counter <sup>1</sup>
3			1
	5		4
		4	9

<sup>1</sup> This value always comprises the first instance of the duplicate message in the current log throttle period plus all previous occurrences of the duplicate message occurring since the switch last rebooted.

## Reporting information about changes to the running configuration

Syslog can be used for sending notifications to a remote syslog server about changes made to the running configuration. The notifications in the syslog messages are sent in ASCII format and contain this information:

- Notice-Type: Describes the syslog notification as a “running config change”.
- Event-ID: Identifier for the running config change event that occurred on the switch.
- Config-Method: The source for the running config change.
- Device-Name: The managed device.
- User-Name: User who made the running config change.
- Remote-IP-Address: IP address of a remote host from which the user is connected.

### Syntax:

```
no logging notify <running-config-change> [transmission-interval <0-4294967295>
```

Enables sending the running configuration change notifications to the syslog server.

The `no` form of the command disables sending the running configuration changes to the syslog server.

Default: Disabled

<code>&lt;running-config-change &gt;</code>	Mandatory option for the notify parameter. Specifies the type of notification to send.
<code>transmission-interval &lt;0-4294967295&gt;</code>	Specifies the time interval (in seconds) between the transmission of two consecutive notifications. Running config changes occurring within the specified interval will not generate syslog notifications.

A value of zero means there is no limit; a notification is sent for every running config change.

Default: Zero

---

## Sending running config changes to the syslog server

```
switch(config)# logging notify running-config-change  
transmission-interval 10
```

## Debug/syslog operation

While the Event Log records switch-level progress, status, and warning messages on the switch, the debug/system logging (**syslog**) feature provides a way to record Event Log and debug messages on a remote device. For example, you can send messages about routing misconfigurations and other network protocol details to an external device, and later use them to debug network-level problems.

### Debug/syslog messaging

The debug/syslog feature allows you to specify the types of Event Log and debug messages that you want to send to an external device. You can perform the following operations:

- Use the `debug` command to configure messaging reports for the following event types:
  - ACL "deny" matches
  - Dynamic ARP protection events
  - DHCP snooping events
  - DIPLD events
  - Events recorded in the switch's Event Log
  - IP routing events (IPv4 and IPv6)
  - LACP events
  - LLDP events
  - SNMP events
  - SSH events
- Use the `logging` command to select a subset of Event Log messages to send to an external device for debugging purposes according to:
  - Severity level
  - System module

### Hostname in syslog messages

The syslog now messages the sender identified by hostname.

The hostname field identifies the switch that originally sends the syslog message. Configurable through the CLI and SNMP, the format of the hostname field supports the following formats:

- `ip-address`: The IP address of the sending interface will be used as the message origin identifier. This is the default format for the origin identifier. The IP address of the sending interface (in dotted decimal notation) is the default format.
- `hostname`: The hostname of the sending switch will be used as the message origin identifier.
- `none`: No origin identifier will be embedded in the syslog message. Nilvalue is used as defined by “-“.

This configuration is system-wide, not per syslog server. There is no support for fully-qualified domain name.

## Logging origin-id

Use the `logging origin-id` command to specify the content for the hostname field.

### Syntax:

```
logging origin-id [ip-address|hostname|none]
```

```
no logging origin-id [ip-address|hostname|none]
```

To reset the hostname field content back to default (IP-address), use the `no` form of the command.

### filter

Creates a filter to restrict which events are logged.

### IP-ADDR

Adds an IPv4 address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

### IPV6-ADDR

Adds an IPv6 address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

### origin-id

Sends the Syslog messages with the specified origin-id.

### notify

Notifies the specified type sent to the syslog server(s).

### priority-descr

A text string associated with the values of facility, severity, and system-module.

### severity

Event messages of the specified severity or higher sent to the syslog server.

### system-module

Event messages of the specified system module (subsystem) sent to the syslog server.

### hostname

Sets the hostname of the device as the origin-id.

### none

Disables origin-id in the syslog message.

Add an IP address to the list of receiving syslog servers.

Use of `no` without an IP address specified will remove all IP addresses from the list of syslog receivers. If an IP address is specified, that receiver will be removed. Both link-local with zone ID and global IPv6 addresses are supported.

- Specify syslog server facility with the option `<facility>`. The command `no logging <facility>` sets the facility back to defaults.
- Specify filtering rules.
- Specify severity for event messages to be filtered to the syslog server with the option `<severity>`. The command `no logging <severity>` sets the severity back to default.

- Event messages of specified system module will be sent to the syslog server. Using `no` sends messages from all system modules. Messages are first filtered by selected severity.
- Specify syslog server transport layer with options `[udp] | [tcp] | [tls]`.
- Specify syslog server port number with options `[udp PORT-NUM] | [tcp PORT-NUM] | [tls PORT-NUM]`.
- Specify notification types to be sent to the syslog server.
- Use the option `transmission-interval` to control the egress rate limit for transmitting notifications, 0 value means there is no rate limit. The values are in seconds. Only one syslog message is allowed for transmission within specified time interval.
- Specify the origin information for the syslog messages with the option `origin-id`.



**NOTE:** When the syslog server receives messages from the switch, the IPv6 address of the switch is partly displayed.

**Example:**

Configured Host Ipv6 Address: 2001::1

Expected Syslog message:

Syslog message: USER.INFO: Oct 11 02:40:02 2001::1 00025 ip: ST1CMDR: VLAN60: ip address 30.1.1.1/24 configured on vlan 60

Actual Truncated syslog message:

Syslog message: USER.INFO: Oct 11 02:40:02 2001:: 00025 ip: ST1CMDR: VLAN60: ip address 30.1.1.1/24 configured on vlan 60

Use the command in the following example to set the origin-id to the hostname.

### Setting the origin-id to the hostname

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id hostname
```

The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 2910a1-24G 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

Use the command in the following example to set the origin-id to none (nilvalue).

### Setting the origin-id to none (nilvalue)

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id none
```

The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 - 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

Use any of the commands in the following example to set the origin-id to ip-address (default).

### Setting the origin-id to ip-address (default)

```
switch(config)# logging origin-id ip-address
```

```
switch(config)# no logging origin-id hostname
```

```
switch(config)# no logging origin-id none
```



The following syslog message will occur:

```
<14> Jan 1 00:15:35 169.254.230.236 00076 ports: port 2 is now on-line
```

## Viewing the identification of the syslog message sender

Use the commands `show debug` or `show running-config` to display the identification of the syslog message sender. The default option for `origin-id` is `ip-address`. The command `show running-config` will not display the configured option when `origin-id` is set to the default value of `ip address`.

When `hostname` or `none` is configured using `logging origin-id`, the same displays as part of the `show running-config` command.

### Syntax:

```
show debug
```

Default option is `ip-address`.

The following shows the output of the `show debug` command when configured without `login origin-id`.

### Output of the show debug command when configured without login origin-id

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: Outgoing Interface IP
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

The command `logging origin-id hostname` will produce the syslog message shown in the following example.

### Syslog message for logging origin-id hostname

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: Hostname
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

The command `logging origin-id none` will produce the syslog message shown in the following example.

### Syslog message for logging origin-id none

```
Debug Logging
  Origin identifier: none
  Destination:      None
```

```
Enabled debug types:
  None are enabled.
```

### Syntax:

```
show running-config
```

The following example shows the output of the `show running-config` command.

## Output of the show running-config command

The command logging **origin-id hostname** will display the following:  
logging origin-id hostname

The command logging origin-id none will display as the following:  
logging origin-id none

## SNMP MIB

SNMP support will be provided through the following MIB objects.

### HpicfSyslogOriginId = textual-convention

#### Description

This textual convention enumerates the origin identifier of syslog message.

#### Syntax: integer

ip-address  
hostname  
none

#### Status

current

### hpicfSyslogOriginId OBJECT-TYPE

#### Description

Specifies the content of a Hostname field in the header of a syslog message.

#### Syntax:

##### HpicfSyslogOriginId

Max-access

read-write

Status

current

Default

ip-address

## Debug/syslog destination devices

To use debug/syslog messaging, you must configure an external device as the logging destination by using the logging and debug destination commands. For more information, see [Debug destinations](#) on page 416 and [Configuring a syslog server](#) on page 418.

A debug/syslog destination device can be a syslog server and/or a console session. You can configure debug and logging messages to be sent to:

- Up to six syslog servers
- A CLI session through a direct RS-232 console connection, or a Telnet or SSH session

## Debug/syslog configuration commands

Event notification logging	—	Automatically sends switch-level event messages to the switch's Event Log. Debug and syslog do not affect this operation, but add the capability of directing Event Log messaging to an external device.
logging command	<syslog-ip-addr>	Enables syslog messaging to be sent to the specified IP address. IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.
	facility	(Optional) The logging facility command specifies the destination (facility) subsystem used on a syslog server for debug reports.
	priority-desc	A text string associated with the values of facility, severity, and system-module.
	neighbor-adjacency [detail]	Enables or disables OSPFv3 (IPv6) adjacency logging. Must be executed in OSPFv3 context. The detail option displays all the adjacency state transitions and adjacency-related errors.
	severity	Sends Event Log messages of equal or greater severity than the specified value to configured debug destinations. (The default setting is to send Event Log messages from all severity levels.)

*Table Continued*

	system-module	<p>Sends Event Log messages from the specified system module to configured debug destinations. The severity filter is also applied to the system-module messages you select.</p> <p>The default setting is to send Event Log messages from all system modules. To restore the default setting, enter the <code>no logging system-module &lt;system-module&gt;</code> or <code>logging system-module all-pass</code> commands.</p>
debug Command	acl	Sends ACL syslog logging to configured debug destinations. When there is a match with a "deny" statement, directs the resulting message to the configured debug destinations.
	all	Sends debug logging to configured debug destinations for all ACL, Event Log, IP-OSPF, and IP-RIP options.
	cdp	Displays CDP information.
	destination	<p><code>logging</code>: Disables or re-enables syslog logging on one or more syslog servers configured with the <code>logging syslog-ip-addr</code> command.</p> <p><code>session</code>: Assigns or re-assigns destination status to the terminal device that was most recently used to request debug output.</p> <p><code>buffer</code>: Enables syslog logging to send the debug message types specified by the <code>debug &lt;debug-type&gt;</code> command to a buffer in switch memory.</p>
	event	Sends standard Event Log messages to configured debug destinations. (The same messages are also sent to the switch's Event Log, regardless of whether you enable this option.)

Table Continued

	ip	<p>fib: Displays IP Forwarding Information Base messages and events.forwarding: Sends IPv4 forwarding messages to the debug destinations.ospf: Sends OSPF event logging to the debug destinations.ospfv3: Enables debug messages for OSPFv3.packet: Sends IPv4 packet messages to the debug destinations. pim [packet [filter {source &lt; ip-addr &gt;   vlan &lt; vid &gt;}]]: Enables or disables tracing of PIM messages.<b>Note:</b> When PIM debugging is enabled, the following message displays:</p> <div> <p>PIM Debugging can be extremely CPU intensive when run on a device with an existing high CPU load or on a switch with more than 10 PIM-enabled VLANs. In high load situations, the switch may suffer from protocol starvation, high latency, or even reload. When debugging a switch with more than 10 PIM-enabled VLANs, the <b>"vlan"</b> option in <b>"debug ip pim packet"</b> should be utilized. Debugging should only be used temporarily while troubleshooting problems. Customers are advised to exercise caution when running this command in a highstress production network.</p> </div> <p>pbr: Logs a message when a PBR policy is applied, when the action in a class goes active or when it goes inactive.rip: Sends RIP event logging to the debug destinations.</p>
--	----	---

*Table Continued*

	ipv6	dhcpv6-client: Sends DHCPv6 client debug messages to the configured debug destination.dhcpv6-relay: Sends DHCPv6 relay debug messages to the configured debug destination.forwarding: Sends IPv6 forwarding messages to the debug destination(s)nd: Sends IPv6 debug messages for IPv6 neighbor discovery to the configured debug destinations.
	lACP	event: Sends messages related to change events.packet: Sends messages when BPDUs are exchanged.
	lldp	Sends LLDP debug messages to the debug destinations.
	security	Sends security messages to the debug destination.
	services	Displays debug messages on the services module.
	snmp	Sends snmp messages to the debug destination.

Using the Debug/Syslog feature, you can perform the following operations:

- Configure the switch to send Event Log messages to one or more Syslog servers. In addition, you can configure the messages to be sent to the User log facility (default) or to another log facility on configured Syslog servers.
- Configure the switch to send Event Log messages to the current management- access session (serial-connect CLI, Telnet CLI, or SSH).
- Disable all Syslog debug logging while retaining the Syslog addresses from the switch configuration. This allows you to configure Syslog messaging and then disable and re-enable it as needed.
- Display the current debug configuration. If Syslog logging is currently active, the list of configured Syslog servers is displayed.
- Display the current Syslog server list when Syslog logging is disabled.

## Configuring debug/syslog operation

### Procedure

1. To use a syslog server as the destination device for debug messaging, follow these steps:

- a. Enter the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command at the global configuration level to configure the syslog server IP address and enable syslog logging. Optionally, you may also specify the destination subsystem to be used on the syslog server by entering the `logging facility` command. If no other syslog server IP addresses are configured, entering the `logging` command enables both debug messaging to a syslog server and the event debug message type. As a result, the switch automatically sends Event Log messages to the syslog server, regardless of other debug types that may be configured.
- b. Re-enter the `logging` command in Step 1a to configure additional syslog servers. You can configure up to a total of six servers. (When multiple server IP addresses are configured, the switch sends the debug message types that you configure in **Step 3** to all IP addresses.)

2. To use a CLI session on a destination device for debug messaging:

- a. Set up a serial, Telnet, or SSH connection to access the switch's CLI.
- b. Enter the `debug destination session` command at the manager level.

3. Enable the types of debug messages to be sent to configured syslog servers, the current session device, or both by entering the `debug <debug-type>` command and selecting the desired options.

Repeat this step if necessary to enable multiple debug message types.

By default, Event Log messages are sent to configured debug destination devices. To block Event Log messages from being sent, enter the `no debug event` command.

4. If necessary, enable a subset of Event Log messages to be sent to configured syslog servers by specifying a severity level, a system module, or both using the following commands:

```
switch(config)# logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# logging system-module <system-module>
```

To display a list of valid values for each command, enter `logging severity` or `logging system-module` followed by `?` or pressing the Tab key.

The severity levels in order from the highest to lowest severity are major, error, warning, info, and debug. For a list of valid values for the `logging system-module <system-module>` command, see **Event Log system modules**.

5. If you configure system-module, severity-level values, or both to filter Event Log messages, when you finish troubleshooting, you may want to reset these values to their default settings so that the switch sends all Event Log messages to configured debug destinations (syslog servers, CLI session, or both).

To remove a configured setting and restore the default values that send all Event Log messages, enter one or both of the following commands:

```
switch(config)# no logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# no logging system-module <system-module>
```



**CAUTION:** If you configure a severity-level, system-module, logging destination, or logging facility value and save the settings to the startup configuration (For example, by entering the `write memory` command), the debug settings are saved after a system reboot (power cycle or reboot) and re-activated on the switch. As a result, after switch startup, one of the following situations may occur:

- Only a partial set of Event Log messages may be sent to configured debug destinations.
- Messages may be sent to a previously configured syslog server used in an earlier debugging session.

## Viewing a debug/syslog configuration

Use the `show debug` command to display the currently configured settings for:

- Debug message types and Event Log message filters (severity level and system module) sent to debug destinations
- Debug destinations (syslog servers or CLI session) and syslog server facility to be used

### Syntax:

```
show debug
```

Displays the currently configured debug logging destinations and message types selected for debugging purposes. (If no syslog server address is configured with the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command, no `show debug` command output is displayed.)

### Output of the show debug command

```
switch(config)# show debug

Debug Logging
Destination:
  Logging --
  10.28.38.164
  Facility=kern
  Severity=warning
  System module=all-pass
Enabled debug types:
  event
```

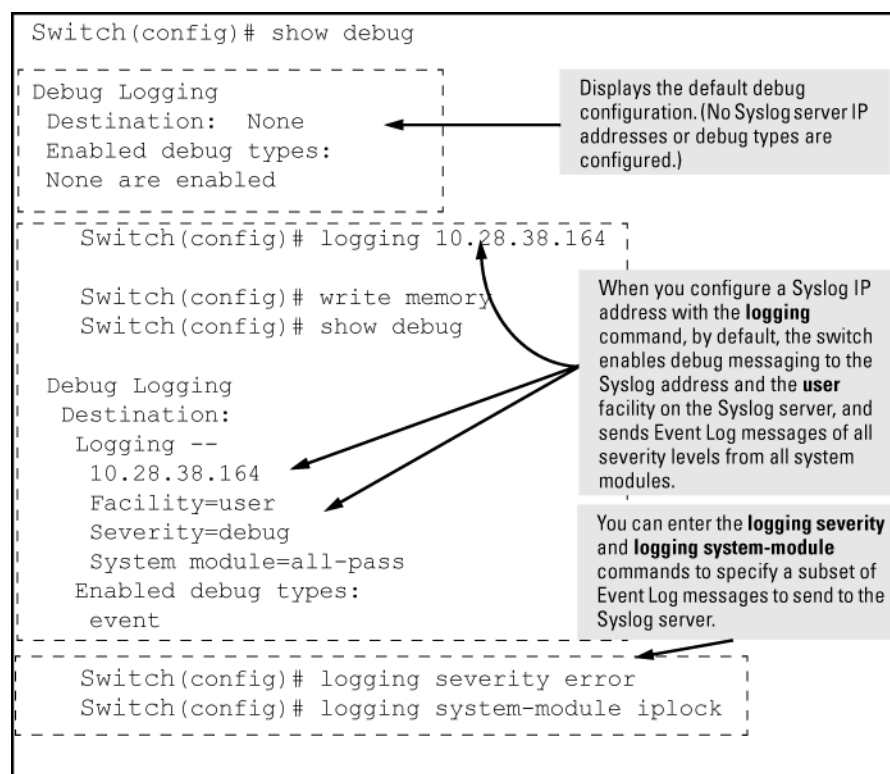
### Example:

In the following Example:, no syslog servers are configured on the switch (default setting). When you configure a syslog server, debug logging is enabled to send Event Log messages to the server. To limit the Event Log



messages sent to the syslog server, specify a set of messages by entering the `logging severity` and `logging system-module` commands.

**Figure 52:** Syslog configuration to receive event log messages from specified system module and severity levels



As shown at the top of **Figure 52: Syslog configuration to receive event log messages from specified system module and severity levels** on page 413, if you enter the `show debug` command when no syslog server IP address is configured, the configuration settings for syslog server facility, Event Log severity level, and system module are not displayed. However, after you configure a syslog server address and enable syslog logging, all debug and logging settings are displayed with the `show debug` command.

If you do not want Event Log messages sent to syslog servers, you can block the messages from being sent by entering the `no debug event` command. (There is no effect on the normal logging of messages in the switch's Event Log.)

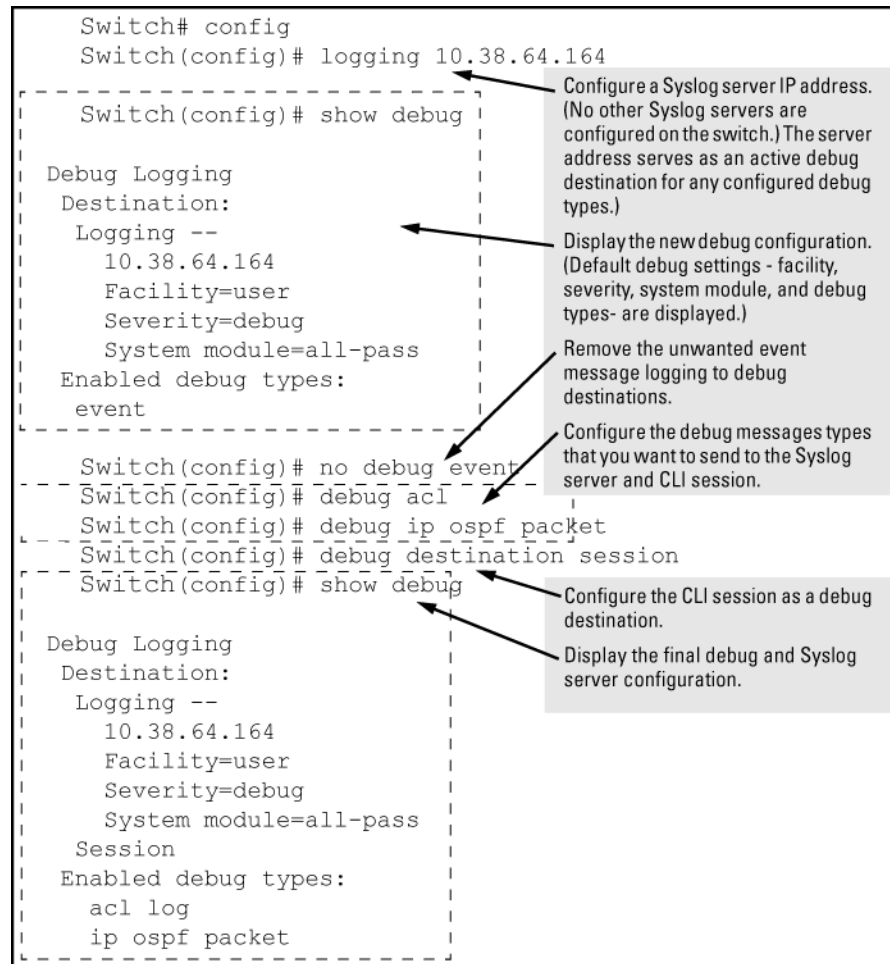
#### Example:

The next Example: shows how to configure:

- Debug logging of ACL and IP-OSPF packet messages on a syslog server at 18.38.64.164 (with user as the default logging facility).
- Display of these messages in the CLI session of your terminal device's management access to the switch.
- Blocking Event Log messages from being sent from the switch to the syslog server and a CLI session.

To configure syslog operation in these ways with the debug/syslog feature disabled on the switch, enter the commands shown in **Figure 53: Debug/syslog configuration for multiple debug types and multiple destinations** on page 414.

**Figure 53:** Debug/syslog configuration for multiple debug types and multiple destinations



## Debug command

At the manager level, use the `debug` command to perform two main functions:

- Specify the types of event messages to be sent to an external destination.
- Specify the destinations to which selected message types are sent.

By default, no debug destination is enabled and only Event Log messages are enabled to be sent.



### NOTE:

To configure a syslog server, use the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command. For more information, see **Configuring a syslog server** on page 418.

## Debug messages

### Syntax:

```
no debug <debug-type>
```




acl	<p>When a match occurs on an ACL "deny" ACE (with <code>log</code> configured), the switch sends an ACL message to configured debug destinations. For information on ACLs, see the "Access Control Lists (ACLs)" in the latest version of the following guides:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IPv4 ACLs: access security guide</li> <li>IPv6 ACLs: IPv6 configuration guide</li> </ul> <hr/> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> ACE matches (hits) for permit and deny entries can be tracked using the <code>show statistics &lt;aclv4 aclv6&gt;</code> command.</p> </div> <hr/> <p>(Default: Disabled—ACL messages for traffic that matches "deny" entries are not sent.)</p>
all	Configures the switch to send all debug message types to configured debug destinations.(Default: Disabled—No debug messages are sent.)
cdp	Sends CDP information to configured debug destinations.
destination	<p><code>logging</code>—Disables or re-enables syslog logging on one or more syslog servers configured with the <code>logging &lt;syslog-ip-addr&gt;</code> command.  <code>session</code>—Assigns or re-assigns destination status to the terminal device that was most recently used to request debug output.  <code>buffer</code>—Enables syslog logging to send the debug message types specified by the <code>debug &lt;debug-type&gt;</code> command to a buffer in switch memory.For more information on these options, see <a href="#">Debug destinations</a> on page 416.</p>
event	<p>Configures the switch to send Event Log messages to configured debug destinations.</p> <hr/> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> This value does not affect the reception of event notification messages in the Event Log on the switch.</p> </div> <hr/> <p>Event Log messages are automatically enabled to be sent to debug destinations in these conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If no syslog server address is configured and you enter the <code>logging &lt;syslog-ip-addr&gt;</code> command to configure a destination address.</li> <li>If at least one syslog server address is configured in the startup configuration, and the switch is rebooted or reset.</li> </ul> <p>Event log messages are the default type of debug message sent to configured debug destinations.</p>
ip [fib   forwarding   packet   rip]	Sends IP messages to configured destinations.
ip [fib [events]]	For the configured debug destinations: <code>events</code> —Sends IP forwarding information base events.

Table Continued


	<code>ip [packet]</code>	Enables the specified PIM message type.
	<code>ip [rip [database   event   trigger]]</code>	<code>rip {&lt;database   event   trigger&gt;}</code> —Enables the specified RIP message type for the configured destination(s). <code>database</code> —Displays database changes. <code>event</code> —Displays RIP events. <code>trigger</code> —Displays trigger messages.
<code>ipv6 [dhcpv6-client   nd   packet]</code>	 <p><b>NOTE:</b> See the "IPv6 Diagnostic and Troubleshooting" in the IPv6 configuration guide for your switch for more detailed IPv6 debug options.</p> <p>When no debug options are included, displays debug messages for all IPv6 debug options. <code>dhcpv6-client [events   packet]</code>—Displays DHCPv6 client event and packet data. <code>nd</code>—Displays debug messages for IPv6 neighbor discovery. <code>packet</code>—Displays IPv6 packet messages.</p>	
<code>lldp</code>		Enables all LLDP message types for the configured destinations.
<code>security [arp-protect   dhcp-snooping   dynamic-ip-lockdown   port-access   port-security   radius-server   ssh   tacacs-server   user-profile-mib]</code>		<code>arp-protect</code> — Sends dynamic ARP protection debug messages to configured debug destinations. <code>dhcp-snooping</code> —Sends DHCP snooping debug messages to configured debug destinations. <code>agent</code> —Displays DHCP snooping agent messages. <code>event</code> —Displays DHCP snooping event messages. <code>packet</code> —Displays DHCP snooping packet messages. <code>dynamic-ip-lockdown</code> —Sends dynamic IP lockdown debug messages to the debug destination. <code>port-access</code> —Sends port-access debug messages to the debug destination. <code>radius-server</code> —Sends RADIUS debug messages to the debug destination. <code>ssh</code> —Sends SSH debug messages at the specified level to the debug destination. The levels are fatal, error, info, verbose, debug, debug2, and debug3. <code>tacacs-server</code> —Sends TACACS debug messages to the debug destination. <code>user-profile-mib</code> —Sends user profile MIB debug messages to the debug destination.
<code>services &lt;slot-id-range&gt;</code>		Displays debug messages on the services module. Enter an alphabetic module ID or range of module IDs for the <code>&lt;slot-id-range&gt;</code> parameter.
<code>snmp &lt;pdu&gt;</code>		Displays the SNMP debug messages. <code>pdu</code> —Displays SNMP pdu debug messages.

## Debug destinations

Use the `debug destination` command to enable (and disable) syslog messaging on a syslog server or to a CLI session for specified types of debug and Event Log messages.

### Syntax:

```
no debug destination {<logging | session | buffer>}
```

logging	<p>Enables syslog logging to configured syslog servers so that the debug message types specified by the <code>debug &lt;debug-type&gt;</code> command (see <a href="#">Debug messages</a> on page 414) are sent.(Default: Logging disabled)To configure a syslog server IP address, see <a href="#">Configuring a syslog server</a> on page 418.</p> <hr/> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> Debug messages from the switches covered in this guide have a debug severity level. Because the default configuration of some syslog servers ignores syslog messages with the debug severity level, ensure that the syslog servers you want to use to receive debug messages are configured to accept the debug level. For more information, see <a href="#">Operating notes for debug and Syslog</a> on page 423.</p> </div> <hr/>
session	<p>Enables transmission of event notification messages to the CLI session that most recently executed this command. The session can be on any one terminal emulation device with serial, Telnet, or SSH access to the CLI at the Manager level prompt (<code>switch#_</code>).If more than one terminal device has a console session with the CLI, you can redirect the destination from the current device to another device. Do so by executing <code>debug destination session</code> in the CLI on the terminal device on which you now want to display event messages.Event message types received on the selected CLI session are configured with the <code>debug &lt;debug-type&gt;</code> command.</p>
buffer	<p>Enables syslog logging to send the debug message types specified by the <code>debug &lt;debug-type&gt;</code> command to a buffer in switch memory.To view the debug messages stored in the switch buffer, enter the <code>show debug buffer</code> command.</p>

## Logging command

At the global configuration level, the `logging` command allows you to enable debug logging on specified syslog servers and select a subset of Event Log messages to send for debugging purposes according to:

- Severity level
- System module

By specifying both a severity level and system module, you can use both configured settings to filter the Event Log messages you want to use to troubleshoot switch or network error conditions.



### CAUTION:

After you configure a syslog server and a severity level and/or system module to filter the Event Log messages that are sent, if you save these settings to the startup configuration file by entering the `write memory` command, these debug and logging settings are automatically re-activated after a switch reboot or power recycle. The debug settings and destinations configured in your previous troubleshooting session will then be applied to the current session, which may not be desirable.

After a reboot, messages remain in the Event Log and are not deleted. However, after a power recycle, all Event Log messages are deleted.

If you configure a severity level, system module, or both to temporarily filter Event Log messages, be sure to reset the values to their default settings by entering the `no` form of the following commands to ensure that Event Log messages of all severity levels and from all system modules are sent to configured syslog servers:

```
switch(config)# no logging severity <debug | major | error | warning | info>
switch(config)# no logging system-module <system-module>
```

## Configuring a syslog server

Syslog is a client-server logging tool that allows a client switch to send event notification messages to a networked device operating with syslog server software. Messages sent to a syslog server can be stored to a file for later debugging analysis.

To use the syslog feature, you must install and configure a syslog server application on a networked host accessible to the switch. For instructions, see the documentation for the syslog server application.

To configure a syslog service, use the `logging <syslog-ip-addr>` command as shown below.

When you configure a syslog server, Event Log messages are automatically enabled to be sent to the server. To reconfigure this setting, use the following commands:

- `debug`  
Specifies additional debug message types (see [Debug messages](#) on page 414).
- `logging`  
Configures the system module or severity level used to filter the Event Log messages sent to configured syslog servers. (See [Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server](#) on page 422 and [Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server](#) on page 422.)

To display the currently configured syslog servers as well as the types of debug messages and the severity-level and system-module filters used to specify the Event Log messages that are sent, enter the `show debug` command (See [Debug/syslog configuration commands](#) on page 407).

### Syntax:

```
no logging <syslog-ip-addr>
```

Enables or disables syslog messaging to the specified IP address. You can configure up to six addresses. If you configure an address when none are already configured, this command enables destination logging (syslog) and the Event debug type. Therefore, at a minimum, the switch begins sending Event Log messages to configured syslog servers. The ACL, IP-OSPF, and/or IP-RIP message types are also sent to the syslog servers if they are currently enabled as debug types. (See [Debug messages](#) on page 414.)

<code>no logging</code>	Removes all currently configured syslog logging destinations from the running configuration. Using this form of the command to delete the only remaining syslog server address disables debug destination logging on the switch, but the default Event debug type does not change.
<code>no logging &lt;syslog-ip-address&gt;</code>	Removes only the specified syslog logging destination from the running configuration. Removing all configured syslog destinations with the <code>no logging</code> command (or a specified syslog server destination with the <code>no logging &lt;syslog-ip-address&gt;</code> command) does not delete the syslog server IP addresses stored in the startup configuration.

## Deleting syslog addresses in the startup configuration

Enter a `no logging` command followed by the `write memory` command.

## Verifying the deletion of a syslog server address

Display the startup configuration by entering the `show config` command.

## Blocking the messages sent to configured syslog servers from the currently configured debug message type

Enter the `no debug <debug-type>` command. (See [Debug messages](#) on page 414.)

## Disabling syslog logging on the switch without deleting configured server addresses

Enter the `no debug destination logging` command. Note that, unlike the case in which no syslog servers are configured, if one or more syslog servers are already configured and syslog messaging is disabled, configuring a new server address does not re-enable syslog messaging. To re-enable syslog messaging, you must enter the `debug destination logging` command.

## Sending logging messages using TCP

### Syntax:

```
no logging <ip-addr> [udp 1024-49151 | tcp 1024-49151]
```

Allows the configuration of the UDP or TCP transport protocol for the transmission of logging messages to a syslog server.

Specifying a destination port with UDP or TCP is optional.

Default ports: UDP port is 514

TCP port is 1470

Default Transport Protocol: UDP

Because TCP is a connection-oriented protocol, a connection must be present before the logging information is sent. This helps ensure that the logging message will reach the syslog server. Each configured syslog server needs its own connection. You can configure the destination port that is used for the transmission of the logging messages.

### Configuring TCP for logging message transmission using the default port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 tcp
```

(Default TCP port 1470 is used.)

### Configuring TCP for logging message transmission using a specified port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 9514
```

(TCP port 9514 is used.)

### Configuring UDP for logging message transmission using the default port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 udp
```

(Default UDP port 514 is used.)

### Configuring UDP for logging message transmission using a specified port

```
switch(config)# logging 192.123.4.5 9512
```

(UDP port 9512 is used.)

#### Syntax:

```
no logging facility <facility-name>
```

The logging facility specifies the destination subsystem used in a configured syslog server. (All configured syslog servers must use the same subsystem.) Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends the default (user) subsystem unless your application specifically requires another subsystem. Options include:

user	(default) Random user-level messages
kern	Kernel messages
mail	Mail system
daemon	System daemons
auth	Security/authorization messages
syslog	Messages generated internally by syslog
lpr	Line-printer subsystem
news	Netnews subsystem
uucp	uucp subsystem
cron	cron/at subsystem
sys9	cron/at subsystem

Table Continued



sys10 - sys14	Reserved for system use
local10 - local17	Reserved for system use

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured facility and reconfigure the default (user) value.

## Adding a description for a Syslog server

You can associate a user-friendly description with each of the IP addresses (IPv4 only) configured for syslog using the CLI or SNMP.



### NOTE:

The Hewlett Packard Enterprise MIB `hpicfSyslog.mib` allows the configuration and monitoring of syslog for SNMP (RFC 3164 supported).



### CAUTION:

Entering the `no logging` command removes ALL the syslog server addresses without a verification prompt.

The CLI command is:

### Syntax:

```
logging <ip-addr> [control-descr ZZZZTRISHZZZZ <text_string>]
no logging <ip-addr> [control-descr]
```

An optional user-friendly description that can be associated with a server IP address. If no description is entered, this is blank. If `<text_string>` contains white space, use quotes around the string. IPv4 addresses only.

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the description. Limit: 255 characters



### NOTE:

To remove the description using SNMP, set the description to an empty string.

## The logging command with a control description

```
switch(config)# logging 10.10.10.2 control-descr syslog_one
```

## Adding a priority description

This description can be added with the CLI or SNMP. The CLI command is:

### Syntax:

```
logging priority-descr <text_string>
no logging priority-descr
```

Provides a user-friendly description for the combined filter values of `severity` and `system module`. If no description is entered, this is blank.

If `text_string` contains white space, use quotes around the string.

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the description.

Limit: 255 characters

## The logging command with a priority description

```
switch(config)# logging priority-descr severe-pri
```



### NOTE:

A notification is sent to the SNMP agent if there are any changes to the syslog parameters, either through the CLI or with SNMP.

## Configuring the severity level for Event Log messages sent to a syslog server

Event Log messages are entered with one of the following severity levels (from highest to lowest):

Major	A fatal error condition has occurred on the switch.
Error	An error condition has occurred on the switch.
Warning	A switch service has behaved unexpectedly.
Information	Information on a normal switch event.
Debug	Reserved for switch internal diagnostic information.

Using the `logging severity` command, you can select a set of Event Log messages according to their severity level and send them to a syslog server. Messages of the selected and higher severity will be sent. To configure a syslog server, see [Configuring a syslog server](#) on page 418.

### Syntax:

```
no logging severity {< major | error | warning | info | debug >}
```

Configures the switch to send all Event Log messages with a severity level equal to or higher than the specified value to all configured Syslog servers.

Default: `debug` (Reports messages of all severity levels.)

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured severity level and reconfigure the default value, which sends Event Log messages of all severity levels to syslog servers.



**NOTE:** The severity setting does not affect event notification messages that the switch normally sends to the Event Log. All messages remain recorded in the Event Log.

## Configuring the system module used to select the Event Log messages sent to a syslog server

Event Log messages contain the name of the system module that reported the event. Using the `logging system-module` command, you can select a set of Event Log messages according to the originating system module and send them to a syslog server.

### Syntax:

```
no logging system-module <system-module>
```

Configures the switch to send all Event Log messages being logged from the specified system module to configured syslog servers. (To configure a syslog server, see **Configuring a syslog server**.)

See **Event Log system modules** for the correct value to enter for each system module.

Default: `all-pass` (Reports all Event Log messages.)

Use the `no` form of the command to remove the configured system module value and reconfigure the default value, which sends Event Log messages from all system modules to syslog servers.

You can select messages from only one system module to be sent to a syslog server; you cannot configure messages from multiple system modules to be sent. If you re-enter the command with a different system module name, the currently configured value is replaced with the new one.



**NOTE:** This setting has no effect on event notification messages that the switch normally sends to the Event Log.

## Enabling local command logging

Use this command to enable local command logging. This satisfies the NDcPP certification requirement that:

- All administrative actions (commands) are logged locally.
- Local command log storage can be enabled and disabled.
- The identity of the user causing an event is logged.
- When the command log is exhausted by 80% and wraparound occurs, the event is logged and a trap is generated.
- Log messages have a maximum of 240 characters (the RMON event maximum string length) and are stored in the command log buffer.
- Log messages greater than the maximum length are truncated and are not stored in the command log buffer.

### Syntax:

```
no logging command
```

## Operating notes for debug and Syslog

- Rebooting the switch or pressing the `Reset` button resets the debug configuration.

Debug option	Effect of a reboot or reset
logging (debug destination)	If syslog server IP addresses are stored in the startup-config file, they are saved across a reboot and the logging destination option remains enabled. Otherwise, the logging destination is disabled.
session (debug destination)	Disabled.
ACL (debug type)	Disabled.
All (debug type)	Disabled.

*Table Continued*

Debug option	Effect of a reboot or reset
event (debug type)	<p>If a syslog server IP address is configured in the startup-config file, the sending of Event Log messages is reset to <code>enabled</code>, regardless of the last active setting.</p> <p>If no syslog server is configured, the sending of Event Log messages is <code>disabled</code>.</p>
IP (debug type)	Disabled.

- Debug commands do not affect normal message output to the Event Log.  
Using the `debug event` command, you can specify that Event Log messages are sent to the debug destinations you configure (CLI session, syslog servers, or both) in addition to the Event Log.
- Ensure that your syslog servers accept debug messages.  
All syslog messages resulting from a debug operation have a "debug" severity level. If you configure the switch to send debug messages to a syslog server, ensure that the server's syslog application is configured to accept the "debug" severity level. (The default configuration for some syslog applications ignores the "debug" severity level.)
- Duplicate IP addresses are not stored in the list of syslog servers.
- If the default severity value is in effect, all messages that have severities greater than the default value are passed to syslog. For example, if the default severity is "debug," all messages that have severities greater than debug are passed to syslog.
- There is a limit of six syslog servers. All syslog servers are sent the same messages using the same filter parameters. An error is generated for an attempt to add more than six syslog servers.

## Diagnostic tools

### Port auto-negotiation

When a link LED does not light (indicating loss of link between two devices), the most common reason is a failure of port auto-negotiation between the connecting ports. If a link LED fails to light when you connect the switch to a port on another device, do the following:

#### Procedure

1. Ensure that the switch port and the port on the attached end-node are both set to `Auto` mode.
2. If the attached end-node does not have an `Auto` mode setting, you must manually configure the switch port to the same setting as the end-node port.

### Ping and link tests

The ping test and the link test are point-to-point tests between your switch and another IEEE 802.3-compliant device on your network. These tests can tell you whether the switch is communicating properly with another device.

**NOTE:**

To respond to a ping test or a link test, the device you are trying to reach must be IEEE 802.3-compliant.

## Ping test

A test of the path between the switch and another device on the same or another IP network that can respond to IP packets (ICMP Echo Requests). To use the `ping` (or `tracert`) command with host names or fully qualified domain names, see **DNS resolver** on page 443.

## Link test

A test of the connection between the switch and a designated network device on the same LAN (or VLAN, if configured). During the link test, IEEE 802.2 test packets are sent to the designated network device in the same VLAN or broadcast domain. The remote device must be able to respond with an 802.2 Test Response Packet.

## Executing ping or link tests (WebAgent)

To start a ping or link test in the WebAgent:

1. In the navigation pane, click **Troubleshooting**.
2. Click **Ping/Link Test**.
3. Click **Start**.
4. To halt a link or ping test before it concludes, click **Stop**.

For an Example: of the text screens, see **Figure 54: Ping test and link test screen on the WebAgent** on page 425.

**Figure 54:** *Ping test and link test screen on the WebAgent*

The screenshot displays two configuration windows from the WebAgent. The top window is titled 'Ping Test' and contains a 'Ping Status' section with three input fields: 'Destination IP Address' (empty), 'Number of Packets' (set to 5), and 'Time Out in Seconds' (set to 1). The bottom window is titled 'Link Test' and contains a 'Link Status' section with four input fields: 'Destination MAC Address' (empty), 'VLAN' (a dropdown menu showing a downward arrow), 'Number of Packets' (set to 5), and 'Time Out in Seconds' (set to 1). Both windows have 'Start', 'Stop', and help (?) buttons in the top right corner.

**Destination IP Address** is the network address of the target, or destination, device to which you want to test a connection with the switch. An IP address is in the X.X.X.X format where X is a decimal number between 0 and 255.

**Number of Packets to Send** is the number of times you want the switch to attempt to test a connection.

**Timeout in Seconds** is the number of seconds to allow per attempt to test a connection before determining that the current attempt has failed.

## Testing the path between the switch and another device on an IP network

The ping test uses ICMP echo requests and ICMP echo replies to determine if another device is alive. It also measures the amount of time it takes to receive a reply from the specified destination. The `ping` command has several extended commands that allow advanced checking of destination availability.

### Syntax:

```
ping {<ip-address | hostname>} [repetitions <1-10000>] [timeout <1-60>] [source <
{ip-address | <vlan-id> | loopback <0-7>>}] [data-size <0-65471>] [data-fill
<0-1024>] [ip-option {<record-route | loose-source-route | strict-source-route |
include-timestamp | include-timestamp-and-address | include timestamp-from> >]
[tos <0-255>]
```

```
ping6 {<ipv6-address | hostname>} [repetitions <1-10000>] [timeout <1-60>] [source
< {ip-address | vlan-id | loopback <0-7>>}] [data-size <0-65471>] [data-fill
<0-1024>]
```

Sends ICMP echo requests to determine if another device is alive.

<code>{&lt; ip-address   hostname &gt;}</code>	Target IP address or hostname of the destination node being pinged
<code>repetitions &lt;1-10000&gt;</code>	Number of ping packets sent to the destination address.  Default: 1
<code>timeout &lt;1-60&gt;</code>	Timeout interval in seconds; the ECHO REPLY must be received before this time interval expires for the ping to be successful.  Default: 5
<code>source {&lt; ip-addr   vid   loopback &lt;0-7&gt;&gt;}</code>	Source IP address, VLAN ID, or loopback address used for the ping.  The source IP address must be owned by the router.If a VLAN is specified, the IP address associated with the specified VLAN is used.
<code>data-size &lt;0-65471&gt;</code>	Size of packet sent.  Default: 0 (zero)
<code>data-fill &lt;0-1024&gt;</code>	The data pattern in the packet.  Default: Zero length string

*Table Continued*

ip-option	<p>Specify an IP option, such as loose or strict source routing, or an include-timestamp option:  <b>include-timestamp</b>: Adds the timestamp option to the IP header. The timestamp displays the amount of travel time to and from a host.</p> <p><b>Default: 9</b>  <b>include-timestamp-and-address</b>: Records the intermediate router's timestamp and IP address.</p> <p><b>Default: 4</b>  <b>include-timestamp-from</b>: Records the timestamp of the specified router addresses.  <b>loose-source-route &lt;IP-addr&gt;</b> : The <b>loose-source-route</b> option prompts for the IP address of each source IP on the path. It allows you to specify the IP addresses that you want the ping packet to go through; the packet may go through other IP addresses as well.  <b>record-route &lt;1-9&gt;</b> : Displays the IP addresses of the interfaces that the ping packet goes through on its way to the destination and on the way back.</p> <p>When specified without loose or strict recording, the source route is not recorded. The source route is automatically recorded when loose or strict source routing is enabled.</p> <p><b>Default: 9</b>  <b>strict-source-route &lt;IP-addr&gt;</b> : Restricts the ping packet to only those IP addresses that have been specified and no other addresses.</p>
tos <0-255>	<p>Specifies the type of service to be entered in the header packet.</p> <p><b>Default: 0 (zero)</b></p>

## Ping tests

```
switch# ping 10.10.10.10
10.10.10.10 is alive, time = 15 ms

switch# ping 10.10.10.10 repetitions 3
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms
10.10.10.10 is alive, iteration 1, time = 15 ms

switch# ping 10.10.10.10 timeout 2
10.10.10.10 is alive, time = 10 ms

switch# ping 10.11.12.13
The destination address is unreachable.
```

## Halting a ping test

To halt a ping test before it concludes, press **[Ctrl] [C]**.



### NOTE:

To use the **ping** (or **tracert**) command with host names or fully qualified domain names, see **DNS resolver** on page 443.

## Issuing single or multiple link tests

Single or multiple link tests can have varying repetitions and timeout periods. The defaults are:

- Repetitions: 1 (1 to 999)
- Timeout: 5 seconds (1 to 256 seconds)

### Syntax:

```
link <mac-address> [repetitions <1-999>] [timeout <1-256>] [vlan < vlan-id >]
```

### Example:

**Figure 55: Link tests**

Basic Link Test	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 Link-test passed.
Link Test with Repetitions	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test with Repetitions and Timeout	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test Over a Specific VLAN	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 vlan 1 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 3
Link Test Over a Specific VLAN; Test Fail	Switch# link 0030c1-7fcc40 repetitions 3 timeout 1 vlan 222 802.2 TEST packets sent: 3, responses received: 0

## Tracing the route from the switch to a host address

The `traceroute` command enables you to trace the route from the switch to a host address.

This command outputs information for each (router) hop between the switch and the destination address. Note that every time you execute `traceroute`, it uses the same default settings unless you specify otherwise for that instance of the command.

### Syntax:

```
traceroute {< ip-address | hostname >} [maxttl <1-255>] [minttl <1-255>] [probes <1-5>] [source {<ip-address | source-vlan <vid> | loopback <0-7>}] [dstport <1-34000>] [srcport <1-34000>] [ip-option {<record-route | loose-source-route | strict-source-route | include-timestamp | include-timestamp-and-address | include timestamp-from>}] [< timeout 1-120 >]
```

Lists the IP address or hostname of each hop in the route, plus the time in microseconds for the `traceroute` packet reply to the switch for each hop.



<code>{&lt; ip-address   hostname &gt;}</code>	The IP address or hostname of the device to which to send the traceroute.
<code>[minttl &lt; 1-255 &gt;]</code>	<p>For the current instance of <code>traceroute</code>, changes the minimum number of hops allowed for each probe packet sent along the route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If <code>minttl</code> is greater than the actual number of hops, the output includes only the hops at and above the <code>minttl</code> threshold. (The hops below the threshold are not listed.)</li> <li>• If <code>minttl</code> matches the actual number of hops, only that hop is shown in the output.</li> <li>• If <code>minttl</code> is less than the actual number of hops, all hops are listed.</li> </ul> <p>For any instance of <code>traceroute</code>, if you want a <code>minttl</code> value other than the default, you must specify that value.(Default: 1)</p>
<code>[maxttl &lt; 1-255 &gt;]</code>	<p>For the current instance of <code>traceroute</code>, changes the maximum number of hops allowed for each probe packet sent along the route.If the destination address is further from the switch than <code>maxttl</code> allows, <code>traceroute</code> lists the IP addresses for all hops it detects up to the <code>maxttl</code> limit.For any instance of <code>traceroute</code>, if you want a <code>maxttl</code> value other than the default, you must specify that value.(Default: 30)</p>
<code>[probes &lt; 1-5 &gt;]</code>	<p>For the current instance of <code>traceroute</code>, changes the number of queries the switch sends for each hop in the route.For any instance of <code>traceroute</code>, if you want a probes value other than the default, you must specify that value.(Default: 3)</p>
<code>[source {&lt; ip- addr   vid   loopback &lt;0-7&gt; &gt;}]</code>	The source IPv4 address, VLAN ID, or Loopback address.
<code>[dstport &lt; 1-34000 &gt;]</code>	Destination port.

*Table Continued*

<code>[srcport &lt;1-34000 &gt;]</code>	Source port.
<code>[ip-option]</code>	Specify an IP option, such as loose or strict source routing, or an include-timestamp option: <code>[include-timestamp]</code> : Adds the timestamp option to the IP header. The timestamp displays the amount of travel time to and from a host.Default: <code>9[include-timestamp-and-address]</code> : Records the intermediate router's timestamp and IP address.Default: 4 <code>[loose-source-route &lt;IP-addr&gt;]</code> : Prompts for the IP address of each source IP on the path.It allows you to specify the IP addresses that you want the ping packet to go through; the packet may go through other IP addresses as well. <code>[record-route &lt;1-9&gt;]</code> : Displays the IP addresses of the interfaces that the ping packet goes through on its way to the destination and on the way back.When specified without loose or strict recording, the source route is not recorded. The source route is automatically recorded when loose or strict source routing is enabled.Default: 9 <code>[strict-source-route &lt;IP-addr&gt;]</code> : Restricts the ping packet to only those IP addresses that have been specified and no other addresses. <code>[timeout &lt;1-120&gt;]</code> : For the current instance of <code>traceroute</code> , changes the timeout period the switch waits for each probe of a hop in the route.For any instance of <code>traceroute</code> , if you want a timeout value other than the default, you must specify that value.(Default: 5 seconds)



**NOTE:** For information about `traceroute6`, see the IPv6 configuration guide for your switch.

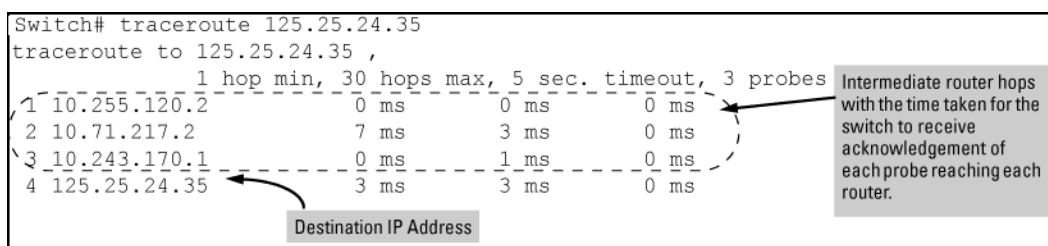
## Halting an ongoing traceroute search

Press the **[Ctrl] [C]** keys.

## A low maxttl causes traceroute to halt before reaching the destination address

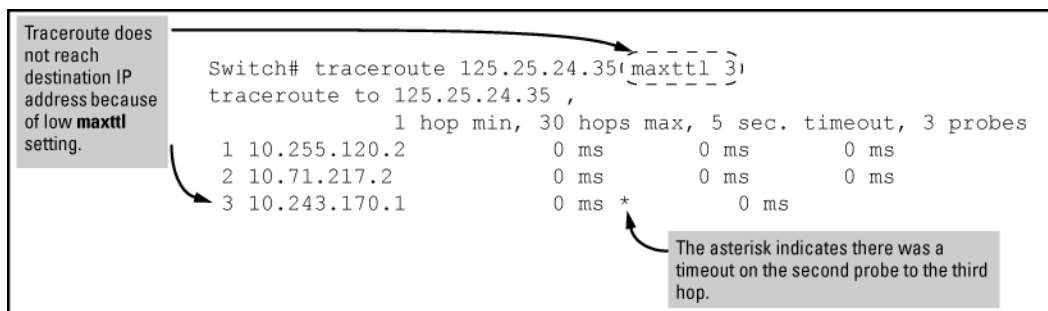
Executing `traceroute` with its default values for a destination IP address that is four hops away produces a result similar to this:

**Figure 56:** A completed traceroute enquiry



Continuing from the previous Example: (**Figure 56: A completed traceroute enquiry** on page 430), executing `traceroute` with an insufficient `maxttl` for the actual hop count produces an output similar to this:

**Figure 57:** *Incomplete traceroute because of low maxttl setting*



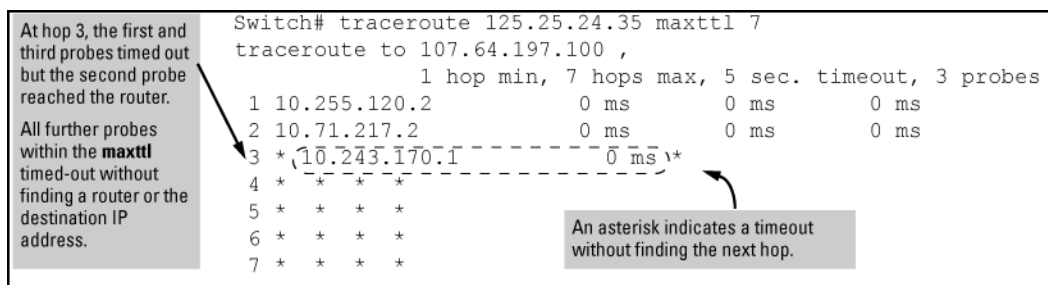
## If a network condition prevents traceroute from reaching the destination

Common reasons for `traceroute` failing to reach a destination include:

- Timeouts (indicated by one asterisk per probe, per hop)
- Unreachable hosts
- Unreachable networks
- Interference from firewalls
- Hosts configured to avoid responding

Executing `traceroute` where the route becomes blocked or otherwise fails results in an output marked by timeouts for all probes beyond the last detected hop. For example, with a maximum hop count of 7 (`maxttl = 7`), where the route becomes blocked or otherwise fails, the output appears similar to this:

**Figure 58:** *Traceroute failing to reach the destination address*



## Viewing switch configuration and operation

In some troubleshooting scenarios, you may need to view the switch configuration to diagnose a problem. The complete switch configuration is contained in a file that you can browse from the CLI using the commands described in this section.

### Viewing the startup or running configuration file

#### Syntax:

```
write terminal
```

Displays the running configuration.

<code>show config</code>	Displays the startup configuration.
<code>show running-config</code>	Displays the running-config file.

For more information and examples of how to use these commands, see “Switch Memory and Configuration” in the basic operation guide.

## Viewing the configuration file (WebAgent)

To display the running configuration using the WebAgent:

1. In the navigation pane, click **Troubleshooting**.
2. Click **Configuration Report**.
3. Use the right-side scroll bar to scroll through the configuration listing.

## Viewing a summary of switch operational data

### Syntax:

```
show tech
```

By default, the `show tech` command displays a single output of switch operating and running-configuration data from several internal switch sources, including:

- Image stamp (software version data)
- Running configuration
- Event Log listing
- Boot history
- Port settings
- Status and counters — port status
- IP routes
- Status and counters — VLAN information
- GVRP support
- Load balancing (trunk and LACP)

**The show tech command** on page 432 shows sample output from the `show tech` command.

### The show tech command

```
switch# show tech
```

```
show system
```

```
Status and Counters - General System Information
```

```
System Name       : Switch
System Contact    :
System Location   :
```

```

MAC Age Time (sec) : 300

Time Zone          : 0
Daylight Time Rule : None

Software revision  : XX.14.xx      Base MAC Addr  : 001871-c42f00
ROM Version        : XX.12.12     Serial Number  : SG641SU00L

Up Time            : 23 hours      Memory - Total :
CPU Util (%)       : 10             Free           :

IP Mgmt - Pkts Rx  : 759           Packet - Total : 6750
          Pkts Tx  : 2             Buffers Free  : 5086
                                   Lowest          : 4961
                                   Missed           : 0

show flash
Image      Size(Bytes)   Date   Version
-----

```

To specify the data displayed by the `show tech` command, use the `copy show tech` command.

## Saving show tech command output to a text file

When you enter the `show tech` command, a summary of switch operational data is sent to your terminal emulator. You can use your terminal emulator's text capture features to save the `show tech` data to a text file for viewing, printing, or sending to an associate to diagnose a problem.

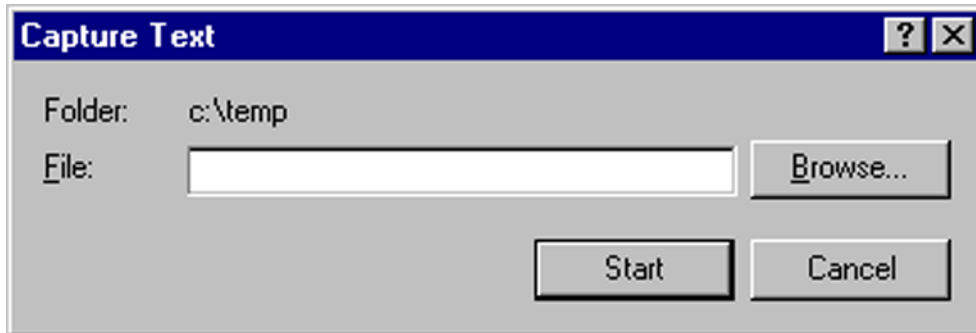
For example, if your terminal emulator is the Hyperterminal application available with Microsoft® Windows® software, you can copy the `show tech` output to a file and then use either Microsoft Word or Notepad to display the data. (In this case, Microsoft Word provides the data in an easier-to-read format.)

The following example uses the Microsoft Windows terminal emulator. If you are using a different terminal emulator application, see the documentation provided with the application.

## Procedure

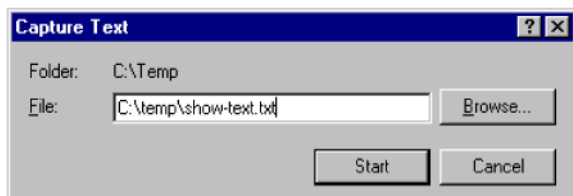
1. In Hyperterminal, click on **Transfer|Capture Text...**

**Figure 59:** Capture text window of the Hyperterminal application



2. In the **File** field, enter the path and file name in which you want to store the `show tech` output.

**Figure 60:** Entering a path and filename for saving `show tech` output



3. Click **[Start]** to create and open the text file.
4. From the global configuration context, enter the `show tech` command:

```
switch# show tech
```

The `show tech` command output is copied into the text file and displayed on the terminal emulator screen. When the command output stops and displays `-- MORE --`, press the Space bar to display and copy more information. The CLI prompt appears when the command output finishes.

5. Click on **Transfer|Capture Text|Stop** in HyperTerminal to stop copying data and save the text file.  
If you do not stop HyperTerminal from copying command output into the text file, additional unwanted data can be copied from the HyperTerminal screen.
6. To access the file, open it in Microsoft Word, Notepad, or a similar text editor.

## Customizing `show tech` command output

Use the `copy show tech` command to customize the detailed switch information displayed with the `show tech` command to suit your troubleshooting needs.

To customize the information displayed with the `show tech` command:

## Procedure

1. Determine the information that you want to gather to troubleshoot a problem in switch operation.
2. Enter the `copy show tech` command to specify the data files that contain the information you want to view.

**Syntax:**

```
copy <source> show-tech
```

Specifies the operational and configuration data from one or more source files to be displayed by the `show tech` command. Enter the command once for each data file that you want to include in the display.

Default: Displays data from all source files, where `<source>` can be any one of the following values:

<code>command-output "&lt;command&gt;"</code>	<p>Includes the output of a specified command in <code>show-tech</code> command output.</p> <p>Enter the command name between double-quotation marks, For example, copy "show system" show-tech.</p>
<code>crash-data [slot-id   master]</code>	<p>Includes the crash data from all management and interface modules in <code>show tech</code> command output.</p> <p>To limit the amount of crash data displayed, specify an installed module or management modules, where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>slot-id</code>: Includes the crash data from an installed module. Valid slot IDs are the letters a through h.</li><li>• <code>master</code>: Includes the crash data from both management modules.</li></ul>
<code>crash-log [slot-id   master]</code>	<p>Includes the crash logs from all management and interface modules in <code>show tech</code> command output.</p> <p>To limit the amount of crash-log data displayed, specify an installed module or management modules, where:</p> <p><code>slot-id</code>: Includes the crash log from an installed module. Valid slot IDs are the letters a through h.</p> <p><code>master</code>: Includes the crash log from both management modules.</p>
<code>event-log</code>	<p>Copies the contents of the Event Log to <code>show tech</code> command output.</p>
<code>running-config</code>	<p>Includes the contents of the running configuration file in <code>show tech</code> command output</p>
<code>startup-config</code>	<p>Includes the contents of the startup configuration file in <code>show tech</code> command output.</p>

*Table Continued*

<pre>tftp config {&lt;startup-config   running-config} &lt;ip-addr&gt; &lt;remote- file&gt; {&lt;pc   unix&gt;}</pre>	<p>Downloads the contents of a configuration file from a remote host to show tech command output, where:</p> <p><i>&lt;ip-addr&gt;</i>: Specifies the IP address of the remote host device.</p> <p><i>&lt;remote-file&gt;</i>: Specifies the pathname on the remote host for the configuration file whose contents you want to include in the command output.</p> <p><i>pc unix</i> : Specifies whether the remote host is a DOS-based PC or UNIX workstation.</p>
<pre>usb config {&lt;startup-config &lt; filename &gt;   command-file &lt; acl- filename.txt &gt;}</pre>	<p>Copies the contents of a configuration file or ACL command file from a USB flash drive to show tech command output, where:</p> <p><i>startup-config &lt;filename&gt;</i>: Specifies the name of a startup configuration file on the USB drive.</p> <p><i>command-file &lt;acl-filename.txt&gt;</i> : Specifies the name of an ACL command file on the USB drive.</p>
<pre>xmodem config {&lt;startup-config   config &lt; filename &gt;   command-file &lt; acl-filename.txt &gt;} {&lt;pc   unix&gt;}</pre>	<p>Copies the contents of a configuration file or ACL command file from a serially connected PC or UNIX workstation to show tech command output, where:</p> <p><i>startup-config</i>: Specifies the name of the startup configuration file on the connected device.</p> <p><i>config &lt;filename&gt;</i>: Specifies the pathname of a configuration file on the connected device.</p> <p><i>command-file &lt;acl-filename.txt&gt;</i>: Specifies the pathname of an ACL command file on the connected device.</p> <p><i>pc unix</i>: Specifies whether the connected device is a DOS-based PC or UNIX workstation.</p>

## Viewing more information on switch operation

Use the following commands to display additional information on switch operation for troubleshooting purposes.

### Syntax:

```
show boot-history
```

Displays the crash information saved for each management module on the switch.

```
show history
```

Displays the current command history. This command output is used for reference or when you want to repeat a command (See [Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems](#) on page 439).

```
show system-information
```



Displays globally configured parameters and information on switch operation.

```
show version
```

Displays the software version currently running on the switch and the flash image from which the switch booted (primary or secondary). For more information, see "Displaying Management Information" in the "Redundancy (Switch 8212zl)" .

```
show interfaces
```

Displays information on the activity on all switch ports (see "Viewing Port Status and Configuring Port Parameters" in the "Port Status and Configuration" ).

```
show interfaces-display
```

Displays the same information as the `show interfaces` command and dynamically updates the output every three seconds. Press **Ctrl + C** to stop the dynamic updates of system information. Use the Arrow keys to view information that is off the screen.

## Searching for text using pattern matching with show command

Selected portions of the output are displayed, depending on the parameters chosen.

### Syntax:

```
show {< command option > | < include | exclude | begin >} <regular expression>
```

Uses matching pattern searches to display selected portions of the output from a `show` command. There is no limit to the number of characters that can be matched. Only regular expressions are permitted; symbols such as the asterisk cannot be substituted to perform more general matching.

include	Only the lines that contain the matching pattern are displayed in the output.
exclude	Only the lines that contain the matching pattern are <b>not</b> displayed in the output.
begin	The display of the output begins with the line that contains the matching pattern.



**NOTE:** Pattern matching is case-sensitive.

Following are examples of what portions of the running config file display depending on the option chosen.

### Pattern matching with include option

```
switch(config)# show run | include ipv6 1
  ipv6 enable
  ipv6 enable
```

```
ipv6 access-list "EH-01"  
switch(config)#
```

<sup>1</sup>Displays only lines that contain "ipv6".

### Pattern matching with exclude option

```
switch(config)# show run | exclude ipv6 1  
  
Running configuration:  
  
; J9299A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WB.15.XX  
  
hostname "Switch"  
snmp-server community "notpublic" Unrestricted  
vlan 1  
    name "DEFAULT VLAN"  
    untagged A1-A24,B1-B20  
    ip address dhcp-bootp  
    no untagged B21-B24  
    exit  
vlan 20  
    name "VLAN20"  
    untagged B21-B24  
    no ip address  
    exit  
policy qos "michael"  
    exit  
    sequence 10 deny tcp 2001:db8:255::/48 2001:db8:125::/48  
    exit  
no autorun  
password manager
```

<sup>1</sup>Displays all lines that do not contain "ipv6".

### Pattern matching with begin option

```
switch(config)# show run | begin ipv6 1  
    ipv6 enable  
    no untagged 21-24  
    exit  
vlan 20  
    name "VLAN20"  
    untagged 21-24  
    ipv6 enable  
    no ip address  
    exit  
policy qos "michael"  
    exit  
ipv6 access-list "EH-01"  
    sequence 10 deny tcp 2001:db8:255::/48 2001:db8:125::/48  
    exit
```

```
no autorun
password manager
```

<sup>1</sup>Displays the running config beginning at the first line that contains “ipv6”.

The following is an Example: of the `show arp` command output, and then the output displayed when the `include` option has the IP address of `15.255.128.1` as the regular expression.

### The show arp command and pattern matching with the include option

```
switch(config)# show arp
```

IP ARP table

IP Address	MAC Address	Type	Port
15.255.128.1	00000c-07ac00	dynamic	B1
15.255.131.19	00a0c9-b1503d	dynamic	
15.255.133.150	000bcd-3cbeec	dynamic	B1

```
switch(config)# show arp | include 15.255.128.1
15.255.128.1    00000c-07ac00    dynamic B1
```

## Displaying the information you need to diagnose problems

Use the following commands in a troubleshooting session to more accurately display the information you need to diagnose a problem.

### Syntax:

```
alias
```

Creates a shortcut alias name for commonly used commands and command options.

### Syntax:

```
kill
```

Terminates a currently running, remote troubleshooting session. Use the `show ip ssh` command to list the current management sessions.

### Syntax:

```
no page
```

Toggles the paging mode for `show` commands between continuous listing and per-page listing.

### Syntax:

```
repeat
```

Repeatedly executes one or more commands so that you can see the results of multiple commands displayed over a period of time. To halt the command execution, press any key on the keyboard.

### Syntax:

```
setup
```

Displays the Switch Setup screen from the menu interface.

## Restoring the factory-default configuration

As part of your troubleshooting process, it may become necessary to return the switch configuration to the factory default settings. This process:

- Momentarily interrupts the switch operation
- Clears any passwords
- Clears the console Event Log
- Resets the network counters to zero
- Performs a complete self test
- Reboots the switch into its factory default configuration, including deleting an IP address

There are two methods for resetting to the factory-default configuration:

- CLI
- `Clear/Reset` button combination



---

**NOTE:** Hewlett Packard Enterprise recommends that you save your configuration to a TFTP server before resetting the switch to its factory-default configuration. You can also save your configuration via Xmodem to a directly connected PC.

---

## Resetting to the factory-default configuration

### Using the CLI

This command operates at any level **except** the Operator level.

#### Syntax:

```
erase startup-configuration
```

Deletes the startup-config file in flash so that the switch will reboot with its factory-default configuration.



---

**NOTE:**

The `erase startup-config` command does not clear passwords unless `include-credentials` has been set, at which time this command does erase username/password information and any other credentials stored in the config file. For more information, see the section on "Saving Security Credentials in a Config File" in the access security guide for your switch.

---

### Using Clear/Reset

#### Procedure

1. Using pointed objects, simultaneously press both the `Reset` and `Clear` buttons on the front of the switch.
2. Continue to press the `Clear` button while releasing the `Reset` button.
3. When the Self Test LED begins to flash, release the `Clear` button.

The switch then completes its self test and begins operating with the configuration restored to the factory default settings.

## Restoring a flash image

The switch can lose its operating system if either the primary or secondary flash image location is empty or contains a corrupted OS file and an operator uses the `erase flash` command to erase a good OS image file from the opposite flash location.

### Recovering from an empty or corrupted flash state

Use the switch's console serial port to connect to a workstation or laptop computer that has the following:

- A terminal emulator program with Xmodem capability, such as the HyperTerminal program included in Windows PC software.
- A copy of a good OS image file for the switch



**NOTE:** The following procedure requires the use of Xmodem and copies an OS image into primary flash only.

This procedure assumes you are using HyperTerminal as your terminal emulator. If you use a different terminal emulator, you may need to adapt this procedure to the operation of your particular emulator.

1. Start the terminal emulator program.

Ensure that the terminal program is configured as follows:

- Baud rate: 9600
- No parity
- 8 Bits
- 1 stop bit
- No flow control

2. Use the `Reset` button to reset the switch.

The following prompt should then appear in the terminal emulator:

```
Enter h or ? for help.
```

```
=>
```

3. Because the OS file is large, you can increase the speed of the download by changing the switch console and terminal emulator baud rates to a high speed. For Example:

- a. Change the switch baud rate to 115,200 Bps.

```
=> sp 115200
```

- b. Change the terminal emulator baud rate to match the switch speed:

- I. In HyperTerminal, select **Call|Disconnect**.
- II. Select **File|Properties**.
- III. Click on **Configure**.
- IV. Change the baud rate to **115200**.
- V. Click on **[OK]**, then in the next window, click on **[OK]** again.
- VI. Select **Call|Connect**.
- VII. Press **[Enter]** one or more times to display the => prompt.

4. Start the Console Download utility by entering `do` at the => prompt and pressing **[Enter]**:

```
=> do
```

5. You then see this prompt:

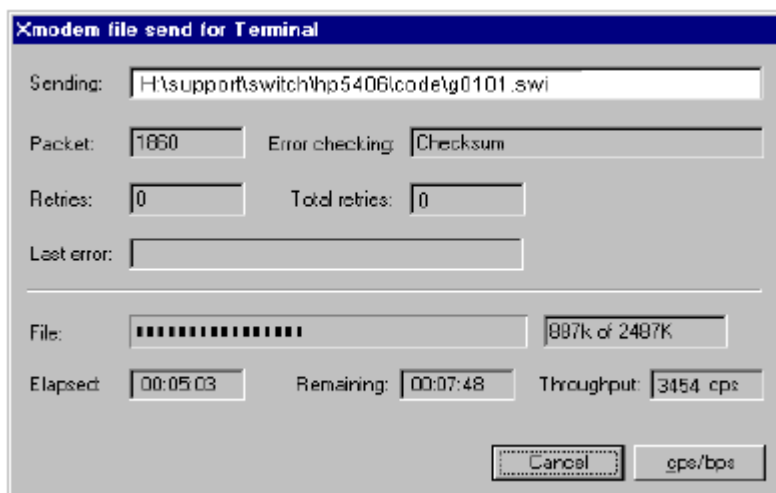
```
You have invoked the console download utility.
Do you wish to continue? (Y/N)>_
```

6. At the above prompt:

- a. Enter **y** (for Yes)
- b. Select **Transfer|File** in HyperTerminal.
- c. Enter the appropriate filename and path for the OS image.
- d. Select the **Xmodem** protocol (and not the 1k Xmodem protocol).
- e. Click on **[Send]**.

If you are using HyperTerminal, you will see a screen similar to the following to indicate that the download is in progress:

**Figure 61:** *Example: of Xmodem download in progress*



When the download completes, the switch reboots from primary flash using the OS image you downloaded in the preceding steps, plus the most recent startup-config file.

# DNS resolver

The domain name system (DNS) resolver is designed for use in local network domains, where it enables the use of a host name or fully qualified domain name with DNS-compatible switch CLI commands.

DNS operation supports both IPv4 and IPv6 DNS resolution and multiple, prioritized DNS servers. (For information on IPv6 DNS resolution, see the latest IPv6 configuration guide for your switch.)

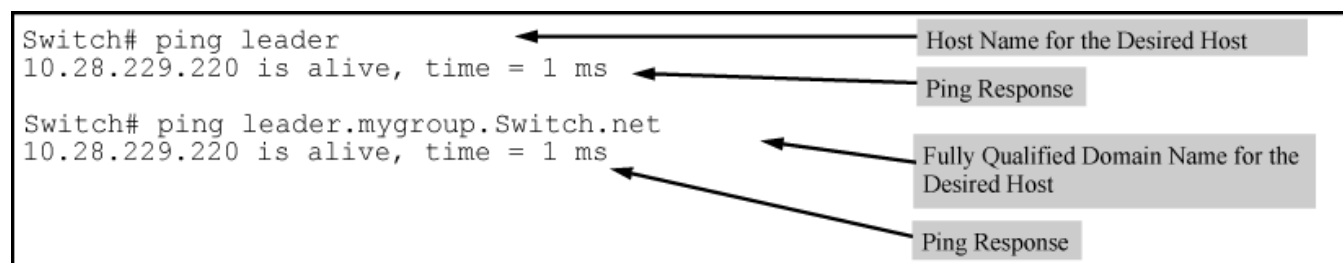
## Basic operation

- When the switch is configured with only the IP address of a DNS server available to the switch, a DNS-compatible command, executed with a fully qualified domain name, can reach a device found in any domain accessible through the configured DNS server.
- When the switch is configured with both of the following:
  - The IP address of a DNS server available to the switch
  - The domain suffix of a domain available to the configured DNS server then:
    - A DNS-compatible command that includes the host name of a device in the same domain as the configured domain suffix can reach that device.
    - A DNS-compatible command that includes a fully qualified domain name can reach a device in any domain that is available to the configured DNS server.

### Example:

Suppose the switch is configured with the domain suffix `mygroup.Switch.net` and the IP address for an accessible DNS server. If an operator wants to use the switch to ping a target host in this domain by using the DNS name "leader" (assigned by a DNS server to an IP address used in that domain), the operator can use either of the following commands:

**Figure 62:** Example: of using either a host name or a fully qualified domain name



In the proceeding Example:, if the DNS server's IP address is configured on the switch, but a domain suffix is either not configured or is configured for a different domain than the target host, the fully qualified domain name **must** be used.

Note that if the target host is in a domain **other than** the domain configured on the switch:

- The host's domain must be reachable from the switch. This requires that the DNS server for the switch must be able to communicate with the DNS servers in the path to the domain in which the target host operates.
- The fully qualified domain name must be used, and the domain suffix must correspond to the domain in which the target host operates, regardless of the domain suffix configured in the switch.

### Example:

Suppose the switch is configured with the domain suffix `mygroup.Switch.net` and the IP address for an accessible DNS server in this same domain. This time, the operator wants to use the switch to trace the route to a

host named "remote-01" in a different domain named `common.group.net`. Assuming this second domain is accessible to the DNS server already configured on the switch, a `traceroute` command using the target's fully qualified DNS name should succeed.

**Figure 63:** Example: using the fully qualified domain name for an accessible target in another domain

Switch# traceroute remote-01.common.group.net				
[traceroute to 10.22.240.73]				
1 hop min, 30 hops max, 5 sec. timeout, 3 probes				
1	10.28.229.3	0 ms	0 ms	0 ms
2	10.71.217.1	0 ms	0 ms	0 ms
3	10.0.198.2	1 ms	0 ms	0 ms
4	10.22.240.73	0 ms	0 ms	0 ms

## Configuring and using DNS resolution with DNS-compatible commands

The DNS-compatible commands include `ping` and `traceroute`.)

### Procedure

- Determine the following:
  - The IP address for a DNS server operating in a domain in your network.
  - The priority (1 to 3) of the selected server, relative to other DNS servers in the domain.
  - The domain name for an accessible domain in which there are hosts you want to reach with a DNS-compatible command. (This is the domain suffix in the fully qualified domain name for a given host operating in the selected domain. See **Basic operation** on page 443.) Note that if a domain suffix is not configured, fully qualified domain names can be used to resolve DNS-compatible commands.
  - The host names assigned to target IP addresses in the DNS server for the specified domain.
- Use the data from the first three bullets in step1 to configure the DNS entry on the switch.
- Use a DNS-compatible command with the host name to reach the target devices.

## Configuring a DNS entry

The switch allows up to two DNS server entries (IP addresses for DNS servers). One domain suffix can also be configured to support resolution of DNS names in that domain by using a host name only. Including the domain suffix enables the use of DNS-compatible commands with a target's host name instead of the target's fully qualified domain name.

### Syntax:

```
no ip dns server-address priority <1-3> <ip-addr>
```

Configures the access priority and IP address of a DNS server accessible to the switch. These settings specify:

- The relative priority of the DNS server when multiple servers are configured
- The IP address of the DNS server

These settings must be configured before a DNS-compatible command can be executed with host name criteria.

The switch supports two prioritized DNS server entries. Configuring another IP address for a priority that has already been assigned to an IP address is not allowed.



To replace one IP address at a given priority level with another address having the same priority, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the unwanted address. Also, only one instance of a given server address is allowed in the server list. Attempting to enter a duplicate of an existing entry at a different priority level is not allowed .

To change the priority of an existing server address, use the `no` form of the command to remove the entry, then re-enter the address with the new priority.

The `no` form of the command replaces the configured IP address with the null setting. (Default: null)

### Syntax:

```
no ip dns domain-name <domain-name-suffix>
```

This optional DNS command configures the domain suffix that is automatically appended to the host name entered with a DNS-compatible command. When the domain suffix and the IP address for a DNS server that can access that domain are both configured on the switch, you can execute a DNS-compatible command using only the host name of the desired target. (For an Example:, see **Example: of using either a host name or a fully qualified domain name**.) In either of the following two instances, you must manually provide the domain identification by using a fully qualified DNS name with a DNS-compatible command:

- If the DNS server IP address is configured on the switch, but the domain suffix is not configured (null).
- The domain suffix configured on the switch is not the domain in which the target host exists.

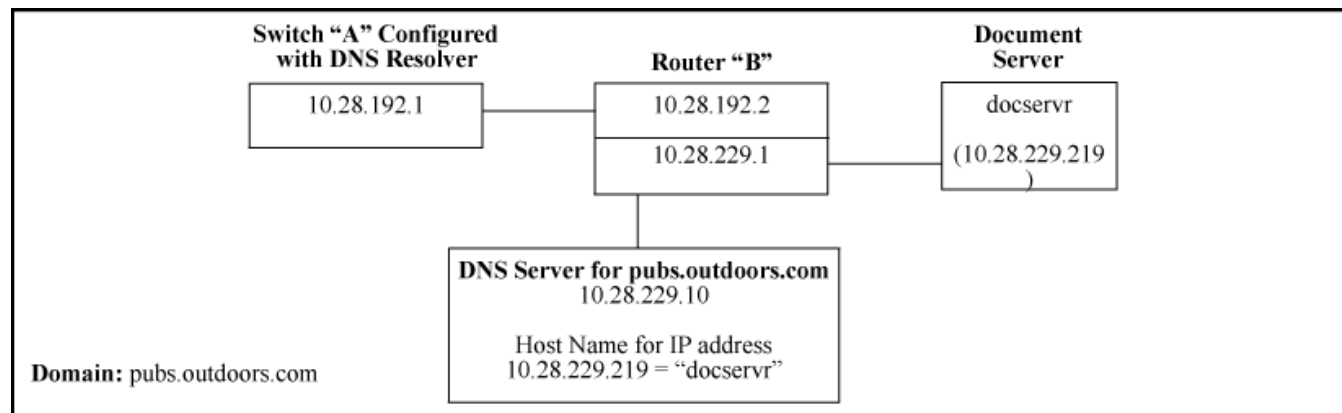
The switch supports one domain suffix entry and three DNS server IP address entries. (See the preceding command description.)

The `no` form of the command replaces the configured domain suffix with the null setting. (Default: null)

## Using DNS names with ping and traceroute: Example:

In the network illustrated in **Figure 64: Example: network domain** on page 445, the switch at 10.28.192.1 is configured to use DNS names for DNS-compatible commands in the **pubs.outdoors.com** domain. The DNS server has been configured to assign the host name **docservr** to the IP address used by the document server (10.28.229.219).

**Figure 64:** Example: network domain



Configuring switch "A" with the domain name and the IP address of a DNS server for the domain enables the switch to use host names assigned to IP addresses in the domain to perform `ping` and `traceroute` actions on the devices in the domain. To summarize:

Entity	Identity
DNS server IP address	10.28.229.10
Domain name (and domain suffix for hosts in the domain)	pubs.outdoors.com
Host name assigned to 10.28.229.219 by the DNS server	docservr
Fully qualified domain name for the IP address used by the document server (10.28.229.219)	docservr.pubs.outdoors.com
Switch IP address	10.28.192.1
Document server IP address	10.28.229.219

With the above already configured, the following commands enable a DNS-compatible command with the host name `docserver` to reach the document server at 10.28.229.219.

#### Configuring switch "A" in Example: network domain to support DNS resolution

```
switch(config)# ip dns server-address 10.28.229.10
switch(config)# ip dns domain-name pubs.outdoors.com
```

#### Ping and traceroute execution for the network in Example: network domain

```
switch(config)# ping docservr
10.28.229.219 is alive, time = 1 ms

switch# traceroute docservr
traceroute to 10.28.229.219
          1 hop min, 30 hops max, 5 sec. timeout, 3 probes
 1 10.28.192.2 1          1 ms          0 ms          0 ms
 2 10.28.229.219 2        0 ms          0 ms          0 ms
```

- <sup>1</sup>First-Hop Router ("B")
- <sup>2</sup>Traceroute Target


As mentioned under the following example, if the DNS entry configured in the switch does not include the domain suffix for the desired target, you must use the target host's fully qualified domain name with DNS-compatible

commands. For example, using the document server in **Figure 64: Example: network domain** on page 445 as a target:

**Figure 65:** Example: of *ping* and *traceroute* execution when only the DNS server IP address is configured

```
Switch# ping [docservr.pubs.outdoors.com]
10.28.229.219 is alive, time = 1 ms

Switch# traceroute [docservr.pubs.outdoors.com]
traceroute to 10.28.229.219
          1 hop min, 30 hops max, 5 sec. timeout, 3 probes
 1 10.28.192.2          1 ms          0 ms          0 ms
 2 10.28.229.219        0 ms          0 ms          0 ms
```



## Viewing the current DNS configuration

The `show ip` command displays the current domain suffix and the IP address of the highest priority DNS server configured on the switch, along with other IP configuration information. If the switch configuration currently includes a non-default (non-null) DNS entry, it will also appear in the `show run` command output.

**Figure 66:** Example: of viewing the current DNS configuration

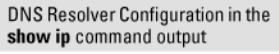
```
Switch# show ip

Internet (IP) Service

  IP Routing : Disabled

  Default Gateway : 10.28.192.2
  Default TTL     : 64
  Arp Age         : 20
  Domain Suffix   : pubs.outdoors.com
  DNS server      : 10.28.229.10

VLAN      | IP Config | IP Address | Subnet Mask
-----+-----
DEFAULT_VLAN | Manual   | 10.28.192.1 | 255.255.255.0
```



## Operating notes

- Configuring another IP address for a priority that has already been assigned to an IP address is not allowed. To replace one IP address at a given priority level with another address having the same priority, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the unwanted address. Also, only one instance of a given server address is allowed in the server list. Attempting to enter a duplicate of an existing entry at a different priority level is not allowed. To change the priority of an existing server address, use the `no` form of the command to remove the entry, then re-enter the address with the new priority.
- To change the position of an address already configured with priority `x`, you must first use `no ip dns server-address priority x <ip-addr>` to remove the address from the configuration, then use `ip dns server-address priority <ip-addr>` to reconfigure the address with the new priority. Also, if the priority to which you want to move an address is already used in the configuration for another address, you must first use the `no` form of the command to remove the current address from the target priority.
- The DNS servers and domain configured on the switch must be accessible to the switch, but it is not necessary for any intermediate devices between the switch and the DNS server to be configured to support DNS operation.

- When multiple DNS servers are configured on the switch, they can reside in the same domain or different domains.
- A DNS configuration must include the IP address for a DNS server that is able to resolve host names for the desired domain. If a DNS server has limited knowledge of other domains, its ability to resolve DNS-compatible command requests is also limited.
- If the DNS configuration includes a DNS server IP address but does not also include a domain suffix, then any DNS-compatible commands should include the target host's fully qualified domain name.
- Switch-Initiated DNS packets go out through the VLAN having the best route to the DNS server, even if a Management VLAN has been configured.
- The DNS server address must be manually input. It is not automatically determined via DHCP.

## Locating a switch (Locator LED)

To locate where a particular switch is physically installed, use the `chassislocate` command to activate the blue Locator LED on the switch's front panel.

### Syntax:

```
chassislocate [blink | on | off]
```

Locates a switch by using the blue Locate LED on the front panel.

<code>blink &lt;1-1440&gt;</code>	Blinks the chassis Locate LED for a specified number of minutes (Default: 30 minutes).
<code>on &lt;1-1440&gt;</code>	Turns the chassis Locate LED on for a specified number of minutes (Default: 30 minutes).
<code>off</code>	Turns the chassis Locate LED off.

### Locating a switch with the `chassislocate` command

```
switch(config)# chassislocate
  blink <1-1440>      Blink the chassis locate led (default 30 minutes).
  off                 Turn the chassis locate led off.
  on <1-1440>         Turn the chassis locate led on (default 30 minutes).
switch(config)# chassislocate
```

For redundant management systems, if the active management module failover, the Locator LED does not remain lit.

## Overview

The Job Scheduler feature enables the user to schedule commands or jobs on the switch for one time or multiple times. This is similar in concept to the UNIX 'cron' utility. The user can schedule any CLI command that the user would otherwise enter interactively. This includes commands to enable or disable ports, LEDs, and Power-Over-Ethernet. Jobs can also be scheduled to be triggered by certain pre-defined events such as switch reboot. The only major restriction on commands scheduled is that, it should not prompt/ask for any user inputs.

## Commands

### Job at | delay | enable | disable

Set schedule jobs using the options and set the count for the number of times the job is repeated.

#### Syntax

```
job JOB_NAME at | delay | enable | disable
```

#### Description

Schedule a command to run automatically. Jobs can be scheduled to run once, multiple times on a recurring basis, or after certain events such as reboots. All commands run with manager privilege in configuration context.

The no form of the command deletes a scheduled job.

By default, jobs will be repeated an infinite number of times.

#### Restrictions

Jobs scheduled at any event will not be counted.

Jobs that are scheduled at the event "reboot" will not work in some multi management switches.

#### Range

- <1-1000>: is the value range for the `count` option.
- ([DD:]HH:]MM): is the format used for the specific delay.

#### Parameters

##### count

Specify the number of times the job should run.

##### delay

Specify the delay before running the job.

##### enable

Enable a job that is disabled or expired.

##### disable

Disable a job. By default, a job is enabled.

## Usage

```
job <JOB NAME> at <([DD:]HH:]MM on <WEEKDAY-LIST>)> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> at <[HH:]MM on [MM/]DD> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> at <EVENT> config-save <COMMAND>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> delay <([DD:]HH:]MM> config-save <COMMAND> count <1-1000>
```

```
job <JOB NAME> enable | disable
```

```
no job <JOB NAME>
```

## Show job

### Syntax

```
show job
```

### Description

Show the jobs scheduled.

### Show job

```
switch# show job
```

Job Scheduler Status and Configuration

Scheduler Status : Waiting for the system time to be set

Name	Event or Time	Repeat Count	Save Cfg	Command
Burrrrrrrrrrrrr...	reboot	--	Yes	chassislocate blink
baz	reboot	--	No	show time
foo	17:00 SxTWTxS	--	No	savepower led
a1	12:00	2	Yes	sh time
a2	Every 2:14:30 days	75	Yes	vlan 3
a3	Every 00:00:25 days	1	No	vlan 4



#### NOTE: Caution

The scheduler does not run until the system time is set.

## Show job <Name>

### Syntax

```
show job JOB NAME
```

### Description

Show the job by name.

## Show job <JOB NAME>

```
switch# show job a1
```

### Job Information

```
Job Name      : a1
Runs At       : 01:24
Config Save   : No
Repeat Count  : --
Job Status    : Enabled
Run Count     : 1
Error Count   : 0
Command       : show time
Job Status    : Enabled
```

### Output from Last Run

-----

```
Tue Dec 15 01:24:00 2015
```

```
switch# show job a2
```

### Job Information

```
Job Name      : a2
Runs At       : Every 2:14:30 days
Config Save   : Yes
Repeat Count  : 75
Run Count     : 0
Error Count   : 0
Command       : vlan 3
Job Status    : Disabled
```

```
switch# show job foo
```

### Job Information

```
Job Name      : foo
Runs At       : 17:00 SxTWTxS
Config Save   : Yes
Repeat Count  : --
Run Count     : 0
Error Count   : 0
Command       : savepower led
Job Status    : Enabled
```

## Overview

The traditional way of restoring a configuration from a backup configuration file required a switch reboot for the new configurations to be effective. There were network outages and a planned downtime for even minor changes. The switch configuration can now be restored from a backup configuration without reboot. It also provides hash of the current running configuration, which can be used for auditing.

The backup configuration can be created using the new command `cfg-backup`. An existing method of copying a configuration file from a remote location (for example, TFTP server) can also be used to backup a configuration or copied from flash.

### More information

[show hash](#) on page 472

[cfg-backup](#) on page 456

[cfg-restore config\\_bkp](#) on page 465

## Benefits of configuration restore without reboot

- Restores a new or modified configuration without reboot, with minimal network outage. Any NMS can use this method for configuration rebase workflows. Only configurations that were exported from the switch can be imported or restored on the switch.
- Restores the configuration without reboot from a backup configuration when the running configuration has functional issues, like misconfigurations from remote management stations.

## Recommended scenarios

- Use the configuration restore feature for incremental configuration updates.
- Use the `force` option with `cfg-restore`, for commands which require reboot.
- Use the `verbose` option to get detailed progress on the configuration restore process.

### More information

[Force configuration restore](#) on page 460

[cfg-restore verbose](#) on page 464

## Use cases

- A user can switch to a new configuration without rebooting the switch.
- If a user loses connectivity after applying the new configuration, a job scheduler executes the job after a specific time frame. This restores the current configuration to the switch, without rebooting it.

### More information

[Switching to a new configuration](#) on page 453

[Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler](#) on page 454



## Switching to a new configuration

### Procedure

1. Back up the configuration using `cfg-backup running-config config <config_name>` command. In the following example, the configuration name used is “stable”.

```
cfg-backup running-config config stable
```

2. Check the backup configuration using `show config files` command.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				
4				
5				

3. Change the running configuration as required, and backup the new configuration as “newfile”.

```
cfg-backup running-config config newfile
```

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				newfile
4				
5				

4. Check the difference between the “newfile” (running configuration) and “stable” (backed up configuration) using `cfg-restore flash stable diff` command. Based on the difference, apply the backed-up configuration using `cfg-restore flash stable` command.
5. Check the status of the configuration restore using `show cfg-restore status` command.

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
```

```
Status                               : Success
Config File Name                     : stable
Source                               : Flash
Time Taken                           : 3 Seconds
Last Run                             : Tue Nov 28 18:24:09 2017

Recovery Mode                         : Enabled
Failure Reason                       : -

Number of Add Commands               : 14
Number of Remove Commands            : 0

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff              : 1 Seconds
```

```
Adding commands      : 2 Seconds
Removing commands    : 0 Seconds
```

## Rolling back to a stable configuration using job scheduler

### Procedure

1. Configure the job using `alias` with the required configuration.

```
alias <name> <command-list>
job <name> delay [[DD:]HH:]MM <command>
```

To schedule a job execution with `cfg-restore` operation once after 15 minutes (00:00:15):

```
alias "cfg_rollback" "cfg-restore flash stable"
job "cfg_stable" delay 00:00:15 "cfg_rollback" count 1
```

2. Back up the current stable configuration using the command `cfg-backup running-config config <config_name>`.

```
cfg-backup running-config config stable
```

3. Check the backup configuration using the command `show config files`.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				stable
3				
4				
5				

4. Edit the configuration as needed. If the user is still connected to the switch, the configuration is stable and the job which reloads the older configuration can be cancelled using the command `no job cfg_stable`.

```
switch(config)# no job cfg_stable
```

5. If the user loses connectivity after applying the new configuration, the job scheduler executes the job after the 15-minute timer expires, and "stable" configuration is restored. Use the following commands to check the output:

- `switch(config)# show job cfg_stable`
- `switch(config)# show cfg-restore status`

```
switch(config)# show job cfg_stable
```

Job Information

```
Job Name       : cfg_stable
Runs At        : Every 00:00:15 days:hours:minutes
Config Save    : No
Repeat Count   : 1
Job Status     : Enabled
Running Status : Active
```

```

Run Count      : 0
Error Count    : 0
Skip Count     : 0
Command       : cfg_rollback

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status        : Success
Config File Name : stable
Source        : Flash
Time Taken    : 9 Seconds
Last Run      : Tue Nov 28 20:50:00 2017

Recovery Mode  : Enabled
Failure Reason : -

Number of Add Commands : 27
Number of Remove Commands : 0

Time Taken for Each Phase :
  Calculating diff : 4 Seconds
  Adding commands  : 1 Seconds
  Removing commands : 0 Seconds

```



**NOTE:** If the configuration involves any sensitive information, backup and restore the configuration by enabling the `include-credentials` command.

## Commands used in switch configuration restore without reboot

### **cfg-backup**

Backs up the selected configuration to the flash file.

### **show config files details**

Shows a detailed list of configuration files available in the flash.

### **cfg-restore**

Restores the given configuration as the running configuration without reboot.

### **show cfg-restore status**

Shows the status of latest restore performed.

### **show cfg-restore latest-diff**

Views the list of configuration changes that are removed, modified, or added to the running configuration.

### **show hash**

Shows the SHA ID of a startup or running configuration.

## Configuration backup

The configuration backup creates a backup of the running or startup configuration of ArubaOS-Switch on-demand to the flash storage on the switch. The maximum number of backup files supported has increased from three to five.



**NOTE:** When you downgrade configuration backup files from five to three, and if the current number of files is either a four or five, an error message Configuration file <name> stored in config index 5 is not supported in lower image versions is displayed.

## cfg-backup

### Syntax

```
cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config} config <FILE-NAME>
```

### Description

Backs up the selected configuration to the flash file mentioned. When the firmware is downgraded to lower versions, the details of only three configuration files appear in the `show config files` command.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Parameters

#### running-config

Copies the running configuration to switch flash file.

#### startup-config

Copies the startup configuration to switch flash file.

#### flash

Name of the configuration file in flash.

### Usage

```
copy {startup-config | running-config} {sftp | tftp} <server address> <FILE-NAME>
```

The existing `copy` command copies the startup and running configuration to the TFTP or SFTP server.

### Examples

```
switch(config)# cfg-backup
  running-config      Backup the running configuration to the flash file
                      mentioned.
  startup-config      Backup the startup configuration to the flash file
                      mentioned.

switch(config)# cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config}
  config              Backup the named configuration file.

switch(config)# cfg-backup {running-config | startup-config} config
  ASCII-STR           Enter an ASCII string.
```

## show config files

### Syntax

```
show config files
```

### Description

Shows a list of configuration files available in the flash.

### Command context

```
config
```

## Examples

```
switch# show config files
Configuration files:
```

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				add
3				modify
4				golden_config
5				poe2

To show the details of saved configuration files:

```
switch(config)# show config files
details          Show details of saved configuration files.
```

```
switch(config)#show config files details
```

Backup Configuration files:

File Name : config  
File ID : 1  
File Size : 35902 Bytes  
Last Modified : Mon Jan 01 1990 00:09:28  
Version : WC.16.xx

File Name : add  
File ID : 2  
File Size : 35902 Bytes  
Last Modified : Mon Oct 23 2017 03:42:38  
Version : WC.16.xx

File Name : modify  
File ID : 3  
File Size : 35902 Bytes  
Last Modified : Mon Oct 23 2017 03:42:38  
Version : WC.16.xx

To view the contents of a configuration file in the flash:

```
switch# show config add
```

```
; JL255A Configuration Editor; Created on release #WC.16.05.0000x
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    no untagged 3-10
    untagged 1-2,11-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    untagged 3-5
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 200
name "VLAN200"
    untagged 6-10
```

```
no ip address
exit
```

## Configuration restore without reboot

The `cfg-restore without reboot` command restores the configuration without reboot from a backup configuration to the running configuration of the switch.

The details about the difference between a running and a backup configuration can be displayed using `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> diff` command.

### More information

[Configuration backup](#) on page 455

[Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration](#) on page 470

## cfg-restore

### Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp <IP-ADDRESS> | sftp <IP-ADDRESS>} <FILE-NAME> [diff |
force | non-blocking | recovery-mode | verbose]
```

### Description

Restores the given configuration as the running configuration without reboot. If the configuration is not suitable to successfully restore without reboot, the command will return a failure message with details.



**NOTE:** The restored configuration commands will be executed on a running configuration, so the name of the current active configuration does not change after configuration restore, except for the `force` option.

### Command context

config

### Parameters

#### flash

Copies file from flash.

#### tftp

Copies file from TFTP server.

#### sftp

Copies file from SFTP server.

#### <IP-ADDRESS>

IP address of the TFTP server.

#### <FILE-NAME>

Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running configuration.

#### diff

Provides the list of changes that will be applied on the running configuration.

## force

Forces a reboot if configuration in restored configuration requires a reboot. Applies the configuration with reboot if the configuration has reboot required commands or system-wide change commands. After a forced reboot, the name of the configuration changes.

## non-blocking

Configuration restoration in non-blocking mode, where actual process happens in the background.

## recovery-mode

Enables or disables recovery-mode. Recovery-mode is enabled by default and this retains the current running configuration if configuration restoration fails.

## verbose

Provides the details of configuration restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted.

## Usage

- `cfg-restore flash <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`
- `cfg-restore tftp {<IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> | <HOSTNAME-STR> <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`
- `cfg-restore sftp {<IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR> | <HOSTNAME-STR> | user <name> {<IP-ADDRESS|IPV6-ADDRESS|HOSTNAME-STR>} | <USERNAME@>{<HOST-NAME> | <IPV4-ADDR> | <IPV6-ADDR>}} [port <1-65535>] <FILE-NAME> [non-blocking | diff | force | recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [verbose [force | [recovery-mode{enable | disable}]] | [diff | force]`

## Examples

```
switch# cfg-restore
flash          Copy file from flash.
sftp           Copy file from SFTP Server.
tftp           Copy file from TFTP Server.

switch# cfg-restore flash
FILE-NAME      Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running
                configuration.

switch# cfg-restore flash config_file
diff           Provide the list of changes that will be applied on the
                running configuration.

force          Apply the configuration with reboot if the
                configuration has reboot required commands or
                system-wide change commands present.

non-blocking   Config restoration in non-blocking mode.
recovery-mode  To enable/disable recovery-mode.
verbose        Provide the details of config restore status and the list of commands to be added
                or deleted.

switch# cfg-restore tftp
HOSTNAME-STR   Specify hostname of TFTP Server.
IP-ADDR        IP Address of the TFTP Server.
IPV6-ADDR      IPV6 Address of the TFTP Server.

switch# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12
FILE-NAME      Name of the backup configuration file to restore into the running
                configuration.

switch# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12 config_file
diff           Provide the list of changes that will be applied on the
                running configuration.

force          Apply the configuration with reboot if the
                configuration has reboot required commands or
```

non-blocking	system-wide change commands present.
recovery-mode	Config restoration in non-blocking mode.
verbose	To enable/disable recovery-mode.
	Provide the details of config restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted.

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash add non-blocking
diff
    Provide the list of changes that will be applied on
    the running configuration.
force
    Apply the configuration with reboot if the configuration has reboot required commands or
    system-wide change commands present.
recovery-mode
    To enable/disable recovery-mode.

```

## Force configuration restore

The `cfg-restore` command fails if a reboot is required. The Configuration restoration is not allowed as the configuration has reboot required commands error is displayed, along with lines requiring a reboot. The force option in the `cfg-restore` command allows a user to force a reboot. The command is: `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> force`.

Before reboot, config is the active configuration. After the device reboots, the backup file becomes the new active configuration.

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				def
3				golden_config
4				
5				

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash golden_config
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'golden_config'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily
disabled.
Configuration restoration is not allowed as the configuration has reboot required commands.

```

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status                : Failed
Config File Name      : golden_config
Source                : Flash
Time Taken            : 5 Seconds
Last Run              : Mon Oct 30 23:03:19 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : Reboot required commands present.
Command : console terminal none

```

```

Number of Add Commands    : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 1

```

```

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 3 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands      : 0 Seconds

```

```

switch# cfg-restore flash golden_config force
Device may be rebooted if the configuration file has reboot required or
system-wide change commands. Do you want to continue (y/n)?
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'golden_config'.
Continue (y/n)?
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily
disabled.

```

Successfully applied configuration 'golden\_config' to running configuration.

Rebooting switch...



In the preceding output, Command : console terminal none shows that cfg-restore failed because a reboot is required.

After the switch reboots and comes up, the golden\_config becomes the active configuration.



**NOTE:** In case of a switch reboot, the switch comes up with the configuration associated with the primary or secondary.

```
id | act pri sec | name
---+-----+-----
 1 |      *   *   | config
 2 |      *   *   | def
 3 | *          | golden_config
 4 |          |
 5 |          |

switch# show cfg-restore status
Status                : Success
Config File Name      : default
Source                : Flash
Time Taken             : 1 Seconds
Last Run              : Mon Oct 23 07:17:03 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 5

Time Taken for Each Phase :

    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands      : 0 Seconds
```



**NOTE:** Time taken for adding and deleting commands is zero, as the switch reboots. It is similar to downloading a startup-configuration to the device.

## cfg-restore non-blocking

### Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> non-blocking
```

### Description

Performs restore in non-blocking mode.

### Command context

config

### Example

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash add non-blocking
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'add'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.
switch(config)#
```

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status                : Success
Config File Name      : add
Source                : Flash
Time Taken            : 2 Seconds
Last Run              : Sun Oct 22 22:09:02 2017

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

Number of Add Commands : 7
Number of Remove Commands : 10

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds

```

## cfg-restore recovery-mode

### Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> recovery-mode {enable | disable}
```

### Description

Restores the current running configuration, if a restore to the backup configuration fails. By default, recovery-mode is enabled.

### Command context

config

### Usage

To disable recovery mode, use `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> recovery-mode disable`.

### Example

With the following running configuration, a restore to the backup file `modify` fails, but this configuration will be retained as recovery mode is enabled.

```

switch(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 10
    name "VLAN10"
    no ip address
    exit

```

```

switch(config)# show config modify
; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
ip default-gateway 172.20.0.1
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    no ip address
    exit

```

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'modify'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.

```

```

Configuration restore to config 'modify' failed, restored source
configuration to running configuration.

```

```

switch(config)# show running-config

```

Running configuration:

```

; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 10
    name "VLAN10"
    no ip address
    exit

```

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify recovery-mode disable
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'modify'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are
temporarily disabled.

```

```

Partially applied configuration 'modify' to running configuration.
switch(config)# show running-config

```

Running configuration:

```

; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"

```

```

    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    no ip address
    exit

```

## cfg-restore verbose

### Syntax

```
cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> verbose
```

### Description

Provides the details of configuration restore status and the list of commands to be added or deleted along with `cfg-restore`.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Examples

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash config verbose
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'config'.
Continue (y/n)? y

```

Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled.

Configuration Restore Information:

```

Status                : Success
Config File Name      : config
Source                : Flash
Time Taken            : 6 Seconds
Last Run              : Tue Nov  7 03:43:07 2017

```

```

Recovery Mode         : Enabled
Failure Reason        : -

```

```

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 12

```

```

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 2 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds

```

Configuration delete list:

```

vlan 2
    name "VLAN2"
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 3
    name "VLAN3"
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 4
    name "VLAN4"
    no ip address

```

```

exit
vlan 5
  name "VLAN5"
  no ip address
exit

```

Successfully applied configuration 'config' to running configuration.

## cfg-restore config\_bkp

### Syntax

```
cfg-restore {tftp <ip-address> | sftp <ip-address>} config_bkp
```

### Description

Downloads and restores a configuration from the TFTP or SFTP server, without rebooting the switch.



**NOTE:** The commands from the restored configuration will be executed on the running configuration. The name of the current active configuration will not change after a configuration restore.

### Command context

config

### Example

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore tftp
HOSTNAME-STR      Specify hostname of TFTP Server.
IP-ADDR           IP Address of the TFTP Server.
IPV6-ADDR         IPV6 Address of the TFTP Server.

switch(config)# cfg-restore sftp
HOSTNAME-STR      Specify hostname of the SFTP server.
IP-ADDR           IP Address of the SFTP Server.
IPV6-ADDR         IPV6 Address of the SFTP Server.
user              Specify username on the remote system information
USER@IP-STR       Specify username along with remote system
                  information

switch(config)# cfg-restore tftp 10.100.0.12 pvos/tftp_2930_config_file
Current running-configuration will be replaced with 'tftp_2930_config_file'.
Continue (y/n)? y
Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled.

Successfully applied configuration 'tftp_2930_config_file' to running configuration.

switch(config)# sh cfg-restore status
Status            : Success
Config File Name   : tftp_2930_config_file
Source            : TFTP
Time Taken        : 4 Seconds
Last Run          : Wed Nov  8 21:11:10 2017

Recovery Mode      : Enabled
Failure Reason     : -

Number of Add Commands : 4
Number of Remove Commands : 7

Time Taken for Each Phase :
  Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
  Adding commands       : 0 Seconds

```

```

Removing commands      : 0 Seconds

switch(config)# show config files

Configuration files:

id | act pri sec | name
---+-----+-----
 1 | *   *   *   | config
 2 |             |
 3 |             |
 4 |             |
 5 |             |

```

## Configuration restore with force option

### Prerequisites

Back up the configuration using traditional `copy config` or `cfg-backup` commands.

### Procedure

1. Execute the `show config files` command. By default, the `config` file provides all the associations.

```

switch(config)# show config files

Configuration files:

id | act pri sec | name
---+-----+-----
 1 | *   *   *   | config
 2 |             | file1
 3 |             | file2
 4 |             |
 5 |             |

```

2. Use `cfg-restore flash file1 force` command to see the configuration of file1.

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash file1 force
```

As the file1 configuration requires a reboot, a system reboot occurs. When the switch comes up, file1 is the new active configuration.

```

switch(config)# sh config files

Configuration files:

id | act pri sec | name
---+-----+-----
 1 |             | *   *   | config
 2 | *           |         | file1
 3 |             |         | file2
 4 |             |         |
 5 |             |         |

```



**NOTE:** During a configuration restore with reboot, the association changes. To make the configuration as a default configuration for subsequent system reboots, use `startup-default [<primary|secondary>] config FILENAME` command.

For `startup-default config file1`:

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1				config
2	*	*	*	file1
3				file2
4				
5				

## System reboot commands

Following commands require a system reboot:

- `secure-mode standard`
- `secure-mode enhanced`
- `mesh id [0-9]`
- `mesh [a-z | A-Z | 0-9]`
- `max-vlans <257-4094>`
- `no allow-v2-modules`
- `qinq (mixedvlan | svlan)`
- `qos queue-config`
- `terminal type (vt100 | ansi)`
- `console (flow-control | terminal)`
- `vsf member [0-9]`
- `vsf remove`
- `access-list grouping`
- `console baud-rate (speed-sense | 1200 | 2400 | 4800 | 9600 | 19200 | 38400 | 57600 | 115200)`

## Systemwide change commands

Following commands change the system configuration:

- `module [0-9 | a-z | A-Z]`
- `module [0-9 | a-z | A-Z] type <type>`
- `igmp lookup-mode ip`
- `flexible-module [a-z | A-Z] type <type>`
- `stacking member [0-9] flexible-module [a-z | A-Z] type <type>`

## Configuration restore without force option

If the two configuration files backed up are file1 and file2:

## Prerequisites

Backup the configuration using either the traditional `copy config` or the `cfg-backup` commands.

## Procedure

1. Execute the `show config files` command. By default, the `config` file provides all the associations.

```
switch(config)# show config files
```

Configuration files:

id	act	pri	sec	name
1	*	*	*	config
2				file1
3				file2
4				
5				

2. Use `cfg-restore flash file1` command to see the configuration of file1.

```
switch(config)# cfg-restore flash file1
```

Even after executing the previous command, associations will remain the same, but the running configuration is replaced by file1 configuration.



**NOTE:** In a configuration restore without reboot, the association remains the same. The default `config` file is updated based on the configuration of the restored file.

## show cfg-restore status

### Syntax

```
show cfg-restore status
```

### Description

Shows the status of latest restore performed. The running configuration is updated based on the configuration of the restored file.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Usage

```
show cfg-restore {status | latest-diff}
```

This command provides information on:

- how a restore is performed
- whether a flash file was used from SFTP or TFTP server
- the total time taken to restore
- the time when last restore was initiated
- whether a recovery-mode was enabled
- the number of add and delete commands



- reboot commands present (if any), and
- the split time taken for each phase

## Examples

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore
latest-diff          Shows the difference between running and back-up
                     configuration.
status              Show configuration restoration status.

switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status              : [Failed| In progress | Success | Not Started]
Config File name    : def
Source              : [-|Tftp|sftp|Flash|REST]
Time taken          : [-|20 Seconds.]
Last Run            : [-|Tue March 07 22:12:16 2017.]

Recovery Mode       : Enabled
Failure Reason      : -

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 3

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds
```

If the configuration restoration fails, the line number and the failed commands are displayed:

```
switch(config)# show cfg-restore status
Status              : Failed
Config File name    : def
Source              : Flash
Time taken          : 20 Seconds
Last Run            : Sun Oct 22 20:22:54 2017

Recovery Mode       : Enabled
Failure Reason      : Add commands have been failed

Number of Add Commands : 0
Number of Remove Commands : 3

Time Taken for Each Phase :
    Calculating diff      : 1 Seconds
    Adding commands       : 0 Seconds
    Removing commands     : 0 Seconds

Failed to remove commands:
    Line: 12 vlan 10
    Line: 15 no ipv6 nd snooping mac-check
Failed to add commands:
    Line: 10 icmp 10.100.0.12 source-inter vlan 1
    Line: 20 udp-echo 10.100.0.12 source vlan 1
```



**NOTE:** The number of add and delete commands is calculated excluding the `exit` commands in the configuration file.

## Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration

### Prerequisites

Use the `cfg-restore {flash | tftp | sftp} <FILE-NAME> diff` command to view the list of configuration changes that are removed, modified, or added to the running configuration.

### Procedure

1. Execute the `show running-config` command to show the running configuration of the switch.

```
switch(config)# show running-config

Running configuration:

; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    no untagged 11-13,15-18
    untagged 1-10,14,19-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    untagged 11-13
    no ip address
    exit
vlan 300
    name "VLAN300"
    untagged 15-18
    no ip address
    exit
```

2. Execute the `show config golden_config` command to show the backup configuration of the switch.

```
switch(config)# show config golden_config
; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
; JL255A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #12:08.1d.9b.3f.bf.bb.ef.7c.59.fc.6b.fb.9f.fc.ff.ff.37.ef:ba
hostname "switch"
module 1 type jl255a
```

3. Execute the `cfg-restore flash golden_config diff` command to view the differences that will be applied.

```
switch# cfg-restore flash golden_config diff

Configuration delete list:

vlan 1
    no untagged 11-13,15-18
    untagged 3-10
```

```

    exit
vlan 100
    untagged 11-13
    exit
vlan 300
    name "VLAN300"

    untagged 15-18
    no ip address
    exit

```

Configuration add list:

```

vlan 1
    no untagged 3-10
    untagged 11-13,15-18
    exit
vlan 100
    untagged 3-5
    exit
vlan 200
    name "VLAN200"
    untagged 6-10
    no ip address
    exit

```



**NOTE:** If the running and the backup configuration is the same, no difference will be displayed.

```

switch(config)# cfg-restore flash modify diff

Current config and backup config is identical.

```

4. Execute the `show cfg restore latest-diff` command to display the difference between the running and the backup configuration.

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore
latest-diff      Shows the difference between running and back-up
                  configuration.
status           Show configuration restoration status.

```

```

switch(config)# show cfg-restore latest-diff

```

Configuration delete list:

```

ip default-gateway 172.20.0.1
vlan 100
    name "VLAN100"
    no ip address
    exit

```

Configuration add list:

```

vlan 10
    name "VLAN10"
    no ip address
    exit

```

```

switch(config)#

```

# Show commands to show the SHA of a configuration

The `show` commands provide SHA details of the running and startup configurations.

## show hash

### Syntax

```
show {config | running-config} hash {recalculate}
```

### Description

Shows SHA ID of startup or running configuration.

### Command context

config

### Examples

```
switch# show config
config
files          List saved configuration files.
hash           Display the hash calculated for the startup
               configuration.
interface      Show the startup configuration for interfaces.
oobm           Show the startup configuration for OOBM.
```

To display the hash calculated for the startup configuration:

```
switch(config)# show config hash
The hash must be calculated.  This may take several minutes.

Continue (y/n)? y

Calculating hash...
Startup Configuration hash:

4f66 8b77 6b66 e5fb 0c12 f7fb 8ea6 b548 af2e 2e03

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).

switch(config)# show config hash
recalculate      Calculate hash (if needed) without prompting.

switch(config)# show config hash recalculate
Startup Configuration hash:

4f66 8b77 6b66 e5fb 0c12 f7fb 8ea6 b548 af2e 2e03

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).
```

To display the hash calculated for the running configuration:

```
switch(config)# show running-config hash
The hash must be calculated. This may take several minutes.

Continue (y/n)? y

Calculating hash...
Running configuration hash:

6d88 0880 98af e8a8 b564 15cd 368e 4269 9d61 4bfa

This hash is only valid for comparison to a baseline hash if
the configuration has not been explicitly changed (such as
with a CLI command) or implicitly changed (such as by the
removal of a hardware module).
```

## Scenarios that block the configuration restoration process

The configuration restoration process is blocked in the following scenarios:

- If the restored configuration file requires a reboot.
- If the restored configuration changes the entire configuration (for example, module add or remove).

### More information

[cfg-restore](#) on page 458

## Limitations

Switch configuration restore without reboot feature does not support the following scenarios:

- Removing a physically present member through `cfg-restore` command
- Flex-module provisioning or removal on standalone or a stack
- Module provisioning or removal on standalone or a stack
- Adding a VLAN when the VLAN limit is already reached by having dynamic VLANs. Due to timing issues, ports or dynamic VLANs take some time to become offline or be removed, even after applying a removal command. In such a case, restore commands fail as normal CLI commands.
- The maximum number of backup configuration files has been increased from three to five. When the firmware is downgraded to lower versions, the `show config files` command displays the details to only three configuration files.
- Restore is allowed based on the available system resource factors.

## Blocking of configuration from other sessions

All `write` operations are not allowed from other sessions (CLI/WebUI/SNMP/REST, and so on) during a configuration restoration process. Only `read` operation is allowed. Attempts to use `write` operation results in the Configuration restore is in progress, configuration changes are temporarily disabled error. The following `show` commands are blocked during a configuration restoration process:

- `show-tech`
- `show config`

- `show running-config`
- `show startup-config`

## Troubleshooting and support

Switch configuration restore without reboot feature provides CLI support to:

- display the number of commands with line number that failed to restore.
- display the delta between running configuration and the configuration to be restored.

### More information

[Viewing the differences between a running configuration and a backup configuration](#) on page 470  
[show cfg-restore status](#) on page 468

## debug cfg-restore

### Syntax

```
debug cfg-restore
```

### Description

Debug logs display the commands executed by `cfg-restore`.

### Command context

`config` and `manager`

### Example

```
switch(config)# debug cfg-restore
switch(config)# debug destination buffer
switch(config)# show debug buffer
0000:01:39:51.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore to config file "backup_conif"
    started.
0000:01:39:56.45 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore diff calculated, number of
    commands to add =0 number of commands to delete = 3.
0000:01:39:56.45 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore iteration count = 1.
0000:01:39:56.51 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 2 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.51 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 2 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 3 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.58 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 3 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.64 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command executed = no vlan 4 tagged 9,
    Status = Success.
0000:01:39:56.65 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Command deleted = vlan 4 tagged 9.
0000:01:39:56.65 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:cfg-restore iteration count = 2.
0000:01:39:59.38 CFG mCfgRestoreMgr:Successfully applied configuration
    'backup_conif' to running configuration.
** Total debug messages = 22
```

Virtual Technician is a set of tools aimed at aiding network switch administrators in diagnosing and caring for their networks. VT provides tools for switch diagnoses when faced with unforeseen issues.

To improve the Virtual Technician features of our devices have added the following tools:

- Cisco Discovery Protocol
- Enabling Debug tracing for MOCANA code
- User diagnostic crash via front panel security button
- User diagnostic crash via the serial console

## Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)

### Show cdp traffic

#### Syntax

```
show cdp traffic
```

#### Description

Displays the number of Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) packets transmitted, received and dropped.

#### CDP frame Statistics

Port No	Transmitted Frames	Received Frames	Discarded Frames	Error Frames
A1	46	26	6	7
A2	30	35	7	9
A3	120	420	670	670

### Clear cdp counters

#### Syntax

```
clear cdp counters
```

#### Description

Allows a user to clear CDP statistics.

#### Clear cdp counters

Port No	Transmitted Frames	Received Frames	Discarded Frames	Error Frames
A1	46	26	6	7

A2	30	35	7	9
A3	120	420	670	670

## Enable/Disable debug tracing for MOCANA code

### Debug security

#### Syntax

```
debug security ssl
```

#### Description

Enables the debug tracing for MOCANA code.

Use the no parameter to disable debug tracing.

#### ssl

Display all SSL messages.

## User diagnostic crash via Front Panel Security (FPS) button

Allows the switch's front panel **Clear** button to manually initiate a diagnostic reset. In the case of an application hang, this feature allows you to perform reliable diagnostics by debugging via the front panel **Clear** button. Diagnostic reset is controlled via Front Panel Security (FPS) options.

### Front panel security password-clear

From the configure context:

#### Syntax

```
no front-panel-security password-clear <RESET-ON-CLEAR> | factory-reset | password-recovery | diagnostic-reset <CLEAR-BUTTON | SERIAL-CONSOLE>
```

#### Description

Enable the ability to clear the password(s) and/or configuration via the front panel buttons.

no disables the password clear option.

#### Parameters

- If `password-clear` is disabled, the password(s) cannot be reset using the clear button on the front panel of the device.
- If `factory-reset` is disabled, the configuration/password(s) can not be reset using the clear and reset button combination at boot time.
- When `password-recovery` is enabled (and the front panel buttons disabled), a lost password can be recovered by contacting customer support.
- When `password-recovery` is disabled, there is no way to access a device after losing a password with the front panel buttons disabled.



- If `diagnostic-reset` is disabled, the user cannot perform a diagnostic switch reset on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reason(s).
- If `diagnostic-reset` is enabled, the user can perform a diagnostic hard reset which will capture valuable diagnostic data and reset the switch.

## Parameters

### factory-reset

Enable/Disable factory-reset ability.

### password-clear

Enable/Disable password clear.

### password-recovery

Enable/Disable password recovery.

### diagnostic-reset

Enable/Disable diagnostic reset.

## Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset

From the configure context:

### Syntax

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset <CLEAR-BUTTON | SERIAL-CONSOLE>
```

### Description

Enables the diagnostic reset so that the switch can capture diagnostic data.

- To initiate diagnostic reset via the clear button, press the clear button for at least 30 seconds but not more than 40 seconds.
- To initiate diagnostic switch reset via the serial console, enter the diagnostic reset sequence on the serial console.

## Parameters

### Clear button

Enables the diagnostics by choosing the clear button option.

### Serial console

Enables the diagnostics by choosing the serial console option.

## no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset

From the configure context:

### Syntax

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset
```

### Description

Disables the diagnostic reset feature so that the user is prevented from capturing diagnostic data and performing a diagnostic reset on the switch. Both the sub-options `reset-via-serial-console` and `reset-via-clear-button` will be disabled. This is necessary if the switch becomes unresponsive (hangs) for unknown reasons.

## No front-panel-security diagnostic-reset

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset
```

Clear Password	- Enabled
Reset-on-clear	- Disabled
Factory Reset	- Enabled
Password Recovery	- Enabled
Diagnostic Reset	- Disabled



### CAUTION:

Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

## Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button

From the configure context:

### Syntax

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button
```

### Description

This command will enable diagnostic-reset via clear button. The user will be allowed to perform diagnostic reset by depressing the clear button for 30 seconds and not more than 40 seconds.

## Front-panel-security diagnostic-rest clear-button

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-rest clear-button
```

Diagnostic Reset	- Enabled
clear-button	- Enabled
serial-console	-Disabled



### CAUTION:

Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

## no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button

From the configure context:

### Syntax

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset clear-button
```

### Description

Disables the diagnostic-reset via clear button.

**CAUTION:**

Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

## Show front-panel-security

### Syntax

```
show front-panel-security
```

### Parameters

#### Show front-panel-security

```
Clear Password      - Enabled
Reset -on-clear     - Disabled
Factory Reset       - Enabled
Password Recovery   - Enabled
Diagnostic Reset     - Enabled
```





**NOTE:** By default, user initiated diagnostic reset is enabled.

## Diagnostic table

To accomplish this	Do this	Result
Soft Reset (Standalone switch)	Press and release the Reset button	The switch operating system is cleared gracefully (such as data transfer completion, temporary error conditions are cleared), then reboots and runs self tests.
Hard Reset (Standalone switch)	Press and hold the Reset button for more than 5 seconds (until all LEDs turn on), then release.	The switch reboots, similar to a power cycle. A hard reset is used, for example, when the switch CPU is in an unknown state or not responding.
Soft Reset (Stacked switch)	Press and release the Reset button	Same as a standalone switch, except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the Commander, the Standby switch will become Commander.</li><li>• If the Standby, a new Standby will be elected.</li></ul>

*Table Continued*

To accomplish this	Do this	Result
Hard Reset (Stacked switch)	Press and hold the Reset button for more than 5 seconds (until all LEDs turn on), then release.	Same as a standalone switch, except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Commander, the Standby switch will become Commander.</li> <li>• If the Standby, a new Standby will be elected.</li> </ul>
Delete console and management access passwords	Press Clear for at least one second, but not longer than 5 seconds.	The switch deletes all access password.
Restore the factory default configuration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press Clear and Reset simultaneously.</li> <li>2. While continuing to press Clear, release Reset.</li> <li>3. When the Test LED begins blinking (after approximately 25 seconds), release Clear.</li> </ol>	The switch removes all configuration changes, restores the factory default configuration, and runs self test.
Diagnostic reset	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press Clear to 30–40 seconds.</li> <li>2. When the test LED begins blinking (approximately after 30 seconds), release Clear.</li> </ol> <div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> Releasing the Clear button when TEST LED is not blinking (approximately after 40 seconds ) will not honor the diagnostic reset request.</p> </div>	This initiates diagnostic reset, collects diagnostic information, and reboots the switch.
<div>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> These buttons are provided for the user's convenience. If switch security is a concern, ensure that the switch is installed in a secure location, such as a locked writing closet. To disable the buttons, use the <code>front-panel-security</code> command.</p> </div>		

## FPS Error Log

Event	Message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.  On detection on local serial
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.  On detection on SMM serial console and signaled to AMM
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.  On detection on non-commander serial console and signaled to commander
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.  Sw_panic() message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.  Sw_panic() message when triggered via SMM
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.  Sw_panic() message when triggered via non-commander

*Table Continued*

Event	Message
Console print	<p>STKM: HA Sync in progress; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.</p> <p>Printed on the device console. When standby is in sync state, we don't want to crash the commander. So we report to the user to retry later</p>
Console print	<p>STKM: Member is booting; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.</p> <p>Printed on the device console. When the member is till booting, it doesn't have the commander member number, thus we can't issue UIDC on the commander. So we report to the user to retry later.</p>

## User initiated diagnostic crash via the serial console

Remotely triggers a diagnostic reset of the switch via a serial console. This reset reboots the switch and collects diagnostic data for debugging an application hang, a system hang or any other rare occurrence. Diagnostic reset is controlled via FPS options.

The serial sequence to initiate the User Initiated Diagnostic Reset via Serial console is Ctrl+S, Ctrl+T, Ctrl+Q, Ctrl+T, Ctrl+S.

## Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

In the configure context:

### Syntax

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

Enables the diagnostic-reset via serial console. Allows the user to perform diagnostic reset by keying-in diagnostic reset sequence.

### Front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

```
front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

```
Diagnostic Reset      - Enabled
clear-button         - Disabled
serial-console       - Enabled
```

## no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console

In the configure context:

### Syntax

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

## Description

Disables the diagnostic-reset via serial console.

**No front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console**

```
no front-panel-security diagnostic-reset serial-console
```

Diagnostic Reset - Disabled



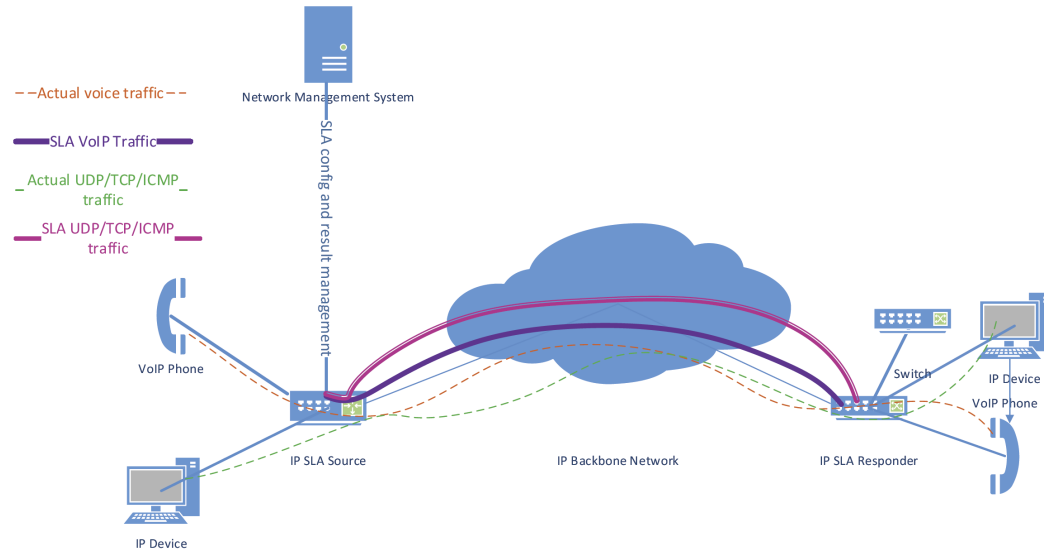
**CAUTION:** Disabling the diagnostic reset prevents the switch from capturing diagnostic data on those rare events where the switch becomes unresponsive to user input because of unknown reasons. Ensure that you are familiar with the front panel security options before proceeding.

## Serial console error messages

Error	Message
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: Diagnostic reset sequence detected on serial console; user has initiated diagnostic reset.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	SMM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
RMON_BOOT_CRASH_RECORD1	STKM: User has initiated diagnostic reset via the serial console.
Console print	STKM: HA Sync in progress; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.
Console print	STKM: Member is booting; user initiated diagnostic request via the serial console rejected. Retry after sometime.

### Overview

IP Service Level Agreement (IP SLA) is a feature that helps administrators collect information about network performance in real time. With increasing pressure on maintaining agreed-upon Service Level Agreements on Enterprises and ISPs alike, IP SLA serves as a useful tool.



Any IP SLA test involves a source node and a destination node. For all discussions in this document, the source is always an ArubaOS-switch with IP SLA support. As shown in the diagram above, a destination can, in most cases, be any IP-enabled device. For some SLA types that expect a nonstandard response to a test packet, an “SLA responder” must be configured. An “SLA responder” is nothing but an ArubaOS-switch with IP SLA configurations on it that enable it to respond to the test packet.

The IP SLA feature provides:

- Application-aware monitoring that simulates actual protocol packets.
- Predictable measures that aid in ease of deployment and help with assessment of existing network performance.
- Accurate measures of delay and packet loss for time-sensitive applications.
- End-to-end measurements to represent actual user experience.

We support the following SLA types:

- UDP Echo, including connectivity testing of transport layer (UDP) services, Round-Trip-Time (RTT) measurement, one-way delay, and packet loss details.
- ICMP Echo, including connectivity testing, RTT measurement, and packet loss details.
- TCP Connect, including connectivity testing of transport layer (TCP) services, and handshake time measurement.
- DHCP, which measures the round-trip time taken to discover a DHCP Server and obtain a leased IP address from it.



- DNS, which measures the time taken for a DNS resolution. This measures the difference between the time taken to send a request to the DNS server and the time the IP SLA source receives a reply.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) Jitter, which measures RTT, one way jitter and one way delays.
- UDP Jitter for VoIP, which measures RTT, one way jitter, one way delays, ICPIF (Impairment Calculated Planning Impairment Factor) and MOS (Mean Opinion Score).

Limitations for IPSLA support on Aruba switches:

- IP SLA is not enabled for IPv6.
- DHCP SLA supports DHCPv4 only.
- IP SLA tests cannot be initiated over OOBM interfaces.
- History results for the configured IP SLAs will not be available after a switchover or a reboot.
- Maximum number of IP SLAs that can be configured varies based on the type of SLA test.
- When there are multiple IP SLAs configured with destination as hostname, the DNS resolution happens serially. There can be a delay in sending the test probe (which will be sent only after successful DNS resolution).
- For TCP Connect SLA type, the four-tuple (source IP/port, destination IP/port) must be unique.
- System clocks between the source and the responder must be synchronized with NTP if One Way Delay parameters have to be calculated for UDP Echo tests.
- Timeout for probes is 3 seconds for all SLA types and is not configurable.
- Transient spikes in RTT occur during the tests (in the source and the responder) if processor usage is high. Consider average result values over a period of time rather than point-in-time results. This is not applicable for UDP Jitter nor Jitter for VoIP.

Entity	Limit
Maximum number of SLAs enabled.	50
Maximum history bucket size per SLA. <sup>1</sup>	50
Number of responders that can be configured.	10

<sup>1</sup> Not applicable for UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP.

The following are operational restrictions with respect to IP SLA jitter implementation:

- Feature is supported only on v3-based platforms.
- No history results are stored.
- IPSLA Jitter and Jitter for VoIP initiator and responder is only supported on 5400R with v3 modules (noncompatibility mode), 3810, and 2930F switches.
- The maximum number of Jitter responder sessions (UDP Jitter + Jitter For VoIP) supported is 10. The maximum number of Jitter initiator sessions (UDP Jitter + Jitter For VoIP) supported is 5.

- IMC (Intelligent Management Center) supports below IP SLA:
  - DHCP
- Measurement of RTT and jitter values is in milliseconds.
- IPv6 SLA for UDP jitter and VoIP is not supported.
- UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP tests are not supported over Tunnel, Trunk, and OOBM interfaces.
- UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP results are not carried forward across failover or a device reboot.
- History bucket size cannot be configured for UDP jitter and VoIP tests. Results are aggregated for the last 25 probes.
- System clocks between the source and the responder must be synchronized with NTP if One Way Delay parameters have to be calculated for UDP Jitter & UDP Jitter for VoIP tests.
- The UDP jitter and UDP jitter for VoIP feature on ArubaOS-Switch has the following limited interoperability with Comware 7 SLA v2 version:
  - One Way packet drops (SD packet loss and DS packet loss) on the Comware Jitter initiator is not reported when interoperating with Aruba Jitter Responder.
- IP SLA responder or initiator implementation is not interoperable with Cisco's IP SLA feature.

## How IP SLA works

1. The source originates a test packet to the destination.
2. The destination responds to the test packet, at times embedding the needed information in the response packet.
3. Upon receiving the response, the source calculates the test results based on the timestamp, other packet parameters, and so on.
4. The source stores the results and updates the history records for the SLA.
5. The source reschedules the SLA for the next run.



**NOTE:** For one-way delay calculations, the IP SLA sender and IP SLA responder must be NTP Time Synchronized.

## Configuration commands

### no ip-sla <ID>

#### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID>
```

#### Description

Configure the IP Service Level Agreement (SLA) parameters. The value of ID can range from 1-255.

#### Parameters

##### clear

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of particular SLA entry.

**dhcp**

Configure DHCP as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**disable**

Disable the IP SLA.

**dns**

Configure DNS as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**enable**

Enable the IP SLA.

**history-size**

Configure the number of history records to be stored for the IP SLA.

**icmp-echo**

Configure ICMP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**monitor**

Configure monitoring parameters and respective threshold-action values.

**schedule**

Configure the start time, stop time, lifetime, and frequency of run for the IP SLA.

**tcp-connect**

Configure TCP connect as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**tos**

Configure the Type of Service value to be set in the test packet for the IP SLA.

**udp-echo**

Configure UDP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism.

On platforms that support Jitter and VOIP, the following options are also provided:

**udp-jitter**

Configure UDP jitter as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**udp-jitter-voip**

Configure UDP jitter for VoIP as the IP SLA test mechanism.

**ip-sla <ID> clear****Syntax**

```
ip-sla <ID> clear
```

**Description**

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of a particular SLA entry.

**Parameters****records**

Clear history records, message statistics, and threshold counters of particular SLA entry.

## no ip-sla <ID> history-size

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> history-size
```

### Description

Configure the number of history records to be stored for the IP SLA. The maximum supported size is 50 and the default value for history-size is 25.

## no ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> icmp-echo [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] [source <IP-ADDR>  
| source-interface vlan <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE>]
```

### Description

Configure ICMP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/vlan id for the IP SLA of ICMP-Echo SLA type.

### payload-size

: Value can range from 1-1440. By default, payload-size is not set.

## no ip-sla <ID> udp-echo

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> udp-echo [destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>]  
<PORT-NUM>] [source <IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE>]
```

### Description

Configure UDP echo as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/VLAN ID for the IP SLA of UDP-Echo SLA type.

- **PORT-NUM:** Value can range from 1024–65535.
- **payload-size:** Value can range from 1-1440. By default, payload-size is not set.

## no ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> tcp-connect [destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>]  
<PORT-NUM>] [source [<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] <PORT-NUM>]
```

### Description

Configure TCP connect as the IP SLA test mechanism. Requires destination address/hostname and source address/VLAN ID for the IP SLA of TCP connect SLA type. The value of PORT-NUM can range from 1024-65535.

## ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config

### Syntax

```
ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config [rtt | srcTodstTime | dstToSrcTime]
threshold-type [immediate | consecutive <COUNT>] threshold-value <UPPER-LIMIT>
<LOWER-LIMIT> action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]

no ip-sla <ID> monitor threshold-config [rtt | srcTodstTime | dstToSrcTime]
threshold-type [immediate | consecutive <COUNT>] threshold-value <UPPER-LIMIT>
<LOWER-LIMIT> action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

### Description

Set upper and lower threshold parameters.

### Parameters

- **threshold-type immediate:** Take action immediately when the monitored parameters cross the threshold upper limit (subsequent notifications for upper thresholds are not generated until the parameter values go lower than the configured lower threshold value).
- **threshold-type consecutive:** Take action after threshold is hit consecutively for number of times.
- **action-type:** Describes action to be taken when the upper threshold is crossed.
- **trap:** Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log:** Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log:** Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none:** Take no action.



**NOTE:** The command option threshold-config can be individually set for rtt, srcTodstTime, and dstToSrcTime.

---

## no ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> monitor packet-loss threshold-type [immediate | consecutive
<COUNT>] action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

### Description

Configure threshold-action values when packet loss happens.

- **threshold-type immediate:** Take action immediately when the monitored parameters cross the threshold upper limit (subsequent notifications for upper thresholds are not generated until the parameter values go lower than the configured lower threshold value).
- **threshold-type consecutive:** Take action after threshold is hit consecutively for number of times.
- **action-type:** Describes action to be taken when the upper threshold is crossed.
- **trap:** Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log:** Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log:** Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none:** Take no action.

## no ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> monitor test-completion action-type [trap | log | trap-log | none]
```

### Description

Configure action to be taken when test gets completed.

- **trap**: Send snmp-trap when configured threshold is hit.
- **log**: Only log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **trap-log**: Send snmp-trap and log the event when configured threshold is hit.
- **none**: Take no action.

## no ip-sla <ID> schedule

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> schedule [[now | startTime <START-TIME>] [forever | stopTime <STOP-TIME>]  
| repetitions <NUM>] [frequency <FREQUENCY>]
```

### Description

Configure the start time, stop time, lifetime, and frequency of run for the IP SLA. The default value for the frequency of operation is 60 seconds.

## no ip-sla <ID> tos

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> tos <VALUE>
```

### Description

Configure the Type of Service value to be set in the test packet for the IP SLA.

**Valid values:** 0–255

## no ip-sla responder

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla responder
```

### Description

Configure SLA responder to respond to probe packets.

- **IP address**: local interface IP address
- **port**: takes L4 port numbers.
- **SLA types supported**: udp-echo, tcp-connect, UDP Jitter & Jitter For VoIP.

## no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM> source  
[<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [payload-size <SIZE> num-of-packets <NUM> packet-interval  
<PKT-INTERVAL>]
```

## Description

Configures the UDP Jitter test.

- **Payload-size:** Payload size of the test packet. Value can range from 68-8100. Default value is 68.
- **Num-of-packets:** Number of packets sent in one probe. Default is 10. Allowed range: 10-1000.
- **Packet-interval:** Inter packet gap in milliseconds. Time between consecutive packets within a probe. Default is 20ms. Allowed range: 10-60000

## no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip

### Syntax

```
no ip-sla <ID> udp-jitter-voip destination [<IP-ADDR> | <HOST-NAME>] <PORT-NUM>  
source [<IP-ADDR> | <VLAN-ID>] [codec-type <CODEC-TYPE> advantage-factor <ADV-  
FACTOR>]
```

### Description

Configures the UDP Jitter for VoIP test.

- **Codec-type:** Codec to be used to encode the test VoIP packets. Available codecs: g711a, g711u, g729a. Default is g711a.
- **Advantage-factor:** Advantage factor to be configured for the test. Default is 0. Allowed range: 0-20.

## Show commands

### show ip-sla <ID>

#### Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID>
```

#### Description

Show IP SLA configurations.

#### Parameters

##### history

Show the IP SLA results history.

##### message-statistics

Show the IP SLA message statistics.

##### results

Show the IP SLA results for UDP Jitter and UDP Jitter VoIP.

##### aggregated-results

Show the IP SLA aggregated results for UDP Jitter and UDP Jitter VOIP.

### show ip-sla <ID>

```
SLA ID: 1  
Status: [Enabled | Admin-disabled | Scheduled | Expired | Running]  
  
SLA Type: [ICMP-echo | tcp-connect | UDP-echo | DHCP | DNS | udp-jitter | voip]
```

```

Destination Hostname: www.arubanetworks.com
Destination Address : 20.0.0.2
Source Address      : 20.0.0.1
History Bucket Size : 5
TOS: 32
Schedule:
    Frequency (seconds) : 60
    Life                : [Forever | 144 seconds]
    Start Time          : Tue Oct 27 22:12:16 2015
    Next Scheduled Run Time : Tue Oct 27 22:43:16 2015

Threshold-Monitor is : Enabled
    Threshold Config: RTT
    Threshold Type  : immediate
    Upper Threshold : 500 ms
    Lower Threshold : 100 ms
    Action Type     : Trap and Log

    Threshold Config: packet-loss
    Threshold Type  : consecutive (5)
    Action Type     : Trap

    Threshold Config: test-completion
    Action Type     : None

```

## show ip-sla <ID> history

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> history
```

### Description

Show the IP SLA results history.

### show ip-sla <ID> history

```

SLA ID : 1

SLA Type : UDP-Echo

Minimum RTT (ms)      : 1
Maximum RTT (ms)      : 4294967282
Average RTT (ms)      : 3
Total RTT (ms)        : 315
RTT2 (sum of RTT squared): 63681

Start Time           Status  RTT      Description
-----
Mon Jan 1 00:51:28 1990 Failed -      DMA tail drop detected.
Mon Jan 1 00:51:30 1990 Failed -      SLA disabled before probe response arrived.

```

## show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics
```

### Description

Show the IP SLA message statistics.



## show ip-sla <ID> message-statistics

```
SLA ID : 1
Status : Running
SLA Type : UDP-Echo
Destination Address : 10.0.0.2
Source Address : 10.0.0.1
Destination Port : 2000
History Bucket Size : 25
Payload Size : 500
TOS : 0
Messages:
Destination Address Unreachable : 0
Probes Skipped Awaiting DNS Resolution : 0
DNS Resolution Failed : 0
No Route to Target : 0
Internal Error : 0
Local Interface is Down : 0
No Response from Target : 0
Successful Probes Sent : 3
Probe Response received : 3
Possibly Tail Dropped : 0
```

## show ip-sla <ID> results

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> results
```

### Description

Shows the results for the last IPSLA UDP Jitter or UDP Jitter for VoIP test. Note this command is not valid for any other SLA type.

## Switch (config)# sh ip-sla 1 results

```
Test Results for SLA ID: 1
Probe Id           : 10
SLA Type           : UDP-Jitter
Destination IP Address : 10.2.2.2
Destination Port     : 4444
Source IP Address    : 10.2.2.2
Source Port         : 5555

Number of Packets Sent           : 10
Number of Packets Received       : 10
Minimum Round Trip Time         : 15
Maximum Round Trip Time         : 32
Average Round Trip Time         : 17
Square-Sum of Round Trip Time   : 3235
Last Succeeded Probe Time       : 2008-05-29 13:56:17.6

Extended Results:
Packet Loss in Test             : 0%

UDP-Jitter Results:
RTT Number                     : 10
Min Positive SD                 : 4           Min Positive DS           : 1
Max Positive SD                 : 21          Max Positive DS           : 28
```

Positive SD Number	: 5	Positive DS Number	: 4
Positive SD Sum	: 52	Positive DS Sum	: 38
Positive SD Average	: 10	Positive DS Average	: 10
Positive SD Square Sum	: 754	Positive DS Square Sum	: 460
Min Negative SD	: 1	Min Negative DS	: 6
Max Negative SD	: 13	Max Negative DS	: 22
Negative SD Number	: 4	Negative DS Number	: 5
Negative SD Sum	: 38	Negative DS Sum	: 52
Negative SD Average	: 10	Negative DS Average	: 10
Negative SD Square Sum	: 460	Negative DS Square Sum	: 754

#### One-way Results:

Max SD Delay	: 15	Max DS Delay	: 16
Min SD Delay	: 7	Min DS Delay	: 7
Number of SD Delays	: 10	Number of DS Delay s	: 10
Sum of SD Delays	: 78	Sum of DS Delays	: 85
Square Sum of SD Delays	: 666	Square Sum of DS Delays	: 787

For UDP Jitter for VoIP SLA, the following parameters are additionally shown:

#### Voice Scores:

ICPIF	: 4
MOS	: 4.38

## show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla <ID> aggregated-results
```

### Description

Shows the aggregated results for the last 25 probes conducted for an IPSLA UDP Jitter or UDP Jitter For VoIP SLA test. Note this command is not valid for any other SLA type.

### Switch (config)# show ip-sla 1 aggregated-results

```
Test results for SLA ID: 1
SLA Type           : UDP-Jitter
Destination IP Address : 10.2.2.2
Destination Port      : 4444
Source IP Address     : 10.2.2.2
Source Port           : 5555
First Probe Start Time : 2008-05-29 13:56:17.6
```

```
Number of Packets Sent       : 10
Number of Packets Received   : 10
Minimum Round Trip Time     : 15
Maximum Round Trip Time     : 32
Average Round Trip Time     : 17
Square-Sum of Round Trip Time : 3235
```

#### Aggregated Results for the Last 25 Probes

#### Extended Results:

```
Packet Loss in Test : 0%
Probe Failure Reason :
```

#### UDP-Jitter Results:

RTT Number	: 10		
Min Positive SD	: 4	Min Positive DS	: 1
Max Positive SD	: 21	Max Positive DS	: 28

Positive SD Number	: 5	Positive DS Number	: 4
Positive SD Sum	: 52	Positive DS Sum	: 38
Positive SD Average	: 10	Positive DS Average	: 10
Positive SD Square Sum	: 754	Positive DS Square Sum	: 460
Min Negative SD	: 1	Min Negative DS	: 6
Max Negative SD	: 13	Max Negative DS	: 22
Negative SD Number	: 4	Negative DS Number	: 5
Negative SD Sum	: 38	Negative DS Sum	: 52
Negative SD Average	: 10	Negative DS Average	: 10
Negative SD Square Sum	: 460	Negative DS Square Sum	: 754

#### One-way Results:

Max SD Delay	: 15	Max DS Delay	: 16
Min SD Delay	: 7	Min DS Delay	: 7
Number of SD Delays	: 10	Number of DS Delay s	: 10
Sum of SD Delays	: 78	Sum of DS Delays	: 85
Square Sum of SD Delays	: 666	Square Sum of DS Delays	: 787

For UDP Jitter for VoIP SLA, the following parameters are additionally shown:

#### Voice Scores:

Max MOS Value	: 4.38	Min MOS Value	: 4.38
Max ICPIF Value	: 0	Min ICPIF Value	: 0

## show ip-sla responder

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla responder
```

### Description

Show the IP SLA responder details.

### show ip-sla responder

```
SLA type      : UDP-echo
Listening Address: 1.1.1.1
Listening Port  : 5555
```

## show ip-sla responder statistics

### Syntax

```
show ip-sla responder statistics
```

### Description

Show the IP SLA responder statistics details.

### Parameters

#### udp-jitter

Show the IP SLA responder statistics for UDP Jitter SLA type.

#### udp-jitter-voip

Show the IP SLA responder statistics for UDP Jitter VoIP SLA type.

## show ip-sla responder statistics

```
IP SLA Responder : Active
Number of packets received      : 31
Number of error packets received : 0
Number of packets sent          : 0

Recent Sources :
 10.12.80.100 [07:23:49.085 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] UDP
 10.12.80.100 [07:22:49.003 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
 10.12.80.100 [07:20:48.717 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
 10.12.80.100 [07:18:48.787 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
 10.12.80.100 [07:17:48.871 UTC Sun Oct 25 2015] TCP
```

## show tech ip-sla

### Syntax

```
show tech ip-sla
```

### Description

Display output of a predefined command sequence used by technical support.

## show tech ip-sla

```
switch# sh tech ip-sla

ipslaShowTech

===== IP SLA show tech BEGIN =====

GLOBALS:
Hash Handle:                1e7bab20
Struct Mem Handle for hash: 1e7ba2a8
Struct Mem Handle for SLA ID LL: 1e7c9430
Struct Mem Handle for FD List: 1e7bd690
FastLog Handle:             dfabf5c
IPSLA Ctrl task ID:         1068091456
IPSLA Sender ID:            1068092544
IPSLA Listener ID:          1068091840
Number of enabled SLA's:    1
SLA ID List Handle:         1ec1ffd4
FD ID List Handle:          0
Ring Full Counter:          0

Details for SLA ID: 1

SLA ID: 1
Status: Running

SLA mechanism: ICMP-Echo

Destination address: 192.168.1.2
Source address: 192.168.1.1
History bucket size: 25
Payload size: 0
TOS: 0
```

Schedule:  
Frequency (seconds) : 60  
Life : Forever  
Start Time : Mon Jun 13 10:42:52 2016  
Next Scheduled Run Time : Mon Jun 13 10:46:52 2016

Threshold-Monitor is : Enabled  
Threshold Config : RTT  
Threshold Type : Immediate  
Upper Threshold : 10  
Lower Threshold : 2  
Action Type : Log

SLA ID: 1  
Status: Running

SLA mechanism: ICMP-Echo

Destination address: 192.168.1.2  
Source address: 192.168.1.1  
History bucket size: 25  
Payload size: 0  
TOS: 0

Messages:  
Destination address unreachable : 0  
Probes skipped awaiting DNS resolution : 0  
DNS resolution failed : 0  
No route to target : 0  
Internal error : 0  
Local interface is down : 0  
No response from target : 0  
Successful probes sent : 9  
Probe response received : 9  
Possibly tail dropped : 0

Count of Threshold hits:  
RTT : 0  
packetLoss : 0

SLA ID: 1

Minimum RTT (ms) : 1  
Maximum RTT (ms) : 1  
Average RTT (ms) : 1  
Total RTT (ms) : 9  
RTT2 (sum of RTT squared): 9

Start Time	Status	RTT	Description
-----	-----	---	-----
Tue Jun 14 10:43:12 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:39:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:40:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:41:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:42:05 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:42:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:43:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:44:52 2016	Passed	1	
Mon Jun 13 10:45:52 2016	Passed	1	

ICMP ID hash walk:

```
===== IP SLA show tech END =====

===== IP SLA Server show tech BEGIN =====
Responder not active
IP SLA Responder: Inactive

===== IP SLA Server show tech END =====

=== The command has completed successfully. ===
```

## clear ip-sla responder statistics

### Syntax

```
clear ip-sla responder statistics <SLA-TYPE> <LOCAL-IP-ADDR> <LOCAL-PORT-NUM>
                               source <SOURCE-IP-ADDR>
```

### Description

Clear IP SLA responder statistics for either UDP jitter or VoIP UDP jitter.

### Command context

config

### Parameters

#### <SLA-TYPE>

Specifies the SLA type.

**udp-jitter**

Selects standard UDP jitter.

**udp-jitter-voip**

Selects UDP VOIP jitter.

#### <LOCAL-IP-ADDR>

Specifies the local interface IP address

#### <LOCAL-PORT-NUM>

Specifies the local interface port number. Range: 1024 to 65535.

#### <SOURCE-IP-ADDR>

Specifies the Source IP address.

### Examples

Clear IP SLA responder statistics for UDP jitter:

```
switch(config)# clear ip-sla responder statistics udp-jitter 1.1.1.1 1100 source 1.1.1.2
```

## Interoperability

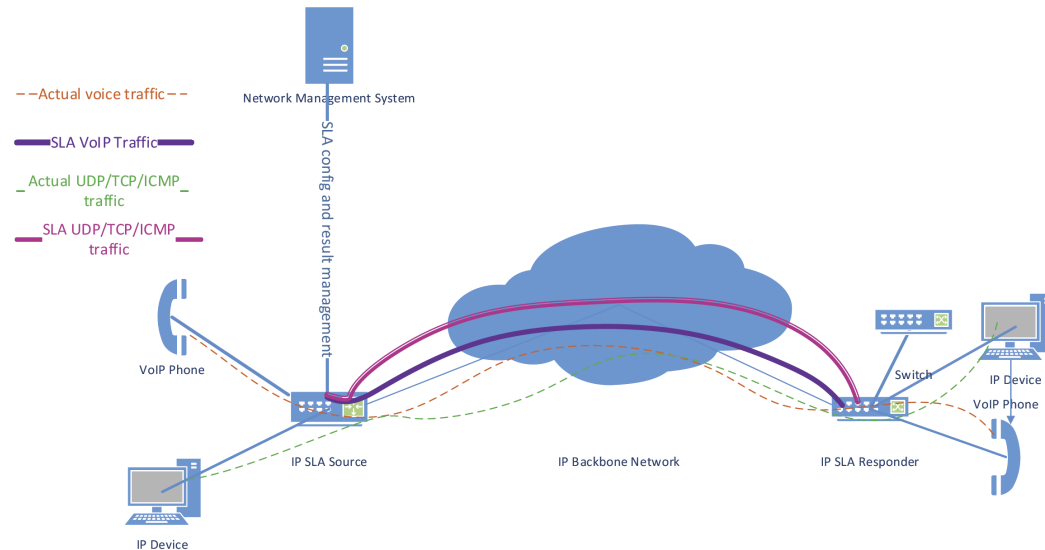


**NOTE:** Packet loss is expected when H3C TCP-CONNECT source, with a frequency less than or equal to 10 ms, interoperates with TCP-CONNECT responder.

# IP SLA UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP

## Overview

The UDP Jitter and Jitter for VoIP SLA types enable the user to assess the suitability of the network for voice & video related traffic. These SLA's basically calculate parameters like RTT, one way delay, one way positive and negative Jitter etc.



The above diagram shows a typical deployment, where voice & video traffic are exchanged between branch offices of an enterprise over the backbone network. Assessment of the network readiness is always helpful for hosting such services. Parameters like RTT, Jitter and one way delay are a good indicator of network health which assist a network administrator to diagnose latency related issues in the network. VoIP traffic is generally sensitive to delays in the network.

Jitter stands for inter-packet delay variance. If the inter-packet delay increases between successive probe packets, jitter is said to be positive. If the inter-packet delay decreases, jitter is said to be negative. Positive jitter values are undesirable for a network as they indicate increased latencies. A value of 0 jitter is desirable.

## Significance of jitter

Consider a media player which plays video streams from a server. Assume that packets take 1 second in flight to reach the media player. This means the moment a user requests a video from the server, the very first packet will arrive after one second and successive packets will be sent immediately (ideally). In real world scenarios, intermediate node latencies, different return paths for different packets and network congestion can contribute to varying delays. To counter such effects, packets are buffered at the media player. The amount of packet buffering needed can be derived from the jitter values.



**NOTE:** The above analogy is applicable for other voice & video services and can be a good measure to assess the possibility for hosting a service on a network.

## Solution components

### IP SLA responder

This device receives IP SLA probe packets from a configured initiator, timestamps the frame at a pre-defined location in the packet upon receipt and sends the same frame back to the initiator.

## IP SLA initiator

This device initiates IP SLA probe packets to multiple destinations each with a certain user configurable packet content and periodicity.

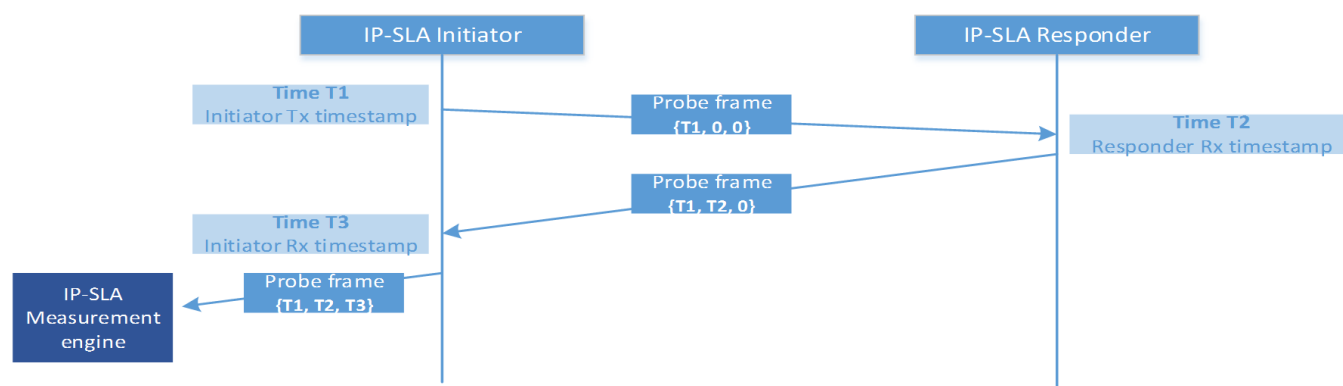
The initiator timestamps the frame at a pre-defined location before sending the frame out to the configured destinations and re-timestamps the frame at a different location once it receives the same back from the responder.

## IP SLA measurement engine

This is an application running on the initiator. It processes response frames received from the IP SLA responder and computes one-way delay, jitter and RTT based on the timestamps present in the packet.

This application aggregates this computed information across multiple probe samples and stores this for consumption by an NMS via SNMP or via the device CLI.

It also supports asynchronous user configurable threshold breach notification to an NMS (via SNMP Traps).



## SLA Measurements

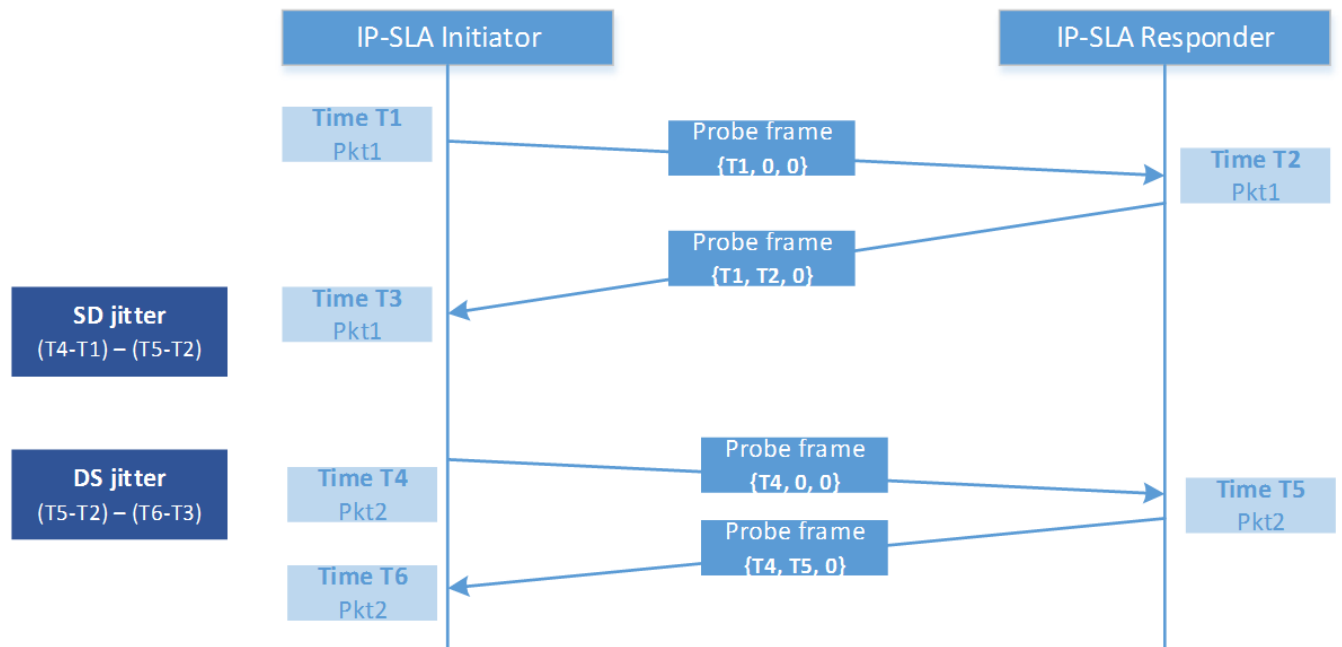
The following metrics are measured as part of this IP SLA jitter functionality.

### One way jitter

One way jitter is defined as the time difference between inter-packets transmit time and inter-packets arrival time in a given direction. This is measured in both the Initiator to Responder direction (referred to as SD jitter) as well as the Responder to initiator direction (referred to as DS jitter).

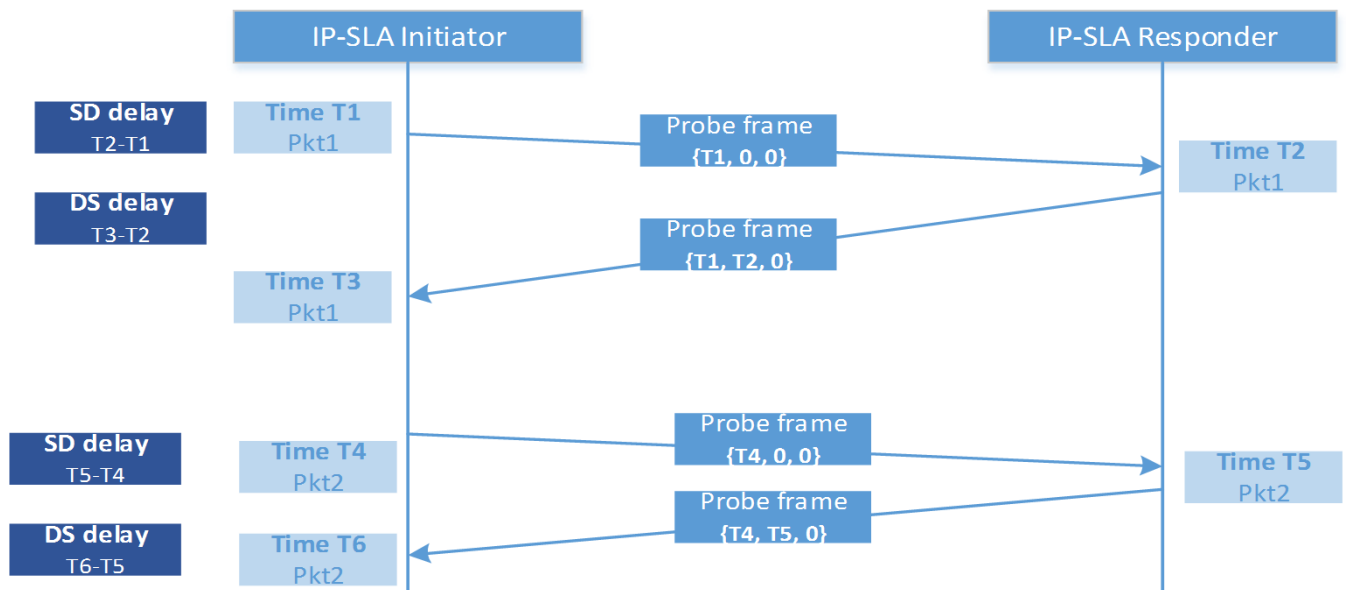
Ideally, the jitter in both directions should be 0. A positive value of jitter is bad for VOIP and higher values of jitter will mean poor conversation quality. This is explained in the illustration below:





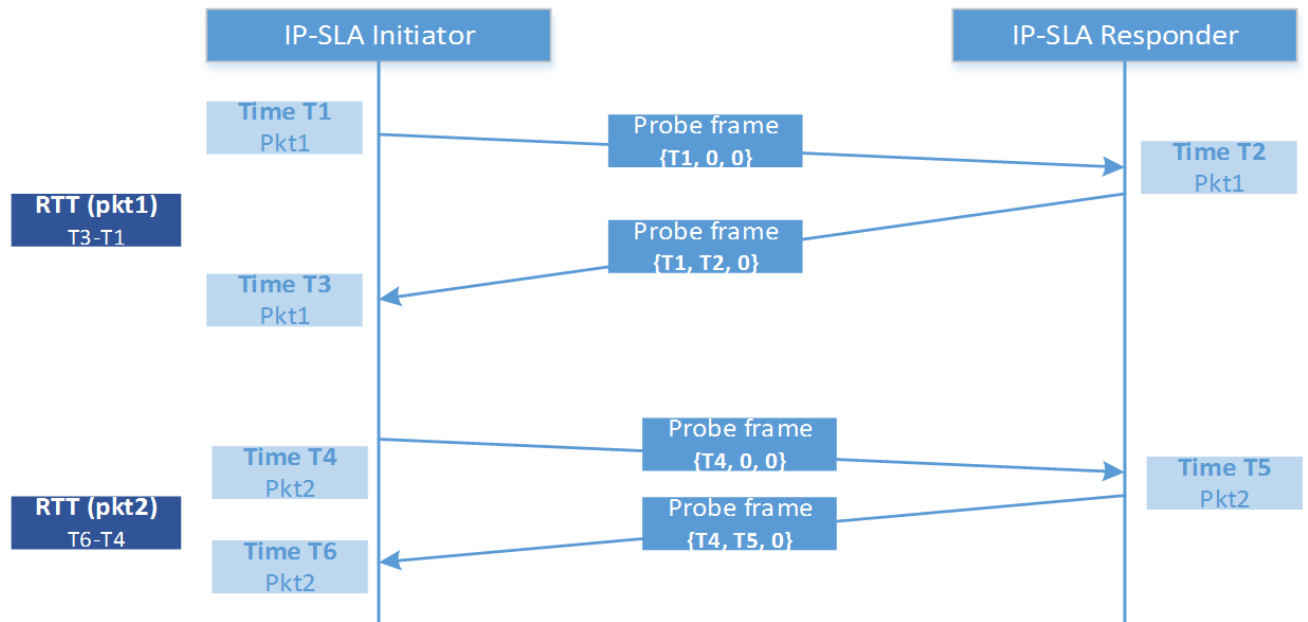
### One way delay

One way delay is defined as the time difference between the Initiator transmitting the frame and the Responder receiving the frame. This requires the Initiator and the Responder to be time synchronized with the same clock server. This is explained in the illustration below:



### Round trip time

RTT is measured at the initiator on a per packet basis and is as illustrated below:



## Overview

The tunneled node feature encapsulates incoming packets from end-hosts in Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) and forwards them to a Mobility Controller for additional processing. The Mobility Controller strips the GRE header and processes the packet for authentication and stateful firewall, which enables centralized security policy, authentication, and access control.

The tunneled node feature is enabled on a per-port basis. Any traffic coming from nontunneled node interfaces is forwarded without being tunneled to a Mobility Controller. For Tunneled Node server configurations, see [Dynamic Segmentation](#).

With 16.08, User-Based Tunneling supports IPv6 along with IPv4. Both User-Based Tunneling extend-VLAN and no-VLAN support IPv6. For differences on extend-VLAN and no-VLAN, see [Differences between User-Based Tunneling extend-VLAN and no-VLAN](#).



**NOTE:** IPv6 addresses are supported only when User-Based Tunneling is operating in role-based mode. For information on User-Based Tunneling, see [User-Based Tunneling](#).

## Operating notes

- Tunneled node profile can be created using CLI and SNMP.
- The tunneled node profile supports configuring of:
  - Primary controller (both IPv4 and IPv6).
  - Backup controller (both IPv4 and IPv6).
  - Heartbeat keepalive timeout – range 1-40 seconds.
- Only one tunneled node profile can be created.
- The tunneled-node profile can be applied to a physical port only via CLI and SNMP.
- The maximum number of physical ports to which the profile may be applied is:
  - Aruba 5400R Switch Series (non-VSF): 256
  - Aruba 5400R Switch Series (VSF): 512
- High availability (HA) will be supported for the tunneled node related configuration.
- A tunnel, associated with a port, is “up” when the following conditions are met. A tunnel is “down” when either of the conditions are not met.
  - Either the primary or backup controller is reachable.
  - A boot strap message response is received from the controller.
- Heartbeat between the switch and controller fails when the controller does not respond after five attempts. All tunnels are brought down with a heartbeat failure.
- A tunnel “up or down” status is logged for each tunnel node port in the event log.
- The `show tech` command dumps all user-mode and test-mode command outputs.
- To reach the Aruba controller, the VLAN must have a manual IP configured.

- With the exception of the 802.1x BPDU, the switch consumes all other BPDUs.
- The controller cluster cannot have mix of IPv4 and IPv6 nodes.
- IPv6 addresses are not allowed for both Primary and Backup controllers when in Port-Based Tunnels.

## Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI)

The PAPI Enhanced Security configuration provides protection to Aruba devices, AirWave, and ALE against malicious users sending fake messages that results in security challenges.

Starting from ArubaOS-Switch version 16.02, a minor security enhancement has been made to Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI) messages. Protocol Application Programming Interface endpoint authenticates the sender by performing a check of the incoming messages using MD5 (hash). All PAPI endpoints — APs, Controllers, Mobility Access Switches, Airwave, and ALE — must use the same secret key. The switch software currently uses a fixed key to calculate the MD5 digest and cooperate with the controller for PAPI enhanced security.



### NOTE:

To use this functionality, the PAPI security profile must be configured on the controller. For more information on the Aruba controller, see the [Aruba Networks Controller Configuration Manual](#).

## Configuration command

### tunneled-node-server

#### Syntax

```
tunneled-node-server [controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | backup-controller-ip
<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | [keepalive <TIMEOUT>] | enable | mode role-based {reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>}]

no tunneled-node-server [controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | backup-controller-ip
<IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR> | [keepalive <TIMEOUT>] | enable | mode role-based {reserved-vlan <VLAN-ID>}]
```

#### Description

Configure tunneled node server information.

The no form of the command removes the tunneled node server configuration.

#### Parameters

##### controller-IP

Configure the controller IP address for the tunneled node. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.

##### backup-controller-IP

Configure the backup controller IP address for the tunneled node. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.

##### keepalive

Configure the keepalive timeout for the tunneled node in seconds [1-40]. The default is 8 seconds.

##### enable

Enter the manager command context.

##### mode role-based

Specifies the tunneled node server mode as role based.

##### mode role-based reserved-vlan

Specifies the VLAN used as tunneled node server reserved VLAN.

## Examples

```
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server controller-ip 15.255.133.148
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server backup-controller-ip 15.255.133.148
switch(config)# tunneled-node-server keepalive 40
```

## interface tunneled-node-server

### Syntax

```
interface <PORT> tunneled-node-server

no interface <PORT> tunneled-node-server
```

### Description

Enable tunneled node on a port.

The `no` command disables the tunneled node on the port.

## controller-ip

From within the **tunneled-node-profile** context:

### Syntax

```
no controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR>
```

### Description

Configure the Controller IP address for the tunneled node.

### controller-ip

Configure the Controller IP address for the tunneled node.

## keepalive

From within the **tunneled-node** context:

### Syntax

```
no keepalive <TIMEOUT>
```

### Description

Configure the keepalive timeout for the tunneled node in seconds.

Keepalive timeout seconds [1-40].

Default: 8 seconds.

### Parameters

#### keepalive

Configure the keepalive timeout for the tunneled node in seconds.

## backup-controller-ip

From within the **tunneled-node-profile** context:

## Syntax

```
no backup-controller-ip <IP-ADDR|IPv6-ADDR>
```

## Description

Configure the backup controller IP address for the tunneled node.

## Parameter

### backup-controller-ip

Configure the backup controller IP address for the tunneled node.

## fallback-local-switching

From within the **interface** context:

## Syntax

```
fallback-local-switching
```

## Description

To switch traffic locally upon losing connectivity to the controller, you must configure the fallback option before connectivity fails. When the tunneled node is applied to a port and the tunnel cannot be established with the controller, the fallback-local-switching option allows port traffic to be switched locally. When the option fallback-local-switching is not specified, the port traffic is dropped when the tunnel reestablishment fails.

## VLAN show commands

VLAN show commands display information about configured VLANs.

## show tunneled-node-server

From within the **configure** context:

## Syntax

```
show tunneled-node-server
```

## Description

Display the tunneled node profile configured.

## Parameter

### tunneled-node-server

Display the tunneled node server configured.

### show tunneled-node-server

```
(config) # show tunneled-node-server
Tunneled Node Server Information
State                               : Enabled
Primary Controller                  : 10.34.125.73
Backup Controller                   : 10.34.125.72
Keepalive Interval (seconds)       : 8
```

## show tunneled-node-server state

From within the **configure** context:

## Syntax

```
show tunneled-node-server state
```

## Description

Display the tunneled node server state.

### show tunneled-node-server state

```
(config) #show tunneled-node-server state
Tunneled Node Port State
Active Controller IP Address : 10.34.125.73
Port      State
-----
1         Complete
3         Complete
4         Complete
A3        Complete
```

## show tunneled-node-server

### Syntax

```
show tunneled-node-server [state | statistics]
```

### Description

Display switch operation information.

### Parameters

#### state

Display the tunneled node port state.

#### statistics

Display the tunneled node statistics.

### show tunneled-node-server state

```
Tunneled node Port State
Active Controller IP Address :
Port      State
-----
2         Port down
```

### show tunneled-node-server statistics

```
Tunneled node Statistics

Port : 2

Control Plane Statistics
Bootstrap packets sent      : 0
Bootstrap packets received  : 0
Bootstrap packets invalid   : 0

Tunnel Statistics
```

Rx Packets	: 0
Tx Packets	: 0
Rx 5 Minute Weighted Average Rate (Pkts/sec)	: 0
Tx 5 Minute Weighted Average Rate (Pkts/sec)	: 0
Aggregate Statistics	
Heartbeat packets sent	: 0
Heartbeat packets received	: 0
Heartbeat packets invalid	: 0
Fragmented Packets Dropped (Rx)	: 0
Packets to Non-Existent Tunnel	: 0
MTU Violation Drop	: 0

clear statistics tunneled-node-server

Syntax

clear statistics tunneled-node-server

Description

Clear statistics from the tunneled node server.

Interaction table

Features enabled with tunneled node:

Feature
Mirrors (port)
PVST/RPVST/STP
DLDP
UDLD
LLDP/CDP
GVRP/MVRP
LACP
Uplink Failure Detection
sFlow
Loop protect
Smartlink
Global QoS (VLAN, port, rate limit)
MAC lockout/lockdown

Table Continued



Feature
ACL/Classifiers (ingress/egress)
IGMP/MLD
GMB
Broadcast-limit
Energy Efficient Ethernet
Flow Control
PoE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• poe-allocate-by</li> <li>• poe-lldp-detect</li> </ul>
Rogue MAC detection
LLDP auto provisioning

## Restrictions

- Once a tunneled node profile is applied to a port, the controller IP (primary and backup) cannot be changed.
- IP address cannot be assigned to VLANs that contain ports with Port-Based Tunneling configured.
- No support for fragmentation and reassembly for encapsulated frames that result in an MTU violation. Such frames will be dropped.
- Packets from ports configured with Port-Based Tunnels will not be bridged with locally switched ports.

Features that are blocked when Port-Based Tunnels are configured and the scope of the block (either globally, on a port basis or on a VLAN basis):

Feature	Blocked globally/per port/ VLAN with Port-Based Tunneling
IP multicast routing	Global
Openflow	Global
Q-in-Q	Global
Distributed Trunking	Global
Mesh	Global

*Table Continued*

Feature	Blocked globally/per port/ VLAN with Port-Based Tunneling
VXLAN	Global
IP address: manual and dhcp	VLAN
802.1x, mac auth, webauth, LMA, port security	Port
DIPLD (IPv4/IPv6)	Port
DSNOOP (IPv4/IPv6)	VLAN
ARP protect	VLAN
RA guard	Port
Virus throttling	Port
BYOD	VLAN
Trunk	Profile cannot be applied to a trunk
PBR policies	VLAN
VSF on a Port-Based Tunnel configured port	Port
Source port/Multicast filters	Port
DHCP client/Server/Relay	VLAN

## PAPI security

### Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI)

The PAPI Enhanced Security configuration provides protection to Aruba devices, AirWave, and ALE against malicious users sending fake messages that results in security challenges.

Starting from ArubaOS-Switch version 16.02, a minor security enhancement has been made to Protocol Application Programming Interface (PAPI) messages. Protocol Application Programming Interface endpoint authenticates the sender by performing a check of the incoming messages using MD5 (hash). All PAPI endpoints — APs, Controllers, Mobility Access Switches, AirWave, and ALE — must use the same secret key. The switch software currently uses a fixed key to calculate the MD5 digest and cooperate with the controller for PAPI enhanced security.



**NOTE:** To use this functionality, the PAPI security profile must be configured on the controller. For more information on the Aruba controller, see the [\*\*Aruba Networks Controller Configuration Manual\*\*](#).

## PAPI configurable secret key

To support enhanced PAPI security, a command is available to configure a MD5 secret key.

### papi-security

#### Syntax

```
switch(config)# papi-security
```

#### Description

Configure MD5 key for enhanced PAPI security.

#### Parameters

##### enhanced-security

The enhanced-security CLI must be enabled in Aruba controller for the connection to be truly secured.

##### <KEY-STR>

Configure MD5 key for enhanced PAPI security using a key-string parameter.

##### <KEY-VALUE>

Configure MD5 key for enhanced papi security using a key-value parameter.

#### Restrictions

- To view the status of the PAPI security, using the `show run` command with the option `include credentials` enabled, the PAPI security key will show in the output as an encrypted form.
- Key length has to be between 10-64.
- By default the enhanced-security is disabled.
- When enhanced-security mode is disabled, any AP can obtain the current shared secret key.
- When enhanced-security mode is enabled, an AP is not updated with the new shared secret key unless the AP knows the previous key and the AP is updated with the new key within one hour of the key creation.
- Key length has to be between 10-64 or the following message will appear:

```
Minimum key-value length allowed is 10 characters and maximum allowed is 64 characters.
```

#### Usage

```
switch(config)# papi-security key-value <KEY-VALUE>
switch(config)# no papi-security <KEY-VALUE>
```

#### papi-security key-value

```
switch(config)# papi-security key-value TestKey12345678
switch(config)# no papi-security key-value
```

```
switch(config)# papi-security key-value Test
Minimum key-value length allowed is 10 characters and maximum allowed is 64 characters.
```

### show run with encrypted key

```
switch(config)# show run
Running configuration:
;J9576A Configuration Editor
;Ver #0e:01.f0.92.34.5f.3c.6b.fb.ff.fd.ff.ff.3f.ef:78
;encrypt-cred +NXT3w7ky2IXNXadlJblS/1ZRi/o73Qq28XXcLkSCZq9PU30Kl+KMLMva8rQri5g

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type j9576y
module 2 type j9576x
encrypt-credentials
papi-security encrypted-key <"encrypted-key">
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
snmpv3 engineid "00:00:00:0b:00:00:50:65:f3:b4:a6:c0"
oobm
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
untagged 1-52
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

activate provision disable
```

### show run with include key

```
show run
Running configuration:
; J9576A Configuration Editor
; Ver#0e:01.f0.92.34.5f.3c.6b.fb.ff.fd.ff.ff.3f.ef:78

hostname "Switch"
module 1 type j9576y
module 2 type j9576x
include-credentials
papi-security key-value <"key">
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
snmpv3 engineid "00:00:00:0b:00:00:50:65:f3:b4:a6:c0"
oobm
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

vlan 1
name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
untagged 1-52
ip address dhcp-bootp
exit

activate provision disable
```

## Preventing double tunneling of Aruba Access Points

When an Aruba Access Point (AP) is connected to a port on which Port-Based Tunneling is configured, there are two tunnels from that port to the Controller - one for the AP and another for the tunneled node. To improve performance of APs connected to tunneled node ports, the following configuration parameter under the device profile feature prevents double tunneling.

The parameter decides whether to allow or not, a tunneled node to be configured on the port on which the device-profile is applied. Use the command `switch(config)# device-profile name <device-profile-name> no allow-tunneled-node`.



**NOTE:** The default setting of `device-profile` allows tunneled node. Device profile is applied on the port only by reading Organizational Specific TLV in LLDP packets.

## Preventing double tunneling using device profile

### device-profile name

#### Syntax

```
device-profile name <device-profile-name> no allow-tunneled-node
```

#### Description

Allows or disallows tunneled node when device profile is applied on that port.

#### Command context

config

#### Parameter

**<device-profile-name>**

Specifies the name of the device profile to be configured.

#### Usage

To create a device-profile named “test”, execute the following command:

```
switch(config)# device-profile name test
```

To allow tunneled-node by the configured device profile parameter, execute the following command:

```
switch(device-profile)# allow-tunneled-node
```

#### Examples

```
switch(config)# device-profile name <device-profile-name>
switch(device-profile)#
allow-jumbo-frames      Configure jumbo frame support for the device port.
allow-tunneled-node     Configure Tunneled Node support for the device port.
cos                     Configure the Class of Service (CoS) priority for
                        traffic from the device.
egress-bandwidth        Configure egress maximum bandwidth for the device port.
ingress-bandwidth       Configure ingress maximum bandwidth for the device
                        port.
poe-max-power           Configure the maximum PoE power for the device port.
poe-priority            Configure the PoE priority for the device port.
speed-duplex            Configure the speed and duplex for the device port.
tagged-vlan             Configure this port as a tagged member of the specified
                        VLANs.
untagged-vlan           Configure this port as an untagged member of specified
                        VLAN.
```

Execute `show run` command to display the tunneled mode configuration in an enabled or disabled state:

```
switch(config)# show run
; J9625A Configuration Editor;
```

```

; Ver #0f:02.43.18.82.34.61.1c.28.f3.84.9c.63.ff.37.2f:da
hostname "switch"
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
device-identity name "cpe" lldp oui 33bbcc
device-identity name "cpe" lldp sub-type 1
device-identity name "phone" lldp oui 112233

vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
device-profile name "ram"
    exit
device-profile name "test"
    exit
device-profile type "scs-wan-cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "phone"
    associate "default-device-profile"
    exit

```

When allow-tunneled-node is disabled:

```

switch(config)# show run
; J9625A Configuration Editor;
; Ver #0f:02.43.18.82.34.61.1c.28.f3.84.9c.63.ff.37.2f:da
hostname "switch"
snmp-server community "public" unrestricted
device-identity name "cpe" lldp oui 33bbcc
device-identity name "cpe" lldp sub-type 1
device-identity name "phone" lldp oui 112233

vlan 1
    name "DEFAULT_VLAN"
    untagged 1-28
    ip address dhcp-bootp
    exit
device-profile name "ram"
    exit
device-profile name "test"
    no allow-tunneled-node
    exit
device-profile type "scs-wan-cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "cpe"
    associate "ram"
    enable
    exit
device-profile type-device "phone"
    associate "default-device-profile"
    exit

```

## show device-profile config

### Syntax

```
show device-profile config
```

### Description

Displays device profile configuration.

### Command context

```
config
```

### Usage

To verify whether tunneled-node is allowed (when “test” is device-profile name):

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-profile config test
```

To verify the output when tunneled-node is disabled:

```
switch(device-profile)# no allow-tunneled-node
```

```
switch(device-profile)# show device-profile config test
```

### Example

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : 0
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled

Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : test
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos                : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Enabled
```

When tunneled-node is disabled:

```
switch(config)# show device-profile config
Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : default-ap-profile
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
```

```
ingress-bandwidth : 100%
egress-bandwidth  : 100%
cos               : 0
speed-duplex      : auto
poe-max-power     : Class/LLDP
poe-priority      : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Disabled
```

#### Device Profile Configuration

Configuration for device-profile : test

```
untagged-vlan      : 1
tagged-vlan        : None
ingress-bandwidth  : 100%
egress-bandwidth   : 100%
cos               : None
speed-duplex       : auto
poe-max-power      : Class/LLDP
poe-priority       : critical
allow-jumbo-frames : Disabled
allow-tunneled-node: Disabled
```



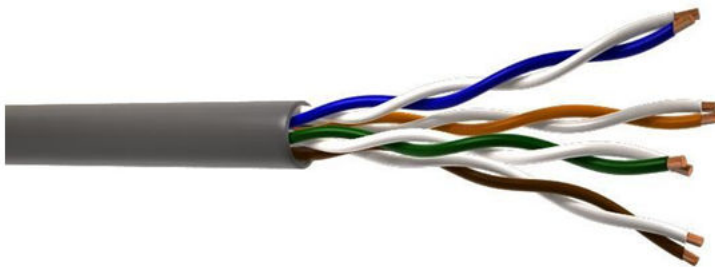
The Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR) or Cable Diagnostics is a port feature supported on some switches running ArubaOS-Switch software. TDR is used to detect cable faults on 100BASE-TX and 1000BASE-T ports.

## Virtual cable testing

The Virtual Cable Test (VCT) uses the same command as TDR. It is applicable only for GigT transceivers like copper transceiver (J8177C–ProCurve Gigabit 1000Base-T Mini-GBIC). The VCT test results include distance to the fault, but not the cable length.

## Cable diagnostics tests

The TDR (Time-domain reflectometer) cable diagnostic test allows an operator to test Ethernet cables for faults without physically disconnecting from the switch. It helps in troubleshooting connectivity or monitor performance on one or more switch ports.



Cable diagnostic test is categorized as four states. Each of the four twisted pairs is displayed in a standard Ethernet cable:

- 1. OK:** The twisted pair is intact and operating normally for the full length of the cable.  
If displayed for all four pairs, the cable must operate normally with no connectivity or any performance issues.
- 2. Short:** There is a short between two wires in the same pair.  
A pair that is shorted (example: blue and white) cannot transmit normally, and may cause impaired connectivity or performance for the cable.
- 3. Inter-short:** There is short between two or more wires in different pairs.  
If multiple pairs are shorted together (example: brown and green), then there is a significant performance degradation or a total loss of connectivity.
- 4. Open:** There is a gap in one or more pairs resulting in a loss of continuity, or no cable is connected to the port.  
It may indicate a damaged or cut cable. A port that has no cable connected is display **Open** for all pairs.

To start a cable diagnostic test, use the following command (in this example, port 1 and 2 are tested):

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 1-2
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

Continue (y/n)? y

After the test is complete, use the following command to view the test results:

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics
```

Cable Diagnostic Status - Copper Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Cable Length or Distance to Fault
1	1-2	OK	2m
	3-6	OK	4m
	4-5	OK	2m
	7-8	OK	2m
2	1-2	Open	0m
	3-6	Open	0m
	4-5	Open	0m
	7-8	Open	0m



#### NOTE:

- Running a cable diagnostic test will result in a brief interruption in connectivity on all tested ports.
- Displayed cable lengths and distances to detected faults are approximate (error margin is  $\pm 10\%$  of cable length).

## Syntax

```
test cable-diagnostics <PORT-LIST>
```

## Description

Use the command to test for cable faults.

## Parameter

*PORT-LIST*

Specify copper port as an input port number.

## Test cable-diagnostics C21

```
test cable-diagnostics C21
```

The 'test cable-diagnostics' command will cause a loss of link and will take a few seconds per interface to complete. Continue [Y/N]? y

MDI Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
C21	1-2	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	7-8	Open	1 m	0 ns		

## Test cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take

several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

Continue (y/n)? Y

switch# show cable-diagnostics 1/1-1/10

Cable Diagnostic Status - Copper Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Cable Length or Distance to Fault
1/1	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/2	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/3	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	7m
1/4	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	7m
	4-5	OK	7m
	7-8	OK	5m
1/5	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/6	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	4m
	4-5	OK	4m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/7	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	4m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/8	1-2	OK	4m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	4m
	7-8	OK	4m
1/9	1-2	OK	5m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	5m
1/10	1-2	OK	7m
	3-6	OK	5m
	4-5	OK	5m
	7-8	OK	5m

## Good cable tests

switch# test cable-diagnostics 51

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

Continue (y/n)? Y

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 51
```

#### Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
51	1-2	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	MDI
	3-6	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	8 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 52
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? Y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 52
```

#### Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
52	1-2	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	MDI
	3-6	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	
	4-5	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	MDIX
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns	Normal	

## Faulty cable test

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 51
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 51
```

#### Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
51	1-2	OK	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Short	1 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Short	1 m	0 ns		
	7-8	OK	0 m	0 ns		

```
switch# test cable-diagnostics 52
```

This command will cause a loss of link on all tested ports and will take several seconds per port to complete. Use the 'show cable-diagnostics' command to view the results.

```
Continue (y/n)? Y
```

```
switch# show cable-diagnostics 52
```

#### Cable Diagnostic Status - Transceiver Ports

Port	MDI Pair	Cable Status	Distance to Fault	Pair Skew	Pair Polarity	MDI Mode
52	1-2	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	3-6	Open	0 m	0 ns		
	4-5	Open	1 m	0 ns		
	7-8	Open	0 m	0 ns		

#### Error message

Error Message	Cause
The transceiver on port 1/A1 does not support cable diagnostics.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>usage of invalid(fiber-SFP+) port</li><li>The selected range includes an entry for an invalid port.</li></ul>

## show cable-diagnostics

### Syntax

```
show cable-diagnostics <PORT-LIST>
```

### Description

Use the command to generate results of completed tests on single or multiple ports. For incomplete tests, a warning is displayed.

### Parameter

PORT

Specify one copper port as an input port number.

## clear cable-diagnostics

### Syntax

```
clear cable-diagnostics
```

### Description

Use the command to clear the result buffer.

### Example

```
switch(config)# clear cable-diagnostics
```

## Limitations

TDR has the following limitations:

- TDR length accuracy is  $\pm 5$  m
- Does not work on Smart Rate Interfaces with 10GBASE-T and NGBASE-T (2.5G, 5G copper) ports available on:
  - v3 blades

- J9991A — Aruba 20-port 10/100/1000BASE-T PoE+ / 4-port 1/2.5/5/10GBASE-T PoE+ MACsec v3 zl2 Module
  - J9995A — Aruba 8-port 1/2.5/5/10GBASE-T PoE+ MACsec v3 zl2 Module
  - 3810M (JL076A — Aruba 3810M 40G 8 HPE Smart Rate PoE+ 1-slot Switch)
- Not supported on v2 zl modules
- Valid only on 100BASE-TX and 1000BASE-T ports

## Overview

Aruba switches come with the ability to detect Aruba Access Points (APs) to allow for easy identification as well as bypassing authentication, if needed by the deployment. LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) messages coming from APs as well as other devices are detected by the switch to determine if they are configured for authentication bypass.

Apart from Aruba APs and Aruba switches, certain Customer Premise Equipment (CPE) from Swisscom are also bypassed from authentication process. For devices not included above, the bypass method mention in the section **Bypassing Authentication for VoIP Phones** can be used.

In ZTP environment, where a NMS such as AirWave pushes the switch configuration to look for the above-mentioned devices, device profiles will be applied when a matching device is connected and is configured without any user intervention. After discovery of an Aruba AP, the switch will dynamically provision the AP connected port without initiating any authentication. This feature is enabled at the port-level or on a range of ports.

To configure bypassing authentication for Aruba APs and custom devices, see **aaa port-access lldp-bypass**.

## Configuration commands

### aaa port-access lldp-bypass

From within the configure context:

#### Syntax

```
aaa port-access lldp-bypass
no aaa port-access lldp-bypass
```

#### Description

Configures LLDP bypass on the switch ports to bypass authentication for Aruba APs which sends special LLDP TLVs. When LLDP bypass is enabled on a port, it will behave as any other devices and bypass LLDP PDU for all device-profile enabled device.

By default, LLDP bypass is disabled on the switch ports.

#### Usage

```
aaa port-access lldp-bypass <PORT-LIST>
no aaa port-access lldp-bypass <PORT-LIST>
```



**NOTE:** Enabling `aaa port-access lldp-bypass` disables authentication on the port.

It is recommended to use `aaa port-access device-identity bypass` for bypass authentication, where multiple clients are connected per port. For more information, refer *Bypassing authentication for Aruba APs and custom devices* section from *Access Security Guide*.

## Show commands

### show port-access lldp-bypass clients

#### Syntax

```
show port-access lldp-bypass clients
```

## Description

Displays the clients which bypassed the authentication.

## Parameter

### <PORT-LIST>

Show information for specified ports only.

## Usage

```
show port-access lldp-bypass clients <PORT-LIST>
```

### show port-access lldp-bypass clients

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass clients
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Client Status
Port      MAC Address
-----
A1         000005-010203
A2         010203-040506
```

### Stackable switch: show port-access lldp-bypass clients

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass clients
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Client Status
Port      MAC Address
-----
1/1       000005-010203
1/2       005056-bd7039
```

### show port-access lldp-bypass clients A1

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass clients A1
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Client Status
Port      MAC Address
-----
A1         000005-010203
```

### Stackable switch: show port-access lldp-bypass clients 1/1

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass clients 1/1
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Client Status
Port      MAC Address
-----
1/1       000005-010203
```



## show port-access lldp-bypass config

### Syntax

```
show port-access lldp-bypass config
```

### Description

Displays the lldp-bypass configuration applied on all switch ports.

#### show port-access lldp-bypass config

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass config
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Configuration
```

```
Port      Enabled
```

```
-----
```

```
A1        Yes
```

```
A2        Yes
```

```
A3        No
```

```
A4        No
```

```
...
```

```
A24       No
```

```
F1        No
```

```
F2        No
```

```
F3        No
```

```
F24       No
```

#### Stackable switch: show port-access lldp-bypass config

```
switch(config)#show port-access lldp-bypass config
```

```
Port Access lldp-bypass Configuration
```

```
Port      Enabled
```

```
-----
```

```
1/1       Yes
```

```
1/2       Yes
```

```
1/3       No
```

```
...
```

```
1/52      No
```

```
2/1       No
```

```
2/26      No
```

```
3/1       No
```

```
3/26      No
```

## Error Log

Event	Message
CLIERR_CANNOT_ENABLE_LLDP_BYPASS_MAC_LOCKDOWN_ENABLED	<p>lldp-bypass is not allowed on the port where MAC-lockdown is enabled.</p> <p>lldp-bypass cannot be enabled on a port with MAC lock-enabled.</p>
CLIERR_MACLOCK_AND_LLDP_BYPASS	<p>MAC-lockdown is not permitted on the port where is enabled lldp-bypass.</p> <p>Cannot configure MAC lock-enable on the port A1 when lldp-bypass is enabled on that port.</p>
CLIERR_CANNOT_ENABLE_LLDP_BYPASS_MACSEC_ENABLED	<p>lldp-bypass is not allowed on the port MACsec is configured.</p> <p>lldp-bypass cannot be enabled on a port when MACsec is enabled.</p>
CLIERR_CANNOT_ENABLE_MACSEC_AS_LLDP_BYPASS_CONFIGURED	<p>MACsec is not permitted on the port where is enabled lldp-bypass.</p> <p>Cannot apply MACsec on the port A1 when lldp-bypass is enabled on that port.</p>
CLIERR_CANNOT_ENABLE_LEARN_MODE_CONFIGURED_LLDP_BYPASS	<p>Port-security learn-mode configured is not permitted when lldp-bypass is enabled on the port.</p> <p>A1: Cannot apply learn-mode on the port A1 when lldp-bypass is enabled on that port.</p>
CLIERR_LLDP_BYPASS_AND_LEARN_MODE_CONFIGURED	<p>lldp-bypass is not permitted when port-security learn-mode is configured.</p> <p>lldp-bypass cannot be enabled on a port when learn-mode is enabled.</p>

*Table Continued*

Event	Message
CLIERR_LLDP_BYPASS_AND_MESH_OR_MANUAL_TRUNK	<p>Trunk/ mesh/Distributed Trunk is not permitted on the lldp-bypass enabled port.</p> <p>Cannot apply mesh or manual trunks on the port A1 when lldp-bypass is enabled on that port.</p>
Existing Log:CLIERR_MESH_OR_MANUAL_TRUNK	<p>lldp-bypass cannot be enabled for trunk/mesh/ Distributed Trunk ports.</p> <p>lldp-bypass cannot be enabled on a port when mesh or manual trunks is enabled.</p>

## Debug log

Comment	Message
Security warning to be displayed when lldp-bypass configuration is enabled on the port.	<p>Enabling lldp-bypass on the port may give access to any Aruba-AP that sends a special LLDP TLV without undergoing any authentication. This configuration may allow network access to the rogue devices that are capable of sending the special LLDP TLV</p> <p>Do you want to continue? [y/n]:</p>
When adding the Aruba-AP into the authorized client list.	<p>Will use the existing debug log:</p> <p>0000:00:24:25.07 PSEC mPORTSECMCtrl:added new SA 000005-000000 to authorized addr list of port A1 for vlan 1.</p>
When removing the Aruba-AP from the authorized client list.	<p>Will use the existing debug log:</p> <p>0000:00:01:47.07 PSEC mPORTSECMCtrl:removed 000006-000000 from authorized addr list of port A1 for vlan 1 due to delete.</p>
When Aruba-AP is detected on lldp-bypass enabled port:	<p>0000:00:13:57.64 PSEC mPORTSECMCtrl: Received PROFMGR_DEVICE_CONNECTED event for 40e3d6-c6d492 on port A1.</p>
When already connected Aruba-AP is disconnected/removed on lldp-bypass enabled port.	<p>0000:00:13:07.96 PSEC mPORTSECMCtrl: Received PROFMGR_DEVICE_DISCONNECTED event for 40e3d6-c6d492 on port A1.</p>

### Networking Websites

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Information Library

[www.hpe.com/networking/resourcefinder](http://www.hpe.com/networking/resourcefinder)

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Software

[www.hpe.com/networking/software](http://www.hpe.com/networking/software)

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking website

[www.hpe.com/info/networking](http://www.hpe.com/info/networking)

Hewlett Packard Enterprise My Networking website

[www.hpe.com/networking/support](http://www.hpe.com/networking/support)

Hewlett Packard Enterprise My Networking Portal

[www.hpe.com/networking/mynetworking](http://www.hpe.com/networking/mynetworking)

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Networking Warranty

[www.hpe.com/networking/warranty](http://www.hpe.com/networking/warranty)

### General websites

Hewlett Packard Enterprise Information Library

[www.hpe.com/info/EIL](http://www.hpe.com/info/EIL)

For additional websites, see [Support and other resources](#).

## Accessing Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support

- For live assistance, go to the Contact Hewlett Packard Enterprise Worldwide website:  
<http://www.hpe.com/info/assistance>
- To access documentation and support services, go to the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center website:  
<http://www.hpe.com/support/hpesc>

### Information to collect

- Technical support registration number (if applicable)
- Product name, model or version, and serial number
- Operating system name and version
- Firmware version
- Error messages
- Product-specific reports and logs
- Add-on products or components
- Third-party products or components

## Accessing updates

- Some software products provide a mechanism for accessing software updates through the product interface. Review your product documentation to identify the recommended software update method.
- To download product updates:  
**Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center**  
[www.hpe.com/support/hpesc](http://www.hpe.com/support/hpesc)  
**Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center: Software downloads**  
[www.hpe.com/support/downloads](http://www.hpe.com/support/downloads)  
**Software Depot**  
[www.hpe.com/support/softwaredepot](http://www.hpe.com/support/softwaredepot)
- To subscribe to eNewsletters and alerts:  
[www.hpe.com/support/e-updates](http://www.hpe.com/support/e-updates)
- To view and update your entitlements, and to link your contracts and warranties with your profile, go to the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center **More Information on Access to Support Materials** page:  
[www.hpe.com/support/AccessToSupportMaterials](http://www.hpe.com/support/AccessToSupportMaterials)



**IMPORTANT:** Access to some updates might require product entitlement when accessed through the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center. You must have an HPE Passport set up with relevant entitlements.

## Customer self repair

Hewlett Packard Enterprise customer self repair (CSR) programs allow you to repair your product. If a CSR part needs to be replaced, it will be shipped directly to you so that you can install it at your convenience. Some parts do not qualify for CSR. Your Hewlett Packard Enterprise authorized service provider will determine whether a repair can be accomplished by CSR.

For more information about CSR, contact your local service provider or go to the CSR website:

<http://www.hpe.com/support/selfrepair>

## Remote support

Remote support is available with supported devices as part of your warranty or contractual support agreement. It provides intelligent event diagnosis, and automatic, secure submission of hardware event notifications to Hewlett Packard Enterprise, which will initiate a fast and accurate resolution based on your product's service level. Hewlett Packard Enterprise strongly recommends that you register your device for remote support.

If your product includes additional remote support details, use search to locate that information.

### Remote support and Proactive Care information

#### HPE Get Connected

[www.hpe.com/services/getconnected](http://www.hpe.com/services/getconnected)

#### HPE Proactive Care services

[www.hpe.com/services/proactivecare](http://www.hpe.com/services/proactivecare)

#### HPE Proactive Care service: Supported products list

[www.hpe.com/services/proactivecaresupportedproducts](http://www.hpe.com/services/proactivecaresupportedproducts)

#### HPE Proactive Care advanced service: Supported products list

[www.hpe.com/services/proactivecareadvancedsupportedproducts](http://www.hpe.com/services/proactivecareadvancedsupportedproducts)

### Proactive Care customer information

#### Proactive Care central

[www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentral](http://www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentral)

#### Proactive Care service activation

[www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentralgetstarted](http://www.hpe.com/services/proactivecarecentralgetstarted)

## Warranty information

To view the warranty information for your product, see the links provided below:

#### HPE ProLiant and IA-32 Servers and Options

[www.hpe.com/support/ProLiantServers-Warranties](http://www.hpe.com/support/ProLiantServers-Warranties)

#### HPE Enterprise and Cloudline Servers

[www.hpe.com/support/EnterpriseServers-Warranties](http://www.hpe.com/support/EnterpriseServers-Warranties)

#### HPE Storage Products

[www.hpe.com/support/Storage-Warranties](http://www.hpe.com/support/Storage-Warranties)

#### HPE Networking Products

[www.hpe.com/support/Networking-Warranties](http://www.hpe.com/support/Networking-Warranties)

## Regulatory information

To view the regulatory information for your product, view the *Safety and Compliance Information for Server, Storage, Power, Networking, and Rack Products*, available at the Hewlett Packard Enterprise Support Center:

**[www.hpe.com/support/Safety-Compliance-EnterpriseProducts](http://www.hpe.com/support/Safety-Compliance-EnterpriseProducts)**

### Additional regulatory information

Hewlett Packard Enterprise is committed to providing our customers with information about the chemical substances in our products as needed to comply with legal requirements such as REACH (Regulation EC No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and the Council). A chemical information report for this product can be found at:

**[www.hpe.com/info/reach](http://www.hpe.com/info/reach)**

For Hewlett Packard Enterprise product environmental and safety information and compliance data, including RoHS and REACH, see:

**[www.hpe.com/info/ecodata](http://www.hpe.com/info/ecodata)**

For Hewlett Packard Enterprise environmental information, including company programs, product recycling, and energy efficiency, see:

**[www.hpe.com/info/environment](http://www.hpe.com/info/environment)**

## Documentation feedback

Hewlett Packard Enterprise is committed to providing documentation that meets your needs. To help us improve the documentation, send any errors, suggestions, or comments to Documentation Feedback (**[docsfeedback@hpe.com](mailto:docsfeedback@hpe.com)**). When submitting your feedback, include the document title, part number, edition, and publication date located on the front cover of the document. For online help content, include the product name, product version, help edition, and publication date located on the legal notices page.

## Introduction

TR-069 is a technical specification created by the **Broadband Forum**. The TR-069 protocol specifies client and server requirements to manage devices across the Internet by using a client server architecture to provide communication between the CPE (Customer Premises Equipment) and the ACS (Auto Configuration Server). A protocol helps to manage complex networks where many devices such as modems, routers, gateways, VoIP phones and mobile tablets compete for resources. TR-069 defines the CPE WAN Management Protocol (CWMP) protocol necessary to remotely manage end-user devices. ACS provides automatic configuration for these devices.



---

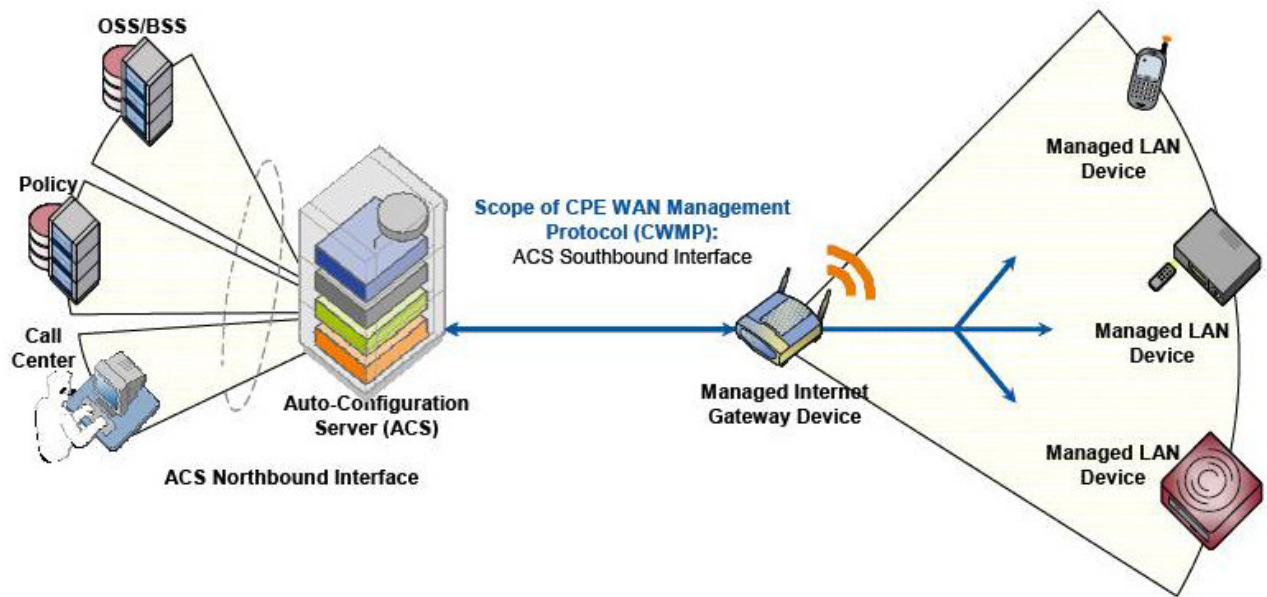
**NOTE:** CWMP is automatically enabled. To conserve resources, reconfigure this setting using the `cwmp disable` command.

---

TR-069 defines an auto-configuration architecture which provides the following primary capabilities:

- Auto-configuration and dynamic service provisioning
- Software/firmware image management
- Status and performance monitoring
- Diagnostics
- Bidirectional SOAP/HTTP based protocol





## Advantages of TR-069

- TR-069 can manage devices with dynamic IP addresses.  
TR-069 use Organization Unique ID (OUI) and serial number rather than IP to identify a device.
- TR-069 can manage devices in a private network.  
The HPE ACS BIMS (an iMC module) uses HTTP to communicate with the device, and the session is initiated by the device, so BIMS can pass through NAT to manage the device.
- TR-069 is secure.  
TR-069 can use HTTPS to communicate with or transfer files to/from the device; it is more secure than TFTP, FTP or Telnet.
- TR-069 is suitable for WAN management across internet.
- TR-069 is suitable for zero-touch configuration.  
The zero-configuration mechanism is defined in the TR-069 specification.
- TR-069 is suitable for large-scale device management.  
TR-069 support distributed architecture. The ACS can be distributed to multiple servers, each ACS can manage part of devices.

## Zero-touch configuration process

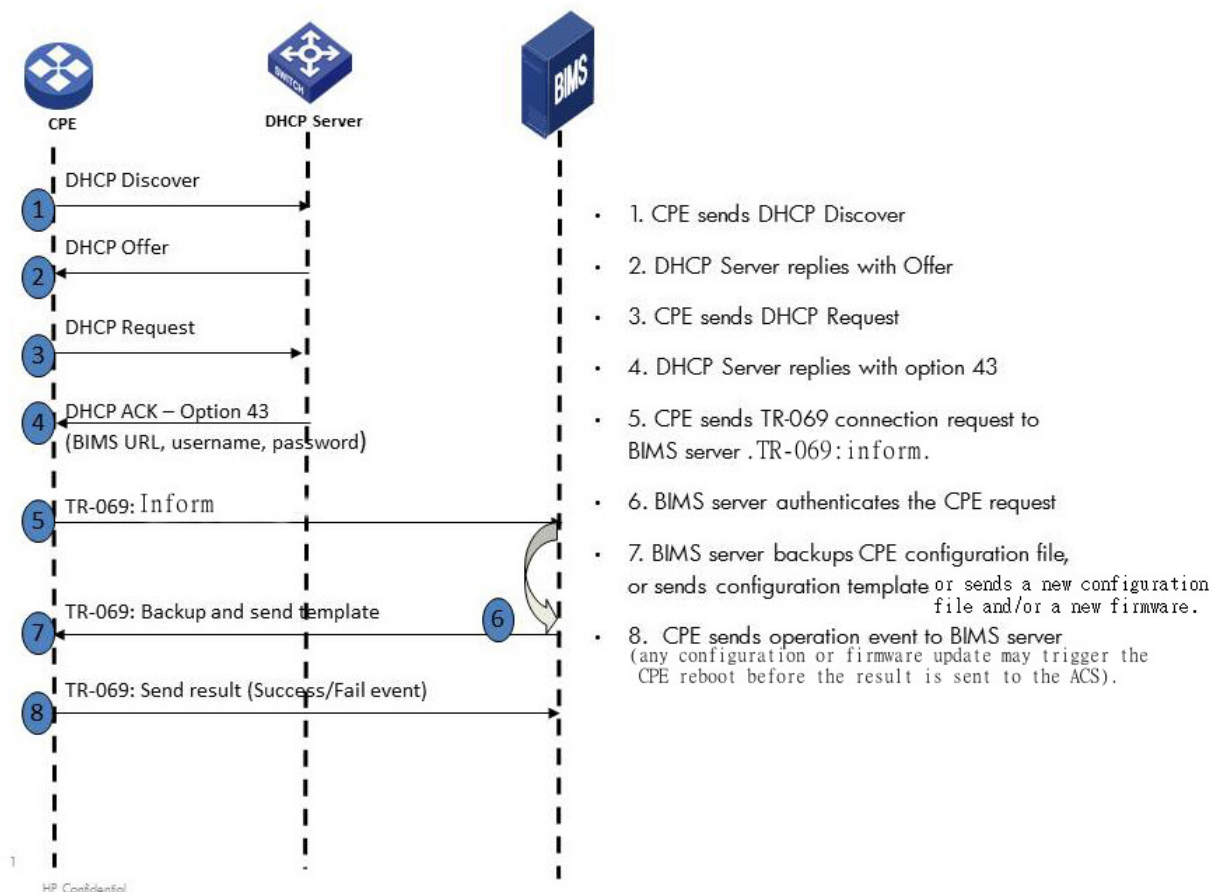
Auto configuration or “zero-touch” deployment is a recurring customer requirement, especially for remote-office deployments. New devices introduced inside a private network require management tools be co-located to configure them or update firmware, or require manual intervention to do configuration. TR-069 allows managing

devices that reside in a private network via HTTP(S), enabling a new set of deployment and management models today, not possible using SNMP.

The client side, when configured, will contact the server at a predefined URL, using HTTP or HTTPS as protocol. After authentication, the ACS is able to perform the following basic operations:

- Update CPE Configuration.
- Update CPE TR-069 parameters.
- Update CPE firmware.
- Reboot CPE (backup, startup, and running configurations)
- Run CPE ping diagnostics.
- Reset CPE to factory default.
- Get periodic Status (several parameters can be retrieved depending on what is supported).

Since TR-069 uses HTTP, it can be used across a WAN. If the CPE can reach the URL, it can be managed. TR-069 is mostly a push protocol where the client periodically sends information without server requests. This allows for greater scalability over traditional SNMP based tools, which are also bounded to work within the LAN, while TR-069 can offer management to remote offices.

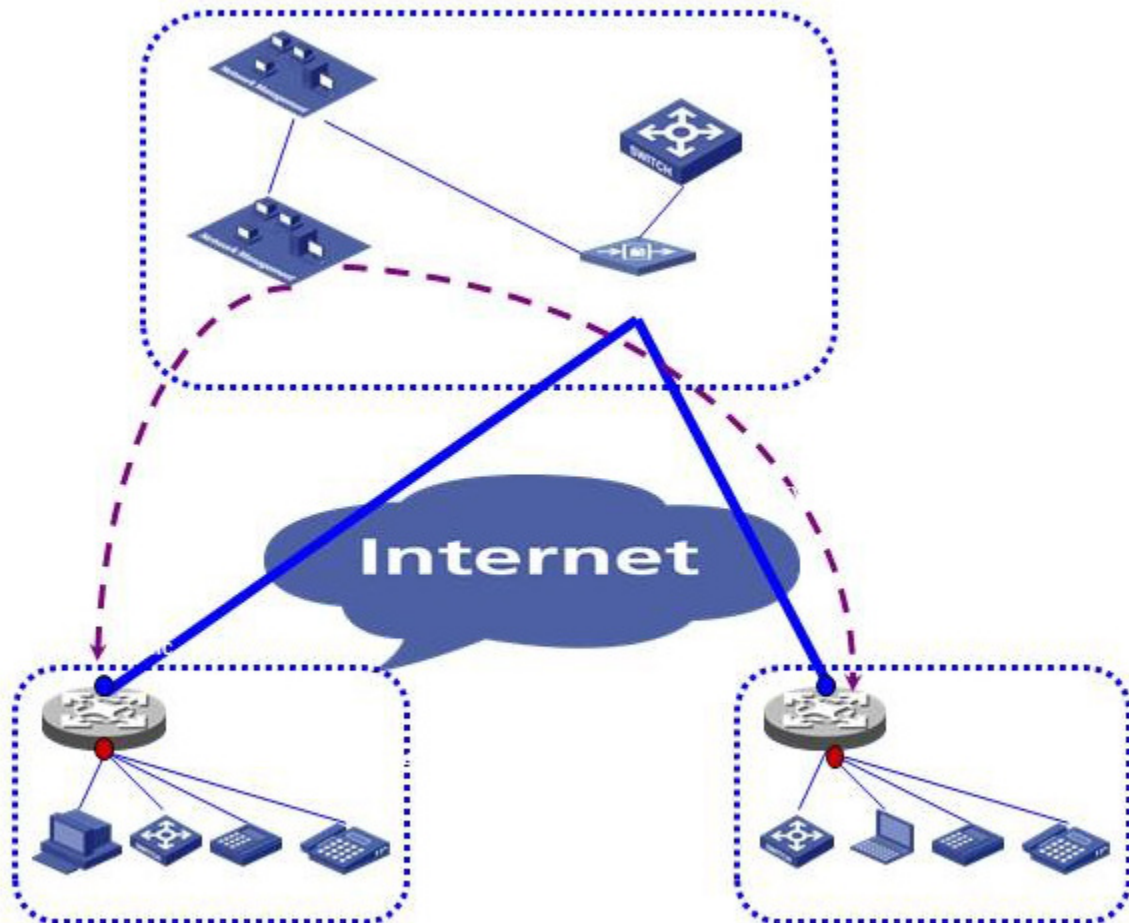


In this example, the following steps to configure CPEs for a Campus Network environment.

- 
- The diagram illustrates a network architecture where a central **Policy Center (BIMS)** interacts with various components:
- Web Service:** Includes **EAD**, **MVM**, and **IVM** components, which communicate with the Policy Center via bidirectional arrows.
  - Network Core:** Features a **DHCP Server**, a **DHCP Relay**, and several **ROUTER** and **SWITCH** nodes.
  - Client/Edge Devices:** Includes multiple **CPE** (Customer Premises Equipment) devices, some connected to switches and others to routers.
  - Interactions:**
    - Solid blue lines represent data or control plane connections between the Policy Center and the DHCP Server, DHCP Relay, and various CPEs.
    - Green dashed lines represent specific policy or management interactions between the Policy Center and the DHCP Server, DHCP Relay, and CPEs.
    - Black dashed lines connect the Policy Center to the EAD, MVM, and IVM Web Services.
  - Additional Labels:** **QoS/Voice VLAN** and **1x/RADIUS/ACL** are associated with specific CPE and switch connections.

In this example, the following steps to configure CPEs for a Branch network environment.

1. Create the basic configuration for your spoke device manually, using the username/password from ISP and BIMS URL.
2. The IPSec VPN configuration is generated by IVM and deployed by BIMS.
3. The IPSec VPN tunnel is automatically created.
4. The device in the branch private network can DHCP relay to HQ to continue the zero touch configuration.



## Zero-touch configuration setup and execution

1. DHCP configuration
2. BIMS configuration
3. Execution

## CLI commands

## Configuration setup

Within the configure mode:

### Syntax:

`cwmp`

#### **acs**

Configure Auto Configuration Server (ACS) access.

#### **cpe**

Configure Customer Premises Equipment (CPE) access.

#### **disable**

Disable the CPE WAN Management Protocol.



---

#### **NOTE:**

CWMP is automatically enabled. To conserve resources, reconfigure this setting using the `cwmp disable` command.

---

#### **enable**

Enable the CPE WAN Management Protocol.

### Syntax:

`no cwmp`

#### **acs**

Configure Auto Configuration Server (ACS) access.

#### **cpe**

Configure Customer Premises Equipment (CPE) access.

#### **enable**

Enable the CPE WAN Management Protocol.

## ACS password configuration

### Syntax:

`cwmp acs`

#### **password**

Configure the password used for authentication when the switch connects to the ACS.

#### **url**

Configure the URL of the ACS.

#### **username**

Configure the username used for authentication when the switch connects to the ACS.

## When encrypt-credentials is off

### Syntax:

```
cwmp acs password
```

### plaintext

Configure the password used for authentication when the switch connects to the ACS.

## When encrypt-credentials is on

### Syntax:

```
cwmp acs password
```

### encrypted-key

An encrypted password generated with the `encrypt-credentials` command.

### plaintext

Configure the password used for authentication when the switch connects to the ACS.

### Encrypt-credential on

```
cwmp acs password encrypted-key
```

### ASCII-STR

Enter an ASCII string (maximum length: 384 characters).

### Plaintext password

```
cwmp acs password plaintext
```

### PASSWORD-STR

A plaintext password used for ACS authentication (maximum length: 256 characters).

## ACS URL configuration

### Syntax:

```
cwmp acs url
```

### URL-STR

The URL of the ACS (maximum length: 256 characters).

## ACS username configuration

### Syntax:

```
cwmp acs username
```

### USERNAME-STR

A username for ACS authentication (maximum length: 256 characters).

## CPE configuration

### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe
```

### password

Configure the password used for authentication when the ACS connects to the switch.

### username

Configure the username used for authentication when the ACS connects to the switch.

## CPE password configuration

### When encrypt-credentials is on

#### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe password
```

### encrypted-key

An encrypted password generated with the 'encrypt-credentials' command.

### plaintext

Configure the password used for authentication when the ACS connects to the switch.

#### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe password encrypted-key
```

### ASCII-STR

Enter an ASCII string (maximum length: 384 characters).

### When encrypt-credentials is off

#### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe [password]
```

### plaintext

Configure the password used for authentication when the ACS connects to the switch

#### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe
```

### PASSWORD-STR

A plaintext password used for ACS authentication (maximum length: 256 characters).

## CPE username configuration

### Syntax:

```
cwmp cpe [username]
```

## USERNAME-STR

A username for ACS authentication (maximum length: 256 characters).

## Enable/disable CWMP

### Syntax:

```
cwmp [enable|disable]
```

## Show commands

## CWMP configuration and status query

### Syntax:

```
show cwmp
```

### configuration

Show current CWMP configuration.

### status

Show current CWMP status.

## When CWMP is enabled

### Syntax:

```
show cwmp configuration
```

### CWMP configuration

```
CWMP Configuration
CWMP Status           : Enabled
ACS URL                : http://16.93.62.32:9090
ACS Username           : bims
Inform Enable Status   : Enabled
Inform Interval        : 60
Inform Time            : 2014-04-08T06:00:00
Reconnection Timeout   : 30
```

### CWMP status

```
CWMP Status
CWMP Status           : Enabled
ACS URL                : http://16.93.62.32:9090
ACS URL Origin         : Config
ACS Username           : bims
Connection Status      : Disconnected
Data Transfer Status   : None
Last ACS Connection Time : Wed Apr 9 16:56:00 2014
Time to Next Connection : 00:00:36
```



## When CWMP is disabled

### Syntax:

```
show cwmp status
```

#### CWMP status

```
CWMP Status
CWMP Status          : Disabled
```

#### CWMP configuration

```
show cwmp configuration
CWMP Configuration
CWMP Status          : Disabled
```

## Event logging

The TR-069 client offers some tools to diagnose problems:

- System logging
- Status/control commands

## System logging

The CPE implements the following system log notification codes and sample messages:

- **RMON\_TR69\_INFORM\_COMPLETE**
  - INFORM to http://15.29.20.50:9090/ from (IP address not set yet) completed with error.
  - INFORM to http://15.29.20.50:9090/ from 10.0.10.212 completed with error.
  - INFORM to http://15.29.20.50:9090/ from 10.0.10.212 completed successfully.
- **RMON\_TR69\_AUTH\_FAILED**
  - Authentication on ACS http://15.29.20.50:9090/ failed.
- **RMON\_TR69\_CONN\_FAILED**
  - Connection attempts with ACS http://15.29.20.50:9090/ from 10.0.10.212 failed.

To avoid flooding the system log on frequent attempts to connect with the ACS, the following criteria are used with both successful and failed attempts:

1. The very first event is always logged.
2. Any change from success to failure or vice versa is always logged.
3. Repeat success or failure events are logged only once every five minutes.

The HTTP file transfer component supports these system log notification codes and sample messages:

- **RMON\_HTTP\_XFER\_COMPLETE**
  - I 11/19/13 08:06:13 04185 http: Download of http://10.0.11.240:9876/path to DestinationFile completed successfully.
  - I 11/19/13 08:06:13 04185 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path completed successfully.
- **RMON\_HTTP\_CONN\_FAILED**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04186 http: Connection to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path failed.
- **RMON\_HTTP\_TIMED\_OUT**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04192 http: Download of http://10.0.11.240:9876/path to DestinationFile timed out.
  - W 02/20/14 00:32:17 04192 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path timed out.
- **RMON\_HTTP\_NO\_SPACE**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04189 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path canceled because of insufficient memory.
- **RMON\_HTTP\_REQ\_FAILED**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04190 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path failed (errno 13).
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04190 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path failed (errno 1).
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04190 http: Download of http://10.0.11.240:9876/path to DestinationFile failed (errno 13).
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04190 http: Download of http://10.0.11.240:9876/path to DestinationFile failed (errno 1).
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04190 http: Download of http://10.0.11.240:9876/path to DestinationFile failed (errno 17).
- **RMON\_HTTP\_WRONG\_FILE**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04191 http: Download canceled because file http://10.0.11.240:9876/path is malformed or incompatible.
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04191 http: Download canceled because file http://10.0.11.240:9876/path is malformed or incompatible.
- **RMON\_HTTP\_FILE\_NOT\_FOUND**
  - W 11/19/13 08:06:13 04200 http: Upload of SourceFile to http://10.0.11.240:9876/path canceled because of inexistent file.

## Status/control commands

The following commands help assess the general state of TR-069 and control the source of the ACS configuration record:

**Table 32: Status/control commands**

Command	Result
show cwmp status	CWMP is Enabled ACS URL : https://16.93.62.32:9443 ACS URL is set by : Config ACS Username : bims Connection status : Disconnected Data transfer status : None Time of last successful connection : Thu Feb 20 01:16:59 2014 Interval upon to next connection : Null
show cwmp configuration	CWMP is Enabled ACS URL : https://16.93.62.32:9443 ACS Username : bims Inform Enable Status : Disabled Inform Interval : 3559 Inform Time : Reconnection times : 30
no dhcp tr69-acurl	Prevents using any ACS information from DHCP

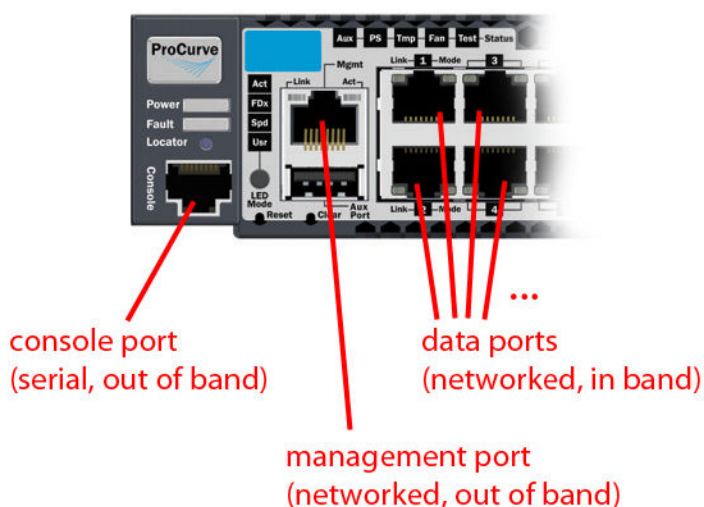
### Concepts

Management communications with a managed switch can be:

- In band—through the networked data ports of the switch
- Out of band—through a dedicated management port (or ports) separate from the data ports

Out-of-band ports have typically been serial console ports using DB-9 or specially wired 8-pin modular (RJ-style) connectors. Some recent HPE switches have added networked OOBM ports. The following figure shows management connections for a typical switch.

**Figure 67:** *Management ports*



OOBM operates on a "management plane" that is separate from the "data plane" used by data traffic on the switch and by in-band management traffic. That separation means that OOBM can continue to function even during periods of traffic congestion, equipment malfunction, or attacks on the network. In addition, it can provide improved switch security: a properly configured switch can limit management access to the management port only, preventing malicious attempts to gain access via the data ports.

Network OOBM typically occurs on a management network that connects multiple switches. It has the added advantage that it can be done from a central location and does not require an individual physical cable from the management station to each switch's console port.

The following table summarizes the switch management ports.

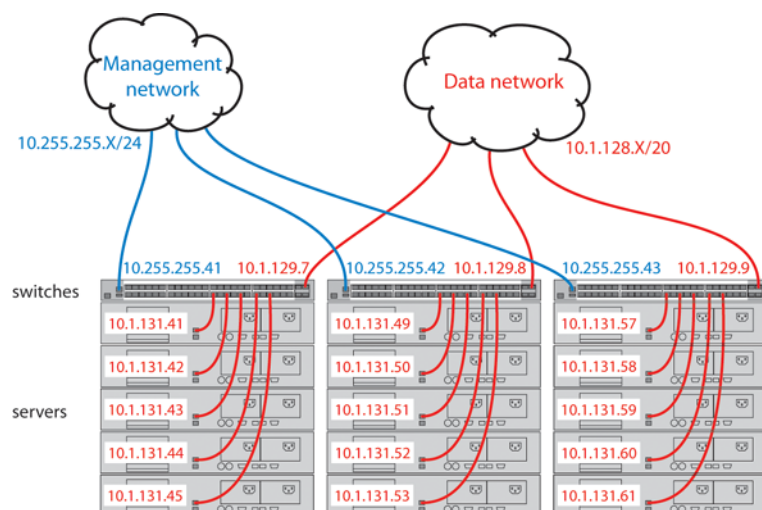
**Table 33: Switch management ports**

	In band	Out of band	
	Networked	Directly connected	Networked
Management interface	Command line (CLI), menu, Web	Command line (CLI), menu	Command line (CLI), menu
Communication plane	Data plane	Management plane	Management plane
Connection port	Any data port	Dedicated serial or USB console port	Dedicated networked management port
Connector type	Usually RJ-45; also CX4, SFP, SFP+, and XFP	DB9 serial, serial-wired 8-pin RJ	RJ-45
Advantages	Allows centralized management	Not affected by events on data network, shows boot sequence	Not affected by events on data network, allows centralized management, allows improved security
Disadvantages	Can be affected by events on data network; does not show boot sequence	Requires direct connection to console port (can be done via networked terminal server)	Does not show boot sequence

### Example:

In a typical data center installation, top-of-rack switches connect servers to the data network, while the management ports of those switches connect to a physically and logically separate management network. This allows network administrators to manage the switches even if operation on the data network is disrupted.

In the figure below, the switches face the hot aisle of the data center, allowing easy connection to the network ports on the backs of the servers.

**Figure 68: Network OOBM in a data center**

For even more control, the serial console ports of the switches can be connected to the management network through a serial console server (essentially, a networked serial switch), allowing the network administrators to view the CLI activity of each switch at boot time and to control the switches through the console ports (as well as through the management ports).

## OOBM and switch applications

The table below shows the switch applications that are supported on the OOBM interface as well as on the data interfaces. In this list, some applications are client-only, some are server-only, and some are both.

Application	Inbound OOBM (server)	Outbound OOBM (client)	Inbound data plane (server)	Outbound data plane (client)
Telnet	yes	yes	yes	yes
SSH	yes	N/A	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>
SNMP	yes	yes	yes	yes
TFTP	yes	yes	yes	yes
HTTP	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>
SNTP	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
TIMEP	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
RADIUS	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
TACACS	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
DNS	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
Syslog	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes	N/A <sup>1</sup>	yes
Ping	yes	yes	yes <sup>44</sup>	yes
Traceroute	yes <sup>44</sup>	yes	yes <sup>44</sup>	yes

<sup>1</sup> not applicable

<sup>2</sup> Ping and Traceroute do not have explicit servers. Ping and Traceroute responses are sent by the host stack.

For applications that have servers, `oobm/data/both` options have been added to listen mode. There is now a `listen` keyword in the CLI commands to allow selection of those options. Default **value** is `both` for all servers.

## OOBM configuration

OOBM configuration commands can be issued from the global configuration context (`config`) or from a specific OOBM configuration context (`oobm`).

## Entering the OOBM configuration context from the general configuration context

### Syntax:

```
oobm
```

Enters the OOBM context from the general configuration context.

### Example:

```
switch(config)# oobm
```

```
Switch (oobm)#
```

## Enabling and disabling OOBM

From the OOBM context:

### Syntax:

```
enable
```

```
disable
```

From the general configuration context:

### Syntax:

```
oobm enable
```

```
oobm disable
```

Enables or disables networked OOBM on the switch.

OOBM is not compatible with a management VLAN. If you attempt to enable OOBM when a management VLAN is enabled, the command will be rejected and you will receive an error message.

If an OOBM IP address exists and you disable OOBM, the OOBM IP address configuration is maintained. If you enable OOBM and there is a pre-existing OOBM IP address, it will be reinstated.

Network OOBM is enabled by default.

### Examples:

```
Switch (oobm)# enable
```

```
Switch (oobm)# disable
```

```
switch(config)# oobm enable
```

```
switch(config)# oobm disable
```

## Enabling and disabling the OOBM port

The OOBM `interface` command enables or disables the OOBM interface (that is, the OOBM port, as opposed to the OOBM function).

From the OOBM context:

**Syntax:**

```
interface [enable|disable]
```

From the general configuration context:

**Syntax:**

```
oobm interface [enable|disable]
```

Enables or disables the networked OOBM interface (port).

**Examples:**

```
Switch (oobm)# interface enable
```

```
switch(config)# oobm interface disable
```

## Setting the OOBM port speed

The OOBM port operates at 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps, half or full duplex. These can be set explicitly or they can be automatically negotiated using the `auto` setting.

From the OOBM context:

**Syntax:**

```
interface speed-duplex [10-half|10-full|100-half|100-full|auto]
```

From the general configuration context:

**Syntax:**

```
oobm interface speed-duplex [10-half|10-full|100-half|100-full|auto]
```

Enables or disables the networked OOBM interface (port). Available settings are:

10-half	10 Mbps, half-duplex
10-full	10-Mbps, full-duplex
100-half	100-Mbps, half-duplex
100-full	100-Mbps, full-duplex
auto	auto negotiate for speed and duplex

**Example:**

```
switch (oobm)# interface speed-duplex auto
```

## Configuring an OOBM IPv4 address

Configuring an IPv4 address for the OOBM interface is similar to VLAN IP address configuration, but it is accomplished within the OOBM context.

From the OOBM context:



**Syntax:**

```
no ip address [dhcp-bootp|ip-address/mask-length]
```

From the general configuration context:

**Syntax:**

```
no oobm ip address [dhcp-bootp|ip-address/mask-length]
```

Configures an IPv4 address for the switch's OOBM interface.

You can configure an IPv4 address even when global OOBM is disabled; that address will become effective when OOBM is enabled.

**Example:**

```
Switch (oobm)# ip address 10.1.1.17/24
```

## Configuring an OOBM IPv4 default gateway

Configuring an IPv4 default gateway for the OOBM interface is similar to VLAN default gateway configuration, but it is accomplished within the OOBM context.

From the OOBM context:

**Syntax:**

```
no ip default-gateway <ip-address>
```

From the general configuration context:

**Syntax:**

```
no oobm ip default-gateway <ip-address>
```

Configures an IPv4 default gateway for the switch's OOBM interface.

**Example:**

```
Switch (oobm)# ip default-gateway 10.1.1.1
```

## Configuring an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM devices

An OOBM interface is used for managing devices from remote sites. OOBM devices must be given a default gateway responsible to maintain a network connection when these devices are placed in an IPv6 network enabled with RA suppression.

To configure and enable an IPv6 default gateway for OOBM interfaces, use the `oobm ipv6 default-gateway` command.

### `oobm ipv6 default-gateway`

**Syntax**

```
oobm ipv6 default-gateway <IPV6-ADDR>
```

```
no oobm ipv6 default-gateway
```

**Description**

Configures the IPv6 default gateway address for OOBM interfaces.

The *no* form of the command deletes the default gateway. It is imperative that an IPv6 address is specified when the *no* form of the command is used.

### Command context

config

### Parameters

**<IPv6-ADDR>**

Specifies the IPv6 address when configuring the OOBM for a specific gateway.

### Example

```
switch(config)# oobm ipv6 default-gateway 1001::1/64
```

```
oobm member ipv6 default-gateway
```

### Syntax

```
oobm member <MEMBER-ID> ipv6 default-gateway <IPv6-ADDR>
```

```
no oobm member <MEMBER-ID> ipv6 default-gateway
```

### Description

Configures the IPv6 default gateway address for an OOBM member using their unique identifier and the IPv6 address of the default gateway.

When *no* proceeds the command, the default gateway address is deleted.

### Command context

config

### Parameters

**<MEMBER-ID>**

Specifies the unique member-id which allows the OOBM device access to the IPv6 default-gateway.

**<IPv6-ADDR>**

Specifies the IPv6 address of the default gateway for a member OOBM interface.

### Example

Configuring and deleting the OOBM member from a specific IPv6 gateway.

```
switch(config)# oobm member 1 ipv6 default-gateway 1001::1
```

```
switch(config)# no oobm member 1 ipv6 default-gateway
```

## IPv6 default router preferences

The command `ipv6 nd ra router-preference {high | medium | low}` provides an extension to the Neighbor Discovery Router Advertisement messages for communicating default router preferences from routers to hosts. The extension improves the ability of hosts to pick the appropriate router for an off-link destination. In network topologies, where the host has multiple routers on its Default Router list, the choice of router for an off-link destination is critical for making the communication more efficient. For example, one router may provide much better performance than another for a destination while choosing a wrong router may result in failure to communicate.

## ipv6 nd ra router-preference

### Syntax

```
ipv6 nd ra router-preference {low | medium | high}

no ipv6 nd ra router-preference
```

### Description

Sets the router-preference configuration for communicating default router preferences from routers to hosts. Improves the ability of hosts to pick the appropriate router for an off-link destination by providing options at the operator level which set the router preference value as low, medium, or high. Depending on the router preference value set, the host receives the value as part of the IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement and chooses the best router for communication.

The `no` form of this command removes the router-preference configuration.

### Command context

vlan

### Parameters

#### low

Specifies the router-preference value to low.

#### medium

Specifies the router-preference value to medium. Medium is the default router-preference value.

#### high

Specifies the router-preference value to high.

### Usage

- When VRRP is configured, RA messages for Virtual IP are sent with configured router-preference values.
- This command complies with RFC 4191.

### Example

Default router-preferences.

```
switch(vlan-1) # ipv6 nd ra router-preference
low                Set the Default Router Preference to low.
medium             Set the Default Router Preference to medium (default).
high              Set the Default Router Preference to high.

switch(vlan-1) # ipv6 nd ra router-preference high
```

## OOBM show commands

The `show` commands for OOBM are similar to the analogous commands for the data plane. Note that you must always include the `oobm` parameter to see the information for the OOBM interface, regardless of the context. For instance, even from the OOBM context, the `show ip` command displays the IP configuration for the data plane; to see the IP configuration of the OOBM interface, you need to use `show oobm ip`.

## Showing the global OOBM and OOBM port configuration

### Syntax:

```
show oobm
```

Summarizes OOBM configuration information. This command displays the global OOBM configuration (enabled or disabled), the OOBM interface status (up or down), and the port status (enabled/disabled, duplex, and speed).

You can issue this command from any context.

### Example:

```
switch# show oobm

Global Configuration
  OOBM Enabled : Yes
  OOBM Port Type : 10/100TX
  OOBM Interface Status : Up
  OOBM Port : Enabled
  OOBM Port Speed : Auto
```

## Showing OOBM IP configuration

### Syntax:

```
show oobm ip
```

Summarizes the IP configuration of the OOBM interface. This command displays the status of IPv4 (enabled/disabled), the IPv4 default gateway, and the IPv4 address configured for the interface.

You can issue this command from any context.

### Example:

```
switch# show oobm ip
```

## Showing OOBM ARP information

### Syntax:

```
show oobm arp
```

Summarizes the ARP table entries for the OOBM interface.

You can issue this command from any context.

### Example:

```
switch# show oobm arp
```

## show oobm ipv6

### Syntax

```
show oobm ipv6
```

### Description

Shows the IPv6 service status for OOBM interfaces.

## Command context

operator

## Example

Shows the IPv6 service status for OOBM interfaces.

```
switch# show oobm ipv6
```

Internet (IPv6) Service for OOBM Interface

```
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Default Gateway : 1000::2
```

Member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Intf Status
Global	manual	1000::1/64		Up
Global	autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9e:901/64		Up

## show oobm ipv6 (for stacked switches)

### Syntax

```
show oobm ipv6
```

### Description

Shows the OOBM IPv6 interface for a stacked switch.

## Command context

operator

## Example

Shows the OOBM IPv6 interface for a stacked switch.

```
stack-switch# show oobm ipv6
```

Internet (IPv6) Service for OOBM Interface

```
IPv6 Status      : Enabled
IPv6 Default Gateway : 3000::2
```

Member	IP Config	IP Address/Prefix Length	Address Status	Intf Status
Global	manual	3000::1/64	Active	Down
Global	autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9b:a581/64	Active	Down
1	manual	1000::1/64	Active	Down
2	manual	2000::1/64	Active	Up

## show oobm ip detail (for stacked switches)

### Syntax

```
show oobm ip detail
```

## Description

Shows the OOBM IP detail for a stacked switch.

## Command context

operator

## Example

Show the OOBM IP detail for a stacked switch.

```
stack-switch# show oobm ip detail
```

Internet (IP) Service for OOBM Interface

### Global Configuration

IPv4 Status : Enabled  
IPv6 Status : Enabled

IPv4 Default Gateway : 3.3.3.1  
IPv6 Default Gateway : 3000::1

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	3.3.3.2/24	preferred
manual	3000::2/64	preferred
autoconfig	fe80::42a8:f0ff:fe9b:a581/64	preferred

### Member 1

IPv4 Status : Enabled  
IPv6 Status : Enabled

IPv4 Default Gateway : 2.2.2.1  
IPv6 Default Gateway : 2000::1

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	2.2.2.2/24	preferred
manual	2000::2/64	preferred

### Member 2

IPv4 Status : Enabled  
IPv6 Status : Enabled

IPv4 Default Gateway : 1.1.1.1  
IPv6 Default Gateway : 1000::1

Origin	IP Address/Prefix Length	Status
manual	1.1.1.2/24	preferred
manual	1000::2/64	preferred

## Application server commands

Application servers (as described in OOBM and server applications in **Concepts** on page 544) have added a `listen` keyword with `oobm|data|both` options to specify which interfaces are active.

Default value is `both` for all servers.

Telnet:	<code>telnet-server [listen {&lt;oobm   data   both&gt;}]</code>	management and configuration guide
SSH:	<code>ip ssh [listen {&lt;oobm   data   both&gt;}]</code>	access security guide
SNMP:	<code>snmp-server [listen {&lt;oobm   data   both&gt;}]</code>	management and configuration guide
TFTP:	<code>tftp server [listen {&lt;oobm   data   both&gt;}]</code>	management and configuration guide
HTTP:	<code>web-management [listen {&lt;oobm   data   both&gt;}]</code>	management and configuration guide

In all cases, `show running-config` displays the server configurations.

Use the `no` form of the command to prevent the server from running on either interface.

#### Examples:

Telnet:	<code>no telnet-server</code>
SSH:	<code>no ip ssh ...</code>
SNMP:	<code>no snmp-server ...</code>
TFTP:	<code>no tftp server</code>
HTTP:	<code>no web-management ...</code>

The `show servers` command shows the listen mode of the servers:

```
switch# show servers
Server listen mode
```

```

Server          Listen mode
-----
Telnet          |both
Ssh              |both
Tftp            |both
Web-management  |both
Snmp            |both
```

## Application client commands

CLI commands for client applications have added the `oobm` keyword to allow you to specify that the outgoing request be issued from the OOBM interface. If you do not specify the `oobm` keyword, the request will be issued from the appropriate in-band data interface. Command syntax is:

Telnet:	<code>telnet &lt;ip-address&gt; [oobm]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
TFTP:	<code>copy tftp ... &lt;ip-address&gt; &lt;filename&gt; ... [oobm]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
SNTP:	<code>no sntp server priority &lt;priority&gt; &lt;ip-address&gt; [oobm] [version]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
TIMEP:	<code>no ip timep {&lt;dhcp   manual &lt; ip-address &gt; [oobm] &gt; [...]}</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
RADIUS:	<code>no radius-server host &lt;ip-address&gt; [oobm]</code>	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
TACACS+:	<code>no tacacs-server host &lt;ip-address&gt; [oobm]</code>	<i>Access Security Guide</i>
DNS:	<code>no ip dns server-address priority &lt;priority&gt; &lt;ip-address&gt; [oobm]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
Syslog:	<code>no logging &lt;ip-address&gt; [[control-descr]   [oobm]]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
Ping:	<code>ping [...] [source {&lt; ip-address   vlan-id   oobm&gt;}]</code>	<i>Management and Configuration Guide</i>
Traceroute :	<code>traceroute [...] [source {&lt; ip-address   vlan-id   oobm&gt;}]</code>	management and configuration guide

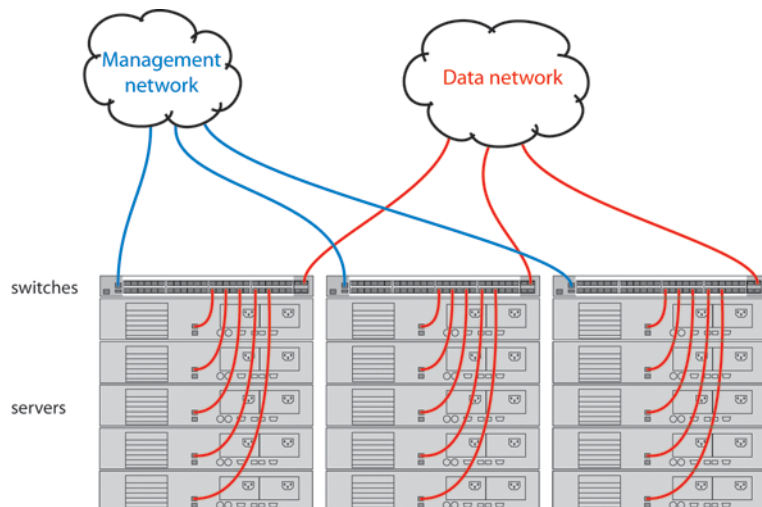
#### Example:

The following example shows setup and use of network OOBM using the commands described above.



Assume that the figure below describes how you want to set up your data center.

**Figure 69:** Example: data center



Assume that you are configuring the switch in the left-hand rack to communicate on both the data and management networks. You might do the following:

- Configure an IP address on the data network.
- Verify that out-of-band management is enabled. (It is enabled by default.)
- Configure an IP address on the management network.
- Verify that the switch can communicate on both networks.

The CLI commands that follow would accomplish those tasks. (The first time through the process you might easily make the omission shown near the end of the example.)

```
switch 41# config
switch 41(config)# vlan 1
switch 41(vlan-1)# ip address 10.1.129.7/20
switch 41(vlan-1)# end
switch 41# show oobm
```

**Set up IP address on data network.  
Exit back to manager context.  
Look at default OOBM configuration.**

```
Global Configuration
OOBM Enabled : Yes
OOBM Port Type : 10/100TX
OOBM Interface Status : Up
OOBM Port : Enabled
OOBM Port Speed : Auto
```

**Defaults look appropriate.**

```
switch 41# config
switch 41(config)# oobm
switch 41(oobm)# ip address 10.255.255.41/24
switch 41(oobm)# ip default-gateway 10.255.255.1
switch 41(oobm)# end
switch 41# ping 10.1.131.44
10.1.131.44 is alive, time = 19 ms
switch 41# ping 10.1.131.51
10.1.131.51 is alive, time = 15 ms
switch 41# ping 10.255.255.42
The destination address is unreachable.
switch 41# ping source oobm 10.255.255.42
10.255.255.42 is alive, time = 2 ms
switch 41#
```

**Go to OOBM context and  
add IP address and  
default gateway.  
Exit back to manager context.  
Ping server in this rack (on data network).  
Ping server in adjacent rack.  
Ping switch in adjacent rack.  
Oops! It's on the management network.  
Go through the management port  
and it works fine.**

The configuration backup and restore without reboot supports the following features:

Interface Access (Telnet, Console/Serial, web)	Port Shutdown with Broadcast Storm
Access Control Lists (ACLs)	Source-Port Filters
AAA Authentication	TACACS+ Authentication
CoS (Class of Service)	Time Protocols (TimeP, SNTP)
Network Management Applications (SNMP)	Uni-directional Link Detection (UDLD)
Port Configuration	Virus Throttling (Connection-Rate Filtering)
Port Security	Web-based Authentication
Port-Based Access Control (802.1X)	Backplane stacking
Quality of Service (QoS)	Job Scheduler
Spanning Tree (STP, RSTP, MSTP, RPVST+)	Authorized IP Managers
VLANs	Authorized Manager List (Web, SSH, TFTP)
802.1Q VLAN Tagging	Auto MDIX Configuration
802.1X Port-Based Priority	DHCP Configuration
802.1X Multiple Authenticated Clients Per Port	Flow Control (802.3x)
IGMP	Friendly Port Names
LACP/Trunk	Guaranteed Minimum Bandwidth (GMB)
MAC Lockdown	IP Addressing
MAC-based Authentication	Jumbo Packets
MAC Lockout	LLDP
LMA	LLDP-MED
Multicast Filtering	Loop Protection
Power over Ethernet (PoE and PoE+)	MAC Address Management
Protocol Filters	Management VLAN
RADIUS Authentication and Accounting	Passwords and Password Clear Protection/include-credentials
RADIUS-Based Configuration	QoS: Strict-Priority Queuing

*Table Continued*

Encrypted-password	QoS: Turn on/off VLAN Precedence
Port Monitoring	QoS: Egress Queue Rate-limiting
Port Status	CDP
Rate-Limiting	System Parameters (hostname, Banner)
Syslog	Front-panel-security
System Information	DLDP
Telnet Access	OOBM
Traffic/Security Filters	Switch interconnect
Port mirroring	Airwave Controller IP configuration
Voice VLAN	Aruba Central integration
Web Authentication RADIUS Support	Captive portal commands
Web UI	Consolidated Client View
Log IP address of an ACL match	IPsec for Zero Touch Provisioning
access-list logtimer	Local User roles
UFD: Uplink Failure Detection	Port QoS Trust Mode
Wake-on-LAN for a Specific VLAN	Per-port Tunneled node
WebUI Inactivity Timer	Zero-touch provisioning - DHCP, Activate
Control Plane Protection	ClearPass support
Egress ACLs	HTTP redirection/Captive portal
Device profile - switch auto configuration	Device profile: LLDP Authentication Bypass with AP
Device profile: Auto configuration with Aruba AP detection	RADIUS Port Speed VSA
Tunneled Node enhancement: fallback to switching	Dynamic ARP Protection
Rogue AP isolation	Dynamic IP Lockdown
DHCP Option 82	Eavesdrop Protection
DHCP snooping	GVRP
Distributed Trunking	Private VLANs
RMON 1,2,3,9	IP SLA
SavePower Features	sys-debug acl
sFlow	MAC Based VLANs (MBV)
VxLAN	RBAC: Role Based Access Control
Smartlink	RADIUS Service Tracking
Fault Finder extended to cover Flapping Transceiver Mitigation	sys-debug destination
Fault Finder (Per Port Enable)	Protocol VLANs
SNMP Trap Throttling	

Acronym	Definition
ACL	Access Control List
AMP	AirWave Management Platform
AP	Access Point
BYOD	Bring Your Own Device
BPS	Backplane Stacking
CoA	Change of Authorization
CLI	Command Line Interface
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DoS	Denial-of-Service
EWA	Enhanced Web Authentication
IP	Internet Protocol
HA	High Availability
HMAC-SHA1	Hash-based Message Authentication Code used with the SHA-1 cryptographic hash function.
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol
ID	Identifier
IP	Internet Protocol

*Table Continued*

Acronym	Definition
L3	The third, or routing, layer of the open systems interconnection (OSI) model. The network layer routes data to different LANs and Wide Area Networks (WANs) based on network addresses.
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC	Media Access Control
MAFR	MAC Authentication Failure Redirect
MAS	Management Interface Specification
NMS	Network Management System
PVOS	ArubaOS-Switch Operating System
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial In User Service
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VSA	Vendor Specific Attribute
VSF	Virtual Switching Framework
ZTP	Zero Touch Provisioning